English: Condensed Translation Notes, Translation Notes, Translation Words, Unlocked Literal Bible for Genesis

Formatted for Translators

©2022 Wycliffe Associates

Released under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Bible Text: The English Unlocked Literal Bible (ULB)

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English Unlocked Literal Bible is based on the unfoldingWord® Literal Text, CC BY-SA 4.0. The original work of the unfoldingWord® Literal Text is available at [https://unfoldingword.bible/ult/](https://nam12.safelinks.protection.outlook.com/?url=https%3A%2F%2Funfoldingword.bible%2Fult%2F&data=02%7C01%7Cmarv_lucas%40wycliffeassociates.org%7Cab3b29dbe7fc44554aeb08d8080e8e70%7C7baa11086adb4be299cf00a4872ab1cf%7C0%7C0%7C637268205914531190&sdata=SW2KxVr%2BcxHGAgMpv602NzoYenorfHi9bOs2SNzVpR4%3D&reserved=0).

The ULB is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Notes: English ULB Translation Notes

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English ULB Translation Notes is based on the unfoldingWord translationNotes, under CC BY-SA 4.0. The original unfoldingWord work is available at <https://unfoldingword.bible/utn>.

The ULB Notes is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

To view a copy of the CC BY-SA 4.0 license visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/>

Below is a human-readable summary of (and not a substitute for) the license.

**You are free to:**

* **Share**— copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format.
* **Adapt**— remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

The licensor cannot revoke these freedoms as long as you follow the license terms.

**Under the following conditions:**

* **Attribution**— You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <https://BibleInEveryLanguage.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
* **ShareAlike**— If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.
* **No additional restrictions**— You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

**Notices:**

You do not have to comply with the license for elements of the material in the public domain or where your use is permitted by an applicable exception or limitation.

No warranties are given. The license may not give you all of the permissions necessary for your intended use. For example, other rights such as publicity, privacy, or moral rights may limit how you use the material.

A picture containing text, clipart

Description automatically generated

TOC \o "1-2" \h \z \uRight-click to update field (doing so will insert table of contents).

Page left intentionally blank

## Genesis

Chapter 1

1In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth.2The earth was without form and empty. Darkness was upon the surface of the deep. The Spirit of God was moving above the surface of the waters.

3God said, "Let there be light," and there was light.4God saw the light, that it was good. He divided the light from the darkness.5God called the light "day," and the darkness he called "night." And there was evening and there was morning, the first day.

6God said, "Let there be an expanse between the waters, and let it divide the waters from the waters."7God made the expanse and divided the waters which were under the expanse from the waters which were above the expanse. It was so.8God called the expanse "sky." And there was evening and there was morning, the second day.

9God said, "Let the waters under the sky be gathered together to one place, and let the dry land appear." It was so.10God called the dry land "earth," and the gathered waters he called "seas." He saw that it was good.

11God said, "Let the earth sprout vegetation: plants yielding seed and fruit trees bearing fruit whose seed is in the fruit, each according to its own kind." It was so.12The earth produced vegetation, plants producing seed after their kind, and trees bearing fruit whose seed was in it, after their kind. God saw that it was good.13And there was evening and there was morning, the third day.

14God said, "Let there be lights in the sky to divide the day from the night and let them be as signs, for seasons, for days and years.15Let them be lights in the sky to give light upon the earth." It was so.16God made the two great lights, the greater light to rule the day, and the lesser light to rule the night. He made the stars also.17God set them in the sky to give light upon the earth,18to rule over the day and over the night, and to divide the light from the darkness. God saw that it was good.19And there was evening and there was morning, the fourth day.

20God said, "Let the waters be filled with great numbers of living creatures, and let birds fly above the earth in the expanse of the sky."21God created the great sea creatures, as well as every living creature after its kind, creatures that move and which fill the waters everywhere, and every winged bird after its kind. God saw that it was good.22God blessed them, saying, "Be fruitful and multiply, and fill the waters in the seas. Let birds multiply on the earth."23And there was evening and there was morning, the fifth day.

24God said, "Let the earth produce living creatures, each according to its own kind, livestock, creeping things, and wild animals, each according to its own kind." It was so.25God made the wild animals after their kind, the livestock after their kind, and everything that creeps upon the ground after its kind. He saw that it was good.

26God said, "Let us make man in our image, after our likeness. Let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, over the livestock, over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth." [1](#footnote-target-1)

27God created man in his own image. In his own image he created him. Male and female he created them.

28God blessed them and said to them, "Be fruitful, and multiply. Fill the earth, and subdue it. Have dominion over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth."

29God said, "See, I have given you every plant yielding seed which is upon the surface of all the earth, and every tree with fruit which has seed in it. They will be food to you.30To every beast of the earth, to every bird of the heavens, and to everything that creeps upon the earth, and to every creature that has the breath of life I have given every green plant for food." It was so.

31God saw everything that he had made. Behold, it was very good. And there was evening and there was morning, the sixth day.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some ancient copies have: ... over the livestock, over all the animals of the earth, and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth.

#### Genesis 1:1

##### In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth

"This is about how God made the heavens and the earth in the beginning." This statement summarizes the rest of the chapter. Some languages translate it as "A very long time ago God created the heavens and the earth." Translate it in a way that shows this actually happened and is not just a folk story.

##### In the beginning

This refers to the start of the world and everything in it.

##### the heavens and the earth

"the sky, the ground, and everything in them"

##### heavens

This refers here to the sky.

#### Genesis 1:2

##### without form and empty

God had not yet put the world in order.

##### the deep

"the water" or "the deep water" or "the vast water"

##### the surface of the waters

"the surface of the water" or "the water"

#### Genesis 1:3

##### Let there be light

This is a command. By commanding that light should exist, God made it exist.

#### Genesis 1:4

##### God saw the light, that it was good

"God considered the light and was pleased with it." "Good" here means "pleasing" or "suitable."

##### divided the light from the darkness

"separated the light and the darkness" or "made it light at one time and dark at another." This refers to God creating the daytime and the night time.

#### Genesis 1:5

##### And there was evening and there was morning, the first day

God did these things on the first day that the universe existed.

#### Genesis 1:6

##### Let there be an expanse ... let it divide

By commanding that the expanse should exist and that it divide the waters, God made it exist and divide the waters.

##### expanse

large empty space. The Jewish people thought of this space as being shaped like the inside of dome or the inside of a bowl that is turned upside down.

#### Genesis 1:7

##### God made the expanse and divided the waters

"In this way God made the expanse and divided the waters." When God spoke, it happened. This sentence explains what God did when he spoke.

##### It was so

"It happened like that" or "That is what happened." What God commanded happened just as he said it should.

#### Genesis 1:8

##### the second day

This refers to the second day that the universe existed. See how you translated "the first day" in Genesis 1:5.

#### Genesis 1:9

##### Let the waters ... be gathered

"Let the waters ... gather" or "Let the waters ... come together"

##### let the dry land appear

"let dry land become visible" or "let the dry land become clear" or "let the land be uncovered"

#### Genesis 1:10

##### the dry land "earth," and

"the part that was dry 'earth,' and"

#### Genesis 1:11

##### Let the earth sprout vegetation

"Let vegetation sprout up on the earth" or "Let vegetation grow on the earth"

##### vegetation: plants yielding seed and fruit trees bearing fruit

"vegetation, each plant that bears seed and each tree that bears fruit" or "vegetation. Let them be plants that produce seeds and fruit trees that produce fruit."

##### each according to its own kind

The seeds would produce plants and trees that would be like the ones they came from. In this way, the plants and trees would "reproduce themselves" .

#### Genesis 1:13

##### the third day

This refers to the third day that the universe existed.

#### Genesis 1:14

##### lights in the sky

"things that shine in the sky" or "things that give light in the sky." This refers to the sun, moon, and stars.

##### in the sky

"in the expanse of the sky" or "in the large space of the sky"

##### to divide the day from the night

"to separate the day from the night." This means "to help us tell the difference between day and night." The sun means it is daytime, and the moon and stars mean it is nighttime.

##### let them be as signs

"Let them serve as signs" or "let them show"

##### signs

Here this means something that reveals or points to something.

##### seasons

times that are set aside for festivals and other things that people do

#### Genesis 1:15

##### to give light upon the earth

"to shine light on the earth" or "to brighten the earth." The earth does not self-shine but it is lit and so reflects light.

#### Genesis 1:16

##### the two great lights

"the two large lights" or "the two bright lights." The two great lights are the sun and the moon.

##### to rule the day

"to direct the daytime as a ruler directs a group of people" or "to mark the times of the day"

##### day

This refers only to the daylight hours.

##### the lesser light

"the smaller light" or "the dimmer light"

#### Genesis 1:18

##### to divide the light from the darkness

"to separate the light from the darkness" or "to make it light at one time and dark at another."

#### Genesis 1:19

##### the fourth day

This refers to the fourth day that the universe existed.

#### Genesis 1:20

##### Let the waters be filled with great numbers of living creatures

"Let the waters be full of many living things" or "Let many animals that swim live in the oceans"

##### let birds fly

By commanding that birds should fly, God made them fly.

##### the expanse of the sky

"the open space of the sky" or "the sky"

#### Genesis 1:21

##### great sea creatures

"large animals that live in the sea"

##### every winged bird

"every flying thing that has wings." If the word for birds is used, it may be more natural in some languages to simply say "every bird," since all birds have wings.

#### Genesis 1:22

##### blessed them

"blessed the animals that he had made"

##### Be fruitful and multiply

This is God's blessing. He told the sea animals to produce more sea animals like themselves, so that there would be many of them in the seas. The word "multiply" explains how they are to be "fruitful."

##### multiply

increase greatly in number

#### Genesis 1:23

##### the fifth day

This refers to the fifth day that the universe existed.

#### Genesis 1:24

##### livestock, creeping things, and wild animals

This shows that God created all kinds of animals. If your language has another way of grouping all the animals, you can use that, or you can use these groups.

##### livestock

These are animals that people look after.

##### creeping things

"small animals"

##### wild animals

These are animals that live in the wild. People do not take care of them.

#### Genesis 1:26

##### Let us make

The word "us" here refers to God. God was saying what he intended to do. The pronoun "us" is plural. Possible reasons for the plural use are 1) the plural form suggests that God is discussing something with the angels that make up his heavenly court or 2) the plural form foreshadows the later New Testament implications that God exists in the form of the Holy Trinity. Some translate it as "Let me make" or "I will make." If you do this, consider adding a footnote to say that the word is plural.

##### man

human beings

##### in our image, after our likeness

"to truly be like us"

##### have dominion over

"rule over" or "have authority over"

#### Genesis 1:27

##### God created man ... he created him

These two sentences mean the same thing and emphasize that God created people in his own image.

##### God created man

The way that God created man was different from the way he created everything else. Do not specify that he created man by simply speaking, as in the preceding verses.

#### Genesis 1:28

##### Fill the earth

Fill the earth with people.

#### Genesis 1:30

##### every bird of the heavens

"all the birds that fly in the sky"

##### that has the breath of life

"that breathes." This phrase emphasizes that these animals had a different kind of life than the plants. Plants do not breathe, and were to be used as food for the animals. Here "life" means physical life.

#### Genesis 1:31

##### Behold, it

"This is true and important: it"

##### it was very good

Now when God looked at everything he had made, it was "very good.

##### the sixth day

This refers to the sixth day that the universe existed.

Chapter 2

1Then the heavens and the earth were finished, and all the living things that filled them.

2On the seventh day God came to the end of his work which he had done, and so he rested on the seventh day from all his work.3God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, because on it God rested from all his work which he had created and made.

4This is the account of the heavens and the earth, when they were created, on the day that Yahweh God made the earth and the heavens.

5No bush of the field was yet in the earth, and no plant of the field had yet sprouted, for Yahweh God had not caused it to rain upon the earth, and there was no man to cultivate the ground.6But a mist went up from the earth and watered the whole surface of the ground.7Yahweh God formed man from the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life, and man became a living being.8Yahweh God planted a garden eastward, in Eden, and there he put the man whom he had formed.9Out of the ground Yahweh God made every tree to grow that is pleasant to the sight and good for food. This included the tree of life that was in the midst of the garden, and the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.10A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers.11The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold.12The gold of that land is good. There are also bdellium and the onyx stone.13The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush.14The name of the third river is Tigris, and it flows east of Ashur. The fourth river is the Euphrates.15Yahweh God took the man and put him into the garden of Eden to work it and to maintain it.16Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, "From every tree in the garden you may freely eat.17But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you must not eat, for on the day that you eat from it, you will surely die."

18Then Yahweh God said, "It is not good that the man should be alone. I will make him a helper suitable for him."19Out of the ground Yahweh God formed every animal of the field and every bird of the sky. Then he brought them to the man to see what he would call them. Whatever the man called each living creature, that was its name.20The man gave names to all the livestock, to all the birds of the sky, and to every beast of the field. But for the man himself there was found no helper suitable for him.21Yahweh God caused a deep sleep to fall upon the man, so the man slept. Yahweh God took one of his ribs and closed up the flesh where he took the rib.22With the rib that Yahweh God had taken from the man, he made a woman and brought her to the man.23The man said,"This time, this one is bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh.She will be called 'woman,' because she was taken out of man."

24Therefore a man will leave his father and his mother, he will be united to his wife, and they will become one flesh.25They were both naked, the man and his wife, but were not ashamed.

#### Genesis 2:1

##### the heavens

"the sky" or "the skies"

##### and all the living things that filled them

"and all the many living things that are in them" or "and all the crowds of living things in them"

##### were finished

"God had finished creating them"

#### Genesis 2:2

##### On the seventh day God came to the end of his work

God did not work at all on the seventh day.

##### he rested on the seventh day from all his work

"on that day he did not work"

#### Genesis 2:3

##### God blessed the seventh day

Possible meanings are 1) God caused the seventh day to produce good result or 2) God said that the seventh day was good.

##### sanctified it

"made it holy" or "set it apart"

#### Genesis 2:4

##### This is the account of the heavens and the earth

"This is the story about the heavens and the earth." Possible meanings are 1) it is a summary of the events described in Genesis 1:1-2:3 or 2) it introduces the events to follow. If possible, translate this so that people can understood it either way.

##### on the day that Yahweh God made

"when Yahweh God created." The word "day" refers to the whole time span of the creation, not to just one particular day.

##### Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament.

#### Genesis 2:5

##### No bush of the field

no shrubs growing in the wild that animals might eat

##### no plant of the field

no leafy plants like vegetables or greens that both animals and humans can eat

##### to cultivate

to do everything he needed to do so that the plants would grow well

#### Genesis 2:6

##### mist

Possible meanings are 1) something like dew or morning fog or 2) springs from underground streams.

##### the whole surface of the ground

the entire earth

#### Genesis 2:7

##### formed man

"molded man" or "shaped man" or "created man"

##### man ... man

"a human being ... the human" or "a person ... the person" not specifically a male

##### his nostrils

"his nose"

##### breath of life

"breath that makes things live." Here "life" refers to physical life.

#### Genesis 2:8

##### a garden

This could have been an orchard of fruit trees or an area with all kinds of trees.

#### Genesis 2:9

##### the tree of life

"the tree that gives people life"

##### life

Here this means "eternal life" or life that does not end.

##### the tree of the knowledge of good and evil

"the tree that gives people the ability to understand both good and evil" or "the tree that makes people who eat its fruit able to know good things and bad things"

##### good and evil

"everything, including both good and evil"

##### in the midst of the garden

"in the middle of the garden."

#### Genesis 2:10

##### A river went out of Eden to water the garden

"A river flowed through Eden to water the garden"

#### Genesis 2:11

##### Pishon

This is the only time this river is referred to in the Bible.

##### the whole land of Havilah

"the whole land called Havilah." It was somewhere in the Arabian Desert.

##### where there is gold

"There is gold in Havilah"

#### Genesis 2:12

##### There are also bdellium and the onyx stone

"This is also where people can find bdellium and onyx stones"

##### bdellium

This resin comes from a tree and smells nice. A resin is sticky stuff that comes out of some trees and can burn.

##### the onyx stone

"onyx stones." Onyx is a certain kind of beautiful stone.

#### Genesis 2:13

##### Gihon

This is the only mention of this river in the Bible.

##### the whole land of Cush

"the entire land called Cush"

#### Genesis 2:14

##### it flows east of Ashur

"it flows in the land east of the city of Ashur"

#### Genesis 2:15

##### the garden of Eden

"the garden that was in Eden"

##### to work it

"to cultivate it." This means to do everything necessary so that the plants will grow well.

##### to maintain it

to guard against anything bad happening in it

#### Genesis 2:16

##### From every tree in the garden

"The fruit of every tree in the garden"

##### may freely eat

"may eat without restriction"

#### Genesis 2:18

##### I will make him a helper suitable for him

"I will make a helper who is just right for him"

#### Genesis 2:20

##### all the livestock

"all the animals that people look after"

#### Genesis 2:21

##### flesh

This refers to the soft parts of the body like skin and muscle.

#### Genesis 2:22

##### With the rib ... he made a woman

"From the rib ... he formed a woman." The rib was the material God made the woman from.

#### Genesis 2:23

##### This time, this one is bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh

"Finally, this one's bones are like my bones, and her flesh is like my flesh." After looking among all the animals for a partner and not finding one, he finally saw someone who was like him and could be his partner.

#### Genesis 2:24

##### Therefore a man

"That is why a man"

##### a man will leave his father and his mother

"a man will stop living in his father and mother's home." This is about men in general. It does not refer to any particular man at any particular time.

##### they will become one flesh

"their two bodies will become one body"

#### Genesis 2:25

##### naked

"not wearing clothing"

##### but were not ashamed

"they were not ashamed about being naked"

Chapter 3

1Now the serpent was more shrewd than any other beast of the field which Yahweh God had made. He said to the woman, "Has God really said, 'You must not eat from any tree of the garden'?"2The woman said to the serpent, "We may eat the fruit from the trees of the garden,3but concerning the fruit of the tree which is in the middle of the garden, God said, 'You must not eat it, and you must not touch it, or you will die.'"4The serpent said to the woman, "You will surely not die.5For God knows that the day you eat it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil."6When the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was desirable to make one wise, she took some of its fruit and ate it. Then she also gave some to her husband who was with her, and he ate it.7The eyes of both of them were opened, and they knew that they were naked. So they sewed fig leaves together and made coverings for their loins.8They heard the sound of Yahweh God walking in the garden in the cool of the day, so the man and his wife hid themselves from the presence of Yahweh God among the trees of the garden.

9Yahweh God called to the man and said to him, "Where are you?"10The man said, "I heard you in the garden, and I was afraid, because I was naked. So I hid myself."11God said, "Who told you that you were naked? Have you eaten from the tree that I commanded you not to eat from?"12The man said, "The woman whom you gave to be with me, she gave me fruit from the tree, and I ate it."13Yahweh God said to the woman, "What is this you have done?" The woman said, "The serpent deceived me, and I ate."

14Yahweh God said to the serpent, "Because you have done this,cursed are you alone among all the livestockand all the beasts of the field.It is on your stomach that you will go,and it is dust that you will eatall the days of your life.15I will put hostility between you and the woman,and between your seed and her seed.He will bruise your head, and you will bruise his heel."

16To the woman he said,"I will greatly multiply your pain in childbirth;it is in pain that you will give birth to children.Your desire will be for your husband, but he will rule over you."

17To Adam he said, "Because you have listened to the voice of your wife, and have eaten from the tree, concerning which I commanded you, saying, 'You may not eat from it,'Cursed is the ground because of you;through painful work you will eat from itall the days of your life.18It will produce thorns and thistles for you,and you will eat the plants of the field.19By the sweat of your faceyou will eat bread,until you return to the ground,for out of it you were taken.For dust you are, and to dust you will return."

20The man called his wife's name Eve because she was the mother of all the living.21Yahweh God made for Adam and for his wife garments of skins and clothed them.

22Yahweh God said, "Now the man has become like one of us, knowing good and evil. So now he must not be allowed to reach out with his hand, take from the tree of life, eat it, and live forever."23Therefore Yahweh God sent him out from the garden of Eden, to cultivate the ground from which he had been taken.24So God drove the man out of the garden, and he placed cherubim at the east of the garden of Eden, and a flaming sword that turned every way, in order to guard the way to the tree of life.

#### Genesis 3:1

##### more shrewd

"more cunning" or "smarter at getting what he wanted by telling lies"

##### Has God really said, 'You ... garden'?

"I am surprised that God said, 'You ... garden.'"

##### You must not eat

The word "you" is plural and refers to the man and the woman.

#### Genesis 3:2

##### We may eat

"We are allowed to eat" or "We have permission to eat"

#### Genesis 3:3

##### You must not eat it, and you must not touch it

"Do not eat it, and do not touch it" or "You must not eat it or touch it"

##### or you will die

"If you eat it or touch it, you will die"

#### Genesis 3:4

##### You will ... not die

These words refer to the man and the woman and so are dual or plural.

#### Genesis 3:5

##### knowing good and evil

"knowing everything, including both good and evil"

#### Genesis 3:6

##### it was a delight to the eyes

"the tree was delightful to look at" or "it was nice to look at" or "it was very beautiful"

##### that the tree was desirable to make one wise

"she wanted the tree's fruit because it could make a person wise" or "she wanted its fruit because it could make her understand what was right and wrong just as God does"

#### Genesis 3:7

##### sewed

put together, probably using vines as thread

##### fig leaves

If people do not know what fig leaves are like, this can be translated as "large leaves from a fig tree" or simply "large leaves."

##### made coverings for their loins

"clothed themselves with them because they were ashamed"

#### Genesis 3:9

##### Where are you?

"Why are you trying to hide from me?" God knew where the man was. When the man answered, he did not say where he was but why he was hiding.

#### Genesis 3:11

##### Who told you

God knew the answer to this question. He asked it in order to help Adam to confess that he had disobeyed God.

#### Genesis 3:13

##### What is this you have done?

"You have done a terrible thing."

#### Genesis 3:14

##### all the livestock and all the beasts of the field

"all domestic animals and all wild animals"

##### It is on your stomach that you will go

"You will move along the ground on your stomach." The words "it is upon your stomach" comes first to emphasize the contrast between the way other animals would move along using their legs and the way the serpent would slither along on its stomach.

##### it is dust that you will eat

"you will eat dust." The words "it is dust" comes first to emphasize the contrast between the plants above the ground that other animals would eat and the dirty food on the ground that the serpent would eat.

#### Genesis 3:15

##### hostility between you and the woman

This means that the serpent and the woman would become enemies.

##### seed

The word "seed" refers to what a man puts into a woman to cause a baby to grow inside the woman. Like the word "offspring," it can refer to more than one person. Try to find a word that is singular but can refer to more than one person.

##### He will bruise ... his heel

The words "he" and "his" refer to the woman's descendant. If "seed" was translated as plural, this can be translated as "they will bruise ... their heel"; in this case, consider inserting footnotes to say that the "they" and "their" are used to translate a singular pronoun.

##### bruise

"crush" or "strike" or "attack"

#### Genesis 3:16

##### I will greatly multiply your pain

"I will make your pain increase much" or "I will make your pain to be very severe"

##### in childbirth

"in giving birth to children" or "when you give birth to children"

##### Your desire will be for your husband

"You will have a strong desire for your husband." Possible meanings are 1) "You will want very much to be with your husband" or 2) "You will want to control your husband"

##### he will rule over you

"he will be your master" or "he will control you"

#### Genesis 3:17

##### Adam

The name Adam is the same as the Hebrew word for "man." Some translations say "Adam" and some say "the man." You may use either form as it refers to the same person.

##### you have listened to the voice of your wife

"you have obeyed what your wife said"

##### have eaten from the tree

"have eaten the fruit of the tree" or "have eaten some of the fruit of the tree"

##### You may not eat from it

"You must not eat from it" or "Do not eat its fruit"

##### cursed is the ground

"I am cursing the ground"

##### through painful work

"by doing hard work"

#### Genesis 3:18

##### the plants of the field

Possible meanings are 1) "the plants that you take care of in your fields" or 2) "the wild plants that grow in the open fields."

#### Genesis 3:19

##### By the sweat of your face

"By doing hard work that makes your face sweat"

##### you will eat bread

"you will eat food"

##### until you return to the ground

"until you die and your body is put in the ground." Man's hard work does not end until the time of his death and burial.

##### For dust you are, and to dust you will return

"I made you from soil, so your body will become soil again." Translate both occurrences of "dust" with the same word in order to show that man begins and ends in the same condition.

#### Genesis 3:20

##### The man

Some translations say "Adam."

##### called his wife's name Eve

"gave his wife the name Eve" or "named his wife Eve"

##### Eve

Translators may write a footnote saying "The name Eve sounds like the Hebrew word that means 'living.'"

##### all the living

"all people" or "all living people"

#### Genesis 3:22

##### the man

Possible meanings are 1) God was referring to one human, the man, or 2) God was referring to humans in general, so this would mean the man and his wife. Even if God was speaking about one person, what he said applied to both of them.

##### like one of us

"like us." The pronoun "us" is plural.

##### knowing good and evil

"knowing everything, including both good and evil"

##### he must not be allowed

"I will not allow him"

##### tree of life

"the tree that gives people life." See how you translated this in Genesis 2:9.

#### Genesis 3:23

##### the ground from which he had been taken

"dirt because he had been taken from dirt." This does not refer to the particular place on the land that the God took man from.

##### to cultivate

This means to what is needed so that plants grow well.

#### Genesis 3:24

##### So God drove the man out of the garden

"God forced the man to leave the garden."

##### in order to guard the way to the tree of life

"in order to stop people from going to the tree of life"

##### flaming sword

Possible meanings are 1) a sword that had flames coming from it or 2) a fire that was shaped like a sword. Languages that do not have swords could use another weapon such as a spear or arrow.

Chapter 4

1The man knew Eve his wife and she conceived and gave birth to Cain. She said, "I have produced a man with Yahweh's help."2Then she gave birth to his brother Abel. Now Abel became a keeper of flocks, but Cain cultivated the soil.3It came about that in the course of time Cain brought some of the fruit of the ground as an offering to Yahweh.4As for Abel, he brought some of the firstborn of his flock and some of the fat. Yahweh accepted Abel and his offering,5but Cain and his offering he did not accept. So Cain was very angry, and he scowled.6Yahweh said to Cain, "Why are you angry and why are you scowling?7If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? But if you do not do what is right, sin crouches at the door and desires to control you, but you must rule over it."8Cain spoke to Abel his brother. It came about that while they were in the fields, Cain rose up against Abel his brother and killed him. [1](#footnote-target-1)

9Then Yahweh said to Cain, "Where is Abel your brother?" He said, "I do not know. Am I my brother's keeper?"10Yahweh said, "What have you done? Your brother's blood is calling out to me from the ground.11Now cursed are you from the ground, which has opened its mouth to receive your brother's blood from your hand.12When you cultivate the ground, from now on it will not yield to you its strength. A fugitive and a wanderer you will be in the earth."13Cain said to Yahweh, "My punishment is greater than I can bear.14Indeed, you have driven me out this day from this ground, and I will be hidden from your face. I will be a fugitive and a wanderer in the earth, and whoever finds me will kill me."15Yahweh said to him, "If anyone kills Cain, vengeance will be taken on him sevenfold." Then Yahweh put a mark on Cain, so that if anyone found him, that person would not attack him.

16So Cain went out from the presence of Yahweh and lived in the land of Nod, on the east of Eden.17Cain knew his wife and she conceived. She gave birth to Enoch. He built a city and named it after his son Enoch.18To Enoch was born Irad. Irad became the father of Mehujael. Mehujael became the father of Methushael. Methushael became the father of Lamech.19Lamech took for himself two wives. The name of the one was Adah, and the name of the other was Zillah.20Adah gave birth to Jabal. He was the father of those who live in tents and have livestock.21His brother's name was Jubal. He was the father of those who play the harp and pipe.22As for Zillah, she bore Tubal-Cain, the forger of tools of bronze and iron. The sister of Tubal-Cain was Naamah.23Lamech said to his wives,"Adah and Zillah, listen to my voice;you wives of Lamech, listen to my words.For I have killed a man for wounding me, a young man for bruising me.24If Cain is avenged seven times, then Lamech will be avenged seventy-seven times."

25Adam knew his wife again, and she bore another son. She called his name Seth and said, "God has given me another son in the place of Abel, for Cain killed him."26A son was born to Seth and he called his name Enosh. At that time people began to call on the name of Yahweh.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies read in this way. However, some old translations and some modern translations read Cain said to Abel his brother, "Let us go into the fields." It came about that while they were in the fields, Cain rose up against Abel his brother and killed him.

#### Genesis 4:1

##### The man knew Eve

This is a polite way of saying that the man had sexual relations with Eve. You may need to use another euphemism in your language.

##### The man

"the human being" or "Adam"

##### Cain

Translators may want to include a footnote that says "The name Cain sounds like the Hebrew word that means 'produce.' Eve named him Cain because she produced him."

#### Genesis 4:2

##### Then she gave birth

We do not know how much time passed between the births of Cain and Abel. If possible, use an expression that does not tell how much time passed.

#### Genesis 4:3

##### in the course of time

Possible meanings are 1) "after some time had passed" or 2) "at the right time"

##### fruit of the ground

"crops" or "harvest"

#### Genesis 4:4

##### some of the fat

"some of their fat parts"

##### accepted

"looked favorably upon" or "was pleased with"

#### Genesis 4:5

##### did not accept

"did not look favorably upon" or "was not pleased with"

##### he scowled

This means that the expression on his face showed that he was angry or jealous.

#### Genesis 4:6

##### Why are you angry and why are you scowling?

God used these questions to tell Cain that he was wrong to be angry and scowl. They may also have been intended to give Cain an opportunity to confess that he was wrong.

#### Genesis 4:7

##### If you ... will you not be accepted?

"You know that if you do what is right, I will accept you"

##### But if you do not ... you must rule over it

"But if you do not do what is right, you will desire to sin even more, and then you will do sinful things. You must refuse to obey it"

##### sin crouches ... to control you

"you will become so angry that you will not be able to stop sin"

##### sin

Languages that do not have a noun that means "sin" could translate this as "your desire to sin" or "the bad things you want to do."

##### you must rule over it

"you must control it so you do not sin"

#### Genesis 4:8

##### Cain spoke to Abel his brother.

"Cain said to Abel his brother, 'Let us go into the fields.'"

##### brother

Abel was Cain's younger brother. Some languages may need to use the word for "younger brother."

##### rose up against

"attacked"

#### Genesis 4:9

##### Where is Abel your brother

God knew that Cain had killed Abel, but he asked Cain this question so that Cain would have to answer.

##### Am I my brother's keeper?

"I am not my brother's keeper!" or "You know that taking care of my brother is not my job!"

#### Genesis 4:10

##### What have you done?

"What you have done is terrible!"

##### Your brother's blood is calling out to me

"Your brother's blood is like a person calling out to me to punish the person who killed him"

#### Genesis 4:11

##### Now cursed are you from the ground

"I am cursing you so that you will not be able to grow food from the ground"

##### which has opened its mouth to receive your brother's blood

"which is soaked with your brother's blood"

##### from your hand

"that spilled when you killed him" or "from you"

#### Genesis 4:12

##### it will not yield to you its strength

"the ground will not produce much food for you"

##### A fugitive and a wanderer

"A homeless wanderer"

#### Genesis 4:14

##### I will be hidden from your face

"I will not be able to speak to you"

#### Genesis 4:15

##### vengeance will be taken on him sevenfold

"I will take vengeance on him seven times" or "I will punish that person seven times as severely as I am punishing you"

##### would not attack him

"would not kill Cain"

#### Genesis 4:16

##### went out from the presence of Yahweh

"went away from where Yahweh spoke to him"

##### Nod

Translators may add a footnote saying "The word Nod means 'wandering.'"

#### Genesis 4:17

##### Cain knew his wife

This is a polite way of saying that Cain had sexual relations with his wife. You may need to use another euphemism in your language.

##### He built a city

"Cain built a city"

#### Genesis 4:18

##### To Enoch was born Irad

"Enoch grew up and married and became the father of a son whom he named Irad"

#### Genesis 4:19

##### Adah ... Zillah

women's names

#### Genesis 4:20

##### He was the father of those who live in tents and have livestock

Possible meanings are 1) "He was the first person to live in a tent and have livestock" or 2) "his descendants live in tents and have livestock."

#### Genesis 4:21

##### He was the father of those who play the harp and pipe

Possible meanings are 1) "He was the first person to play the harp and pipe" or 2) "He and his descendants played the harp and pipe."

#### Genesis 4:22

##### Tubal-Cain

the name of a man

##### the forger of tools of bronze and iron

"who made tools out of bronze and iron"

##### iron

a very strong metal used to make tools and weapons.

#### Genesis 4:23

##### listen to my voice ... listen to my words

"listen carefully to me"

##### a man for wounding me, a young man for bruising me

"a young man because he hurt me"

#### Genesis 4:24

##### If Cain is avenged seven times, then Lamech

"Since God will punish anyone who kills Cain seven times, Lamech"

##### then Lamech will be avenged seventy-seven times

"whoever kills me, God will punish seventy-seven times"

#### Genesis 4:25

##### said, "God has given me another son

"explained, 'God has given me another child"

##### Seth

Translators may add a footnote that says "This name sounds like the Hebrew word that means 'has given.'"

#### Genesis 4:26

##### A son was born to Seth

"Seth's wife bore him a son"

##### to call on the name of Yahweh

"to worship God by using the name Yahweh"

Chapter 5

1This is the record of the descendants of Adam. On the day that God created mankind, he made them in his own likeness.2Male and female he created them. He blessed them and named them mankind when they were created.3When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth.4After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters.5Adam lived 930 years, and then he died.

6When Seth had lived 105 years, he became the father of Enosh.7After he became the father of Enosh, he lived 807 years and became the father of more sons and daughters.8Seth lived 912 years, and then he died.

9When Enosh had lived ninety years, he became the father of Kenan.10After he became the father of Kenan, Enosh lived 815 years. He became the father of more sons and daughters.11Enosh lived 905 years, and then he died.

12When Kenan had lived seventy years, he became the father of Mahalalel.13After he became the father of Mahalalel, Kenan lived 840 years. He became the father of more sons and daughters.14Kenan lived 910 years, and then he died.

15When Mahalalel had lived sixty-five years, he became the father of Jared.16After he became the father of Jared, Mahalalel lived 830 years. He became the father of more sons and daughters.17Mahalalel lived 895 years, and then he died.

18When Jared had lived 162 years, he became the father of Enoch.19After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters.20Jared lived 962 years, and then he died.

21When Enoch had lived sixty-five years, he became the father of Methuselah.22Enoch walked with God three hundred years after he became the father of Methuselah. He became the father of more sons and daughters.23Enoch lived 365 years.24Enoch walked with God, and then he was gone, for God took him.

25When Methuselah had lived 187 years, he became the father of Lamech.26After he became the father of Lamech, Methuselah lived 782 years. He became the father of more sons and daughters.27Methuselah lived 969 years. Then he died.

28When Lamech had lived 182 years, he became the father of a son.29He called his name Noah, saying, "This one will give us rest from our work and from the painful labor of our hands, which we must do because of the ground that Yahweh has cursed."30Lamech lived 595 years after he became the father of Noah. He became the father of more sons and daughters.31Lamech lived 777 years. Then he died.

32After Noah had lived five hundred years, he became the father of Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

#### Genesis 5:1

##### in his own likeness

"to truly be like us"

#### Genesis 5:2

##### when they were created

"when he created them"

#### Genesis 5:3

##### he became the father of a son

"he had a son"

#### Genesis 5:4

##### He became the father of more sons and daughters

"He had more sons and daughters"

#### Genesis 5:5

##### Adam lived 930 years

"Adam lived a total of 930 years"

##### then he died

This phrase will be repeated throughout the chapter. Use the ordinary word for "died."

#### Genesis 5:6

##### he became the father of Enosh

"he had his son Enosh"

##### Enosh

This is the name of a person.

#### Genesis 5:8

##### Seth lived 912 years

"Seth lived nine hundred and twelve years." Seth lived a total of 912 years.

#### Genesis 5:21

##### he became the father of Methuselah

"he had his son Methuselah"

##### Methuselah

This is the name of a man.

#### Genesis 5:22

##### Enoch walked with God

"Enoch had a close relationship with God" or "Enoch lived in union with God"

##### He became the father of more sons and daughters

"He had more sons and daughters"

#### Genesis 5:23

##### Enoch lived 365 years

"Enoch lived three hundred and sixty-five years."

#### Genesis 5:24

##### then he was gone

The word "he" refers to Enoch. He was no longer on earth.

##### for God took him

This means that God took Enoch to be with himself.

#### Genesis 5:25

##### Lamech

This Lamech is different from the Lamech in Genesis 4:18.

#### Genesis 5:28

##### became the father of a son

"had a son"

#### Genesis 5:29

##### Noah

Translators may want to add a footnote that says: "This name sounds like the Hebrew word that means 'rest.'"

##### from our work and from the painful labor of our hands

"from working so hard with our hands"

#### Genesis 5:31

##### Lamech lived 777 years

"Lamech lived seven hundred seventy-seven years."

#### Genesis 5:32

##### he became the father of

"he had his sons." This does not tell us whether the sons were born on the same day or in different years.

##### Shem, Ham, and Japheth

These sons may not be listed in the order of their birth. There is disagreement about which one was the oldest. Avoid translating this in a way that implies that the list is in the order of their ages.

Chapter 6

1It came about when mankind began to multiply on the earth and daughters were born to them,2that the sons of God saw that the daughters of mankind were attractive. They took for themselves wives, any of them that they chose.3Yahweh said, "My spirit will not remain in mankind forever, for they are flesh. They will live 120 years."4The Nephilim were on the earth in those days, and also afterward. This happened when the sons of God married daughters of men, and they had children with them. These were the mighty men of old, men of renown.

5Yahweh saw that the wickedness of mankind was great in the earth, and that every inclination of the thoughts of their hearts was only evil continually.6Yahweh regretted that he had made mankind on the earth, and it grieved him to his heart.7So Yahweh said, "I will wipe away mankind whom I have created from the surface of the earth—mankind and animals, and creeping things and birds of the heavens, for I regret that I have made them."8But Noah found favor in the eyes of Yahweh.

9This is the account of Noah. Noah was a righteous man, and blameless among the people of his time. Noah walked with God.10Noah became the father of three sons: Shem, Ham, and Japheth.11The earth was corrupt before God, and it was filled with violence.12God saw the earth; behold, it was corrupt, for all flesh had corrupted their way upon the earth.

13God said to Noah, "I can see that it is time to put an end to all flesh, for the earth is filled with violence through them. Indeed, I will destroy them with the earth.14Make for yourself an ark of cypress wood. Make rooms in the ark, and cover it with pitch within and without.15This is how you will make it: The length of the ark is to be three hundred cubits; the breadth of it is to be fifty cubits, and the height of it is to be thirty cubits.16Make a roof for the ark, and finish it at a cubit from the top of the side. Place a door in the side of the ark and make a lower, a second, and a third deck.17Listen, I am about to bring the flood of waters upon the earth, to destroy all flesh that has in it the breath of life from under heaven. Everything that is on the earth will die.18But I will establish my covenant with you. You will come into the ark, you, and your sons, and your wife, and your sons' wives with you.19Of every living creature of all flesh, two of every kind you must bring into the ark, to keep them alive with you, both male and female.20Of the birds after their kind, and of animals after their kind, of every creeping thing of the ground after its kind, two of every sort will come to you to keep them alive.21Gather for yourself every kind of food that is eaten and store it, so that it will be food for you and for them."22So Noah did this. According to all that God commanded him, so he did.

#### Genesis 6:1

##### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### daughters were born to them

"the women bore daughters"

#### Genesis 6:2

##### sons of God

Translators could add a footnote saying: "It is not clear whether this refers to heavenly beings or human beings. In either case, they were beings that God created." Some believe these words refer to angels who rebelled against God, that is, evil spirits or demons. Others think this may refer to powerful political rulers, and others think this may refer to the descendants of Seth.

#### Genesis 6:3

##### My spirit

Here Yahweh is talking about himself and his spirit, which is the Spirit of God.

##### flesh

This means that they have physical bodies that will one day die.

#### Genesis 6:4

##### The Nephilim

These seem to have been giants, very tall, large people.

##### This happened when

"The Nephilim were born because"

##### sons of God

See how you translated this in Genesis 6:2.

##### These were the mighty men of old

"These Nephilim were the mighty men who lived long ago" or "These children grew to become the powerful fighters who lived long ago"

##### men of renown

"famous men"

#### Genesis 6:5

##### every inclination of the thoughts of their hearts

"everything their hearts wanted to think about"

##### the thoughts of their hearts

"their inner, secret thoughts"

#### Genesis 6:6

##### it grieved him to his heart

"he was very, very sad about it"

#### Genesis 6:7

##### I will wipe away mankind whom I have created

"I created mankind. I will destroy mankind ... so that there will not be any people on the earth"

##### wipe away

"completely destroy." Here "wipe away" is used in a negative sense, for God is talking about destroying the people because of their sin.

#### Genesis 6:8

##### Noah found favor in the eyes of Yahweh

"Yahweh looked favorably on Noah" or "Yahweh was pleased with Noah"

#### Genesis 6:9

##### walked with God

See how you translated this in Genesis 5:21.

#### Genesis 6:10

##### Noah became the father of three sons

"Noah had three sons" or "Noah's wife had three sons"

##### Shem, Ham, and Japheth

Translators may add the following footnote: "The sons are not listed in the order in which they were born."

#### Genesis 6:11

##### The earth

Possible meanings are 1) the people who lived on the earth or 2) "The earth itself."

##### was corrupt

"was rotten" or "was completely evil"

##### before God

Possible meanings are 1) "in God's sight" or 2) "in the presence of Yahweh"

##### and it was filled with violence

"and there were very many violent people on the earth" or "because it was full of people who did evil things to each other"

#### Genesis 6:12

##### behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### all flesh

Possible meanings for what "all flesh" represents are 1) all human beings or 2) all physical beings, including humans and animal.

##### had corrupted their way

"had stopped living the way God wanted" or "had behaved in an evil way"

#### Genesis 6:13

##### all flesh

See how you translated these words in Genesis 6:12.

##### the earth is filled with violence through them

"people everywhere on earth are violent"

##### I will destroy them with the earth

"I will destroy both them and the earth" or "I will destroy them when I destroy the earth"

#### Genesis 6:14

##### an ark

This refers to a very large box that would be able to float on water even in a very bad storm. "a large boat" or "a ship" or "a barge"

##### cypress wood

People do not know exactly what kind of tree this was. "wood used for building boats" or "good wood"

##### cover it with pitch

"spread pitch on it" or "paint tar on it" or "cover it with pitch to make it waterproof"

##### pitch

This is a thick, sticky or oily liquid that people put on the outside of a boat to stop water from going through gaps in the wood into the boat.

#### Genesis 6:15

##### cubits

A cubit was a unit of measure, a little less than half a meter long.

##### three hundred cubits

"138 meters." or you may also write a footnote that says: "Three hundred cubits is about 138 meters."

##### fifty cubits

"twenty-three meters"

##### thirty cubits

"fourteen meters"

#### Genesis 6:16

##### a roof for the ark

This was probably a peaked or slanted roof. Its purpose was to protect everything in the ark from the rain.

##### a lower, a second, and a third deck

"a lower deck, a middle deck, and an upper deck" or "three decks inside"

##### deck

"floor" or "level"

#### Genesis 6:17

##### Listen

God said this in order to emphasize that he would do what he was about to say. "Pay attention" or "Listen to what I am saying"

##### I am about to bring the flood of waters

"I am about to send a flood of waters" or "I am about to cause a flood"

##### all flesh

Here "flesh" represents all physical beings, including humans and animals.

##### that has in it the breath of life

"that lives"

#### Genesis 6:18

##### establish my covenant with you

"make a covenant between you and me"

##### with you

with Noah

##### You will come into the ark

"You will enter the ark." Some translations say "You will go into the ark."

#### Genesis 6:19

##### Of every living creature of all flesh, two of every kind you must bring into the ark

"You must bring into the ark two of every kind of living creature"

##### creature

an animal God created

#### Genesis 6:20

##### after their kind

"of each different kind"

##### creeping thing of the ground

This refers to small animals that move on the ground .

##### two of every sort

This refers to two of every kind of bird and animal.

##### to you

This refers to Noah and so is singular.

##### to keep them alive

"so you can keep them alive"

#### Genesis 6:21

##### yourself ... you

These refer to Noah and are singular.

#### Genesis 6:22

##### So Noah did this. According to all that God commanded him, so he did

"So Noah did everything that God commanded him to do"

Chapter 7

1Yahweh said to Noah, "Come, you and all your household, into the ark, for I have seen that you are righteous before me in this generation.2Of every clean animal you will bring with you seven males and seven females. From the animals that are not clean, of them bring two, the male and his mate.3Also of the birds of the sky, bring seven males and seven females, to keep their offspring alive upon the surface of all the earth.4For in seven days I will cause it to rain upon the earth for forty days and forty nights. I will destroy from off the surface of the ground every living thing that I have made."5Noah did all that Yahweh commanded him.

6Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth.7Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.8Clean animals and unclean animals, birds, and everything that creeps upon the ground,9two by two, male and female, came to Noah and went into the ark, just as God had commanded Noah.10It came about that after the seven days, the waters of the flood came upon the earth.11In the six hundredth year of Noah's life, in the second month, on the seventeenth day of the month, on the same day, all the fountains of the great deep burst open, and the windows of heaven were opened.12The rain began and fell on the earth for forty days and forty nights.

13On that very same day Noah and his sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth, and Noah's wife, and the three wives of his sons with them, entered into the ark.14They entered along with each wild animal according to its kind, and each sort of livestock according to its kind, and each creeping thing that creeps upon the earth according to its kind, and every sort of bird according to its kind, each kind of creature with wings.15Two of all flesh in which was the breath of life came to Noah and entered into the ark.16The animals that went in were male and female of all flesh; they entered in just as God had commanded him. Then Yahweh shut the door after them.17Then the flood came upon the earth for forty days, and the water increased and lifted the ark and raised it above the earth.18The waters completely covered over the earth, and the ark floated upon the surface of the water.19The waters rose greatly on the earth so that all the high mountains that were under the entire sky were covered.20The waters rose fifteen cubits above the tops of the mountains.21All living beings that moved upon the earth died—birds, livestock, wild animals, all the living creatures that lived in great numbers upon the earth, and all mankind.22All living creatures who lived on the land, who breathed the breath of life through their noses, died.23So every living thing that was on the surface of the earth was wiped out, mankind and animals and creeping things and birds of the sky. They were all destroyed from the earth. Only Noah and those with him in the ark were left.24The waters stayed upon the earth for 150 days.

#### Genesis 7:1

##### Come ... into the ark

"Enter ... into the ark." Many translations read "Go ... into the ark."

##### your household

"your family"

##### righteous before me

This means that God saw Noah as righteous.

##### in this generation

"among all the people who are now living"

#### Genesis 7:2

##### clean animal

This was an animal that God allowed his people to eat and to sacrifice.

##### animals that are not clean

These were animals that God did not allow people to eat or to sacrifice.

#### Genesis 7:3

##### to keep their offspring alive

"so that they will have offspring that will live" or "so that, after the flood, animals will continue to live"

#### Genesis 7:4

##### forty days and forty nights

"forty days and nights"

##### living

This refers to physical life.

#### Genesis 7:6

##### came upon the earth

"happened" or "came on the earth"

#### Genesis 7:7

##### because of the waters of the flood

"because of the flood that would come" or "to escape the flood water"

#### Genesis 7:9

##### two by two

The animals entered the boat in pairs of one male and one female.

#### Genesis 7:10

##### It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story: the start of the flood. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### the waters of the flood came upon the earth

"it started to rain and the waters of the flood came upon the earth"

#### Genesis 7:11

##### In the six hundredth year of Noah's life

"When Noah was 600 years old"

##### on the same day

This refers to the specific day when the rain began. This phrase emphasizes how all of these major events happened quickly when the time arrived.

##### the fountains of the great deep burst open

"water from under the earth rushed up to the earth's surface"

##### the great deep

This refers to the sea that was thought to be under the earth.

##### the windows of heaven were opened

"the sky opened" or "the doors in the sky opened"

#### Genesis 7:14

##### wild animal ... livestock ... creeping thing ... bird

These four groups are listed to show that every kind of animal was included. If your language has another way of grouping all the animals, you can use that, or you can use these groups. See how you translated this in Genesis 1:24.

##### creeping thing

This refers to animals that crawl on the ground, like rodents, insects, lizards, and snakes.

##### according to its kind

"so that each kind of animal will produce more of its own kind." See how you translated this in Genesis 1:24.

#### Genesis 7:15

##### Two of all flesh

Here, "flesh" represents animals.

##### in which was the breath of life

"that lived"

##### of all flesh

"of every kind of animal"

#### Genesis 7:16

##### after them

"after they entered the ark"

#### Genesis 7:17

##### the water increased

"the water became very deep." This happened during the forty days while the water kept coming.

##### lifted the ark

"it caused the ark to float"

##### raised it above the earth

"causes the ark to rise up high over the ground" or "he ark floated on top of the deep water"

#### Genesis 7:19

##### The waters rose greatly on the earth

"The water totally overwhelmed the earth"

#### Genesis 7:20

##### fifteen cubits

"six meters."

#### Genesis 7:21

##### all the living creatures that lived in great numbers upon the earth

This refers to all the animals that move around on the ground in large groups.

#### Genesis 7:22

##### who breathed the breath of life through their noses

"everyone that breathed"

##### the breath of life

The words "breath" and "life" represent the power that causes people and animals to be alive.

#### Genesis 7:23

##### So every living thing ... was wiped out

"So every living thing ... perished" or "So the flood completely destroyed every living thing"

##### They were all destroyed

"God destroyed them all"

##### from the earth

"so they were no longer on the earth"

##### those with him

"the people and animals that were with him"

##### were left

"remained" or "lived" or "remained alive"

Chapter 8

1God remembered Noah, all the wild animals, and all the livestock that were with him in the ark. God made a wind blow over the earth, and the waters started going down.2The fountains of the deep and the windows of heaven were closed, and it stopped raining.3The flood waters went down slowly from the earth, and after the end of 150 days the waters had gone down.4The ark came to rest in the seventh month, on the seventeenth day of the month, upon the mountains of Ararat.5The waters continued to go down until the tenth month. On the first day of the month, the tops of the mountains appeared.

6It came about after forty days that Noah opened the window of the ark which he had made.7He sent out a raven and it flew back and forth until the waters were dried up from the earth.8Then he sent out a dove to see if the waters had gone down from the surface of the earth,9but the dove found no place to rest her foot, and she returned to him in the ark, for the waters were still covering the whole earth. He reached out with his hand, and took and brought her into the ark with him.10He waited another seven days and again he sent out the dove from the ark.11The dove returned to him in the evening. Look! In her mouth was a freshly plucked olive leaf. So Noah knew that the waters had gone down from the earth.12He waited another seven days, and sent out the dove again. She did not return again to him.

13It came about in the six hundred and first year, in the first month, on the first day of the month, that the waters were dried up from off the earth. Noah removed the covering of the ark, looked out, and saw that, behold, the surface of the ground was dry.14In the second month, on the twenty-seventh day of the month, the earth was dry.15God said to Noah,16"Go out of the ark, you, your wife, your sons, and your sons' wives with you.17Take out with you every living creature of all flesh that is with you—the birds, the animals, and every creeping thing that creeps upon the earth—so that they may increase greatly on the earth, that they may be fruitful and multiply upon the earth."18So Noah went out with his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives with him.19Every living creature, every creeping thing, and every bird, everything that moves on the earth, according to their families, left the ark.

20Noah built an altar to Yahweh. He took some of the clean animals and some of the clean birds, and offered burnt offerings on the altar.21Yahweh smelled the pleasing aroma and said in his heart, "I will not again curse the ground because of mankind, even though the intention of mankind's heart is evil from childhood. Nor will I again destroy everything living, as I have done.22While the earth remains, seed time and harvest, cold and heat,summer and winter, and day and nightwill not cease."

#### Genesis 8:1

##### God remembered Noah

"God had not forgotten Noah" or "God thought of Noah" or "God decided to help Noah"

##### ark

"a large boat" or "a ship" or "a barge"

#### Genesis 8:2

##### The fountains of the deep and the windows of heaven were closed

"God closed the fountains of the deep and the windows of heaven"

##### the windows of heaven were closed

"the sky closed" or "the doors in the sky closed"

#### Genesis 8:4

##### came to rest

"landed" or "stopped on solid ground"

##### in the seventh month, on the seventeenth day of the month

Because Moses wrote this book, it is possible he is referring to the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar, but this is uncertain.

#### Genesis 8:5

##### On the first day of the month

"On the first day of the tenth month"

#### Genesis 8:6

##### It came about ... the window of the ark which he had made

The phrase "which he had made" tells about the window. Some languages may need to make this phrase a separate sentence: "Noah had made a window in the boat. It came about after forty days that he opened the window"

#### Genesis 8:7

##### raven

a black bird that eats mainly the flesh of dead animals

##### it flew back and forth

This means that the raven kept leaving the boat and returning.

##### until the waters were dried up

"until the wind dried up the waters" or "until the waters dried up"

#### Genesis 8:8

##### he sent out a dove

If you use masculine pronouns for the word "dove," you may need to insert Noah's name here to avoid confusion: "Noah sent out a dove."

#### Genesis 8:9

##### to rest her foot

"to land" or "to perch." It means to land on something in order to rest from flying.

##### her foot ... she returned ... and brought her

The word "dove" is feminine in the author's language. You could translate these phrases with the pronouns "its ... it ... it" or "his ... he ... him," depending on how your language refers to a dove.

#### Genesis 8:11

##### Look

"Pay attention" or "This is important"

##### a freshly plucked olive leaf

"a leaf that she had just broken off from an olive tree"

#### Genesis 8:13

##### in the six hundred and first year

"when Noah was 601 years old"

##### the waters were dried up from off the earth

"the waters covering the earth dried up" or "the wind dried up the waters covering the earth"

##### the covering of the ark

This refers to a cover that kept the rain water from going into the ark.

##### behold

The word "behold" tells us to pay attention to the important information that comes next.

#### Genesis 8:14

##### the earth was dry

"the ground was completely dry"

#### Genesis 8:17

##### Take out

"Take." Some translations read "Bring out."

##### every living creature of all flesh

"every kind of living creature."

##### be fruitful and multiply

See how this is translated in Genesis. God wanted the humans and animals to reproduce, so there would be many of them.

#### Genesis 8:18

##### Noah went out

Some translations read "Noah came out."

#### Genesis 8:19

##### according to their families

"in groups of their own kinds"

#### Genesis 8:20

##### built an altar to Yahweh

"built an altar dedicated to Yahweh" or "built an altar for worshiping Yahweh." He may have built it with stones.

##### offered burnt offerings

"burned the animals as offerings to Yahweh"

#### Genesis 8:21

##### pleasing aroma

This refers to the good smell of the roasted meat.

##### said in his heart

Here the word "heart" refers to God's thoughts and emotions.

##### curse the ground

"do very serious harm to the earth"

##### because of mankind

"because mankind is sinful."

##### the intention of mankind's heart is evil from childhood

"from their earliest years they tend to do evil things" or "when they are young, they want to do evil things

##### from childhood

"from their youth"

#### Genesis 8:22

##### While the earth remains

"While the earth lasts" or "As long as the earth exists"

##### seed time

"the season for planting"

##### cold and heat, summer and winter

These expressions both refer to two major weather conditions in the year. Translators may use local expressions.

##### summer

the hot, dry time of the year

##### winter

the cool, wet or snowy time of the year

##### will not cease

"will continue"

Chapter 9

1Then God blessed Noah and his sons, and said to them, "Be fruitful, multiply, and fill the earth.2The fear of you and the dread of you will be upon every living thing on the earth, upon every bird of the sky, upon everything that moves on the ground, and upon all the fish of the sea. They are given into your hand.3Every moving thing that lives will be food for you. Just as I gave you the green plants, I now give you everything.4But you must not eat meat with its life—that is its blood—in it.5But for your blood, the life that is in your blood, I will require payment. From the hand of every animal I will require it. From the hand of any man, that is, from the hand of one who has murdered his brother, I will require an accounting for the life of that man.6Whoever sheds man's blood, by man will his blood be shed,for it was in the image of God that he made man.

7As for you, be fruitful and multiply, spread throughout the earth and multiply on it."

8Then God spoke to Noah and to his sons with him, saying,9"As for me, listen! I am going to confirm my covenant with you and with your descendants after you,10and with every living creature that is with you, with the birds, the livestock, and every creature of the earth with you, from all that came out of the ark, to every living creature on the earth.11I hereby confirm my covenant with you, that never again will all flesh be destroyed by the waters of a flood. Never again will there be a flood to destroy the earth."

12God said, "This is the sign of the covenant which I am making between me and you and every living creature that is with you, for all future generations:13I have set my rainbow in the cloud, and it will be the sign of the covenant between me and the earth.14It will come about when I bring a cloud over the earth and the rainbow is seen in the cloud,15then I will call to mind my covenant, which is between me and you and every living creature of all flesh. The waters will never again become a flood to destroy all flesh.16The rainbow will be in the clouds and I will see it, in order to remember the everlasting covenant between God and every living creature of all flesh that is on the earth."

17Then God said to Noah, "This is the sign of the covenant that I have confirmed between me and all flesh that is on the earth."

18The sons of Noah that came out of the ark were Shem, Ham, and Japheth. Ham was the father of Canaan.19These three were the sons of Noah, and from these the whole earth was populated.

20Noah began to be a man of the soil, and he planted a vineyard.21He drank some of the wine and became drunk. He was lying uncovered in his tent.22Then Ham, the father of Canaan, saw the nakedness of his father and told his two brothers outside.23So Shem and Japheth took a robe and laid it upon both their shoulders, and walked backwards and covered the nakedness of their father. Their faces were turned the other way, so they did not see their father's nakedness.24When Noah awoke from his wine, he learned what his youngest son had done to him.25So he said,"Cursed be Canaan.May he be a servant to his brothers' servants."

26He also said,"May Yahweh, the God of Shem, be blessed,and may Canaan be his servant.27May God extend the territory of Japheth,and let him make his home in the tents of Shem.May Canaan be his servant."

28After the flood, Noah lived three hundred fifty years.29All the days of Noah were nine hundred fifty years, and then he died.

#### Genesis 9:1

##### Be fruitful, multiply, and fill the earth

This is God's blessing. He told Noah and his family to produce more humans like themselves, so that there would be many of them. The word "multiply" explains how they are to be "fruitful." See how you translated these commands in Genesis 1:28.

#### Genesis 9:2

##### The fear of you and the dread of you will be upon every living thing ... and upon all the fish of the sea

"Every living thing ... and all the fish of the sea will be dreadfully afraid of you"

##### bird

This is a general term for things that fly.

##### upon everything that moves on the ground

This includes all types of small animals.

##### They are given into your hand

"They are given into your control" or "I have put them under your control"

#### Genesis 9:4

##### life ... blood

Translators may add a footnote such as this: "The blood is a symbol for life." They may also add a footnote that says something like this: "God was commanding people not to eat meat while the blood was still in it. They had to drain out the blood first."

#### Genesis 9:5

##### for your blood, the life that is in your blood

"if anyone causes your blood to pour out" or "if anyone spills your blood" or "if anyone kills you"

##### life

This refers to physical life.

##### I will require payment

"I will require anyone who kills you to pay"

##### From the hand of every animal I will require it

"I will require any animal that takes your life to pay"

##### From the hand of any man, that is, from the hand of one who has murdered his brother, I will require an accounting for the life of that man

"I will require anyone who takes the life of another person to pay"

##### From the hand of

"From that very man"

##### brother

Here "brother" is used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.

#### Genesis 9:6

##### Whoever sheds man's blood, by man will his blood be shed

The shedding of blood is a metaphor for killing someone. This means that if a person murders someone, someone else must kill the murderer. However, "blood" is very significant in this passage and should be used in the translation if possible. Translate "sheds blood" with words that indicate a major loss of blood that causes death.

##### for it was in the image of God that he made man

"because God made people to be like him" or "because I made people in my own image"

#### Genesis 9:8

##### Then God spoke to Noah and to his sons with him

"God continued speaking to Noah and his sons" or "Then God went on to say"

#### Genesis 9:9

##### As for me

This phrase is used in English to mark the change from God talking about what Noah and his sons must do to talking about what God would do.

##### confirm my covenant with you

"make a covenant between you and me."

#### Genesis 9:11

##### all flesh

Possible meanings for what "all flesh" represents are 1) all human beings or 2) all physical beings, including humans and animal.

##### Never again will there be a flood to destroy the earth

"There will never again be a flood that destroys the earth." There would be floods, but they would not destroy the whole earth.

#### Genesis 9:12

##### sign

This means a reminder of something that was promised.

##### covenant ... for all future generations

The covenant applies to Noah and his family and also to all generations that follow.

#### Genesis 9:14

##### It will come about when

"Whenever." It is something that would happen many times.

##### the rainbow is seen

"people and I see the rainbow"

##### rainbow

the colorful strip of light that appears in the rain when the sun shines from behind the viewer

#### Genesis 9:15

##### I will call to mind my covenant

"I will think about my covenant"

##### me and you

The word "you" is plural. God was speaking to Noah and Noah's sons.

##### every living creature of all flesh

"every kind of living being"

#### Genesis 9:16

##### between God and every living creature

"between me and every living creature"

##### every living creature of all flesh

"every kind of living being."

#### Genesis 9:17

##### Then God said to Noah

"God finished by saying to Noah" or "So God said to Noah"

#### Genesis 9:18

##### father

Ham was Canaan's true father.

#### Genesis 9:20

##### man of the soil

person who raises plants for food

#### Genesis 9:21

##### became drunk

"drank too much wine"

##### uncovered

The text does not specify how much of Noah's body was uncovered as he lay drunk. His sons' reactions show us that it was shameful.

#### Genesis 9:22

##### his father

This refers to Noah.

#### Genesis 9:24

##### awoke from his wine

He awoke after drinking wine and becoming drunk. He "became sober."

##### his youngest son

"his youngest son, Ham"

#### Genesis 9:25

##### Cursed be Canaan

"I curse Canaan" or "May bad things happen to Canaan"

##### Canaan

"Ham's son Canaan"

##### a servant to his brothers' servants

"the lowest servant of his brothers" or "the least important servant of his brothers"

##### his brothers

This could refer either to Canaan's brothers or to his relatives in general.

#### Genesis 9:26

##### May Yahweh, the God of Shem, be blessed

"Praised be Yahweh, the God of Shem," or "Yahweh, the God of Shem, is worthy of praise" or "I praise Yahweh, the God of Shem"

#### Genesis 9:27

##### May Canaan be his servant

"And let Canaan be Shem's servant." This includes Canaan's and Shem's descendants.

##### May God extend the territory of Japheth

Possible meanings are 1) "May God make Japheth's territory larger" or 2) "May God cause Japheth to have many descendants."

##### let him make his home in the tents of Shem

"let him leave peacefully with Shem." This includes Japheth's and Shem's descendants.

##### May Canaan be his servant

"Let Canaan be Japheth's servant." This includes Canaan's and Japheth's descendants.

Chapter 10

1These were the descendants of the sons of Noah, that is, Shem, Ham, and Japheth. Sons were born to them after the flood.

2The sons of Japheth were Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal, Meshech, and Tiras.

3The sons of Gomer were Ashkenaz, Riphath, and Togarmah.

4The sons of Javan were Elishah, Tarshish, the Kittites,[1](#footnote-target-1) and Dodanim.5From these the coastland peoples separated and went into their lands, every one with its own language, according to their clans, by their nations.

6The sons of Ham were Cush, Mizraim, Put, and Canaan.

7The sons of Cush were Seba, Havilah, Sabtah, Raamah, and Sabteka. The sons of Raamah were Sheba and Dedan.

8Cush became the father of Nimrod, who was a mighty one on the earth.9He was a mighty hunter before Yahweh. That is why it is said, "Like Nimrod, a mighty hunter before Yahweh."10The first centers of his kingdom were Babylon, Uruk, Akkad, and Kalneh, in the land of Shinar.11Out of that land he went to Assyria and built Nineveh, Rehoboth Ir, Calah,12and Resen, which was between Nineveh and Calah. It was a large city.

13Mizraim became the father of the Ludites, the Anamites, the Lehabites, the Naphtuhites,14the Pathrusites, the Kasluhites (from whom the Philistines came), and the Caphtorites.

15Canaan became the father of Sidon, his firstborn, and of Heth,16also of the Jebusites, the Amorites, the Girgashites,17the Hivites, the Arkites, the Sinites,18the Arvadites, the Zemarites, and the Hamathites. Afterward the clans of the Canaanites spread out.19The border of the Canaanites was from Sidon, in the direction of Gerar, as far as Gaza, and as one goes toward Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, and Zeboyim, as far as Lasha.20These were the sons of Ham, by their clans, by their languages, in their lands, and in their nations.

21Sons also were born to Shem, the older brother of Japheth. Shem was also the ancestor of all the people of Eber.

22The sons of Shem were Elam, Ashur, Arphaxad, Lud, and Aram.

23The sons of Aram were Uz, Hul, Gether, and Meshech.

24Arphaxad became the father of Shelah, and Shelah became the father of Eber.

25Eber had two sons. The name of the one was Peleg, for in his days the earth was divided. His brother's name was Joktan.

26Joktan became the father of Almodad, Sheleph, Hazarmaveth, Jerah,27Hadoram, Uzal, Diklah,28Obal, Abimael, Sheba,29Ophir, Havilah, and Jobab. All these were the sons of Joktan.

30Their territory was from Mesha, all the way to Sephar, the mountain of the east.31These were the sons of Shem, according to their clans and their languages, in their lands, according to their nations.

32These were the clans of the sons of Noah, according to their genealogies, by their nations. From these the nations separated and went over the earth after the flood.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some modern English translations read, Kittim .

#### Genesis 10:1

##### These were the descendants of the sons of Noah

“This is the account of Noah’s sons.” This sentence introduces the account of Noah’s descendants in Genesis 10:1-11:9.

#### Genesis 10:5

##### From these the coastland peoples separated and went into their lands

"Javan's sons and descendants separated and moved to the coastlands and islands"

##### their lands

"their homelands." These are the places that the people moved to and lived in.

##### every one with its own language

"Each people group spoke its own language" or "The people groups divided themselves according to their languages"

#### Genesis 10:6

##### Mizraim

Mizraim is the Hebrew name for "Egypt."

#### Genesis 10:8

##### mighty one

Possible meanings are 1) "mighty warrior" or 2) "mighty man" or 3) "powerful ruler."

#### Genesis 10:9

##### before Yahweh

Possible meanings are 1) "in Yahweh's sight" or 2) "with Yahweh's help"

##### That is why it is said

"This is the reason people say"

#### Genesis 10:10

##### The first centers

Possible meanings are 1) the first centers he developed or 2) the important cities.

#### Genesis 10:11

##### he went to Assyria

"Nimrod went into Assyria"

#### Genesis 10:13

##### Mizraim

Mizraim was one of Ham's sons. His descendants became the people of Egypt.

#### Genesis 10:16

##### Jebusites ... Amorites ... Girgashites

These names refer to larger groups of people that descended from Canaan.

#### Genesis 10:19

##### border

line between one person's land and another person's land

##### from Sidon, in the direction of Gerar, as far as Gaza

"from Sidon city in the north as far south as Gaza town, which is near Gerar"

##### as one goes toward Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, and Zeboyim, as far as Lasha

"then east toward Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, and Zeboyim towns, as far as Lasha"

#### Genesis 10:20

##### These were the sons of Ham

The word "these" refers to the people and people groups who were listed in verses [Genesis 6-19](./06.md).

##### by their languages

"broken up according to their different languages"

##### in their lands

"in their homelands"

#### Genesis 10:24

##### Arphaxad

Arphaxad was one of Shem's sons.

#### Genesis 10:25

##### Peleg

Translators may add a footnote note that says: "The name Peleg means 'division.'"

##### the earth was divided

"the people of the earth divided themselves" or "the people of the earth separated from one another" or "God divided the people of the earth"

#### Genesis 10:26

##### Joktan

Joktan was one of Eber's sons.

#### Genesis 10:29

##### All these

"These" here refers to the sons of Joktan.

#### Genesis 10:30

##### Their territory

"The land they controlled" or "The land they lived in"

#### Genesis 10:31

##### These were the sons of Shem

The word "these" refers to the descendants of Shem

#### Genesis 10:32

##### These were the clans

This refers back to all the people listed in Genesis 10:1-31.

##### according to

"listed by"

##### From these the nations separated and went over the earth

"From these clans the nations divided and spread over the earth" or "These clans divided from each other and formed the nations of the earth"

##### after the flood

"after the flood destroyed the earth"

Chapter 11

1Now the whole earth used one language and had the same words.2As they journeyed in the east, they found a plain in the land of Shinar and they settled there.3They said to one another, "Come, let us make bricks and bake them thoroughly." They had brick instead of stone and tar as mortar.4They said, "Come, let us build ourselves a city and a tower whose top will reach to the sky, and let us make a name for ourselves. If we do not, we will be scattered across the surface of the whole earth."5So Yahweh came down to see the city and the tower which the descendants of Adam had built.6Yahweh said, "Look, they are one people with the same language, and they are beginning to do this! Soon nothing that they intend to do will be impossible for them.7Come, let us go down and confuse their language there, so that they may not understand each other."8So Yahweh scattered them from there across the surface of all the earth and they stopped building the city.9Therefore, its name was called Babel, because there Yahweh confused the language of the whole earth and from there Yahweh scattered them abroad over the surface of all the earth.

10These were the descendants of Shem. Shem was a hundred years old, and he became the father of Arphaxad two years after the flood.11Shem lived five hundred years after he became the father of Arphaxad. He also became the father of other sons and daughters.

12When Arphaxad had lived thirty-five years, he became the father of Shelah.13Arphaxad lived 403 years after he became the father of Shelah. He also became the father of other sons and daughters.

14When Shelah had lived thirty years, he became the father of Eber.15Shelah lived 403 years after he became the father of Eber. He also became the father of other sons and daughters.

16When Eber had lived thirty-four years, he became the father of Peleg.17Eber lived 430 years after he became the father of Peleg. He also became the father of other sons and daughters.

18When Peleg had lived thirty years, he became the father of Reu.19Peleg lived 209 years after he became the father of Reu. He also became the father of other sons and daughters.

20When Reu had lived thirty-two years, he became the father of Serug.21Reu lived 207 years after he became the father of Serug. He also became the father of other sons and daughters.

22When Serug had lived thirty years, he became the father of Nahor.23Serug lived two hundred years after he became the father of Nahor. He also became the father of other sons and daughters.

24When Nahor had lived twenty-nine years, he became the father of Terah.25Nahor lived 119 years after he became the father of Terah. He also became the father of other sons and daughters.

26After Terah had lived seventy years, he became the father of Abram, Nahor, and Haran.

27Now these were the descendants of Terah. Terah became the father of Abram, Nahor, and Haran, and Haran became the father of Lot.28Haran died in the presence of his father Terah in the land of his birth, in Ur of the Chaldeans.29Abram and Nahor took wives. The name of Abram's wife was Sarai and the name of Nahor's wife was Milkah, a daughter of Haran, who was the father of Milkah and Iskah.30Now Sarai was barren; she had no child.

31Terah took Abram his son, Lot the son of his son Haran, and Sarai his daughter-in-law, his son Abram's wife, and together they left Ur of the Chaldeans, to go into the land of Canaan. But they came to Haran and stayed there.32Terah lived 205 years and then died in Haran.

#### Genesis 11:1

##### Now

This word shows that the writer is beginning a new part of the story.

##### the whole earth

"all the people on the earth"

#### Genesis 11:2

##### they journeyed

"they moved around"

##### in the east

Possible meanings are 1) "in the east" or 2) "from the east" or 3) "to the east." The preferred choice is "in the east" because Shinar is to the east of where scholars believe the ark came to rest.

##### settled

stopped moving from one place to another and began to live at one location

#### Genesis 11:3

##### Come

If your language has a way of urging or commanding people to begin work, like the English "Come on!" you might use it here.

##### bake them thoroughly

People make bricks out of clay and heat them in a very hot oven to make them hard and strong.

##### tar

a thick, sticky, black liquid that comes up from the ground

##### mortar

This is a thick substance made of lime powder, clay, sand, and water used to make stones or bricks stick together.

#### Genesis 11:4

##### let us make a name for ourselves

"let us make our reputation great"

##### we will be scattered

"we will separate from each other and live in different places"

#### Genesis 11:5

##### the descendants of Adam

"the people"

##### came down

"came down from heaven." This does not tell how he came down. Use a general word meaning "came down."

##### to see

"to observe" or "to look more closely"

#### Genesis 11:6

##### one people with the same language

All the people were one big group and they all spoke the same language.

##### they are beginning to do this

Possible meanings are 1) "they have begun to do this," meaning that they have begun to build the tower but it is not finished, or 2) "this is just the first thing they have done," meaning that in future they will do greater things.

##### nothing that they intend to do will be impossible for them

"anything they intend to do will be possible for them" or "they will be able to do anything they want to do"

#### Genesis 11:7

##### let us go down

The word "us" is plural even though it refers to God. Some translate it as "let me go down" or "I will go down." If you do this, consider adding a footnote to say that the pronoun is plural. See the note on "Let us make" in Genesis 1:26.

##### confuse their language

"mix up their language"

##### so that they may not understand each other

"so that they will not be able to understand what each other is saying"

#### Genesis 11:8

##### from there

"from the city"

#### Genesis 11:9

##### its name was called Babel, because there Yahweh confused

The name "Babel" sounds like the word that means "confused." Translators may want to add a footnote about this.

#### Genesis 11:10

##### became the father of Arphaxad

"had his son Arphaxad" or "his son Arphaxad was born"

##### flood

This is the flood from Noah's time when people had become so evil that God sent a worldwide flood to cover the earth.

#### Genesis 11:12

##### he became the father of Shelah

"his son Shelah was born"

##### Shelah

This is a man's name.

#### Genesis 11:26

##### Abram, Nahor, and Haran

We do not know the birth order of his sons.

#### Genesis 11:27

##### Now these were the descendants of Terah

"This is the account of Terah's descendants"

#### Genesis 11:28

##### Haran died in the presence of his father Terah

"Haran died while his father, Terah, was with him"

#### Genesis 11:29

##### took wives

"married wives"

##### Iskah

This is a female name.

#### Genesis 11:30

##### Now

This word is used to introduce new information about Sarai that will become important in later chapters.

##### barren

This term describes a woman who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

#### Genesis 11:31

##### his

Here the word "his" refers to Terah.

##### Sarai his daughter-in-law, his son Abram's wife

"his daughter-in-law Sarai, who was the wife of his son Abram"

##### Haran ... Haran

These are two different names and they are spelled differently in Hebrew. One refers to a person and the other refers to a city. (The "h" sound in the city's name is louder than the "h" sound in the person's name.) You might choose to spell them differently in your language to show this.

Chapter 12

1Now Yahweh said to Abram, "Go from your country, and from your relatives, and from your father's household, to the land that I will show you.

2I will make of you a great nation, and I will bless you, and make your name great, and you will be a blessing.3I will bless those who bless you, but whoever dishonors you I will curse.Through you will all the families of the earth be blessed."

4So Abram went, as Yahweh had told him to do, and Lot went with him. Abram was seventy-five years old when he left Haran.5Abram took Sarai, his wife, Lot, his brother's son, all their possessions that they had accumulated, and the people that they had acquired in Haran. They left to go into the land of Canaan, and came to the land of Canaan.6Abram passed through the land as far as Shechem, to the oak of Moreh. At that time the Canaanites lived in the land.7Yahweh appeared to Abram, and said, "To your descendants I will give this land." So there Abram built an altar to Yahweh, who had appeared to him.8From there he moved to the hill country to the east of Bethel, where he pitched his tent, with Bethel to the west and Ai to the east. There he built an altar to Yahweh and called on the name of Yahweh.9Then Abram continued journeying, going toward the Negev.

10There was a famine in the land, so Abram went down into Egypt to stay, for the famine was severe in the land.11When he was about to enter into Egypt, he said to Sarai his wife, "See now, I know that you are a beautiful woman.12When the Egyptians see you they will say, 'This is his wife,' and they will kill me, but they will keep you alive.13Say that you are my sister, so that it may be well with me because of you, and so that my life will be spared because of you."14It came about that when Abram entered into Egypt, the Egyptians saw that Sarai was very beautiful.15The princes of Pharaoh saw her, and praised her to Pharaoh, and the woman was taken into Pharaoh's household.16Pharaoh treated Abram well for her sake, and Abram received sheep and cattle, male donkeys, male servants, female servants, female donkeys, and camels.17Then Yahweh afflicted Pharaoh and his house with great plagues because of Sarai, Abram's wife.18Pharaoh summoned Abram, and said, "What is this that you have done to me? Why did you not tell me that she was your wife?19Why did you say, 'She is my sister,' so that I took her to be my wife? Now therefore, here is your wife. Take her, and go your way."20Then Pharaoh gave orders to his men concerning him, and they sent him away, along with his wife and all that he had.

#### Genesis 12:1

##### Now

This word is used to mark a new part of the story.

##### Go from your country, and from your relatives

"Go from your land, from your family"

#### Genesis 12:2

##### I will make of you a great nation

"I will start a great nation through you" or "I will make your descendants become a great nation"

##### make your name great

"make you famous"

##### you will be a blessing

"you will be a blessing to other people"

#### Genesis 12:3

##### whoever dishonors you I will curse

"I will curse whoever treats you in a shameful way" or "if anyone treats you as worthless, I will curse him"

##### Through you will all the families of the earth be blessed

"I will bless all the families of the earth through you"

##### Through you

"Because of you" or "Because I have blessed you"

#### Genesis 12:5

##### possessions

This includes animals and non-living property.

##### the people that they had acquired

Possible meanings are 1) "slaves that they had accumulated" or 2) "the people whom they had gathered to be with them."

#### Genesis 12:6

##### Abram passed through the land

"So Abram and his family went through the land of Canaan"

##### the oak of Moreh

Moreh was probably the name of a place.

#### Genesis 12:8

##### he pitched his tent

"they set up their tents"

##### called on the name of Yahweh

"prayed in the name of Yahweh" or "worshiped Yahweh"

#### Genesis 12:9

##### toward the Negev

"toward the Negev region" or "toward the south" or "south to the Negev desert"

#### Genesis 12:10

##### There was a famine

"There was a shortage of food"

##### in the land

"in the area" or "in the land where Abram was living"

##### went down into

Possible meanings are 1) "went further south" or 2) "went away from Canaan into." It would be best to translate this using your usual words for going from a higher place to a lower place.

#### Genesis 12:11

##### See now, I

The phrase "See now" indicates that what follows is a polite request for the hearer to pay attention. "Please listen carefully: I"

#### Genesis 12:12

##### they will kill me ... you alive

"they will kill me so that they can marry you"

#### Genesis 12:13

##### so that my life will be spared because of you

"so that, because of you, they will not kill me"

#### Genesis 12:14

##### It came about that

Possible meanings are 1) This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts, and if your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here, or 2) "And that was what happened" .

#### Genesis 12:15

##### The princes of Pharaoh saw her

"Pharaoh's officials saw Sarai" or "the king's officials saw her"

##### the woman was taken into Pharaoh's household

"Pharaoh took her into his household" or "Pharaoh had his soldiers take her into his household"

##### the woman

Sarai

##### Pharaoh's household

Possible meanings are 1) "Pharoah's family," that is, as a wife, or 2) "Pharaoah's house" or "Pharaoh's palace,"

#### Genesis 12:16

##### for her sake

"for Sarai's sake" or "because of her"

#### Genesis 12:17

##### because of Sarai, Abram's wife

"because Pharaoh intended to take Sarai, Abram's wife, to be his own wife"

#### Genesis 12:18

##### Pharaoh summoned Abram

"Pharaoh called Abram" or "Pharaoh ordered Abram to come to him"

##### What is this that you have done to me?

"You have done a terrible thing to me!"

#### Genesis 12:20

##### Then Pharaoh gave orders to his men concerning him

"Then Pharaoh directed his officials concerning Abram"

##### they sent him away, along with his wife and all that he had

"the officials sent Abram away from Pharoah, with his wife and all his possessions"

Chapter 13

1So Abram went up from Egypt and went into the Negev, he, his wife, and all that he had. Lot also went with them.2Now Abram was very rich in livestock, in silver, and in gold.3He continued on his journey from the Negev to Bethel, to the place where his tent had been before, between Bethel and Ai.4He went to the place where the altar was that he had built previously. Here he called on the name of Yahweh.5Now Lot, who was traveling with Abram, also had flocks, herds, and tents.6The land was not able to support them both living close together, because their possessions were very many, so that they could not stay together.7Also, there was a dispute between the herdsmen of Abram's livestock and the herdsmen of Lot's livestock. The Canaanites and the Perizzites were living in the land at that time.8So Abram said to Lot, "Let there be no strife between you and me, and between your herdsmen and my herdsmen; after all, we are family.9Is not the whole land before you? Go ahead and separate yourself from me. If you go to the left, then I will go to the right. Or if you go to the right, then I will go to the left."10So Lot looked around, and saw that the whole plain of the Jordan was well watered everywhere all the way to Zoar, like the garden of Yahweh, like the land of Egypt. This was before Yahweh destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah.11So Lot chose for himself all the plain of the Jordan and traveled east, and the relatives separated from each other.12Abram lived in the land of Canaan, and Lot lived among the cities of the plain. He set up his tents as far away as Sodom.13Now the men of Sodom were very wicked sinners against Yahweh.

14Yahweh said to Abram after Lot had departed from him, "Look from the place where you are standing to the north, south, east, and west.15All this land which you see, I will give to you and to your descendants forever.16I will make your descendants as the dust of the earth, so that if one can count the dust of the earth, your descendants also can be counted.17Arise, walk through the length and breadth of the land, for I will give it to you."18So Abram picked up his tent, and came and lived by the oaks of Mamre, which are in Hebron, and there built an altar to Yahweh.

#### Genesis 13:1

##### went into the Negev

"went back to the Negev desert"

#### Genesis 13:2

##### Abram was very rich in livestock, in silver, and in gold

"Abram had many livestock, much silver, and much gold"

#### Genesis 13:3

##### He continued on his journey

"They continued on their journey"

##### to the place where his tent had been before

"to the place where he had set up his tent before he went to Egypt"

#### Genesis 13:4

##### called on the name of Yahweh

"prayed in the name of Yahweh" or "worshiped Yahweh."

#### Genesis 13:5

##### Now

This word is used to show what follows is background information to help the reader understand the events that follow.

#### Genesis 13:6

##### The land was not able to support them

There was not enough grazing land and water for all their animals.

##### their possessions

This includes livestock, which need pasture and water.

##### could not stay together

"could not live together"

#### Genesis 13:8

##### Let there be no strife between you and me

"Let's not quarrel"

##### between your herdsmen and my herdsmen

"let's stop the men who take care of our animals from quarreling"

##### after all, we are family

"because we are family"

#### Genesis 13:9

##### Is not the whole land before you?

"The whole land is available for you to use."

##### Go ahead and separate yourself from me

Abraham was speaking kindly to Lot and encouraging him to do something that would help them both. "Let's separate."

##### If you go to the left, then I will go to the right

Possible meanings are 1) "If you go one way, then I will go the other" or 2) "If you go to the north, I will go to the south." Abram let Lot choose the part of the land he wanted, and Abram would take what remained.

#### Genesis 13:10

##### the whole plain of the Jordan

This refers to the general region of the Jordan River.

##### was well watered

"had much water"

##### like the garden of Yahweh, like the land of Egypt

"like the garden of Yahweh or like the land of Egypt." These were two different places.

##### This was before Yahweh destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah

This anticipates something that would happen later. It is important here because it explains why Lot settled in a region that later was not fertile.

#### Genesis 13:11

##### the relatives

"the kinsmen" or "the families." This refers to Lot and Abram with their households.

#### Genesis 13:12

##### He set up his tents as far away as Sodom

Possible meanings are 1) "He set up his tents near Sodom" or 2) "He moved his tents around in an area that reached all the way to Sodom."

#### Genesis 13:16

##### I will make your descendants as the dust of the earth

God is saying that he will give Abram very many descendants.

#### Genesis 13:17

##### walk through the length and breadth of the land

"walk around all over the whole land"

#### Genesis 13:18

##### Mamre

This was the name of the man who owned the oak trees.

##### Hebron

This is the name of a place.

##### an altar to Yahweh

"an altar for worshiping Yahweh"

Chapter 14

1It came about in the days of Amraphel, king of Shinar, Arioch, king of Ellasar, Kedorlaomer, king of Elam, and Tidal, king of Goyim,2that they made war against Bera, king of Sodom, Birsha, king of Gomorrah, Shinab, king of Admah, Shemeber, king of Zeboyim, and the king of Bela (also called Zoar).3These latter five kings joined together in the Valley of Siddim (also called the Salt Sea).4Twelve years they had served Kedorlaomer, but in the thirteenth year they rebelled.5Then in the fourteenth year, Kedorlaomer and the kings who were with him came and attacked the Rephaim in Ashteroth Karnaim, the Zuzites in Ham, the Emites in Shaveh Kiriathaim,6and the Horites in their hill country of Seir, as far as El Paran, which is near the desert.7Then they turned and came to En Mishpat (also called Kadesh), and defeated all the country of the Amalekites, and also the Amorites who lived in Hazezon Tamar.

8Then the king of Sodom, the king of Gomorrah, the king of Admah, the king of Zeboyim, and the king of Bela (also called Zoar) went out and prepared for battle in the Valley of Siddim9against Kedorlaomer, king of Elam, Tidal, king of Goyim, Amraphel, king of Shinar, Arioch, king of Ellasar; four kings against the five.10Now the Valley of Siddim was full of tar pits, and as the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah fled, they fell in there. Those who were left fled to the mountains.11So the kings took all the goods of Sodom and Gomorrah and all their provisions, and went their way.12When they went, they also took Lot, Abram's brother's son, who was living in Sodom, along with all his possessions.

13One who had escaped came and told Abram the Hebrew. He was living by the oaks that belonged to Mamre, the Amorite, who was the brother of Eshkol and Aner, who were all allies of Abram.14Now when Abram heard that enemies had captured his relative, he led out his 318 trained men who had been born in his house, and he pursued them as far as Dan.15He divided his men against them at night, he and his servants, and he pursued them as far as Hobah, which is north of Damascus.16Then he brought back all the possessions, and also brought back his relative Lot and his goods, as well as the women and the other people.

17After Abram returned from defeating Kedorlaomer and the kings who were with him, the king of Sodom went out to meet him at the Valley of Shaveh (also called the King's Valley).

18Melchizedek, king of Salem, brought out bread and wine. He was priest of God Most High.19He blessed him saying,"Blessed be Abram by God Most High, Creator of heaven and earth.20Blessed be God Most High, who has given your enemies into your hand." Then Abram gave him a tenth of everything.

21The king of Sodom said to Abram, "Give me the people, and take the goods for yourself."22Abram said to the king of Sodom, "I have lifted up my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, Creator of heaven and earth,23that I will not take a thread, a sandal strap, or anything that is yours, so that you can never say, 'I have made Abram rich.'24I will take nothing except what the young men have eaten and the share of the men that went with me. Let Aner, Eshkol, and Mamre take their portion."

#### Genesis 14:1

##### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### Amraphel ... Arioch ... Kedorlaomer ... Tidal

These are names of men.

##### Shinar ... Ellasar ... Elam ... Goyim

These are names of places. See how you translated "Shinar" in Genesis 10:10.

#### Genesis 14:2

##### they made war

"they went to war" or "they started a war" or "they prepared for war"

#### Genesis 14:3

##### These latter five kings joined together

"These latter five kings and their armies joined together"

#### Genesis 14:4

##### Twelve years they had served

The events in verses 4-7 happened before verse 3. Your language may have a way of showing this.

##### they had served Kedorlaomer

"they had been under the control of Kedorlaomer"

##### they rebelled

"they refused to serve him" or "they stopped serving him"

#### Genesis 14:5

##### the Rephaim ... the Zuzites ... the Emites

These are the names of people groups.

##### Ashteroth Karnaim ... Ham ... Shaveh Kiriathaim

These are the names of places.

##### Ham

This name in Hebrew is different from the name of Noah's son, which is spelled the same way in English.

#### Genesis 14:6

##### the Horites

This is the name of a people group.

##### Seir ... El Paran

These are the names of places.

##### El Paran, which is near the desert

"El Paran. El Paran is near the desert"

#### Genesis 14:7

##### the Amorites who lived in Hazezon Tamar

This phrase tells which Amorite people were defeated. There were other Amorite people who lived in other places.

#### Genesis 14:8

##### the king of Bela (also called Zoar)

The city of Bela was also called Zoar. "the king of Bela went out and prepared for battle. Bela is also called Zoar."

##### prepared for battle

"joined battle" or "drew up battle lines."

#### Genesis 14:10

##### Now

This word introduces background information about the valley of Siddim.

##### was full of tar pits

"had many tar pits." These were holes in the ground that had tar in them.

##### tar

a thick, sticky, black liquid that comes up from the ground.

##### the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah

the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah and their armies"

##### they fell in there

Possible meanings are 1) some of their soldiers fell in the tar pits or 2) the kings themselves fell in the tar pits.

##### Those who were left

"Those who did not die in battle and did not fall in the pits"

#### Genesis 14:11

##### the goods of Sodom and Gomorrah

"the wealth of the people of Sodom and Gomorrah" or "the property of the people of Sodom and Gomorrah"

##### their provisions

"their food and drink"

#### Genesis 14:12

##### they also took Lot, Abram's brother's son, who was living in Sodom, along with all his possessions

"they also took Lot, along with all his possessions. Lot was Abram's brother's son and was living in Sodom at that time"

#### Genesis 14:13

##### were all allies of Abram

"were treaty-partners with Abram" or "had a peace agreement with Abram"

#### Genesis 14:14

##### his relative

This is a reference to Abram's nephew Lot.

##### trained men

"men who were trained to fight"

##### men who had been born in his house

"men who were born in Abram's household." They were children of Abram's servants.

##### pursued them

"chased them"

##### Dan

This is a city in the far north of Canaan, far from Abram's camp.

#### Genesis 14:15

##### He divided his men against them at night, he and his servants, and

"At night Abram divided his men—he attacked them from one side and his servants attacked them from another—and"

##### servants

"men of war." They served him by fighting for him.

#### Genesis 14:16

##### all the possessions

This refers to the things that the enemies had stolen from the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.

##### his goods

"Lot's property that the enemies had stolen from Lot"

##### as well as the women and the other people

"as well as the women and other people that the four kings had captured"

#### Genesis 14:17

##### returned

"returned to where he was living"

#### Genesis 14:18

##### Melchizedek, king of Salem

This is the first time this king is mentioned.

#### Genesis 14:19

##### He blessed him

King Melchizedek blessed Abram.

##### Blessed be Abram by God Most High, Creator of heaven and earth

"May God Most High, the Creator of heaven and earth, bless Abram"

#### Genesis 14:20

##### Blessed be God Most High

This is a way of praising God.

##### into your hand

"into your control" or "into your power"

#### Genesis 14:21

##### Give me the people

The phrase "the people" may refer to the people of Sodom that the enemies had captured. Abram rescued them when he rescued Lot.

#### Genesis 14:22

##### I have lifted up my hand

This means "I have taken an oath" or "I have made a promise."

#### Genesis 14:24

##### I will take nothing except what the young men have eaten

"I will take from you only what my young men have eaten."

##### the share of the men that went with me

"the share of the recovered property that belongs to the men who helped me get it back"

##### Aner, Eshkol, and Mamre

"my allies Aner, Eshkol, and Mamre"

Chapter 15

1After these things the word of Yahweh came to Abram in a vision, saying, "Fear not, Abram! I am your shield and your very great reward."

2Abram said, "Lord Yahweh, what will you give me, since I continue childless, and the heir of my house is Eliezer of Damascus?"3Abram said, "Since you have given me no descendant, see, one born in my house will be my heir!"4Then, behold, the word of Yahweh came to him, saying, "This man will not be your heir; but rather the one who will come from your own body will be your heir."5Then he brought him outside, and said, "Look toward heaven, and number the stars, if you are able to number them." Then he said to him, "So will your descendants be."6He believed Yahweh, and he counted it to him as righteousness.7He said to him, "I am Yahweh, who brought you out of Ur of the Chaldeans, to give you this land to inherit it."8He said, "Lord Yahweh, how will I know that I will inherit it?"9Then he said to him, "Bring me a heifer three years old, a female goat three years old, a ram three years old, a dove, and a young pigeon."10He brought him all these, and cut them in two, and placed each half opposite the other, but he did not divide the birds.11When the birds of prey came down upon the carcasses, Abram drove them away.

12Then when the sun was going down, Abram fell sound asleep and, behold, a deep and terrifying darkness overwhelmed him.13Then Yahweh said to Abram, "Know for certain that your descendants will be strangers in a land that is not theirs, and will be enslaved and oppressed for four hundred years.14I will judge that nation that they will serve, and afterward they will come out with abundant possessions.15But you will go to your fathers in peace, and you will be buried in a good old age.16In the fourth generation they will come here again, for the iniquity of the Amorites has not yet reached its limit."17When the sun had gone down and it was dark, behold, a smoking firepot and a flaming torch passed between the pieces.18On that day Yahweh made a covenant with Abram, saying, "To your descendants I hereby give this land, from the river of Egypt to the great river, the Euphrates—19the Kenites, the Kenizzites, the Kadmonites,20the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Rephaites,21the Amorites, the Canaanites, the Girgashites, and the Jebusites."

#### Genesis 15:1

##### After these things

"These things" refers to when the kings fought and Abram rescued Lot.

##### the word of Yahweh came to Abram in a vision, saying, "Fear

"Yahweh gave a message to Abram in a vision. He said, 'Fear" or "Yahweh spoke this message to Abram in a vision: 'Fear"

##### I am your shield

"I will protect you like shield" or "I am your shield to protect you"

##### I am ... your very great reward

Possible meanings are 1) "I myself will be all that you need" or 2) "I will give you all you need."

##### reward

the result of a person's actions. This is the gracious blessing God would give Abram.

#### Genesis 15:4

##### Then, behold

The word "behold" emphasizes the fact that the word of Yahweh came to Abraham again.

##### the word of Yahweh came to him, saying, "This

"Yahweh gave him a message. He said, 'This" or "Yahweh spoke this message to him: 'This"

##### This man

This refers to Eliezer of Damascus.

##### the one who will come from your own body

"the one that you will father" or "your very own son." Abram's own son would become his heir.

#### Genesis 15:5

##### number the stars

"count the stars"

##### So will your descendants be

Just as Abram would not be able to count all the stars, he would not be able to count all his descendants because there would be so many.

#### Genesis 15:6

##### He believed Yahweh

This means he accepted and trusted what Yahweh said was true.

##### he counted it to him as righteousness

"Yahweh counted Abram's belief as righteousness" or "Yahweh considered Abram righteous because Abram believed him"

#### Genesis 15:7

##### I am Yahweh, who brought you out of Ur

Yahweh was reminding Abraham of what he had already done so that Abraham would know that Yahweh had the power to give Abram what he promised him.

##### to inherit it

"to receive it" or "so that you will possess it"

#### Genesis 15:11

##### the carcasses

"the dead bodies of the animals and birds"

##### Abram drove them away

"Abram chased the birds away." He made sure the birds did not eat the dead animals.

#### Genesis 15:12

##### a deep and terrifying darkness

"an extreme darkness that terrified him"

##### overwhelmed him

"surrounded him"

#### Genesis 15:13

##### strangers

people who are at home in one place but have to live in another place

##### will be enslaved and oppressed

"the owners of that land will enslave your descendants and oppress them"

#### Genesis 15:14

##### I will judge

"I will punish"

##### that they will serve

"that your descendants will serve"

##### abundant possessions

"many possessions" or "great wealth"

#### Genesis 15:15

##### you will go to your fathers

This is a polite way of saying "you will die."

##### fathers

"ancestors" or "ancestral fathers"

##### you will be buried in a good old age

"you will be very old when you die and your family buries your body"

#### Genesis 15:16

##### In the fourth generation

Here one generation refers to a lifespan of 100 years. "After four hundred years"

##### they will come here again

"your descendants will come back here." Abraham's descendants would come to the land where Abram was then living, the land that Yahweh had promised to give to him.

##### has not yet reached its limit

"is not yet complete" or "will get much worse before I punish them"

#### Genesis 15:17

##### behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### a smoking firepot and a flaming torch passed between the pieces

God did this to show Abram that he was making a covenant with him.

##### passed between the pieces

"passed through between the two rows of animal pieces"

#### Genesis 15:18

##### covenant

In this covenant God promises to bless Abram, and he will continue to bless him as long as Abram follows him.

##### I hereby give this land

By saying this, God was giving the land to Abram's descendants. God was doing this then, but the descendants would not go into the land until many years later.

#### Genesis 15:19

##### the Kenites, the Kenizzites, the Kadmonites

These are the names of groups of people who lived in that land. God would allow Abraham's descendants to conquer these people and take their land.

#### Genesis 15:20

##### the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Rephaites

These are the names of groups of people who lived in that land. God would allow Abraham's descendants to conquer these people and take their land.

#### Genesis 15:21

##### the Amorites, the Canaanites, the Girgashites, and the Jebusites

These are the names of groups of people who lived in that land. God would allow Abraham's descendants to conquer these people and take their land.

Chapter 16

1Now Sarai, Abram's wife, had not borne any children for him, but she had a female servant, an Egyptian, whose name was Hagar.2So Sarai said to Abram, "See now, Yahweh has kept me from having children. Please go to my servant. It may be that I will have children by her." Abram listened to the voice of Sarai.3It was after Abram had lived ten years in the land of Canaan that Sarai, Abram's wife, gave Hagar, her Egyptian servant, to her husband as a wife.4So he went to Hagar, and she conceived. When she saw that she had conceived, she looked with contempt on her mistress.5Then Sarai said to Abram, "This wrong on me is because of you. I gave my servant woman into your embrace, and when she saw that she had conceived, I was despised in her eyes. Let Yahweh judge between me and you."6But Abram said to Sarai, "See here, your servant woman is in your power, do to her what you think best." So Sarai dealt harshly with her, and she fled from her.

7The angel of Yahweh found her by a spring of water in the wilderness, the spring that is on the way to Shur.8He said, "Hagar, Sarai's servant, where did you come from and where are you going?" Then she said, "I am fleeing from my mistress Sarai."9The angel of Yahweh said to her, "Return to your mistress, and submit yourself to her authority."10Then the angel of Yahweh said to her, "I will greatly multiply your descendants, so that they will be too numerous to count."11The angel of Yahweh also said to her,"Behold, you are pregnantand will bear a son,and you will call his name Ishmael,because Yahweh has heard your affliction.12He will be a wild donkey of a man.He will be hostile against every man,and every man will be hostile to him,and he will live apart from all his brothers."

13Then she gave this name to Yahweh who spoke to her, "You are the God who sees me," for she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?"14Therefore the well was called Beer Lahai Roi; behold, it is between Kadesh and Bered.

15Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.16Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.

#### Genesis 16:1

##### Now

This word is used in English to introduce a new part of the story and background information about Sarai.

##### female servant

"slave-girl." This type of slave would serve the woman of the household.

#### Genesis 16:2

##### See now, Yahweh

"Please listen carefully: Yahweh"

##### Please go to my servant

"Please have sexual relations with my servant" or "Please lie with my servant"

##### I will have children by her

"I will build my family through her"

#### Genesis 16:4

##### she looked with contempt on her mistress

"she despised her mistress" or "she thought that she was more valuable than her mistress"

##### her mistress

"her owner" or "Sarai"

#### Genesis 16:5

##### This wrong on me

"This injustice against me"

##### is because of you

"is your responsibility" or "is your fault"

##### I gave my servant woman into your embrace

"I gave you my servant so that you would sleep with her"

##### I was despised in her eyes

"she hated me" or "she began to hate me" or "she thought she was better than me"

##### Let Yahweh judge between me and you

"I want Yahweh to say whether this is my fault or your fault" or "I want Yahweh to decide which one of us is right." The phrase "to judge between" means to decide which person is right in a dispute between them.

#### Genesis 16:6

##### See here

"Listen to me" or "Pay attention"

##### in your power

"under your authority"

##### Sarai dealt harshly with her

"Sarai treated Hagar very badly"

##### she fled from her

"Hagar fled from Sarai"

#### Genesis 16:7

##### The angel of Yahweh

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh made himself look like an angel or 2) this was one of Yahweh's angels or 3) this was a special messenger from God (some scholars think it was Jesus). Since the phrase is not well understood, it is best to simply translate it as "the angel of Yahweh" using the normal word that you use for "angel."

##### wilderness

The wilderness area she went to was a desert. Alternate translation: "desert"

##### Shur

This was the name of a place south of Canaan and east of Egypt.

#### Genesis 16:8

##### my mistress

"my owner"

#### Genesis 16:10

##### the angel of Yahweh said to her, "I

When he said "I," he was referring to Yahweh. When translating what is in the quote, do it as the angel of Yahweh did and use the word "I" when referring to Yahweh.

##### I will greatly multiply your descendants

"I will give you very many descendants"

##### too numerous to count

"so many that no one will be able to count them"

#### Genesis 16:11

##### Behold

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention"

##### bear a son

"give birth to a son"

##### you will call his name

"you will name him." The word "you" refers to Hagar.

##### affliction

She has been afflicted by distress and suffering.

#### Genesis 16:12

##### He will be a wild donkey of a man

"He will be like a wild donkey among men"

##### He will be hostile against every man

"He will be every man's enemy"

##### every man will be hostile to him

"everyone will be his enemy"

##### his brothers

"his relatives" or "the other members of his family"

#### Genesis 16:13

##### Do I really continue to see, ... me?

"I am surprised that I am still alive, ... me."

#### Genesis 16:14

##### Therefore the well was called Beer Lahai Roi

Translators may add a footnote that says "Beer Lahai Roi means 'the well of the living one who sees me.'"

#### Genesis 16:15

##### named his son, whom Hagar bore

"named his son by Hagar" or "named his and Hagar's son"

#### Genesis 16:16

##### bore Ishmael to Abram

This means "gave birth to Abram's son, Ishmael." The focus is on Abram having a son.

Chapter 17

1When Abram was ninety-nine years old, Yahweh appeared to Abram and said to him, "I am God Almighty. Walk before me, and be blameless.2Then I will confirm my covenant between me and you, and will multiply you exceedingly."3Abram bowed low with his face to the ground and God talked with him, saying,4"As for me, behold, my covenant is with you. You will be the father of a multitude of nations.5No longer will your name be Abram, but your name will be Abraham—for I appoint you to be the father of a multitude of nations.6I will make you exceedingly fruitful, and I will make nations of you, and kings will descend from you.7I will establish my covenant between me and you and your descendants after you, throughout their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be God to you and to your descendants after you.8I will give to you, and to your descendants after you, the land where you have been sojourning, all the land of Canaan, for an everlasting possession, and I will be their God."

9Then God said to Abraham, "As for you, you must keep my covenant, you and your descendants after you throughout their generations.10This is my covenant, which you must keep, between me and you and your descendants after you: Every male among you must be circumcised.11You must be circumcised in the flesh of your foreskin, and this will be the sign of the covenant between me and you.12Every male among you that is eight days old must be circumcised, throughout your people's generations. This includes him who is born into your household and him who is bought with money from any foreigner who is not one of your descendants.13He who is born into your household and he who is bought with your money must be circumcised. Thus my covenant will be in your flesh for an everlasting covenant.14Any uncircumcised male who is not circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin will be cut off from his people. He has broken my covenant."

15God said to Abraham, "As for Sarai your wife, do not call her Sarai any more. Instead, her name will be Sarah.16I will bless her, and I will give you a son by her. I will bless her, and she will become the mother of nations. Kings of peoples will come from her."17Then Abraham bowed low with his face to the ground, and laughed, and said in his heart, "Can a child be born to a man who is a hundred years old? How can Sarah, who is ninety years old, bear a son?"18Abraham said to God, "Oh that Ishmael might live before you!"19God said, "No, but Sarah your wife will bear you a son, and you must name him Isaac. I will establish my covenant with him as an everlasting covenant with his descendants after him.20As for Ishmael, I have heard you. Behold, I have blessed him and will make him fruitful and will multiply him abundantly. He will be the father of twelve princes, and I will make him become a great nation.21But my covenant I will establish with Isaac, whom Sarah will bear to you at this time in the next year."

22When he had finished talking with him, God went up from Abraham.23Then Abraham took Ishmael his son, and all those who were born into his household, and all those who were bought with his money, every male among the men of Abraham's household, and circumcised the flesh of their foreskin in that same day, as God had said to him.24Abraham was ninety-nine years old when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin.25Ishmael his son was thirteen years old when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin.26On the very same day Abraham and Ishmael his son were both circumcised.27All the men of his household were circumcised with him, including those born into the household and those bought with money from a foreigner.

#### Genesis 17:1

##### God Almighty

"the all-powerful God" or "the God who has all power"

##### Walk before me

"Live the way I want you to" or "Obey me"

#### Genesis 17:2

##### Then I will confirm my covenant

"If you do this, then I will give my covenant" or "I will make my covenant"

##### covenant

In this covenant God promises to bless Abram, but he also requires Abram to obey him.

##### multiply you exceedingly

"greatly increase the number of your descendants" or "give you very many descendants"

#### Genesis 17:3

##### Abram bowed low with his face to the ground

"Abram threw himself face down on the ground" or "Abraham immediately lay down with his face to the ground." He did this to show that he respected God and would obey him.

#### Genesis 17:4

##### behold, my covenant is with you

The word "behold" here says that what comes next is certain: "my covenant is certainly with you."

##### the father of a multitude of nations

"the father of a great number of nations" or "the one after whom many nations name themselves"

#### Genesis 17:6

##### I will make you exceedingly fruitful

"I will cause you to have very many descendants"

##### I will make nations of you

"I will cause your descendants to become nations"

##### kings will descend from you

"among your descendants there will be kings" or "some of your descendants will be kings"

#### Genesis 17:7

##### throughout their generations

"for each generation"

##### for an everlasting covenant

"as a covenant that will last forever"

##### to be God to you and to your descendants after you

"to be your God and your descendants' God" or "covenant"

#### Genesis 17:8

##### Canaan, for an everlasting possession

"Canaan, as an everlasting possession" or "Canaan, to possess forever"

#### Genesis 17:9

##### keep my covenant

"observe my covenant" or "honor my covenant" or "obey my covenant"

#### Genesis 17:10

##### This is my covenant

"This is a requirement of my covenant" or "This is part of my covenant." This sentence introduces the part of the covenant that Abram must do.

##### Every male among you must be circumcised

"You must circumcise every male among you"

#### Genesis 17:11

##### You must be circumcised in the flesh of your foreskin

"You must circumcise every male among you"

##### the sign of the covenant

"the sign that shows that the covenant exists"

#### Genesis 17:12

##### him who is bought with money

"any male that you buy"

#### Genesis 17:13

##### my covenant will be in your flesh

"you will mark my covenant in your flesh"

##### for an everlasting covenant

"as a permanent covenant." Because it was marked in flesh, no one could easily erase it.

#### Genesis 17:14

##### uncircumcised male who is not circumcised

"male whom you have not circumcised"

##### Any uncircumcised male ... foreskin will be cut off from his people

Possible meanings are 1) "I will cut off any uncircumcised male ... foreskin from his people" or 2) "I want you to cut off any uncircumcised male ... foreskin from his people."

##### cut off from his people

Possible meanings are 1) "killed" or 2) "sent away from the community."

##### He has broken my covenant

"He has not obeyed the rules of my covenant." This is the reason that he would be cut off from his people.

#### Genesis 17:16

##### I will give you a son by her

"I will make her bear a son for you"

##### she will become the mother of nations

"she will be the ancestor of many nations" or "her descendants will become nations"

##### Kings of peoples will come from her

"Kings of peoples will descend from her" or "Some of her descendants will be kings of peoples"

#### Genesis 17:17

##### said in his heart

"thought to himself" or "said to himself silently"

##### How can Sarah, who is ninety years old, bear a son?

"Sarah is ninety years old. Could she bear a son?" or "Sarah is ninety years old. Surely she could not bear a son!"

#### Genesis 17:18

##### Oh that Ishmael might live before you

"Please let Ishmael inherit the covenant that you have made with me" or "Perhaps Ishmael could receive your covenant blessing." Abraham suggested something that he believed really could happen.

#### Genesis 17:19

##### No, but Sarah your wife will bear

God said this to correct Abraham's belief that Sarah could not have a son.

##### you must name him

The word "you" refers to Abraham.

#### Genesis 17:20

##### As for Ishmael

The words "As for" show that God is switching from talking about the baby that would be born to talking about Ishmael.

##### Behold

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

##### will multiply him abundantly

"I will cause him to have many descendants"

##### princes

"chiefs" or "rulers." Ishmael's twelve sons are different from the twelve sons of Jacob who were the fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.

#### Genesis 17:21

##### But my covenant I will establish with Isaac

God returns to talking about his covenant with Abraham and emphasizes that he would fulfill his promise with Isaac, not with Ishmael.

#### Genesis 17:22

##### God went up from Abraham

"God left Abraham"

#### Genesis 17:27

##### those bought with money from a foreigner

This refers to servants or slaves.

Chapter 18

1Yahweh appeared to Abraham by the oaks of Mamre, as he sat in the tent doorway in the heat of the day.2He looked up and, behold, he saw three men standing across from him. When he saw them, he ran to meet them from the tent door and bowed low to the ground.3He said, "My Lord, if I have found favor in your sight, please do not pass by your servant."4Let a little water be brought, wash your feet, and rest yourselves under the tree.5Let me bring a little food, so that you may refresh yourselves. Afterwards you can go your way, since you have come to your servant." They replied, "Do as you have said."6Then Abraham quickly went into the tent to Sarah, and said, "Hurry, get three seahs of fine flour, knead it, and make bread."7Then Abraham ran to the herd, and took a calf that was tender and good, and gave it to the servant, and he hurried to prepare it.8He took curds and milk, and the calf that had been prepared, and placed the food before them, and he stood by them under the tree while they ate.

9They said to him, "Where is Sarah your wife?" He replied, "There, in the tent."10He said, "I will certainly return to you in the springtime, and see, Sarah your wife will have a son." Sarah was listening in the tent doorway, which was behind him.11Now Abraham and Sarah were old, very advanced in age, and Sarah had passed the age when women could bear children.12So Sarah laughed to herself, saying to herself, "After I am worn out and my master is old, will I now have this pleasure?"13Yahweh said to Abraham, "Why did Sarah laugh and say, 'Will I really bear a child, when I am old'?14Is anything too hard for Yahweh? At the time appointed by me, in the spring, I will return to you. About this time next year Sarah will have a son."15Then Sarah denied it and said, "I did not laugh," for she was afraid. He replied, "No, you did laugh."

16Then the men arose to leave and looked down toward Sodom. Abraham went with them to see them on their way.17But Yahweh said, "Should I hide from Abraham what I am about to do,18since Abraham will indeed become a great and mighty nation, and all the nations of the earth will be blessed in him?19For I have chosen him so that he may instruct his children and his household after him to keep the way of Yahweh, to do righteousness and justice, so that Yahweh may bring upon Abraham what he has said to him."20Then Yahweh said, "Because the outcry against Sodom and Gomorrah is so great, and because their sin is so serious,21I will now go down there and see the outcry against her that has come to me, whether they have really done it. If not, I will know."

22So the men turned from there, and went toward Sodom, but Abraham remained standing before Yahweh.23Then Abraham approached and said, "Will you sweep away the righteous with the wicked?24Perhaps there are fifty righteous within the city. Will you sweep it away and not spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous that are there?25Far be it from you to do such a thing, killing the righteous with the wicked, so that the righteous should be treated the same as the wicked. Far be it from you! Will not the Judge of all the earth do what is just?"26Yahweh said, "If I find in Sodom fifty righteous within the city, then I will spare the whole place for their sake."27Abraham answered and said, "See now, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!28What if there are five less than fifty righteous? Will you destroy the whole city for lack of five?" Then he said, "I will not destroy it, if I find there forty-five."29He spoke to him yet again, and said, "What if there are forty found there?" He replied, "I will not do it for the forty's sake."30He said, "Please do not be angry, Lord, so I may speak. Perhaps thirty will be found there." He replied, "I will not do it, if I find thirty there."31He said, "See now, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord! Perhaps twenty will be found there." He replied, "I will not destroy it for the twenty's sake."32He said, "Please do not be angry, Lord, and I will speak this one last time. Perhaps ten will be found there." Then he said, "I will not destroy it for the ten's sake."33Yahweh went on his way as soon as he had finished talking with Abraham, and Abraham returned home.

#### Genesis 18:1

##### Mamre

This was the name of the man who owned the oak trees.

##### in the tent doorway

"at the opening of the tent" or "at the entrance of the tent"

#### Genesis 18:2

##### behold, he saw

"he was surprised because he saw"

##### across from him

"nearby" or "there." They were near him, but far enough away for him to run to them.

#### Genesis 18:3

##### Lord

This is a title of respect. Possible meanings are 1) Abraham knew that one of these men was God or 2) Abraham knew that these men came on behalf of God.

##### if I have found favor in your sight

"if you have evaluated me and approve" or "if you are pleased with me"

##### in your sight

Abraham is speaking to one of the men.

##### do not pass by

"please do not keep on going past"

##### your servant

"me." Abraham refers to himself this way in order to show respect to his guest.

#### Genesis 18:4

##### Let a little water be brought

"Let me bring you some water" or "My servant will bring you some water"

##### wash your feet

This custom helped tired travelers to refresh themselves after walking long distances.

#### Genesis 18:5

##### your ... you

Abraham speaks to all three of the men, so "you" and "your" are plural.

#### Genesis 18:6

##### three seahs

about 22 liters

##### bread

This bread was probably cooked quickly on a hot stone. It may have been flat or round like small loaves or rolls.

#### Genesis 18:7

##### he hurried

"the servant hurried"

##### to prepare it

"to cut it up and roast it"

#### Genesis 18:8

##### curds

This refers to the solid part of fermented milk. It may have been yogurt or cheese.

##### the calf that had been prepared

"the roasted calf"

##### before them

"before the three visitors"

#### Genesis 18:9

##### They said to him

"Then they said to Abraham"

#### Genesis 18:10

##### He said, "I will certainly return to you

The word "He" refers to the man whom Abraham called "Lord" in Genesis 18:3.

##### in the springtime

"when this same season comes next year" or "about this time next year"

##### see

The word "see" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### in the tent doorway

"at the opening of the tent" or "at the entrance of the tent"

#### Genesis 18:12

##### After I am worn out and my master is old, will I now have this pleasure?

"I am worn out and my master is old, so I cannot believe that I will experience the joy of having a child.""

##### I am worn out

"I am too old to conceive a child"

##### my master is old

This means "since my husband, Abraham is also old."

#### Genesis 18:13

##### Why did Sarah laugh and say, 'Will I really bear a child, when I am old'?

"Sarah was wrong to laugh and say, 'I will not bear a child because I am too old!'"

#### Genesis 18:14

##### Is anything too hard for Yahweh?

"There is nothing that I, Yahweh, cannot do!"

#### Genesis 18:15

##### He replied

"Yahweh replied"

##### No, you did laugh

"Yes, you did laugh." This means "No, that is not true; you did in fact laugh."

#### Genesis 18:17

##### Should I hide from Abraham what I am about to do

"I should not and will not hide from Abraham what I am about to do" or "I should and will tell Abraham what I am about to do"

#### Genesis 18:18

##### since ... him?

"This is because ... him"

##### all the nations of the earth will be blessed in him

"I will bless all the nations of the earth through Abraham"

##### will be blessed in him

"will be blessed because of Abraham" or "will be blessed because I have blessed Abraham."

#### Genesis 18:19

##### that he may instruct

"that he will direct" or "so that he will command"

##### to keep the way of Yahweh ... Yahweh may bring ... he has said

"to obey what I, Yahweh, require ... I, Yahweh, may bring ... I have said"

##### to keep the way of Yahweh

"to obey the commands of Yahweh"

##### to do righteousness and justice

"by doing righteousness and justice." This tells how to keep the way of Yahweh.

##### so that Yahweh may bring upon Abraham what he has said to him

"so that Yahweh may bless Abraham just as he said he would." This refers to the covenant promise to bless Abraham and make him a great nation.

#### Genesis 18:20

##### the outcry against Sodom and Gomorrah is so great

"so many people have been accusing the people of Sodom and Gomorrah of doing evil things"

##### their sin is so serious

"they have sinned so much"

#### Genesis 18:21

##### go down there and see

"go down to Sodom and Gomorrah to find out" or "go down there to decide"

##### see the outcry ... that has come to me

"as wicked as those who are accusing them say that they are"

##### If not

"If they are not as wicked as the outcry suggests"

#### Genesis 18:22

##### turned from there

"went out from Abraham's camp"

##### Abraham remained standing before Yahweh

"Abraham and Yahweh remained together"

#### Genesis 18:23

##### approached and said

"approached Yahweh and said" or "stepped closer to Yahweh and said"

##### sweep away

"destroy"

##### the righteous with the wicked

"the righteous people with the wicked people"

#### Genesis 18:24

##### Perhaps there are

"Suppose there are"

##### Will you sweep it away and not spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous that are there?

"I think you would not sweep it away. Instead, you would spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous that are there"

##### sweep it away

"destroy the people who live there"

##### not spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous that are there?

Abraham was hoping that God would say "I will let the people live for the sake of the fifty righteous people there."

#### Genesis 18:25

##### Far be it from you to do such a thing

"I would never want you to do something like that" or "You should not want to do something like that"

##### such a thing, killing

"such a thing as killing" or "such a thing, that is, killing"

##### the righteous should be treated the same as the wicked

"you should treat the righteous the same way you treat the wicked"

##### Will not the Judge of all the earth do what is just?

"The Judge of all the earth will certainly do what is just!" or "Since you are the Judge of all the earth, you will surely do what is right!"

##### Judge

God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.

#### Genesis 18:27

##### See now, I

"Please listen carefully: I" See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 12:11.

##### I have undertaken to speak

"Pardon me for being so bold as to speak to you" or "Excuse me for daring to speak"

##### to my Lord

"to you, my Lord"

##### only dust and ashes

"only a mortal man" or "as unimportant as dust and ashes"

#### Genesis 18:28

##### five less than fifty righteous

"only forty-five righteous people"

##### for lack of five

"if there are five fewer righteous people"

##### I will not destroy it

"I will not destroy Sodom"

#### Genesis 18:29

##### He spoke to him

"Abraham spoke to Yahweh"

##### for the forty's sake

"for the sake of the forty righteous people" or "if I find forty righteous people there"

##### He replied

"Yahweh answered"

##### I will not do it for the forty's sake

"I will not destroy the cities if I find forty righteous people there"

#### Genesis 18:30

##### thirty will be found there

"you will find thirty righteous people there"

#### Genesis 18:31

##### twenty will be found there

"you will find twenty righteous people there"

##### for the twenty's sake

"for the sake of the twenty righteous people" or "if I find twenty righteous people there"

#### Genesis 18:32

##### Perhaps ten will be found there

"Perhaps you will find ten righteous people there"

##### Perhaps ten

"Perhaps ten righteous people" or "ten good people"

##### Then he said

"And Yahweh answered"

##### for the ten's sake

"if I find ten righteous people there"

#### Genesis 18:33

##### Yahweh went on his way

"Yahweh departed" or "Yahweh continued on his journey"

Chapter 19

1The two angels came to Sodom in the evening, while Lot was sitting at the gate of Sodom. Lot saw them, arose to meet them, and bowed down with his face to the ground.2He said, "See now, my masters, please turn aside into your servant's house, stay for the night, and wash your feet. Then you can rise up early and go on your way." They replied, "No, we will spend the night in the town square."3But he urged them strongly, so they went with him, and entered into his house. He prepared a meal and baked unleavened bread, and they ate.4But before they lay down, the men of the city, the men of Sodom, surrounded the house, both young and old, all the men from every part of the city.5They called to Lot, and said to him, "Where are the men that came in to you tonight? Bring them out to us, that we may know them."6So Lot went out the door to them and shut the door after himself.7He said, "I beg you, my brothers, do not act so wickedly.8See now, I have two daughters who have not known any man. Please let me bring them out to you, and you do to them whatever is good in your eyes. Only do nothing to these men, because they have come under the shadow of my roof."9They said, "Stand back!" They also said, "This one came here to live as a foreigner, and now he has become our judge! Now we will deal worse with you than with them." They pressed hard against the man, against Lot, and came near to break down the door.10But the men reached out their hands and brought Lot into the house with them and shut the door.11Then Lot's visitors struck with blindness the men who were outside the door of the house, both small and great, so that they became exhausted when they were trying to find the door.

12Then the men said to Lot, "Do you have anyone else here? Any sons-in-law, your sons and your daughters, and whoever you have in the city, get them out of here.13For we are about to destroy this place, because the accusations against it before Yahweh have become so loud that he has sent us to destroy it."14Lot went out and spoke to his sons-in-law, the men who had promised to marry his daughters, and said, "Quick, get out of this place, for Yahweh is about to destroy the city." But to his sons-in-law he seemed to be joking.15When dawn came, the angels urged Lot, saying, "Get going, take your wife and your two daughters that are here, so you are not swept away in the punishment of the city."16But he lingered. So the men grabbed his hand, and the hand of his wife, and the hands of his two daughters, because Yahweh was merciful to him. They brought them out, and set them outside the city.17When they had brought them out, one of the men said, "Run for your lives! Do not look back, or stay anywhere on the plain. Escape to the mountains so you are not swept away."18Lot said to them, "No, please, my masters!19See now, your servant has found favor in your eyes, and you have shown me great kindness in saving my life, but I cannot escape to the mountains, because the disaster will overtake me, and I will die.20See now, the city over there is a little one. Please, let me escape there—Is it not a little one?—and my life will be saved."21He said to him, "Alright, I am granting this request also, that I will not destroy the city which you have mentioned.22Hurry! Escape there, for I cannot do anything until you arrive there." Therefore the city was named Zoar.

23The sun had risen upon the earth when Lot reached Zoar.24Then Yahweh rained down upon Sodom and Gomorrah sulfur and fire from Yahweh out of the sky.25He destroyed those cities, and all the plain, and all the inhabitants of the cities, and the plants that grew on the ground.26But Lot's wife, who was behind him, looked back, and she became a pillar of salt.

27Abraham got up early in the morning and went to the place where he had stood before Yahweh.28He looked down toward Sodom and Gomorrah and toward all the land of the plain. He looked and behold, smoke was rising from the land like the smoke of a furnace.

29So when God destroyed the cities of the plain, God called Abraham to mind. He sent Lot out of the midst of the destruction when he destroyed the cities in which Lot had lived.

30But Lot went up from Zoar to live in the mountains with his two daughters, because he was afraid to live in Zoar. So he lived in a cave, he and his two daughters.31The firstborn said to the younger, "Our father is old, and there is no man anywhere to lie with us according to the way of all the world.32Come, let us make our father drink wine, and we will lie with him, so that we may keep our family line alive through our father."33So they made their father drink wine that night. Then the firstborn went in and lay with her father; he did not know when she lay down, nor when she got up.34The next day the firstborn said to the younger, "Listen, here I lay last night with my father. Let us make him drink wine tonight also, and you should go and lie with him, so that we may keep our family line alive through our father."35So they made their father drink wine that night also, and the younger went and lay with him. He did not know when she lay down or when she got up.36So both the daughters of Lot conceived by their father.37The firstborn gave birth to a son, and named him Moab. He became the ancestor of the Moabites of today.38As for the younger daughter, she also gave birth to a son, and named him Ben-Ammi. He became the ancestor of the people of Ammon of today.

#### Genesis 19:1

##### The two angels

The two men who have gone to Sodom Genesis 18:22 are really angels.

##### the gate of Sodom

"the entrance to the city of Sodom." The city had a wall around it, and people had to go through a gate to get into it. This was a very important place in a city. Important people often spent time there.

##### bowed down with his face to the ground

He put his knees on the ground then touched his forehead and nose to the ground.

#### Genesis 19:2

##### my masters

This was a term of respect Lot used for the angels.

##### please turn aside into your servant's house

"Please come and stay in your servant's house"

##### wash your feet

People liked to wash their feet after traveling.

##### we will spend the night

When the two angels said this, they were referring only to themselves, not to Lot. The two of them planned to spend the night in the square. Some languages would use the exclusive form of "we" here.

##### town square

This is a public, outdoor place in the town.

#### Genesis 19:4

##### before they lay down

"before the people in Lot's house lay down to go to sleep"

##### the men of the city, the men of Sodom

"the men of the city, that is, the men of Sodom" or just "the men of the city of Sodom"

##### the house

"Lot's house"

##### both young and old

"from the youngest to the oldest." This means "men of all ages" and refers to the men of Sodom who were surrounding Lot's house.

#### Genesis 19:5

##### that came in to you

"that went into your house"

##### that we may know them

The phrase "know them" is a polite way of saying "have sexual relations with them."

#### Genesis 19:6

##### after himself

"behind him" or "after he went through"

#### Genesis 19:7

##### my brothers

"my friends"

#### Genesis 19:8

##### See now, I

The phrase "See now" indicates that what follows is a request for the hearer to pay attention. "Please listen carefully: I"

##### who have not known any man

This is a polite way of saying that the daughters had not had sexual relations with any man.

##### whatever is good in your eyes

"whatever you desire" or "whatever you think is right"

##### under the shadow of my roof

"into my house, and God expects me to protect them"

#### Genesis 19:9

##### Stand back!

"Step aside!" or "Get out of our way!"

##### This one came here to live as a foreigner

"This one came here as an outsider" or "This foreigner came to live here"

##### and now

"but even though he has no good reason to"

##### he has become our judge

"he acts as if he has the authority to tell us what is right and what is wrong"

##### Now we

"Because you are telling us that what we are doing is wrong, we"

##### we will deal worse with you than with them

"we will act more wickedly with you than we will with them"

##### They pressed hard against the man, against Lot, and came near to break down the door

Possible meanings are 1) "They kept coming closer to the man, to Lot, until they were close enough to break down the door" or 2) they physically pushed Lot up against the wall or door of the house and were about to break the door down.

##### the man ... Lot

This is two ways of referring to Lot.

#### Genesis 19:10

##### But the men

"But Lot's two guests" or "But the two angels"

##### the men reached out their hands and brought ... them and shut

'the men opened the door far enough so they could reach out their hands and pull ... them, and then they shut"

#### Genesis 19:11

##### Lot's visitors struck with blindness the men

"Lot's visitors blinded the men" or "they took away their sight"

##### both small and great

"men of all ages" or "men of every status"

#### Genesis 19:12

##### Then the men said

"Then the two men said" or "Then the angels said"

##### Do you have anyone else here?

"Are there any other members of your family in the city?" or "Do you have any other family members in this place?"

#### Genesis 19:13

##### we are about to destroy

The word "we" here is exclusive. Only the two angels would destroy the city; Lot would not destroy it. If your language has an exclusive form of "we," use it here.

##### the accusations against it before Yahweh have become so loud

"so many people have been telling Yahweh that the people of this city are doing evil things"

#### Genesis 19:14

##### his sons-in-law, the men who had promised to marry his daughters

"the men who were going to marry his daughters"

#### Genesis 19:15

##### When dawn came

"Just before the sun came up"

##### you are not swept away in the punishment of the city

"so Yahweh does not also destroy you when he punishes the people of this city"

##### of the city

Here "city" stands for the people.

#### Genesis 19:16

##### But he lingered

"But Lot hesitated" or "But Lot did not start to leave"

##### So the men grabbed

"So the two men grabbed" or "So the angels grabbed"

##### was merciful to him

"had compassion on Lot." Yahweh is described as being "merciful" because he was sparing the lives of Lot and his family instead of destroying them when he destroyed the people of Sodom for the wrong they had done.

#### Genesis 19:17

##### When they had brought them out

"When the two men had brought Lot's family out"

##### Run for your lives!

"Run away and save your lives!"

##### on the plain

This means the plain of the Jordan River. This refers to the general region of the Jordan River.

##### so you are not swept away

"or else God will destroy you along with the people of the city"

#### Genesis 19:19

##### See now, your servant

"Please listen carefully: your servant"

##### you have shown me great kindness in saving my life

"you have been very kind to me by saving my life"

##### I cannot escape to the mountains, because the disaster will overtake me, and I will die

"My family and I will certainly die when God destroys the people of Sodom, because the mountains are too far away for us to get there safely"

#### Genesis 19:20

##### See now, the city

"Please listen carefully: the city"

##### let me escape there—Is it not a little one?—and my life will be saved

"let me escape there. You can see how small it is. If you let us go there we will live"

##### let me escape there

"instead of destroying that city, let me escape there"

#### Genesis 19:21

##### I am granting this request also

"I will do what you have asked"

#### Genesis 19:22

##### cannot do anything

"cannot destroy the other cities"

##### Zoar

Translators may add a footnote that says "The name Zoar sounds like the Hebrew word that means 'little.' Lot called this town 'little' in Genesis 19:20."

#### Genesis 19:23

##### when Lot reached Zoar

"when Lot and his family arrived at Zoar"

#### Genesis 19:24

##### Yahweh rained down upon Sodom and Gomorrah sulfur and fire from Yahweh out of the sky

"Yahweh caused burning sulfur and fiery rain to fall from the sky onto Sodom and Gomorrah"

#### Genesis 19:25

##### those cities

This refers primarily to Sodom and Gomorrah, but also to three other towns.

##### the inhabitants of the cities

"the people who lived in the cities"

#### Genesis 19:26

##### she became a pillar of salt

"she became like a statue of salt" or "her body became like a tall stone of salt." Because she disobeyed the angel who told them not to look back at the city, God caused her to become something like a statue made out of rock salt.

#### Genesis 19:28

##### behold

The word "behold" draws attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### like the smoke of a furnace

"like the smoke from a very large fire"

#### Genesis 19:29

##### God called Abraham to mind

"God thought about Abraham and had mercy on him"

##### out of the midst of the destruction

"away from the destruction" or "away from danger"

#### Genesis 19:31

##### The firstborn ... the younger

"Lot's first daughter ... Lot's last daughter" or "The older daughter ... the younger daughter"

##### to lie with us

To have sexual relations with us

##### according to the way of all the world

"as people everywhere do"

#### Genesis 19:32

##### drink wine

"drink wine until he gets drunk" or "get drunk with wine"

##### we will lie with him

"we will have sexual relations with him"

##### so that we may keep our family line alive through our father

"so that we can bear children who will be our father's descendants"

#### Genesis 19:33

##### lay with her father

"had sexual relations with her father"

#### Genesis 19:34

##### I lay last night with my father ... lie with him

"I had sexual relations with my father ... have sexual relations with him"

##### drink wine

"drink wine until he gets drunk" or "get drunk with wine"

#### Genesis 19:35

##### lay with him

"had sexual relations with him"

#### Genesis 19:36

##### conceived by their father

"became pregnant by their father" or "conceived children with their father"

#### Genesis 19:37

##### He became

"He is"

##### the Moabites of today

"the Moab people who are now living"

##### of today

The word "today" refers to the time when the author of Genesis was living. The author was born and wrote this many years after Lot's family lived and died.

#### Genesis 19:38

##### Ben-Ammi

This is a male name.

##### the people of Ammon

"the descendants of Ammon" or "the Ammon people"

Chapter 20

1Abraham journeyed from there toward the land of the Negev, and lived between Kadesh and Shur. He was a foreigner living in Gerar.2Abraham said concerning Sarah his wife, "She is my sister." So Abimelek king of Gerar sent for Sarah and took her.3But God came to Abimelek in a dream in the night, and said to him, "Behold, you are a dead man because of the woman whom you have taken, for she is a man's wife."4Now Abimelek had not come near her and he said, "Lord, would you kill even a righteous nation?5Did he not himself say to me, 'She is my sister?' Even she herself said, 'He is my brother.' I have done this in the integrity of my heart and the innocence of my hands."6Then God said to him in the dream, "Yes, I also know that in the integrity of your heart you did this, and I also kept you from sinning against me. Therefore I did not allow you to touch her.7Therefore, return the man's wife, for he is a prophet. He will pray for you, and you will live. But if you do not restore her, know that you and all who are yours will surely die."

8Abimelek rose early in the morning and called all of his servants to himself. He told all these things to them, and the men were very afraid.9Then Abimelek called for Abraham and said to him, "What have you done to us? How have I sinned against you, that you have brought on me and on my kingdom a great sin? You have done to me deeds that ought not to be done."10Abimelek said to Abraham, "What prompted you to do this thing?"11Abraham said, "Because I thought, 'Surely there is no fear of God in this place, and they will kill me because of my wife.'12Besides, she is indeed my sister, the daughter of my father, but not the daughter of my mother; and she became my wife.13When God caused me to leave my father's house and travel from place to place, I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, "He is my brother."'"14Then Abimelek took sheep and cattle, and male slaves and female slaves, and gave them to Abraham. Then he returned Sarah, Abraham's wife, to him.15Abimelek said, "Look, my land is before you. Settle wherever it pleases you."16To Sarah he said, "Look, I have given your brother a thousand pieces of silver. It is to cover any offense against you in the eyes of all who are with you, and before everyone, you are completely made right."17Then Abraham prayed to God, and God healed Abimelek, his wife, and his female slaves so that they were able to have children.18For Yahweh had closed all the wombs of the household of Abimelek because of Sarah, Abraham's wife.

#### Genesis 20:1

##### Shur

This is a desert region on the eastern border of Egypt.

#### Genesis 20:2

##### sent for Sarah and took her

"made his men go get Sarah and bring her to him"

#### Genesis 20:3

##### God came to Abimelek

"God appeared to Abimelek"

##### Behold

"pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: "

##### you are a dead man

"you will certainly die soon" or "I will kill you"

##### a man's wife

"a married woman"

#### Genesis 20:4

##### Abimelek had not come near her

"Abimelek had not had sexual relations with Sarah"

##### even a righteous nation

"even a people who are innocent"

#### Genesis 20:5

##### Did he not himself say to me, 'She is my sister?' Even she herself said, 'He is my brother.'

"Did he himself not tell me that she is his sister? Even she herself told me that he is her brother."

##### I have done this in the integrity of my heart and the innocence of my hands

"I have done this with good intentions and actions" or "I have done this with no evil thoughts or actions"

#### Genesis 20:6

##### God said to him

"God said to Abimelech"

##### in the integrity of your heart you did this

"you did this with good intentions" or "you did this without evil intentions"

##### to touch her

"to sleep with her"

#### Genesis 20:7

##### the man's wife

"Abraham's wife"

##### you will live

"I will let you live"

##### all who are yours

"all of your people"

#### Genesis 20:8

##### He told all these things to them

"He told them everything that God had told him"

#### Genesis 20:9

##### What have you done to us?

"You have done something bad to us!" or "Look what you have done to us!"

##### to us

The word "us" here is exclusive and does not include Abraham and Sarah. If your language uses an exclusive form of "we" or "us," use it here.

##### How have I sinned against you, that you have brought ... sin?

"I have done nothing against you to cause you to bring ... sin."

##### on my kingdom

"on the people of my kingdom"

##### You have done to me deeds that ought not to be done

"You should not have done this to me"

#### Genesis 20:10

##### What prompted you to do this thing?

"Why did you tell me that Sarah is your sister?"

#### Genesis 20:11

##### Because I thought, 'Surely there is no fear of God in this place, and they will kill me because of my wife.'

"Because I thought that since no one here fears God, someone may kill me so they can take my wife."

##### fear of God

This means to deeply respect God and show that respect by obeying him.

#### Genesis 20:12

##### Besides, she is indeed my sister

"Also, it is true that Sarah is my sister" or "Also, Sarah really is my sister"

##### the daughter of my father, but not the daughter of my mother

"we have the same father, but we have different mothers"

#### Genesis 20:13

##### my father's house

"my father and the rest of my family" or "my father's household"

##### I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, "He is my brother."'

"I said to Sarah that I wanted her to be faithful to me by telling people everywhere we go that I am her brother"

#### Genesis 20:14

##### Abimelek took

"Abimelek brought some"

#### Genesis 20:15

##### Abimelek said

"Abimelek said to Abraham"

##### Look

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important"

##### my land is before you

This is a way of saying "I make all of my land available to you"

##### Settle wherever it pleases you

"Live wherever you want"

#### Genesis 20:16

##### It is to cover any offense against you in the eyes of all who are with you

"I am giving this to him, so that those who are with you will know that you have done nothing wrong"

##### before everyone, you are completely made right

"everyone will know that you are innocent"

#### Genesis 20:18

##### closed all the wombs of the household of Abimelek

"made all the women of Abimelek's household totally unable to have children"

##### because of Sarah, Abraham's wife

"because Abimelech had taken Abraham's wife Sarah"

Chapter 21

1Yahweh paid attention to Sarah as he had said he would, and Yahweh did for Sarah just as he had promised.2Sarah conceived and bore a son to Abraham in his old age, at the set time of which God had spoken to him.3Abraham named his son, the one who had been born to him, whom Sarah bore to him, Isaac.4Abraham circumcised his son Isaac when he was eight days old, just as God had commanded him.5Abraham was one hundred years old when his son Isaac was born to him.6Sarah said, "God has made me laugh; every one who hears will laugh with me."7She also said, "Who would have said to Abraham that Sarah would nurse children, and yet I have borne him a son in his old age!"

8The child grew and was weaned, and Abraham made a great feast on the day that Isaac was weaned.9Sarah saw the son of Hagar the Egyptian, whom she had borne to Abraham, mocking.10So she said to Abraham, "Drive out this slave woman and her son, for the son of this slave woman will not be heir with my son, with Isaac."11This thing was very grievous to Abraham because of his son.12But God said to Abraham, "Do not be grieved because of the young man and because of your servant girl. Listen to Sarah's words in all she says to you about this matter, because it is through Isaac that your descendants will be named.13I will also make the son of the servant woman into a nation, because he is your descendant."14Abraham rose up early in the morning, took bread and a skin of water, and gave it to Hagar, putting it on her shoulder. He gave her the boy and sent her away. She departed and wandered in the wilderness of Beersheba.15When the water in the waterskin was gone, she abandoned the child under one of the bushes.16Then she went, and sat down a short distance from him, about the distance of a bowshot away, for she said, "Let me not look upon the death of the child." As she sat there across from him, she lifted up her voice and wept.17God heard the voice of the young man, and the angel of God called to Hagar out of heaven, and said to her, "What troubles you, Hagar? Do not be afraid, for God has heard the voice of the young man where he is.18Get up, raise up the young man, and encourage him; for I will make him into a great nation."19Then God opened her eyes, and she saw a well of water. She went and filled the skin with water and gave the young man a drink.20God was with the young man, and he grew. He lived in the wilderness and became an archer.21He lived in the wilderness of Paran, and his mother got a wife for him from the land of Egypt.

22It came about at that time that Abimelek and Phicol the captain of his army spoke to Abraham, saying, "God is with you in all that you do.23Now therefore swear to me here by God that you will not deal falsely with me, nor with my offspring, nor with my descendants. Show to me and to the land in which you have been staying the same covenant faithfulness that I have shown to you."24Abraham said, "I swear."25Abraham also complained to Abimelek concerning a well of water that Abimelek's servants had seized from him.26Abimelek said, "I do not know who has done this thing. You did not tell me before now; I have not heard of it until today."27So Abraham took sheep and cattle and gave them to Abimelek, and the two men made a covenant.28Then Abraham set seven female lambs of the flock by themselves.29Abimelek said to Abraham, "What is the meaning of these seven female lambs that you have set by themselves?"30He replied, "These seven female lambs you will receive from my hand, so that it may be a witness for me, that I dug this well."31So he called that place Beersheba, because there they both swore an oath.32They made a covenant at Beersheba, and then Abimelek and Phicol, the captain of his army, returned to the land of the Philistines.33Abraham planted a tamarisk tree in Beersheba. There he called on the name of Yahweh, the eternal God.34Abraham remained as a foreigner in the land of the Philistines many days.

#### Genesis 21:1

##### Yahweh paid attention to Sarah

"Yahweh helped Sarah"

#### Genesis 21:2

##### bore a son to Abraham

"gave birth to Abraham's son"

##### in his old age

"when Abraham was very old"

##### at the set time of which God had spoken to him

"at the exact time that God had told him it would happen"

#### Genesis 21:3

##### Abraham named his son, the one who had been born to him, whom Sarah bore to him, Isaac

"Abraham named his newborn son, the one Sarah gave birth to, Isaac" or "Abraham named their newborn son Isaac"

#### Genesis 21:4

##### Abraham circumcised his son Isaac when he was eight days old

"When his son Isaac was eight days old, Abraham circumcised him"

#### Genesis 21:6

##### God has made me laugh

"God has caused me to laugh joyfully"

##### every one who hears

"everyone who hears about what God has done for me"

#### Genesis 21:7

##### Who would have said to Abraham that Sarah would nurse children

"No one would have ever said to Abraham that Sarah will nurse children"

##### nurse children

"feed a baby her own milk"

#### Genesis 21:8

##### The child grew and ... Isaac was weaned

"Isaac grew, and when he no longer needed his mother's milk, Abraham had a large feast"

#### Genesis 21:9

##### the son of Hagar the Egyptian, whom she had borne to Abraham

"Ishmael, the son of Hagar the Egyptian and Abraham"

##### mocking

"laughing at Isaac"

#### Genesis 21:10

##### she said to Abraham

"Sarah said to Abraham"

##### Drive out

"send away" or "get rid of"

##### this slave woman and her son

This refers to Hagar and Ishmael. Sarah probably did not refer to them by name because she was angry with them.

#### Genesis 21:11

##### This thing was very grievous to Abraham

"Abraham was very unhappy about what Sarah said"

##### because of his son

"because it was about his son." It is implied that this means his son, Ishmael.

#### Genesis 21:12

##### Listen to Sarah's words in all she says to you about this matter

"Do everything that Sarah says to you about them"

##### it is through Isaac that your descendants will be named

"Isaac is the one who will be the forefather of the descendants I promised to give you"

#### Genesis 21:14

##### took bread

These words could refer to 1) food in general or 2) bread specifically.

##### a skin of water

"a bag of water." The water container was made out of animal skin.

#### Genesis 21:16

##### about the distance of a bowshot away

This refers to the distance that a person could shoot an arrow with a bow. This is about 100 meters.

##### Let me not look upon the death of the child

"I do not want to watch the boy die"

##### she lifted up her voice and wept

"she cried out loudly and wept" or "she wept loudly"

#### Genesis 21:17

##### the voice of the young man

"the sound of Ishmael"

##### the angel of God

"a messenger from God" or "God's messenger"

##### out of heaven

Here "heaven" means the place where God lives.

##### What troubles you

"What is wrong" or "Why are you crying"

#### Genesis 21:18

##### raise up the young man

"help the young man stand up"

##### I will make him into a great nation

"I will make his descendants become a great nation" or "I will make him become the ancestor of a great nation"

#### Genesis 21:19

##### God opened her eyes, and she saw

"God caused Hagar to see" or "God showed her"

##### the skin

"the container made of skin" or "the bag"

##### the young man

"the boy" or "Ishmael"

#### Genesis 21:20

##### God was with the young man

"God guided the young man" or "God blessed the young man"

##### became an archer

"became very skilled at using a bow and arrows"

#### Genesis 21:22

##### It came about at that time

This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### Phicol

This is the name of a man.

##### captain of his army

"commander of his army"

##### his army

The word "his" refers to Abimelech.

##### God is with you in all that you do

"God blesses everything you do"

#### Genesis 21:23

##### swear to me here by God

"promise me with God as your witness"

##### that you will not deal falsely with me

"that you will not lie to me"

##### will not deal falsely ... with my descendants

"will deal honestly with me and my descendants"

##### Show to me ... covenant faithfulness that I have shown to you

"Be as faithful to me and to the people of the land as I have been to you"

#### Genesis 21:24

##### I swear

"I swear to be as faithful to you and your people as you have been to me"

#### Genesis 21:25

##### Abraham also complained to Abimelek

Possible meanings are 1) Abraham was complaining about what happened or 2) "Abraham also rebuked Abimelek"

##### concerning a well of water that Abimelek's servants had seized from him

"because Abimelek's servants had taken one of Abraham's wells"

#### Genesis 21:26

##### I have not heard of it until today

"This is the first time I have heard about it"

#### Genesis 21:27

##### Abraham took sheep and cattle and gave them to Abimelek

This is a sign of friendship and that Abraham agrees to make covenant with Abimelek

#### Genesis 21:30

##### you will receive

"you will take"

##### from my hand

"from me"

##### it may be a witness

The word "it" refers to the gift of seven lambs.

##### so that it may be a witness for me

"to prove to everyone"

#### Genesis 21:31

##### Beersheba

Translators may add a footnote saying "Beersheba can mean either "well of the oath" or "well of seven."

##### they both

"Abraham and Abimelech"

#### Genesis 21:33

##### a tamarisk tree

This is an evergreen tree that can grow in the desert. It can be stated more generally. Alternate translation: "a tree"

##### the eternal God

"the God who lives forever"

#### Genesis 21:34

##### many days

"for a long time"

Chapter 22

1It came about after these things that God tested Abraham. He said to him, "Abraham!" Abraham said, "Here I am."2Then God said, "Take your son, your only son, whom you love, Isaac, and go to the land of Moriah. Offer him there as a burnt offering upon one of the mountains there, which I will tell you about."3So Abraham rose early in the morning, saddled his donkey, and took two of his young men with him, along with Isaac his son. He cut the wood for the burnt offering, then set out on his journey to the place that God had told him about.4On the third day Abraham looked up and saw the place afar off.5Abraham said to his young men, "Stay here with the donkey, and I and the young man will go over there. We will worship and come again to you."6Then Abraham took the wood for the burnt offering and put it on Isaac his son. He took in his own hand the fire and the knife; and they went both of them together.7Isaac spoke to Abraham his father and said, "My father," and he said, "Here I am, my son." He said, "See, here is the fire and the wood, but where is the lamb for the burnt offering?"8Abraham said, "God himself will provide the lamb for the burnt offering, my son." So they went on, both of them together.

9When they came to the place that God had told him about, Abraham built an altar there and laid the wood on it. Then he bound Isaac his son, and laid him on the altar, on top of the wood.10Abraham reached out with his hand and took up the knife to kill his son.11Then the angel of Yahweh called to him from heaven and said, "Abraham, Abraham!" and he said, "Here I am."12He said, "Do not lay your hand upon the young man, nor do anything to harm him, for now I know that you fear God, seeing that you have not withheld your son, your only son, from me."13Abraham looked up and behold, behind him was a ram caught in the bushes by his horns. Abraham went and took the ram and offered him up as a burnt offering instead of his son.14So Abraham named that place, "Yahweh will provide," and it is said to this day, "On the mountain of Yahweh it will be provided."15The angel of Yahweh called to Abraham a second time from heaven16and said—this is Yahweh's declaration—by myself I have sworn that because you have done this thing, and have not withheld your son, your only son,17I will surely bless you and I will greatly multiply your descendants as the stars of the heavens, and as the sand which is upon the seashore; and your descendants will possess the gate of their enemies.18Through your offspring all the nations of the earth will be blessed, because you have obeyed my voice."19So Abraham returned to his young men, and they departed and went together to Beersheba, and he lived at Beersheba.

20It came about after these things that Abraham was told, "Milkah has borne children, as well, to your brother Nahor."21They were Uz his firstborn, Buz his brother, Kemuel the father of Aram,22Kesed, Hazo, Pildash, Jidlaph, and Bethuel.23Bethuel became the father of Rebekah. These were the eight children that Milkah bore to Nahor, Abraham's brother.24His concubine, whose name was Reumah, also bore Tebah, Gaham, Tahash, and Maakah.

#### Genesis 22:1

##### after these things

This phrase refers to the events in chapter 21.

##### God tested Abraham

God tested Abraham's faithfulness"

##### Here I am

"Yes, I am listening" or "Yes, what is it?"

#### Genesis 22:2

##### your only son

"your only son whom I have promised"

##### the land of Moriah

"the land called Moriah"

#### Genesis 22:3

##### saddled his donkey

"loaded his donkey" or "put on his donkey what he needed for the journey"

##### young men

"servants"

#### Genesis 22:4

##### On the third day

"After traveling for three days"

##### saw the place afar off

"saw far away the place that God had spoken of"

#### Genesis 22:5

##### We will worship

The word "we" refers only to Abraham and Isaac, but not to the young men.

##### come again to you

"return to you"

#### Genesis 22:6

##### put it on Isaac his son

"had Isaac, his son, carry it"

##### He took in his own hand

"Abraham himself carried"

##### the fire

"something for starting a fire"

##### they went both of them together

"they left together" or "the two of them went together"

#### Genesis 22:7

##### My father

This is a loving way for a son to speak to his father.

##### Here I am

"Yes, I am listening" or "Yes, what is it?"

##### my son

This is a loving way for a father to speak to his son.

#### Genesis 22:8

##### God himself

Here "himself" emphasizes that it is God who will provide the lamb.

##### will provide

"will give us"

#### Genesis 22:9

##### he bound

"he tied up"

##### on the altar, on top of the wood

"on top of the wood that was on the altar"

#### Genesis 22:11

##### the angel of Yahweh

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh made himself look like an angel or 2) this was one of Yahweh's angels or 3) this was a special messenger from God (some scholars think it was Jesus). Since the phrase is not well understood, it is best to simply translate it as "the angel of Yahweh" using the normal word that you use for "angel."

##### from heaven

This refers to the place where God lives.

#### Genesis 22:12

##### Do not lay your hand upon the young man, nor do anything to harm him

"Do not hurt the boy in any way"

##### now I know ... from me

The words "I" and "me" refer to Yahweh. When translating what is in the quote, do it as the angel of Yahweh did and use the words "I" and "me" when referring to Yahweh.

##### you fear God

This refers to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him.

##### you have not withheld your son ... from me

"you have not held back your son ... from me." or "you were willing to offer your son ... to me"

#### Genesis 22:13

##### behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### was a ram caught in the bushes by his horns

"was a ram whose horns were stuck in the bushes" or "was a ram stuck in the bushes"

#### Genesis 22:14

##### to this day

"even now." This means even to the time that the author was writing this book.

##### it will be provided

"he will provide"

#### Genesis 22:15

##### a second time

"again"

#### Genesis 22:16

##### said—this is Yahweh's declaration

"spoke this message from Yahweh" or "declared these words of Yahweh." This is a formal way of saying that the words that follow come directly from Yahweh.

##### by myself I have sworn

"I have promised and I am my witness." To swear means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made. There is nothing more powerful for Yahweh to swear by than himself.

##### you have done this thing

"you obeyed me"

##### have not withheld your son

"have not kept back your son" or "were willing to offer your son to me"

#### Genesis 22:17

##### surely bless

"certainly bless"

##### I will greatly multiply your descendants

"I will cause your descendants to increase again and again" or "I will cause your descendants to be very many"

##### as the stars of the heavens, and as the sand which is upon the seashore

"beyond what you can count"

##### as the stars of the heavens

Here the word "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars.

##### will possess the gate of their enemies

"will completely triumph over their enemies"

#### Genesis 22:18

##### all the nations of the earth will be blessed

"I, the Lord, will bless all the people living everywhere"

##### nations of the earth

Here "nations" stands for the people of the nations.

##### you have obeyed my voice

"you have obeyed what I said" or "you have obeyed me"

#### Genesis 22:19

##### Abraham returned

"Abraham and his son went back"

##### they departed

"they left that place"

##### he lived at Beersheba

"Abraham and his people stayed in Beersheba"

#### Genesis 22:20

##### Abraham was told

"someone told Abraham"

##### Milkah has borne children, as well

"Milkah has also borne children"

##### Milkah

This is the name of a woman.

#### Genesis 22:21

##### They were Uz his firstborn, Buz his brother

"The name of his firstborn was Uz, and the names of the rest of his children were Buz his brother"

##### Uz ... Buz ... Kemuel ... Aram

These are all names of men. Translate this so that it is clear that all of these except Aram are the sons of Nahor and Milkah.

#### Genesis 22:22

##### Kesed, Hazo, Pildash, Jidlaph, and Bethuel

These are all names of men. Translate this so that it is clear that all of these are the sons of Nahor and Milkah.

#### Genesis 22:23

##### Bethuel became the father of Rebekah

"Later Bethel became the father of Rebekah"

##### These were the eight children that Milkah bore to Nahor, Abraham's brother

"These were the eight children of Milkah and Nahor, Abraham's brother." This refers to the children that were listed in Genesis 22:21-22.

#### Genesis 22:24

##### His concubine

"Nahor's concubine"

##### Reumah

This is the name of a woman.

##### also bore

"also gave birth to"

##### Tebah, Gaham, Tahash, and Maakah

These are all names of men.

Chapter 23

1Sarah lived 127 years. These were the years of the life of Sarah.2Sarah died in Kiriath Arba, that is, Hebron, in the land of Canaan. Abraham mourned and wept for Sarah.3Then Abraham rose up and went from his dead wife, and spoke to the sons of Heth, saying,4"I am a foreigner and sojourner among you. Please grant me a property for a burial place among you, so that I may bury my dead."5The sons of Heth answered Abraham, saying,6"Listen to us, my master. You are a prince of God among us. Bury your dead in the choicest of our tombs. None of us will refuse you his tomb, so that you may bury your dead."7Abraham arose and bowed down to the people of the land, to the sons of Heth.8He spoke to them, saying, "If you agree that I should bury my dead, then hear me and plead with Ephron son of Zohar, for me.9Ask him to sell me the cave of Machpelah, which he owns, which is at the end of his field. For the full price let him sell it to me publicly as a property for a burial place."10Now Ephron was sitting among the sons of Heth, and Ephron the Hittite answered Abraham in the hearing of the sons of Heth, of all those who had come into the gate of his city, saying,11"No, my master, hear me. I give you the field, and the cave that is in it. I give it to you in the presence of the sons of my people. I give it to you to bury your dead."12Then Abraham bowed down before the people of the land.13He spoke to Ephron in the hearing of the people of the land, saying, "But if you are willing, please hear me. I will pay for the field. Take the money from me, and I will bury my dead there."14Ephron answered Abraham, saying,15"Please, my master, listen to me. A piece of land worth four hundred shekels of silver, what is that between me and you? Bury your dead."16Abraham listened to Ephron and Abraham weighed out to Ephron the amount of silver that he had spoken in the hearing of the sons of Heth, four hundred shekels of silver, according to the standard measurement of the merchants.

17So the field of Ephron, which was in Machpelah, which was next to Mamre, that is, the field, the cave that was in it, and all the trees that were in the field and all around its border, passed18to Abraham by purchase in the presence of the sons of Heth, before all those who had come into the gate of his city.19After this, Abraham buried Sarah his wife in the cave of the field of Machpelah, which is next to Mamre, that is, Hebron, in the land of Canaan.20So the field and the cave in it passed to Abraham as a property for a burial place from the sons of Heth.

#### Genesis 23:2

##### Kiriath Arba

This is the name of a city.

##### Abraham mourned and wept for Sarah

"Abraham was very sad and cried because Sarah died"

#### Genesis 23:3

##### rose up and went from his dead wife

"got up and left his wife's body"

##### the sons of Heth

"the descendants of Heth" or "the Hittites"

#### Genesis 23:4

##### among you

This idea may be expressed in terms of location. "in your country" or "here"

##### Please grant me a property

"Sell me some land" or "Allow me to buy a piece of land"

##### my dead

"my dead wife" or "my wife who has died"

#### Genesis 23:6

##### my master

This phrase is used to show respect to Abraham.

##### a prince of God

"a powerful man" or "a mighty leader."

##### your dead

"your wife who has died" or "your wife"

##### the choicest of our tombs

"the best of our burial places"

##### refuse you his tomb

"withhold his burial place from you" or "refuse to give to you his tomb"

#### Genesis 23:7

##### bowed down

This means to bend over or kneel down very low to humbly express respect and honor toward someone.

#### Genesis 23:8

##### Ephron ... Zohar

These are names of men.

#### Genesis 23:9

##### the cave of Machpelah

"the cave in Machpela." Machpela was the name of an area or region. Ephron owned a field in Machpela and the cave that was in the field.

##### which is at the end of his field

This also tells something about the cave. The cave was at the end of Ephron's field.

##### sell it to me publicly

"sell it to me in front of you all" or "sell it to me in your presence"

##### as a property

"as a piece of land that I may own and use"

#### Genesis 23:10

##### Now Ephron was sitting among the sons of Heth

Here "Now" is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Ephron.

##### in the hearing of the sons of Heth

"so that all the sons of Heth could hear him" or "while all the sons of Heth were listening"

##### gate of his city

The city gate was where the leaders of the city would meet to make important decisions.

#### Genesis 23:11

##### in the presence of the sons of my people

"with my fellow countrymen as my witnesses"

##### sons of my people

This means "my fellow countrymen" or "my fellow Hittites"

##### I give it to you to bury your dead

"I give it to you. Bury your dead"

#### Genesis 23:13

##### in the hearing of the people of the land

"so that the people who lived in the area could hear" or "while the people who lived in the area were listening"

##### But if you are willing

"No, but if you are willing" or "No, but if you agree with this"

##### I will pay for the field

"I will give you money for the field"

#### Genesis 23:15

##### Please, my master, listen to me

"Hear me, my master" or "Listen to me, kind sir"

##### A piece of land worth four hundred shekels of silver, what is that between me and you?

"The piece of land is worth only four hundred shekels of silver. For you and me, that is nothing."

##### four hundred shekels of silver

This is about 4.5 kilograms of silver.

#### Genesis 23:16

##### Abraham weighed out to Ephron the amount of silver

"Abraham weighed the silver and gave Ephron the amount" or "Abraham counted out to Ephron the amount of silver"

##### the sons of Heth

"the descendants of Heth"

##### according to the standard measurement of the merchants

"He weighed the silver the same way that the merchants used to weigh it"

#### Genesis 23:17

##### Mamre

This was another name for the city of Hebron. It may have been named after Mamre, the friend of Abraham who lived there.

##### that is, the field, the cave that was in it, and all the trees

This phrase explains what the author meant when he wrote "the field of Ephron." It was not only the field, but also the cave and trees in the field.

##### passed

"became property that belonged"

#### Genesis 23:18

##### to Abraham by purchase

These words complete the idea that begins with the word "passed" in verse 17. "became Abraham's possession when he purchased it" or "belonged to Abraham after he bought it"

##### in the presence of the sons of Heth

"with the people of Heth watching as witnesses"

#### Genesis 23:19

##### After this

"After he bought the field"

##### the cave of the field of Machpelah

"the cave in the field in Machpelah"

#### Genesis 23:20

##### passed to Abraham as a property for a burial place from the sons of Heth

"became Abraham's property for a burial ground when he bought it from the sons of Heth"

Chapter 24

1Now Abraham was very old and Yahweh had blessed Abraham in all things.2Abraham said to his servant, the one who was the oldest of his household and who was in charge of all that he had, "Put your hand under my thigh3and I will make you swear by Yahweh, the God of heaven and the God of the earth, that you will not get a wife for my son from the daughters of the Canaanites, among whom I make my home.4But you will go to my country, and to my relatives, and get a wife for my son Isaac."5The servant said to him, "What if the woman will not be willing to follow me to this land? Must I take your son back to the land from which you came?"6Abraham said to him, "Make sure that you do not take my son back there!7Yahweh, the God of heaven, who took me from my father's house and from the land of my relatives, and who promised me with a solemn oath saying, 'To your descendants I will give this land,' he will send his angel before you, and you will get a wife for my son from there.8But if the woman is not willing to follow you, then you will be free from this oath of mine. Only you are not to take my son back there."9So the servant put his hand under the thigh of Abraham his master, and swore to him concerning this matter.

10The servant took ten of his master's camels and departed. He also took with him all kinds of goods from his master. He departed and went to the region of Aram Naharaim, to the city of Nahor.11He made the camels kneel down outside the city by the well of water. It was evening, the time that women go out to draw water.12Then he said, "Yahweh, God of my master Abraham, grant me success today and show covenant faithfulness to my master Abraham.13Look, here I am standing by the spring of water, and the daughters of the men of the city are coming out to draw water.14Let it happen like this. When I say to a young woman, 'Please lower your pitcher so that I may drink,' and she says to me, 'Drink, and I will water your camels too,' then let her be the one that you have appointed for your servant Isaac. By this I will know that you have shown covenant faithfulness to my master."15It came about that even before he had finished speaking, behold, Rebekah came out with her water pitcher on her shoulder. Rebekah was born to Bethuel son of Milkah, the wife of Nahor, Abraham's brother.16The young woman was very beautiful and a virgin. No man had ever known her. She went down to the spring, filled her pitcher and came up.17Then the servant ran to meet her and said, "Please give me a little drink of water from your pitcher."18She said, "Drink, my master," and she quickly let down her pitcher on her hand, and gave him a drink.19When she had finished giving him a drink, she said, "I will draw water for your camels also, until they have finished drinking."20So she hurried and emptied her pitcher into the trough, then ran again to the well to draw water, and drew water for all his camels.21The man watched her in silence to see whether Yahweh had prospered his journey or not.22As the camels finished drinking, the man brought out a gold nose ring weighing half a shekel, and two gold bracelets for her arms weighing ten shekels,23and asked, "Whose daughter are you? Tell me please, is there room in your father's house for us to spend the night?"24She said to him, "I am the daughter of Bethuel son of Milkah, whom she bore to Nahor."25She also said to him, "We have plenty of both straw and feed, and also room for you to spend the night."26Then the man bowed down and worshiped Yahweh.27He said, "Blessed be Yahweh, the God of my master Abraham, who has not abandoned his covenant faithfulness and his trustworthiness toward my master. As for me, Yahweh has led me directly to the house of my master's relatives."

28Then the young woman ran and told her mother's household about all of these things.29Now Rebekah had a brother, and his name was Laban. Laban ran to the man who was out at the road by the spring.30When he had seen the nose ring and the bracelets on his sister's arms, and when he had heard the words of Rebekah his sister, "This is what the man said to me," he went to the man, and, behold, he was standing by the camels at the spring.31Then Laban said, "Come, you blessed of Yahweh. Why are you standing outside? I have prepared the house, and a place for the camels."32So the man came to the house and he unloaded the camels. The camels were given straw and feed, and water was provided to wash his feet and the feet of the men who were with him.33They set food before him to eat, but he said, "I will not eat until I have said what I have to say." So Laban said, "Speak on."34He said, "I am Abraham's servant.35Yahweh has blessed my master very much and he has become great. He has given him sheep and cattle, silver and gold, male servants and female servants, and camels and donkeys.36Sarah, my master's wife, bore a son to my master when she was old, and he has given everything that he owns to him.37My master made me swear, saying, 'You must not get a wife for my son from the daughters of the Canaanites, in whose land I make my home.38Instead, you must go to my father's family, and to my relatives, and get a wife for my son.'39I said to my master, 'Perhaps the woman will not follow me.'40But he said to me, 'Yahweh, before whom I walk, will send his angel with you and he will prosper your way, so that you will get a wife for my son from among my relatives and from my father's family line.41But you will be free from my oath if you come to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath.'42So I arrived today at the spring, and said, 'O Yahweh, God of my master Abraham, please, if you do indeed intend to make my journey successful—43here I am, standing by the spring of water—let the young woman who comes out to draw water, the woman to whom I say, "Please give me a little water from your pitcher to drink,"44the woman who says to me, "Drink, and I will also draw water for your camels"—let her be the woman whom you, Yahweh, have chosen for my master's son.'45Even before I had finished speaking in my heart, behold, Rebekah came out with her pitcher on her shoulder and she went down to the spring and drew water. So I said to her, 'Please give me a drink.'46She quickly lowered her pitcher from her shoulder and said, 'Drink, and I will give your camels water also.' So I drank, and she watered the camels also.47I asked her and said, 'Whose daughter are you?' She said, 'The daughter of Bethuel, Nahor's son, whom Milkah bore to him.' Then I put the ring in her nose and the bracelets on her arms.48Then I bowed down and worshiped Yahweh, and blessed Yahweh, the God of my master Abraham, who had led me by the way that is right to find the daughter of my master's relative for his son.49Now therefore, if you are prepared to show steadfast love and faithfulness to my master, tell me. But if not, tell me, so that I may turn to the right hand or to the left."

50Then Laban and Bethuel answered and said, "The thing has come from Yahweh; we cannot speak to you either bad or good.51Look, Rebekah is before you. Take her and go, so she may be the wife of your master's son, as Yahweh has spoken."52When Abraham's servant heard their words, he bowed down to the ground before Yahweh.53The servant brought out articles of silver and articles of gold, and clothing, and gave them to Rebekah. He also gave precious gifts to her brother and to her mother.54Then he and the men who were with him ate and drank. They stayed there overnight, and when they arose in the morning, he said, "Send me away to my master."55Her brother and her mother said, "Let the young woman stay with us for a few more days, at least ten. After that she may go."56But he said to them, "Do not hinder me, since Yahweh has prospered my way. Send me on my way so that I may go to my master."57They said, "We will call the young woman and ask her."58So they called Rebekah and asked her, "Will you go with this man?" She replied, "I will go."59So they sent their sister Rebekah, along with her female servant, on her journey with Abraham's servant and his men.60They blessed Rebekah, and said to her,"Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands,and may your descendants possessthe gate of those who hate them."

61Then Rebekah arose, and she and her servant girls mounted the camels, and followed the man. Thus the servant took Rebekah, and went his way.

62Now Isaac was living in the Negev, and had just returned from Beer Lahai Roi.63Isaac went out to meditate in the field in the evening. When he looked up and saw, behold, there were camels coming!64Rebekah looked, and when she saw Isaac, she jumped down from the camel.65She said to the servant, "Who is that man who is walking in the field to meet us?" The servant said, "It is my master." So she took her veil, and covered herself.66The servant recounted to Isaac all the things that he had done.67Then Isaac brought her into his mother Sarah's tent and took Rebekah, and she became his wife, and he loved her. So Isaac was comforted after his mother's death.

#### Genesis 24:1

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the story.

#### Genesis 24:2

##### Put your hand under my thigh

Abraham was about to ask the servant to swear to do something. Putting his hand under Abraham's thigh would show that he would certainly do what he would swear to do.

#### Genesis 24:3

##### swear by Yahweh

"promise me with Yahweh as your witness"

##### the God of heaven and the God of the earth

"the God of everything in heaven and earth"

##### from the daughters of the Canaanites

"from the Canaanite women" or "from the Canaanites." This refers to Canaanite females.

##### among whom I make my home

"among whom we live"

#### Genesis 24:4

##### But you will go

"Swear that you will go" or "But go"

##### my relatives

"my family"

#### Genesis 24:5

##### What if

"What should I do if"

##### will not be willing to follow me

"will not follow me" or "refuses to come back with me"

##### Must I take your son back to the land from which you came

"Should I take you son to live in the land from which you came"

#### Genesis 24:7

##### who took me from my father's house

"who took me from my father and the rest of my family"

##### saying, 'To your descendants I will give this land,'

"saying that he would give this land to my descendants"

##### he will send his angel

The words "he" and "his" refer to Yahweh.

#### Genesis 24:8

##### But if the woman is not willing to follow you

"But if the woman refuses to come with you."

##### you will be free from this oath of mine

"you will not have to do what you swore to me that you would do"

#### Genesis 24:9

##### swore to him

"made an oath to him"

##### concerning this matter

"concerning Abraham's request" or "that he would do what Abraham said"

#### Genesis 24:10

##### He also took with him all kinds of goods from his master

This means he also took many good things that his master wanted to give to the woman's family.

##### departed and went

"set out and went" or "he left and went"

##### the city of Nahor

Possible meanings are 1) the city where Nahor lived" or 2) "the city called Nahor."

#### Genesis 24:11

##### He made the camels kneel down

Camels are tall animals with long legs. He made them bend their legs and lower their bodies to the ground. "He made the camels lie down"

##### draw water

"get water"

#### Genesis 24:12

##### Then he said

"Then the servant said"

##### grant me success today and show covenant faithfulness to my master Abraham

"Show covenant faithfulness to my master Abraham by granting me success today"

##### grant me success

"help me to succeed" or "make me able to do what I have come here to do"

#### Genesis 24:13

##### Look, here I am standing

"You can see me standing here"

##### the spring of water

"the spring" or "the well"

##### the daughters of the men of the city

"the young women of the city"

#### Genesis 24:14

##### Let it happen like this

"Let it happen this way" or "Make this happen"

##### When I say to a young woman, 'Please lower your pitcher so that I may drink,'

"When I ask a young woman to let me have a drink of water from her jar"

##### pitcher

a medium-size jar made of clay used for holding and pouring liquids

##### that you have shown covenant faithfulness to my master

"that you have been faithful to the covenant you have with my master Abraham" or "you have been faithful to my master Abraham"

#### Genesis 24:15

##### behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### Rebekah was born to Bethuel son of Milkah, the wife of Nahor, Abraham's brother

"Rebekah's father was Bethuel. Bethuel's parents were Milkah and Nahor. Nahor was Abraham's brother"

#### Genesis 24:16

##### No man had ever known her

This is a polite way of saying that the she had not had sexual relations with any man. You may need to use another euphemism in your language.

##### She went down to the spring ... and came up

The spring was somewhere lower in elevation than where the servant was standing.

#### Genesis 24:17

##### to meet her

"to meet the young woman"

#### Genesis 24:18

##### my master

"sir." Here the woman uses this term of respect to refer to the man, though she is not his slave.

#### Genesis 24:20

##### So she hurried and emptied her pitcher

"So she quickly emptied her pitcher"

##### the trough

"the animals' water trough." A trough is a long open container for holding water for animals to drink.

#### Genesis 24:21

##### The man

"The servant"

##### watched her

"watched Rebekah" or "watched the young woman"

##### to see

"to know" or "to determine"

##### had prospered his journey

"was showing him the woman who would become Isaac's wife"

##### or not

"or not prospered his journey"

#### Genesis 24:22

##### a gold nose ring weighing half a shekel

"an expensive gold nose ring"

##### two gold bracelets for her arms weighing ten shekels

"two large gold bracelets for her arms"

#### Genesis 24:23

##### Whose daughter are you

"Who is your father"

##### is there room in your father's house

"is there a place in your father's house"

##### for us

Apparently other men went on this journey with Abraham's servant. Here "us" refers to the servant and those traveling with him, but not to those to whom he was speaking.

##### to spend the night

"to stay tonight" or "to stay for the night"

#### Genesis 24:24

##### She said

"Rebekah said" or "the young woman said"

##### to him

"to the servant"

##### I am the daughter of Bethuel son of Milkah, whom she bore to Nahor

"Bethuel is my father, and his parents are Milkah and Nahor"

#### Genesis 24:25

##### We have plenty of both straw and feed

"We have plenty of straw and feed for the camels"

##### for you to spend the night

"for you to stay tonight" or "where you can stay for the night"

##### for you

Here "you" refers to the servant and those traveling with him.

#### Genesis 24:26

##### the man

"the servant"

#### Genesis 24:27

##### has not abandoned his covenant faithfulness and his trustworthiness toward my master

"has not stopped being faithful to his covenant and trustworthy toward my master" or "has not stopped being faithful and trustworthy to my master"

##### my master's relatives

"my master's family" or "my master's clan"

#### Genesis 24:28

##### ran and told her mother's household

"ran to the house and told her mother and everyone there"

##### all of these things

"everything that had just happened"

#### Genesis 24:29

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here the author tells background information about Rebekah. The author introduces her brother, Laban, to the story.

#### Genesis 24:30

##### When he had seen the nose ring ... and when he had heard the words of Rebekah his sister

These things happened before he ran out to the man. This tells why Laban ran out to the man.

##### when he had heard the words of Rebekah his sister, "This is what the man said to me,"

"when he had heard his sister Rebekah tell what the man had said to her"

##### behold, he

The word "behold" here adds emphasis to what follows. "it was just as she had said: he"

#### Genesis 24:31

##### you blessed of Yahweh

"you whom Yahweh has blessed"

##### you

Here the word "you" refers to Abraham's servant.

##### Why are you standing outside?

"You do not need to stay outside."

#### Genesis 24:32

##### he unloaded the camels

"Laban's servants unloaded the camels" or "the camels were unloaded"

##### The camels were given straw and feed, and water was provided

"Laban's servants gave straw and feed to the camels, and they provided water"

##### to wash his feet ... him

"for Abraham's servant and the men who were with him to wash their feet"

#### Genesis 24:33

##### They set

Here, the word "they" refers to Laban's family members or to the household servants.

##### set food before him

"gave food to the servant"

##### said what I have to say

"spoken my words" or "told you why I am here"

#### Genesis 24:35

##### he has become great

Here the word "he" refers to Abraham.

##### become great

"become very wealthy"

##### He has given

The word "he" refers to Yahweh.

#### Genesis 24:36

##### bore a son to my master

"gave birth to a son"

##### he has given ... to him

"my master has given ... to his son"

#### Genesis 24:37

##### My master made me swear, saying

"My master made me swear that I would do what he told me to do. He said"

##### from the daughters of the Canaanites

"from the Canaanite women" or "from the Canaanites"

##### in whose land I make my home

"among whom we live"

#### Genesis 24:38

##### to my relatives

"to my own clan"

#### Genesis 24:39

##### Perhaps the woman will not follow me.

"What if the woman will not come back with me?" or "What should I do if the woman will not come back with me?"

#### Genesis 24:40

##### before whom I walk

"whom I serve"

##### he will prosper your way

"he will make your journey successful"

#### Genesis 24:41

##### you will be free from my oath

"you will not have to do what you swore to me that you would do"

##### if you come to my relatives

"if you arrive at my relatives' home" or "if you go to my relatives"

#### Genesis 24:42

##### the spring

"the well"

#### Genesis 24:43

##### let the young woman who comes ... the woman to whom I say

The servant goes back to stating his request. These are the first two things he has to say about the woman whom he hopes will come.

#### Genesis 24:44

##### let her be the woman

The servant finishes his request.

#### Genesis 24:45

##### speaking in my heart

"praying" or "praying quietly"

##### behold, Rebekah came

"suddenly Rebekah came" or "I was surprised because I saw Rebekah coming"

#### Genesis 24:47

##### ring ... bracelets

In this story, all of these items were made of gold. See how you translated these in Genesis 24:22.

#### Genesis 24:48

##### led me by the way that is right

"brought me here"

##### who had led me

"because Yahweh led me"

##### my master's relative

This refers to Bethuel, the son of Abraham's brother Nahor.

#### Genesis 24:49

##### Now therefore

"Now." Here "Now" does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

##### if you are prepared to show steadfast love and faithfulness to my master, tell me

"tell me if you will love my master and be faithful to him by giving Rebekah to be his son's wife"

##### you

The word "you" refers to Laban and Bethuel.

##### But if not

"But if you are not prepared to treat my master with steadfast love and faithfulness"

##### so that I may turn to the right hand or to the left

"so that I may continue on my journey"

#### Genesis 24:50

##### The thing has come from Yahweh

"Yahweh has caused all of this to happen"

##### we cannot speak to you either bad or good

"we dare not judge what Yahweh is doing"

#### Genesis 24:51

##### Rebekah is before you

"Here is Rebekah"

#### Genesis 24:52

##### their words

"what Laban and Bethuel said"

##### he bowed down

Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.

#### Genesis 24:53

##### articles of silver and articles of gold

"silver and gold items" or "things made of silver and gold"

##### precious gifts

"expensive gifts" or "valuable gifts"

#### Genesis 24:54

##### he and the men who were with him

"Abraham's servant and his men"

##### stayed there overnight

"slept there that night"

##### arose in the morning

"got up the next morning"

##### Send me away

"Let me leave and return"

#### Genesis 24:55

##### a few more days, at least ten

"at least ten more days"

#### Genesis 24:56

##### he said

"Abraham's servant said"

##### to them

"to Rebekah's brother and mother"

##### Do not hinder me

"Do not delay me" or "Do not make me wait"

##### Yahweh has prospered my way

"Yahweh has caused me to succeed in the purpose my journey"

##### Send me on my way

"Allow me to leave"

#### Genesis 24:59

##### So they sent their sister Rebekah

"So the family sent Rebekah"

##### her female servant

This refers to the female servant who had fed Rebekah when she was a baby, cared for her when she was a child, and still served her.

#### Genesis 24:60

##### may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands

"may you be the ancestor of millions of people" or "may you have very many descendants"

##### may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them

"may your descendants completely defeat those who hate them"

#### Genesis 24:61

##### Then Rebekah arose, and she and her servant girls mounted the camels

"Then Rebekah and her servant girls went and got on the camels"

##### Thus the servant took Rebekah, and went his way

"In this way Abraham's servant took Rebekah with him and returned to where he had come from"

#### Genesis 24:62

##### Now

This word marks a change in the story. It was telling about the servant finding a wife, and now it will tell about Isaac.

##### Beer Lahai Roi

This is the name of a water well in the Negev. See how you translated it in Genesis 16:14.

#### Genesis 24:63

##### Isaac went out to meditate in the field in the evening

"One evening Isaac went out to the field to think." This must have been a long time after the servant and Rebekah left her home since they had to travel a long distance.

##### When he looked up and saw, behold, there were camels coming!

"When he looked up he was surprised to see camels coming"

#### Genesis 24:64

##### Rebekah looked

"Rebekah looked up"

##### she jumped down from the camel

"she quickly got off the camel"

#### Genesis 24:65

##### So she took her veil, and covered herself

"So she covered her face with her veil." This is a sign of respect and modesty towards the man she will marry. The full meaning of this can be made explicit.

##### veil

a piece of cloth used to cover a person's head, shoulders and face

#### Genesis 24:67

##### took Rebekah, and she became his wife

"married Rebekah" or "took her as his wife"

##### So Isaac was comforted

"So Rebekah comforted Isaac"

Chapter 25

1Abraham took another wife; her name was Keturah.2She bore him Zimran, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak, and Shuah.3Jokshan became the father of Sheba and Dedan. The descendants of Dedan were the Assyrian people, the Letush people, and the Leum people.4Midian's sons were Ephah, Epher, Hanok, Abida, and Eldaah. All these were Keturah's descendants.5Abraham gave all that he owned to Isaac.6However, while he was still living, he gave gifts to the sons of his concubines and sent them to the land of the east, away from Isaac, his son.7These were the days of the years of Abraham's life which he lived, 175 years.8Abraham breathed his last and died at a good old age, an old man with a full life, and he was gathered to his people.9Isaac and Ishmael, his sons, buried him in the cave of Machpelah, in the field of Ephron son of Zohar the Hittite, which is near Mamre.10This field Abraham had bought from the sons of Heth. Abraham was buried there with Sarah his wife.11After the death of Abraham, God blessed Isaac his son, and Isaac lived near Beer Lahai Roi.

12Now these were the descendants of Ishmael, Abraham's son, whom Hagar the Egyptian, Sarah's servant, bore to Abraham.

13These were the names of Ishmael's sons, according to their birth order: Nebaioth—the firstborn of Ishmael, Kedar, Adbeel, Mibsam,14Mishma, Dumah, Massa,15Hadad, Tema, Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah.16These were Ishmael's sons, and these were their names, by their villages, and by their encampments; twelve princes according to their tribes.17These were the years of the life of Ishmael, 137 years. He breathed his last and died, and was gathered to his people.18They lived from Havilah to Ashhur, which is near Egypt, as one goes toward Assyria. They lived in hostility with each other.

19This is the account of Isaac, Abraham's son. Abraham became the father of Isaac.20Isaac was forty years old when he took as his wife Rebekah, the daughter of Bethuel the Aramean of Paddan Aram, the sister of Laban the Aramean.21Isaac prayed to Yahweh for his wife because she was barren, and Yahweh answered his prayer, and Rebekah his wife conceived.22The children struggled together within her, and she said, "Why is this happening to me?" She went to ask Yahweh about this.23Yahweh said to her,"Two nations are in your womb,and two peoples will be separated from within you.One people will be stronger than the other,and the older will serve the younger."

24When it was time for her to give birth, behold, there were twins in her womb.25The first child came out red all over like a hairy garment. They called his name Esau.26After that, his brother came out. His hand was grasping Esau's heel. He was named Jacob. Isaac was sixty years old when his wife bore them.

27The boys grew up, and Esau became a skillful hunter, a man of the field; but Jacob was a quiet man, who spent his time in the tents.28Now Isaac loved Esau because he ate the animals that he had hunted, but Rebekah loved Jacob.29Jacob cooked some stew. Esau came in from the field, and he was weak from hunger.30Esau said to Jacob, "Feed me with that red stew. Please, I am exhausted!" That is why his name was called Edom.31Jacob said, "First sell me your birthright."32Esau said, "Look, I am about to die. What good is the birthright to me?"33Jacob said, "First swear to me," so Esau swore an oath and in that way he sold his birthright to Jacob.34Jacob gave Esau bread and stew of lentils. He ate and drank, then got up and went on his way. In this manner Esau despised his birthright.

#### Genesis 25:4

##### All these

This refers to the people named in verses 2-4.

#### Genesis 25:5

##### Abraham gave all that he owned to Isaac

"Isaac inherited all that Abraham owned." It was normal for the father to divide his wealth when he was old and not leave that for others to do after he died.

#### Genesis 25:8

##### Abraham breathed his last and died

"Abraham died"

##### at a good old age, an old man with a full life

"when he had lived a very long time and was very old"

##### he was gathered to his people

"he joined his family members who had already died"

#### Genesis 25:9

##### the cave of Machpelah, in the field of Ephron

Ephron owned a field in Machpelah and the cave that was in that field. Abraham bought the field from Ephron.

##### Machpelah

Machpelah was the name of an area or region. See how you translated this in Genesis 23:9

##### which is near Mamre

Machpela was near Mamre.

##### Mamre

This was another name for the city of Hebron. It may have been named after Mamre, the friend of Abraham who lived there.

#### Genesis 25:10

##### This field Abraham had bought

"Abraham had bought this field"

##### sons of Heth

"the descendants of Heth" or "the Hittites." See how you translated this in Genesis 23:5.

#### Genesis 25:12

##### Now

This word is used in English to introduce a new part of the story and information about Ishmael.

#### Genesis 25:16

##### princes

Here the word "princes" means that the men were leaders or rules of the tribes; it does not mean that they were the sons of a king.

#### Genesis 25:17

##### These were the years of the life of Ishmael, 137 years

Ishmael lived 137 years.

##### breathed his last and died

"died"

#### Genesis 25:18

##### They lived

"His descendants settled"

##### Havilah

Havilah was located somewhere in the Arabian Desert. See how you translated this in Genesis 2:11.

##### as one goes toward

"in the direction of"

##### They lived in hostility with each other

Possible meanings are 1) "they did not live in peace together," or 2) "they lived away from their other relatives."

#### Genesis 25:20

##### when he took as his wife Rebekah

"when he married Rebekah"

##### Bethuel

Bethuel was Rebekah's father. See how you translated this name in Genesis 22:22.

##### Paddan Aram

This was another name for the region of Mesopotamia, which about the same location as modern Iraq.

#### Genesis 25:21

##### she was barren

"she was unable to become pregnant"

##### Rebekah his wife conceived

"Rebekah, his wife, became pregnant with twins"

#### Genesis 25:22

##### The children struggled together within her

"the babies inside her kept bumping against each other" or "The babies pushed against each other within her

##### She went to ask Yahweh about this

"She went and asked Yahweh about this." It is not clear where she went. She may have gone somewhere private to pray, or she may have gone somewhere to offer a sacrifice.

#### Genesis 25:23

##### said to her

"said to Rebekah"

##### Two nations are in your womb

"Two nations will come from the twins within you"

##### two peoples will be separated from within you

"when you give birth to these two children they will be rivals"

##### the older will serve the younger

Possible meanings are 1) "the older son will serve the younger son" or 2) "the descendants of the older son will serve the descendants of the younger son." If possible, translate it so that people could understand either meaning.

#### Genesis 25:24

##### behold, there

"she was surprised to learn that there"

#### Genesis 25:25

##### red all over like a hairy garment

"red and hairy like a garment made of animal hair"

##### Esau

Translators may add a footnote that says "The name Esau sounds like the word 'hairy.'"

#### Genesis 25:26

##### grasping Esau's heel

"holding the back part of Esau's foot"

##### Jacob

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Jacob means 'he grasps the heel.'"

#### Genesis 25:27

##### became a skillful hunter

"became good at hunting and killing animals for food"

##### a quiet man

"a peaceful man" or "a less active man"

##### who spent his time in the tents

"who remained in the tents much of the time"

#### Genesis 25:28

##### Now

This word is used to mark a change in focus, shifting from the story to background information about Isaac and Rebekah.

##### Isaac loved

Here the word "loved" means "favored" or "preferred."

##### because he ate the animals that he had hunted

"because he ate the animals that Esau had hunted" or "because he enjoyed eating the wild animal meat that Esau caught"

#### Genesis 25:29

##### cooked some stew

"boiled some food" or "cooked some soup." This stew was made of boiled lentils

##### he was weak from hunger

"he was weak because he was very hungry" or "he was very hungry"

#### Genesis 25:30

##### I am exhausted

"I am weak from hunger" or "I am very hungry"

##### Edom

Translators may add a footnote that says "The name Edom means 'red.'"

#### Genesis 25:31

##### birthright

right as firstborn to inherit most of the father's wealth

#### Genesis 25:32

##### I am about to die

"I am so hungry I feel like I could die"

##### What good is the birthright to me?

"My inheritance is no good to me if I die of hunger!"

#### Genesis 25:33

##### First swear to me

"First swear to me that you will sell me your birthright"

#### Genesis 25:34

##### lentils

These are like beans, but their seeds are very small, round, and somewhat flat.

##### Esau despised his birthright

"Esau showed that he did not value his birthright"

Chapter 26

1Now a famine happened in the land, besides the first famine that had been in the days of Abraham. Isaac went to Abimelek, king of the Philistines at Gerar.2Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, "Do not go down to Egypt; live in the land that I tell you to live in.3Stay in this very land, and I will be with you and will bless you; for to you and to your descendants, I will give all these lands, and I will fulfill the oath that I swore to Abraham your father.4I will multiply your descendants like the stars of heaven, and will give to your descendants all these lands. Through your descendants all the nations of the earth will be blessed.5I will do this because Abraham obeyed my voice and kept my instructions, my commandments, my statutes, and my laws."6So Isaac settled in Gerar.7When the men of the place asked him about his wife, he said, "She is my sister." He feared to say, "She is my wife," because he thought, "The men of this place will kill me to get Rebekah, because she is so beautiful."8After Isaac had been there a long time, Abimelek king of the Philistines happened to look out of a window. He saw, behold, Isaac was caressing Rebekah, his wife.9Abimelek called Isaac to him and said, "Look, certainly she is your wife. Why did you say, 'She is my sister'?" Isaac said to him, "Because I thought someone might kill me to get her."10Abimelek said, "What is this you have done to us? One of the people might easily have lain with your wife, and you would have brought guilt upon us."11So Abimelek commanded all the people and said, "Whoever touches this man or his wife will surely be put to death."

12Isaac planted crops in that land and reaped in the same year a hundredfold, because Yahweh blessed him.13The man became rich, and grew more and more until he became very great.14He had many sheep and cattle, and a large household. The Philistines envied him.15Now all the wells that his father's servants had dug in the days of Abraham his father, the Philistines stopped them up by filling them with earth.16Abimelek said to Isaac, "Go away from us, for you are much mightier than we."17So Isaac departed from there and camped in the Valley of Gerar, and lived there.

18Once again Isaac dug out the wells of water, which they had dug in the days of Abraham his father. The Philistines had stopped them up after Abraham's death. Isaac called the wells by the same names that his father had called them.19When Isaac's servants dug in the valley, they found there a well of flowing water.20The herdsmen of Gerar quarreled with Isaac's herdsmen, and said, "This water is ours." So Isaac named that well "Esek," because they had quarreled with him.21Then they dug another well, and they quarreled over that, too, so he gave it the name of "Sitnah."22He left there and dug yet another well, but they did not quarrel over that one. So he called it Rehoboth, and he said, "Now Yahweh has made room for us, and we will prosper in the land."

23Then Isaac went up from there to Beersheba.24Yahweh appeared to him that same night and said, "I am the God of Abraham your father. Do not fear, for I am with you and will bless you and multiply your descendants, for my servant Abraham's sake."25Isaac built an altar there and called on the name of Yahweh. There he pitched his tent, and his servants dug a well.

26Then Abimelek went to him from Gerar, with Ahuzzath, his friend, and Phicol, the captain of his army.27Isaac said to them, "Why are you coming to me, since you hate me and have sent me away from you?"28Then they said, "We have clearly seen that Yahweh has been with you. So we decided that there should be an oath between us, yes, between us and you. So let us make a covenant with you,29that you will do us no harm, just as we have not harmed you, and as we have treated you well and have sent you away in peace. Indeed, you are blessed by Yahweh."30So Isaac made a feast for them, and they ate and drank.31They rose early in the morning and swore an oath with each other. Then Isaac sent them away, and they left him in peace.32That same day Isaac's servants came and told him about the well that they had dug. They said, "We have found water."33He called the well Shibah, so the name of that city is Beersheba to this day.

34When Esau was forty years old, he took a wife, Judith the daughter of Beeri the Hittite, and also Basemath the daughter of Elon the Hittite.35They brought sorrow to Isaac and Rebekah.

#### Genesis 26:1

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

##### a famine happened

"there was a famine" or "there was another famine"

##### in the land

"in the land where Isaac and his family lived"

##### that had been in the days of Abraham

"that had happened during Abraham's life" or "that had happened while Abraham was alive"

#### Genesis 26:2

##### appeared to him

"appeared to Isaac"

#### Genesis 26:3

##### for to you and to your descendants, I will give all these lands

"for I will give all these lands to you and your descendants"

##### I will fulfill the oath that I swore to Abraham your father

"I will do what I promised Abraham your father I would do"

#### Genesis 26:4

##### I will multiply your descendants

"I will cause you to have very many descendants."

##### like the stars of heaven

This speaks about the number of Isaac's descendants as if they were the same as the number of stars. See how you translated this in Genesis 22:17.

##### heaven

This refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars.

##### all the nations of the earth will be blessed

"I will bless all the nations of the earth"

#### Genesis 26:5

##### Abraham obeyed my voice and kept my instructions, my commandments, my statutes, and my laws

"Abraham obeyed me and did everything I commanded him to do"

#### Genesis 26:6

##### So Isaac settled in Gerar

"So Isaac and his family settled in Gerar"

#### Genesis 26:7

##### He feared to say

Here "fear" refers to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others. "He was afraid to say"

##### to get Rebekah

"in order to take Rebekah"

#### Genesis 26:8

##### He saw, behold, Isaac

"And he was surprised to see that Isaac"

##### was caressing Rebekah

Possible meanings are 1) he was touching her the way a husband touches his wife or 2) he was laughing and talking with her the way a husband talks with his wife.

#### Genesis 26:9

##### Abimelek called Isaac to him

"Abimelek sent someone to bring Isaac to him"

##### Why did you say, 'She is my sister'?

"Why did you say that she is your sister?"

##### to get her

"so he could take her"

#### Genesis 26:10

##### What is this you have done to us?

"You should not have done this to us!"

##### might easily have lain with your wife

The word "lain" here is a euphemism for "had sexual relations."

##### you would have brought guilt upon us

"you would have caused us to be guilty of taking a man's wife"

##### upon us

Here "us" refers to Abimelech and his people.

#### Genesis 26:11

##### Whoever touches this man

"Whoever harms this man"

##### will surely be put to death

"I will put him to death" or "I will order my men to kill him"

#### Genesis 26:12

##### in that land

"in Gerar"

##### a hundredfold

This means "one hundred times as much as he planted." It can be translated more generally as "a very large crop."

#### Genesis 26:13

##### The man became rich

"Isaac became rich" or "He became rich"

##### grew more and more until he became very great

"he gained more and more until he became very wealthy"

#### Genesis 26:14

##### sheep

This may also include goats.

##### a large household

"many servants"

##### The Philistines envied him

"The Philistines were jealous of him"

#### Genesis 26:15

##### in the days of Abraham his father

"when Abraham, his father, was living" or "during his father Abraham's lifetime"

#### Genesis 26:16

##### Abimelek said

"Therefore Abimelek said" or "Finally Abimelek said" or 2) Abimelek made this decision because he saw that his people were jealous and acting in a hostile way towards Isaac.

##### much mightier than we

"much stronger than we are"

#### Genesis 26:17

##### So Isaac departed

"So Isaac and his household left"

#### Genesis 26:18

##### Isaac dug out

"Isaac and his servants dug out"

##### The Philistines had filled them with earth

This was the reason that Isaac dug them out. Possible ways to translate this are: 1) Since this happened first, this sentence can come before the sentence about Isaac digging them out, or 2) This sentence can start with "Isaac did this because the Philistines had stopped them up."

#### Genesis 26:19

##### flowing water

"fresh water"

#### Genesis 26:20

##### herdsmen

men who tended livestock

##### This water is ours

Here "ours" refers to the herdsmen of Gerar.

##### Esek

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Esek means 'quarrel' or 'argue.'"

#### Genesis 26:21

##### Then they dug

"Then Isaac's servants dug"

##### they quarreled

"the herdsmen of Gerar argued with Isaac's herdsmen"

##### so he gave it

"so Isaac gave it"

##### Sitnah

Translators may add a footnote that says "The name Sitnah means 'oppose' or 'accuse.'"

#### Genesis 26:22

##### Rehoboth

Translators may add a footnote that says "The name Rehoboth means 'make room for' or 'empty place.'"

##### us ... we

Isaac was speaking about himself and his household.

#### Genesis 26:24

##### multiply your descendants

"will cause your descendants to increase greatly" or "will cause your descendants to be very many"

##### for my servant Abraham's sake

"because I promised my servant Abraham that I would do this"

#### Genesis 26:25

##### Isaac built an altar there

"Isaac built an altar there to sacrifice to Yahweh"

##### called on the name of Yahweh

"prayed to Yahweh" or "worshiped Yahweh"

#### Genesis 26:26

##### went to him

"went to Isaac"

##### Ahuzzath

This is the name of a man.

##### his friend

Possible meanings are 1) "Abimelech's friend" or 2) "Abimelech's advisor."

##### Phicol

This is the name of a man. See how you translated his name in Genesis 21:22.

#### Genesis 26:28

##### they said

"one of them said"

##### We have clearly seen

"We know" or "We are certain"

##### So let us make a covenant

"So we want to make a covenant"

#### Genesis 26:29

##### and as we have treated you well

"We have done only good to you"

#### Genesis 26:30

##### Isaac made a feast for them, and they ate and drank

Eating a meal together was a part of making a covenant with one another.

##### for them

Here "them" refers to "Abimelech, Ahuzzath, and Phicol"

##### they ate

"they all ate"

#### Genesis 26:33

##### He called the well Shibah

"So he called the well Shibah." Translators may add a footnote that says "The name Shibah sounds like the word that means 'oath.'"

##### Beersheba

Translators may add a footnote saying "Beersheba can mean either "well of the oath" or "well of seven."

#### Genesis 26:34

##### he took a wife

"he took two wives"

##### Judith ... Basemath

These are the names of Esau's wives.

##### Beeri ... Elon

These are names of men.

##### the Hittite

"the descendant of Heth" or "a descendant of Heth." The Hittite people were the descendants of Heth.

#### Genesis 26:35

##### They brought sorrow to Isaac and Rebekah

"They made Isaac and Rebekah sorrowful" or "Isaac and Rebekah were miserable because of them"

Chapter 27

1When Isaac was old and his eyes were dim so that he could not see, he called Esau, his older son, and said to him, "My son." Esau said to him, "Here I am,"2and Isaac said, "See now, I am old. I do not know the day of my death.3Therefore take your weapons, your quiver and your bow, and go out to the field and hunt game for me.4Make delicious food for me, the sort that I love, and bring it to me so I can eat it and bless you before I die."

5Now Rebekah heard it when Isaac spoke to Esau his son. Esau went to the field to hunt for game and bring it back.6Rebekah spoke to Jacob her son and said, "See here, I heard your father speak to Esau your brother. He said,7'Bring me game and make me delicious food, that I may eat it and bless you in the presence of Yahweh before my death.'8Now therefore, my son, obey my voice as I command you.9Go to the flock, and bring me two good kids; and I will make delicious food from them for your father, just like he loves.10You will take it to your father, so that he may eat it, so that he may bless you before his death."11Jacob said to Rebekah his mother, "See, Esau my brother is a hairy man, and I am a smooth man.12Perhaps my father will touch me, and I will seem to him as a deceiver. I will bring a curse upon me and not a blessing."13His mother said to him, "My son, let any curse fall on me. Just obey my voice, and go, bring them to me."14So Jacob went and got the young goats and brought them to his mother, and his mother made delicious food, just like his father loved.15Rebekah took the best clothes of Esau, her older son, which were with her in the house, and put them on Jacob, her younger son.16She put the skins of the kids on his hands and on the smooth part of his neck.17She put the delicious food and the bread that she had prepared into the hand of her son Jacob.

18Jacob went to his father and said, "My father." His father said, "Here I am; who are you, my son?"19Jacob said to his father, "I am Esau your firstborn. I have done as you said to me. Now sit up and eat some of my game, that you may bless me."20Isaac said to his son, "How is it that you have found it so quickly, my son?" He said, "Because Yahweh your God brought it to me."21Isaac said to Jacob, "Come near me, so I may touch you, my son, and learn whether you are my true son Esau or not."22Jacob went over to Isaac his father; and Isaac touched him and said, "The voice is Jacob's voice, but the hands are the hands of Esau."23Isaac did not recognize him, because his hands were hairy, like his brother Esau's hands, so Isaac blessed him.24He said, "Are you really my son Esau?" He replied, "I am."25Isaac said, "Bring the food to me, and I will eat of your game, so that I may bless you." Jacob brought the food to him. Isaac ate, and Jacob brought him wine, and he drank.26Then his father Isaac said to him, "Come near now and kiss me, my son."27Jacob came near and kissed him, and he smelled the smell of his clothes and blessed him. He said,"See, the smell of my sonis like the smell of a fieldthat Yahweh has blessed.28May God give you a portion of the dew of heaven,a portion of the fatness of the earth,and plenty of grain and new wine.29May peoples serve you and nations bow down to you.Be master over your brothers,and may your mother's sons bow down to you.May every one who curses you be cursed;may every one who blesses you be blessed."

30As soon as Isaac had finished blessing Jacob, and Jacob had scarcely gone out from the presence of Isaac his father, Esau his brother came in from his hunting.31He also made delicious food and brought it to his father. He said to his father, "Father, get up and eat some of your son's game, so that you may bless me."32Isaac his father said to him, "Who are you?" He said, "I am your son, your firstborn, Esau."33Isaac trembled very much and said, "Who was it that hunted this game and brought it to me? I ate it all before you came, and I have blessed him. Indeed, he will be blessed."34When Esau heard the words of his father, he cried with a very great and bitter cry, and said to his father, "Bless me, me also, my father."35Isaac said, "Your brother came here deceitfully and has taken away your blessing."36Esau said, "Is he not rightly named Jacob? For he has cheated me these two times. He took away my birthright, and, see, now he has taken away my blessing." Then he said, "Have you not reserved a blessing for me?"37Isaac answered and said to Esau, "Look, I have made him your master, and I have given to him all his brothers as servants, and I have given him grain and new wine. What more can I do for you, my son?"38Esau said to his father, "Have you not even one blessing for me, my father? Bless me, even me too, my father." Esau wept loudly.39Isaac his father answered and said to him,"Look, the place where you live will befar from the richness of the earth,away from the dew of the sky above.40By your sword you will live, and you will serve your brother.But when you rebel, you will break his yoke off of your neck."

41Esau bore a grudge against Jacob because of the blessing that his father had given him. Esau said in his heart, "The days of mourning for my father are near; after that I will kill my brother Jacob."42The words of Esau her older son were told to Rebekah. So she sent and called Jacob her younger son and said to him, "See, your brother Esau is consoling himself about you by planning to kill you.43Now therefore, my son, obey me and flee to Laban, my brother, in Haran.44Stay with him for a while, until your brother's fury subsides,45until your brother's anger turns away from you, and he forgets what you have done to him. Then I will send and bring you back from there. Why should I lose you both in one day?

46Rebekah said to Isaac, "I abhor life because of the daughters of Heth. If Jacob takes one of the daughters of Heth as a wife, like these women, some of the daughters of the land, what good will my life be to me?"

#### Genesis 27:1

##### his eyes were dim

"he was nearly blind" or "he was almost blind"

##### Here I am

"I am here" or "I am listening." See how you translated this in Genesis 22:1.

#### Genesis 27:2

##### See now, I

"Please listen carefully: I" See how you translated this phrase in Genesis 12:11.

##### I do not know the day of my death

"I may die any day now"

#### Genesis 27:3

##### your weapons

"your hunting equipment"

##### your quiver

"your quiver of arrows"

##### hunt game for me

"hunt a wild animal for me"

#### Genesis 27:4

##### Make delicious food for me, the sort that I love

"Cook for me the tasty meat that I love"

##### bless you

In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.

#### Genesis 27:5

##### Now

This verse is background information for the description of the events that follow. The word "now" shows that the author is going to begin to talk about Rebekah and Jacob.

##### to Esau his son

Esau was the son of both Isaac and Rebekah. The author calls Esau "his son" to emphasize that Isaac preferred Esau over Isaac.

#### Genesis 27:6

##### to Jacob her son

Jacob was the son of both Isaac and Rebekah. The author calls Jacob "her son" here to emphasize that Rebekah preferred Jacob over Esau.

#### Genesis 27:7

##### 'Bring me game and make me delicious food, that I may eat it and bless you in the presence of Yahweh before my death.'

"He told Esau to hunt a wild animal, and to make the tasty meat that he loves. Then before he dies, your father will bless Esau in the presence of Yahweh."

##### Bring me game

"Bring me a wild animal that you hunt and kill"

#### Genesis 27:8

##### obey my voice as I command you

"obey me and do what I tell you"

#### Genesis 27:10

##### so that he may eat it, so that he may bless you

"and after he eats it, he will bless you"

#### Genesis 27:11

##### I am a smooth man

"I am a man with smooth skin" or "I am not hairy"

#### Genesis 27:12

##### I will seem to him as a deceiver

"he will think that I am a liar" or "he will know that I am deceiving him"

##### I will bring a curse upon me and not a blessing

"Then because of this, he will curse me and not bless me"

#### Genesis 27:13

##### My son, let any curse fall on me

"let your father curse me instead of you, my son"

##### bring them to me

"bring me the young goats"

#### Genesis 27:16

##### She put the skins of the kids on his hands

The goat skins still had the hair on them.

#### Genesis 27:17

##### She put the delicious food and the bread that she had prepared into the hand of her son Jacob

"She gave to her son Jacob the delicious food and bread which she had prepared"

#### Genesis 27:19

##### I have done as you said to me

"I have done what you told me to do"

##### some of my game

The word "game" refers to wild animals that someone hunts and kills.

#### Genesis 27:20

##### He said

"Jacob replied"

##### brought it to me

"helped me to succeed while hunting"

#### Genesis 27:21

##### whether you are my true son Esau or not

"if you are really my son Esau"

#### Genesis 27:22

##### Jacob went over to Isaac his father

"Jacob approached Isaac his father"

##### The voice is Jacob's voice

"You sound like Jacob"

##### but the hands are the hands of Esau

"but your hands feel like Esau's hands"

#### Genesis 27:24

##### He said

"But first Isaac asked"

#### Genesis 27:25

##### he drank

"Isaac drank it"

#### Genesis 27:27

##### he smelled the smell of his clothes and blessed him

"Isaac smelled his clothes and they smelled like Esau's clothes, so Isaac blessed him"

##### the smell

"the scent"

##### blessed him

"then he blessed him." This refers to the formal blessing a father pronounces on his children.

##### See, the smell of my son

"Truly, the smell of my son"

##### that Yahweh has blessed

"that Yahweh has caused to be very productive"

#### Genesis 27:28

##### give you

Here "you" is singular and refers to Jacob. But the blessing would also apply to Jacob's descendants.

##### dew of heaven

"night mist from heaven to water your crops"

##### fatness of the earth

"good soil for producing crops"

##### plenty of grain and new wine

"plenty of food and drink"

#### Genesis 27:29

##### nations bow down

"people from all nations bow down"

##### Be master over your brothers

"Become a master over your brothers"

##### your brothers ... your mother's sons

Isaac is speaking this blessing directly to Jacob. But, it also applies to Jacob's descendants who will rule over the descendants of Esau and the descendants of any other of Jacob's brothers that he may have.

##### May every one who curses you be cursed

"May God curse everyone who curses you"

##### may every one who blesses you be blessed

"May God bless everyone who blesses you"

#### Genesis 27:30

##### had scarcely gone out from the presence of Isaac his father

"had just left the tent of Isaac his father"

#### Genesis 27:31

##### some of your son's game

Here "your son's" was a polite way of Esau referring to his own food he prepared.

##### your son's game

The word "game" refers to wild animals that people hunt to eat.

#### Genesis 27:32

##### said to him

"said to Esau"

#### Genesis 27:33

##### Isaac trembled

"Isaac began to shake"

#### Genesis 27:34

##### he cried with a very great and bitter cry

"he cried loudly"

#### Genesis 27:35

##### has taken away your blessing

"I have blessed him instead of you"

#### Genesis 27:36

##### Is he not rightly named Jacob?

"Jacob is certainly the right name for my brother!"

##### Jacob

Translators may also add a footnote that says: "The name Jacob means 'he grasps the heel.' In the original language the name 'Jacob' also sounds like the word for 'he deceives.'"

##### He took away my birthright

"What was once my birthright is now his because he tricked me"

##### now he has taken away my blessing

"now he has tricked you into blessing him instead of me"

##### Have you not reserved a blessing for me

Esau knows that his father cannot bless him with the same things that he blessed Jacob. Esau is asking if there is anything left to say to him that Isaac did not say while blessing Jacob.

#### Genesis 27:37

##### What more can I do for you, my son?

"There is nothing else I can do for you!"

#### Genesis 27:39

##### said to him

"said to Esau"

##### Look, the place

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: the place"

##### far from the richness of the earth

"far from the fertile soil"

##### dew of the sky above

"the night mist from the sky to water your crops"

#### Genesis 27:40

##### your ... you

In 27:39-40 these pronouns are singular and refer to Esau, but what Isaac says also applies to Esau's descendants

##### By your sword you will live

"You will rob and kill people in order to get what you need to live"

##### you will break his yoke off of your neck

"you will free yourself from his control"

#### Genesis 27:41

##### Esau bore a grudge against Jacob

Esau believed that Jacob had wronged him, and so Esau did not want to forgive Jacob.

##### Esau said in his heart

"Esau said to himself"

##### days of mourning for my father are near

This refers to a number of days a person grieves when a family member dies.

#### Genesis 27:42

##### The words of Esau her older son were told to Rebekah

"Someone told Rebekah about Esau's plan"

##### See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

##### is consoling himself

"is making himself feel better"

#### Genesis 27:43

##### flee to Laban

"leave here quickly and go to Laban"

#### Genesis 27:44

##### for a while

"for a period of time"

##### until your brother's fury subsides

"until you brother calms down"

#### Genesis 27:45

##### until your brother's anger turns away from you

: "until he is no longer angry with you"

##### Why should I lose you both in one day?

"I do not want to lose both of you in one day!"

#### Genesis 27:46

##### I abhor life

"I am terribly upset"

##### the daughters of Heth

"these Hittite women" or "descendants of Heth"

##### like these women, some of the daughters of the land

"like these women who live in this land"

##### what good will my life be to me?

"My life will be awful!"

Chapter 28

1Isaac called Jacob, blessed him, and commanded him, "You must not take a wife from the Canaanite women.2Arise, go to Paddan Aram, to the house of Bethuel your mother's father, and take a wife from there, one of the daughters of Laban, your mother's brother.3May God Almighty bless you, make you fruitful and multiply you, so that you may become a community of peoples.4May he give you the blessing of Abraham, to you, and to your descendants after you, that you may inherit the land where you have been sojourning, which God gave to Abraham."5So Isaac sent Jacob away. Jacob went to Paddan Aram, to Laban son of Bethuel the Aramean, the brother of Rebekah, Jacob's and Esau's mother.

6Now Esau saw that Isaac had blessed Jacob and sent him away to Paddan Aram, to take a wife from there. He also saw that Isaac had blessed him and given him a command, saying, "You must not take a wife from the women of Canaan."7Esau also saw that Jacob had obeyed his father and his mother, and had gone to Paddan Aram.8Esau saw that the women of Canaan did not please Isaac his father.9So he went to Ishmael, and took, besides the wives that he had, Mahalath the daughter of Ishmael, Abraham's son, the sister of Nebaioth, to be his wife.

10Jacob left Beersheba and went toward Haran.11He came to a certain place and stayed there all night, because the sun had set. He took one of the stones in that place, put it under his head, and lay down in that place to sleep.12He dreamed and saw a stairway set up on the earth. Its top reached to heaven and the angels of God were ascending and descending on it.13Behold, Yahweh stood above it and said, "I am Yahweh, the God of Abraham your father, and the God of Isaac. The land on which you are lying, I will give to you and to your descendants.14Your descendants will be like the dust of the earth, and you will spread far out to the west, to the east, to the north, and to the south. Through you and through your descendants will all the families of the earth be blessed.15Behold, I am with you, and I will keep you wherever you go. I will bring you into this land again; for I will not leave you. I will do all that I have promised to you."16Jacob awoke out of his sleep, and he said, "Surely Yahweh is in this place, and I did not know it."17He was afraid and said, "How terrifying is this place! This is none other than the house of God. This is the gate of heaven."

18Jacob arose early in the morning and took the stone that he had put under his head. He set it up as a pillar and poured oil upon the top of it.19He called the name of that place Bethel, but the name of the city originally was Luz.20Jacob vowed a vow, saying, "If God will be with me and will protect me on this road on which I am walking, and will give me bread to eat, and clothes to wear,21so that I return safely to my father's house, then Yahweh will be my God.22Then this stone that I have set up as a pillar will be a sacred stone. From everything that you give me, I will surely give a tenth back to you."

#### Genesis 28:2

##### Arise, go

"Go right away"

##### Paddan Aram

This was another name for the region of Mesopotamia, which about the same location as modern Iraq.

##### house of

"family"

##### Bethuel

Bethuel was Rebekah's father. See how you translated this name in Genesis 22:22.

##### your mother's father

"your grandfather"

##### your mother's brother

"your uncle"

#### Genesis 28:3

##### make you fruitful and multiply you

"give you many children and descendants"

#### Genesis 28:4

##### May he give you the blessing of Abraham, to you, and to your descendants after you

"May God bless you and your descendants as he blessed Abraham" or "May God give to you and your descendants what he promised to Abraham"

##### that you may inherit the land

God giving the land of Canaan to Jacob and his descendants is spoken of as if a child were inheriting money or possessions from his father.

##### the land where you have been sojourning

"the land where you have been staying"

#### Genesis 28:6

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Esau.

##### to take a wife

"to take a wife for himself"

##### He also saw that Isaac had blessed him

"Esau also saw that Isaac had blessed Jacob"

##### women of Canaan

"daughters of Canaan" or "Canaanite women"

#### Genesis 28:8

##### Esau saw

"Esau realized"

##### the women of Canaan did not please Isaac his father

"his father Isaac did not approve of the women of Canaan"

#### Genesis 28:9

##### So he went

"Because of that, he went"

##### besides the wives that he had

"in addition to the wives that he already had"

##### Mahalath

This is the name of one of Ishmael's daughters.

##### Nebaioth

This is the name of one of Ishmael's sons.

#### Genesis 28:12

##### He dreamed

"Jacob had a dream"

##### set up on the earth

"with the bottom of it touching the ground"

##### reached to heaven

This refers to the place where God lives.

#### Genesis 28:13

##### Behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### Yahweh stood above it

Possible meanings are 1) "Yahweh was standing at the top of the stairway" or 2) "Yahweh was standing next to Jacob"

##### Abraham your father

"Abraham your ancestor" or "Abraham your forefather"

#### Genesis 28:14

##### Your descendants will be like the dust of the earth

"You will have more descendants than you can count"

##### you will spread far out to the west

"your descendants will spread out to the west"

##### to the west, to the east, to the north, and to the south

"in all directions"

##### Through you and through your descendants will all the families of the earth be blessed

"I will bless all families on the earth through you and your descendants"

#### Genesis 28:15

##### Behold, I am

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: I am"

##### for I will not leave you. I will do all

"for I will not leave you until I have done all"

##### I will keep you

"I will keep you safe" or "I will protect you"

##### I will bring you into this land again

"I will bring you back to this land"

#### Genesis 28:17

##### the house of God ... the gate of heaven

The phrase "the gate of heaven" explains that this place is the entrance to "the house of God" and "the entrance to where God lives."

#### Genesis 28:18

##### pillar

This is a memorial pillar, that is, simply a large stone or boulder set up on its end.

##### poured oil upon the top of it

"poured oil on the top of it in order to dedicate the pillar to God"

#### Genesis 28:19

##### Bethel

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Bethel means 'house of God.'"

##### Luz

This is the name of a city.

#### Genesis 28:20

##### vowed a vow

"made a vow" or "solemnly promised God"

##### on this road on which I am walking

"on this journey"

##### will give me bread to eat

Here "bread" stands for food in general

#### Genesis 28:21

##### so that I return safely ... then Yahweh will be my God

This can be stated in the second person. "If you will ... clothes to wear ... so that I return safely ... then you, Yahweh, will be the God that I will worship"

##### to my father's house

"to my father and the rest of my family"

#### Genesis 28:22

##### a sacred stone

"God's house" or "God's place"

Chapter 29

1Then Jacob went on his journey and came to the land of the people of the east.2As he looked, he saw a well in the field, and, behold, three flocks of sheep were lying there by it. For out of that well they would water the flocks, and the stone over the well's mouth was large.3When all the flocks had gathered there, the shepherds would roll the stone from the well's mouth and water the sheep, and then put the stone again over the well's mouth, back in its place.4Jacob said to them, "My brothers, where are you from?" They replied, "We are from Haran."5He said to them, "Do you know Laban son of Nahor?" They said, "We know him."6He said to them, "Is he well?" They said, "He is well, and, look there, Rachel his daughter is coming with the sheep."7Jacob said, "See, it is the middle of the day. It is not the time for the flocks to be gathered together. You should water the sheep and then go and let them graze."8They said, "We cannot water them until all the flocks are gathered together. The men will then roll the stone from the well's mouth, and we will water the sheep."9While Jacob was still speaking with them, Rachel came with her father's sheep, for she was tending them.10When Jacob saw Rachel, the daughter of Laban, his mother's brother, and the sheep of Laban, his mother's brother, Jacob came over, rolled the stone from the well's mouth, and watered the flock of Laban, his mother's brother.11Jacob kissed Rachel and wept loudly.12Jacob told Rachel that he was her father's relative, and that he was Rebekah's son. Then she ran and told her father.

13When Laban heard the news about Jacob his sister's son, he ran to meet him, embraced him, kissed him, and brought him to his house. Jacob told Laban all these things.14Laban said to him, "You are indeed my bone and my flesh." Then Jacob stayed with him for about one month.15Then Laban said to Jacob, "Should you serve me for nothing because you are my relative? Tell me, what will your wages be?"16Now Laban had two daughters. The name of the older was Leah, and the name of the younger was Rachel.17Leah's eyes were tender, but Rachel was beautiful in form and appearance.18Jacob loved Rachel, so he said, "I will serve you seven years for Rachel, your younger daughter."19Laban said, "It is better that I give her to you, than that I should give her to another man. Stay with me."20So Jacob served seven years for Rachel; and they seemed to him only a few days, for the love he had for her.

21Then Jacob said to Laban, "Give me my wife, for my days have been completed—so that I may go to her!"22So Laban gathered together all the men of the place and made a feast.23In the evening, Laban took Leah his daughter and brought her to Jacob, who went to her.24Laban gave his female servant Zilpah to his daughter Leah, to be her servant.25In the morning, behold, it was Leah! Jacob said to Laban, "What is this you have done to me? Did I not serve you for Rachel? Why then have you deceived me?"26Laban said, "It is not our custom to give the younger daughter before the firstborn.27Complete the bridal week of this daughter, and we will give you the other also in return for serving me another seven years."28Jacob did so, and completed Leah's week. Then Laban gave him Rachel his daughter as his wife also.29Laban also gave Bilhah to his daughter Rachel, to be her servant.30So Jacob went to Rachel, too, but he loved Rachel more than Leah. So Jacob served Laban for seven more years.

31Yahweh saw that Leah was not loved, so he opened her womb, but Rachel was barren.32Leah conceived and bore a son, and she called his name Reuben. For she said, "Because Yahweh has looked upon my affliction; surely now my husband will love me."33Then she conceived again and bore a son. She said, "Because Yahweh has heard that I am unloved, he has therefore given me this son also," and she called his name Simeon.34Then she conceived again and bore a son. She said, "Now this time will my husband be attached to me, because I have borne him three sons." Therefore his name was called Levi.35She conceived again and bore a son. She said, "This time I will praise Yahweh." Therefore she called his name Judah; then she stopped having children.

#### Genesis 29:1

##### the people of the east

This means the people of Paddan Aram, which is a land east of the land of Canaan.

#### Genesis 29:2

##### and, behold, three flocks of sheep were lying there by it

The word "behold" marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### they would water

"the shepherds would water" or "those taking care of the sheep would water"

##### the well's mouth

"the opening of the well"

#### Genesis 29:4

##### Jacob said to them

"Jacob said to the shepherds"

#### Genesis 29:5

##### Laban son of Nahor

"Laban the grandson of Nahor."

#### Genesis 29:7

##### it is the middle of the day

"the sun is still high in the sky" or "the sun is still shining brightly"

##### for the flocks to be gathered together

"for you to gather the flocks"

##### let them graze

"let them eat grass in the field"

#### Genesis 29:8

##### until all the flocks are gathered together

"until the other shepherds gather their flocks"

##### from the well's mouth

"from the well" or "from the opening of the well"

##### and we will water the sheep

"then we will water the sheep"

#### Genesis 29:10

##### his mother's brother

"his uncle"

#### Genesis 29:11

##### Jacob kissed Rachel

In ancient Near East, it is common to greet a relative with a kiss. However, it is normally done between men. If your language has an affectionate greeting for a relative, use that. If not, use what is appropriate.

##### wept loudly

Jacob weeps because he is so happy. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit.

#### Genesis 29:13

##### his sister's son

"his nephew"

##### embraced him

"hugged him"

##### Jacob told Laban all these things

"then Jacob told Laban everything he told Rachel"

#### Genesis 29:14

##### my bone and my flesh

"my relative" or "a member of my family"

#### Genesis 29:15

##### Should you serve me for nothing ... my relative?

"It is certainly right that I should pay you for working for me even though you are my relative."

#### Genesis 29:17

##### Leah's eyes were tender

Possible meanings are 1) "Leah's eyes were pretty" or 2) "Leah's eyes were plain"

#### Genesis 29:20

##### and they seemed to him only a few days

"but the time seemed to him to be only a few days"

##### for the love he had for her

"on account of the love he had for her" or "because of his love for her"

#### Genesis 29:21

##### for my days have been completed

"for my days of working for you have been completed" or "For I have completed the length of time that I was to work for you" )

##### so that I may go to her

This is a polite way of referring to having sexual relations with her.

#### Genesis 29:22

##### made a feast

"had others prepare a wedding feast"

#### Genesis 29:23

##### who went to her

This is a polite way of saying that he had sexual relations with her.

#### Genesis 29:24

##### Laban gave his female servant Zilpah ... her servant

Here the author gives background information about Laban giving Zilpah to Leah. Most likely he gave Zilpah to Leah before the wedding.

##### Zilpah

This is the name of Leah's female servant.

#### Genesis 29:25

##### behold, it was Leah

"Jacob was surprised to see it was Leah in bed with him." The word "behold" here shows that Jacob was surprised by what he saw.

##### What is this you have done to me?

"I cannot believe you did this to me!"

##### Did I not serve you for Rachel?

"I served you for seven years to marry Rachel!"

#### Genesis 29:26

##### It is not our custom to give

"In our family we do not give"

#### Genesis 29:27

##### Complete the bridal week of this daughter

"Finish celebrating Leah's bridal week"

##### we will give you the other also

"next week we will give you Rachel also"

#### Genesis 29:28

##### Jacob did so, and completed Leah's week

"And Jacob did what Laban asked, and finished celebrating Leah's bridal week"

#### Genesis 29:29

##### Bilhah

This is the name of Rachel's female servant.

#### Genesis 29:30

##### Jacob went to Rachel

This is a polite way of saying that he had sexual relations with her.

##### he loved Rachel

This refers to the romantic love between a man and a woman.

#### Genesis 29:31

##### not loved

"loved less than Rachel"

##### so he opened her womb

God causing Leah to be able to become pregnant is spoken of as if God is opening her womb.

##### was barren

"was not able to become pregnant"

#### Genesis 29:32

##### Leah conceived and bore a son

"Leah became pregnant and gave birth to a son"

##### she called his name Reuben

Translators may also add a footnote that says: "The name Reuben means 'See, a son.'"

##### Yahweh has looked upon my affliction

"Yahweh saw that I was suffering"

#### Genesis 29:33

##### Then she conceived

"Then Leah became pregnant"

##### bore a son

"gave birth to a son"

##### Yahweh has heard that I am unloved

"Yahweh has heard that my husband does not love me"

##### she called his name Simeon

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Simeon means 'heard.'"

#### Genesis 29:34

##### will my husband be attached to me

"my husband will embrace me"

##### I have borne him three sons

"I have given birth to three sons for him"

##### his name was called Levi

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Levi means 'attached.'"

#### Genesis 29:35

##### She conceived again

"Leah became pregnant again"

##### bore a son

"gave birth to a son"

##### she called his name Judah

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Judah means 'praise.'"

Chapter 30

1When Rachel saw that she bore Jacob no children, Rachel was jealous of her sister. She said to Jacob, "Give me children, or I will die."2Jacob's anger burned against Rachel. He said, "Am I in the place of God, who has withheld from you the fruit of the womb?"3She said, "See, there is my servant Bilhah. Go to her, so she might give birth to children on my knees, and I will have children by her."4So she gave him her servant Bilhah as a wife, and Jacob went to her.5Bilhah conceived and bore Jacob a son.6Then Rachel said, "God has vindicated me, and he has heard my voice and given me a son." For this reason she called his name Dan.7Bilhah, Rachel's servant, conceived again and bore Jacob a second son.8Rachel said, "With mighty wrestlings have I wrestled with my sister and have prevailed." She called his name Naphtali.

9When Leah saw that she had stopped having children, she took Zilpah, her servant, and gave her to Jacob as a wife.10Zilpah, Leah's servant, bore Jacob a son.11Leah said, "This is fortunate!" so she called his name Gad.12Then Zilpah, Leah's servant, bore Jacob a second son.13Leah said, "I am happy! For the daughters will call me happy." So she called his name Asher.

14Reuben went in the days of wheat harvest and found mandrakes in the field. He brought them to his mother Leah. Then Rachel said to Leah, "Give me some of your son's mandrakes."15Leah said to her, "Is it a small matter to you, that you have taken away my husband? Do you now want to take away my son's mandrakes, too?" Rachel said, "Then he will lie with you tonight, in exchange for your son's mandrakes."16Jacob came from the field in the evening. Leah went out to meet him and said, "You must come to me, for I have hired you with my son's mandrakes." So Jacob lay with Leah that night.17God listened to Leah, and she conceived and bore Jacob a fifth son.18Leah said, "God has given me my wages, because I gave my servant woman to my husband." She called his name Issachar.19Leah conceived again and bore a sixth son to Jacob.20Leah said, "God has given me a good gift. Now my husband will honor me, because I have borne him six sons." She called his name Zebulun.21Afterwards she bore a daughter and called her name Dinah.22God called Rachel to mind and listened to her. He caused her to become pregnant.23She conceived and bore a son. She said, "God has taken away my shame."24She called his name Joseph, saying, "Yahweh has added to me another son."

25After Rachel had borne Joseph, Jacob said to Laban, "Send me away, so that I may go to my own home and to my country.26Give me my wives and my children for whom I have served you, and let me go, for you know the service I have given you."27Laban said to him, "If now I have found favor in your eyes, wait, because I have learned by using divination that Yahweh has blessed me for your sake."28Then he said, "Name your wages, and I will pay them."29Jacob said to him, "You know how I have served you, and how your livestock have fared with me.30For you had little before I came, and it has increased abundantly. Yahweh has blessed you wherever I worked. Now when will I provide for my own household also?"31So Laban said, "What will I pay you?" Jacob said, "You will not give me anything. If you will do this thing for me, I will again feed your flock and keep it.32Let me walk through all your flock today, removing from it every speckled and spotted sheep, and every black one among the sheep, and the spotted and speckled among the goats. These will be my wages.33My integrity will testify for me later on, when you come to check on my wages. Every one that is not speckled and spotted among the goats, and black among the sheep, if any are found with me, will be considered to be stolen."34Laban said, "Agreed. Let it be according to your word."35That day Laban removed the male goats that were striped and spotted, and all the female goats that were speckled and spotted, every one that had white in it, and all the black ones among the sheep, and gave them into the hand of his sons.36Laban also put three days' journey between himself and Jacob. So Jacob kept tending the rest of Laban's flocks.

37Jacob took fresh cut branches of the poplar, almond, and plane trees, and he peeled white streaks in them and made the white inner wood appear that was in the sticks.38Then he set the sticks that he had peeled in front of the flocks, in front of the watering troughs where they came to drink. They conceived when they came to drink.39The flocks bred in front of the sticks; and the flocks produced striped, speckled, and spotted young.40Jacob separated out these lambs, but made the rest of them face toward the striped animals and all the black sheep in the flock of Laban. Then he separated out his flocks for himself alone and did not put them together with Laban's flocks.41Whenever the stronger sheep in the flock were breeding, then Jacob would lay the sticks in the watering troughs before the eyes of the flock, so that they might conceive among the sticks.42But when the feebler animals in the flock came, he did not put the sticks in front of them. So the feebler animals were Laban's, and the stronger were Jacob's.43The man became very prosperous. He had large flocks, female servants and male servants, and camels and donkeys.

#### Genesis 30:1

##### When Rachel saw that she bore Jacob no children

"When Rachel realized that she was unable to become preganant"

##### I will die

"I will feel completely worthless"

##### Give me children

"Cause me to become pregnant"

#### Genesis 30:2

##### Jacob's anger burned against Rachel

"Jacob was very angry with Rachel"

##### Am I in the place of God, who has withheld from you the fruit of the womb?

"I am not God! I am not the one who is preventing you from having children!"

#### Genesis 30:3

##### She said

"Rachel said"

##### See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

##### there is my servant Bilhah ... I will have children by her

At that time, this was an acceptable way for a barren woman to have children that would legally belong to her. The full meaning of this may be made explicit.

##### Go to her

This is a polite way of asking him to have sexual relations with her servant.

##### on my knees

"for me"

##### I will have children by her

"and in this way she will cause me to have children"

#### Genesis 30:5

##### bore Jacob a son

"gave birth to a son for Jacob"

#### Genesis 30:6

##### she called his name

"Rachel gave him the name"

##### called his name Dan

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Dan means 'he judged.'"

#### Genesis 30:7

##### Bilhah ... conceived again

"Bilhah ... became pregnant again"

##### bore Jacob a second son

"gave birth to a second son for Jacob"

#### Genesis 30:8

##### With mighty wrestlings have I wrestled with my sister

"I have had a great struggle to have children like my older sister, Leah"

##### have prevailed

"I have won" or "I have succeeded"

##### called his name Naphtali

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Naphtali means 'my struggle.'"

#### Genesis 30:9

##### she took Zilpah, her servant, and gave her to Jacob as a wife

"she gave Zilpah, her servant, to Jacob as a wife"

#### Genesis 30:11

##### This is fortunate!

"How fortunate!" or "What good luck!"

##### called his name Gad

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Gad means 'fortunate.'"

#### Genesis 30:13

##### the daughters

"the women" or "the young women"

##### called his name Asher

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Asher means 'happy.'"

#### Genesis 30:14

##### Reuben went

"Reuben went out"

##### in the days of wheat harvest

"at the time of year of the wheat harvest" or "during the wheat harvest"

##### mandrakes

"love fruit"

#### Genesis 30:15

##### Is it a small matter to you ... my husband?

"It is bad enough ... my husband."

##### Do you now want ... too?

"Now you want ... too!"

##### Then he will lie with you

"Then Jacob will have sexual relations with you"

#### Genesis 30:16

##### You must come to me

"You must have sexual intercourse with me"

##### Jacob lay with Leah

"Jacob had sexual relations with Leah"

#### Genesis 30:18

##### God has given me my wages

"God has given my due" or "God has rewarded me"

##### She called his name Issachar

Translators may also add a footnote that says: "The name Issachar means 'there is a reward.'"

#### Genesis 30:20

##### She called his name Zebulun

Translators may also add a footnote that says: "The name Zebulun means 'honor.'"

#### Genesis 30:21

##### called her name Dinah

This is the name of Leah's daughter.

#### Genesis 30:22

##### God called Rachel to mind and listened to her

"God considered Rachel and granted to her what she wanted"

#### Genesis 30:23

##### God has taken away my shame

"God has caused me to no longer feel ashamed"

#### Genesis 30:24

##### She called his name Joseph

Translators may also add a footnote that says: "The name Joseph means 'may he add.'"

#### Genesis 30:26

##### and let me go

"so I can go"

##### you know the service I have given you

"you know that I have served you long enough"

#### Genesis 30:27

##### Laban said to him

"Laban said to Jacob"

##### If now I have found favor in your eyes

"If I have found favor with you" or "If you are pleased with me"

##### wait, because

"please stay, because"

##### I have learned by using divination

"I have discovered by my own spiritual and magical practices"

##### for your sake

"because of you"

#### Genesis 30:28

##### Name your wages

"Tell me how much I have to pay to keep you here"

#### Genesis 30:29

##### Jacob said to him

"Jacob said to Laban"

##### how your livestock have fared with me

"how well your livestock have done since I started taking care of them"

#### Genesis 30:30

##### and it has increased abundantly

"but now your wealth has greatly increased"

##### Now when will I provide for my own household also?

"Now I want to take care of my family!"

#### Genesis 30:31

##### If you will do this thing for me

"But if you will do this thing for me"

##### this thing

The phrase "this thing" refers to what Jacob will propose in verse 32.

#### Genesis 30:32

##### removing from it every speckled and spotted sheep, and every black one among the sheep, and the spotted and speckled among the goats

"and remove every sheep with spots, every black sheep, and every goat with spots"

##### These will be my wages

"This will be the cost of keeping me here"

#### Genesis 30:33

##### My integrity will testify for me later on

"And later you will know if I have been honest with you or not"

#### Genesis 30:35

##### gave them into the hand

"had his sons take care of them"

#### Genesis 30:37

##### poplar, almond, and plane trees

These are all trees with white wood.

#### Genesis 30:38

##### the watering troughs

long open containers for holding water for animals to drink

#### Genesis 30:39

##### The flocks bred

"The animals of the flocks conceived" or "The animals mated"

##### produced striped, speckled, and spotted young

"gave birth to babies with stripes and spots"

#### Genesis 30:40

##### Jacob separated

"During the several years following, Jacob separated"

##### face toward

"look toward"

#### Genesis 30:41

##### before the eyes of the flock

"so that the flock could see them"

##### among the sticks

"in front of the sticks"

#### Genesis 30:42

##### So the feebler animals were Laban's, and the stronger were Jacob's

"So the weaker offspring did not have stripes or spots and so belonged to Laban, while the stronger offspring did have stripes or spots and so belonged to Jacob"

#### Genesis 30:43

##### The man

"Jacob"

Chapter 31

1Now Jacob heard the words of Laban's sons, that they said, "Jacob has taken away all that was our father's, and it is from our father's possessions that he has gotten all this wealth."2Jacob saw the look on Laban's face. He saw that his attitude toward him had changed.3Then Yahweh said to Jacob, "Return to the land of your fathers and to your relatives, and I will be with you."4Jacob sent and called Rachel and Leah to the field to his flock5and said to them, "I see your father's attitude toward me has changed, but the God of my father has been with me.6You know that it is with all my strength that I have served your father.7Your father has deceived me and changed my wages ten times, but God has not permitted him to hurt me.8If he said, 'The speckled animals will be your wages,' then all the flock bore speckled young. If he said, 'The striped will be your wages,' then the whole flock bore striped young.9In this way God has taken away the livestock of your father and given them to me.10Once at the time of breeding season, I saw in a dream the male goats that were mating with the flock. The male goats were striped, speckled, and spotted.11The angel of God said to me in the dream, 'Jacob.' I said, 'Here I am.'12He said, 'Lift up your eyes and see all the male goats that are breeding with the flock. They are striped, speckled, and spotted, for I have seen everything that Laban is doing to you.13I am the God of Bethel, where you anointed a pillar, where you made a vow to me. Now rise up and leave this land and return to the land of your birth.'"14Rachel and Leah answered and said to him, "Is there any portion or inheritance for us in our father's house?15Are we not treated by him as foreigners? For he has sold us and has also completely devoured our money.16For all the riches that God has taken away from our father are now ours and our children's. Now then, whatever God has said to you, do it."

17Then Jacob arose and placed his sons and his wives upon the camels.18He drove all his livestock ahead of him, along with all his property, including the livestock he had acquired in Paddan Aram. Then he set out to go to his father Isaac in the land of Canaan.19When Laban had gone to shear his flock, Rachel stole her father's household gods.20Jacob also deceived Laban the Aramean, by not telling him that he was fleeing.21So he fled with all that he had and quickly passed over the River, and headed toward the hill country of Gilead.

22On the third day Laban was told that Jacob had fled.23So he took his relatives with him and pursued him for a seven days' journey. He overtook him in the hill country of Gilead.24Now God came to Laban the Aramean in a dream at night and said to him, "Be careful that you speak to Jacob neither good nor bad."25Laban overtook Jacob. Now Jacob had pitched his tent in the hill country. Laban also camped with his relatives in the hill country of Gilead. [1](#footnote-target-1)26Laban said to Jacob, "What have you done, that you deceived me and carried away my daughters like captives of the sword?27Why did you flee secretly and trick me and did not tell me? I would have sent you away with celebration and with songs, with tambourine and with harps.28You did not allow me to kiss my grandsons and my daughters good bye. Now you have acted foolishly.29It is in my power to do you harm, but the God of your father spoke to me last night and said, 'Be careful that you speak to Jacob neither good nor bad.'30Now you have gone away because you longed to return to your father's house. But why did you steal my gods?"31Jacob answered and said to Laban, "I fled secretly because I was afraid and thought that you would take your daughters from me by force.32Whoever has stolen your gods will not continue to live. In the presence of our relatives, identify whatever with me is yours and take it." For Jacob did not know that Rachel had stolen them.

33Laban went into Jacob's tent, into Leah's tent, and into the tent of the two female servants, but he did not find them. He went out of Leah's tent and entered into Rachel's tent.34Now Rachel had taken the household gods, put them in a camel's saddle, and sat upon them. Laban searched the whole tent, but did not find them.35She said to her father, "Do not be angry, my master, that I cannot stand up before you, for I am having my period." So he searched but did not find his household gods.

36Jacob was angry and argued with Laban. He said to him, "What is my offense? What is my sin, that you have hotly pursued me?37For you have searched all my possessions. What have you found of all your household goods? Set them here before our relatives, so that they may judge between the two of us.38For twenty years I have been with you. Your ewes and your female goats have not miscarried, nor have I eaten any rams from your flocks.39What was torn by beasts I did not bring to you. I bore the loss of it. You demanded payment from my hand, whether stolen by day or stolen by night.40There I was; in the day the heat consumed me, and the frost by night; and I went without sleep.41These twenty years I have been in your household. I worked for you fourteen years for your two daughters, and six years for your flock. You have changed my wages ten times.42Unless the God of my father, the God of Abraham, and the one Isaac fears, had been with me, surely now you would have sent me away empty-handed. God has seen my affliction and my toil, and he rebuked you last night."

43Laban answered and said to Jacob, "The daughters are my daughters, the grandchildren are my grandchildren, and the flocks are my flocks. All that you see is mine. But what can I do today to these my daughters, or to their children whom they have borne?44So now, let us make a covenant, you and I, and let it be for a witness between you and me."45So Jacob took a stone and set it up as a pillar.46Jacob said to his relatives, "Gather stones." So they took stones and made a pile. Then they ate there by the pile.47Laban called it Jegar Sahadutha, but Jacob called it Galeed.48Laban said, "This pile is a witness between me and you today." Therefore its name was called Galeed.49It is also called Mizpah, because Laban said, "May Yahweh watch between you and me, when we are out of sight one from another.50If you mistreat my daughters, or if you take any wives besides my daughters, although no one else is with us, see, God is witness between you and me."51Laban said to Jacob, "Look at this pile, and look at the pillar, which I have set between you and me.52This pile is a witness, and the pillar is a witness, that I will not pass beyond this pile to you, and that you will not pass beyond this pile and this pillar to me, to do harm.53May the God of Abraham, and the god of Nahor, the gods of their father, judge between us." Jacob swore by the Fear of his father Isaac.54Jacob offered a sacrifice on the mountain and called his relatives to eat a meal. They ate and spent the entire night on the mountain.55Early in the morning Laban got up, kissed his grandsons and his daughters and blessed them. Then Laban left and returned home.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some modern translations have Laban also camped in the hill country of Gilead .

#### Genesis 31:1

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the story.

##### Jacob has taken away all that was our father's

"Everything that Jacob has taken belonged to our father"

#### Genesis 31:2

##### Jacob saw the look on Laban's face. He saw that his attitude toward him had changed

"Jacob noticed that Laban was no longer pleased with him"

#### Genesis 31:3

##### your fathers

"your father Isaac and your grandfather Abraham"

#### Genesis 31:5

##### I see your father's attitude toward me has changed

"I have noticed your father is no longer pleased with me"

#### Genesis 31:6

##### You know that it is with all my strength that I have served your father

"You yourselves know that I have served your father with all my strength"

#### Genesis 31:7

##### has deceived me

"has lied to me" or "has not treated me fairly"

##### my wages

"what he said he would pay me"

##### to hurt me

Possible meanings are 1) physical harm or 2) to cause Jacob to suffer in any way.

#### Genesis 31:8

##### The speckled animals

"The animals with spots"

##### the flock bore

"the flock gave birth to"

##### The striped

"The animals with stripes"

#### Genesis 31:9

##### In this way God has taken away the livestock of your father and given them to me

"This is how God gave your father's animals to me"

#### Genesis 31:10

##### Once at the time of breeding season

"During the breeding season"

##### mating with the flock

"mating with the female goats of the flock"

#### Genesis 31:11

##### angel of God

Possible meanings are 1) God himself appeared as a man or 2) one of God's messengers appeared. Since the phrase is not well understood, it is best to simply translate it as "the angel of God," using the normal word that you use for "angel."

##### I said

"And I answered"

#### Genesis 31:12

##### Lift up your eyes

This is a way of saying "Look up."

##### that are breeding with the flock

"that are breeding with the female goats of the flock"

#### Genesis 31:13

##### where you anointed a pillar

Jacob poured oil on the pillar to dedicate it to God.

##### the land of your birth

"the land where you were born"

#### Genesis 31:14

##### Is there any portion or inheritance for us in our father's house?

"There is absolutely nothing left for us to inherit from our father!"

#### Genesis 31:15

##### Are we not treated by him as foreigners?

"Our father treats us like a foreign women instead of daughters!"

##### For he has sold us

"He has sold us for his own gain"

##### has also completely devoured our money

"he completely used up our money"

#### Genesis 31:16

##### whatever God has said to you, do it

"do all that God has told you"

#### Genesis 31:17

##### his sons

"his children"

#### Genesis 31:18

##### He drove all his livestock

"He drove all his cattle." Here "livestock" is referring to all his domesticate animals.

##### including the livestock he had acquired in Paddan Aram

"and the other herd of cattle which he took ownership of when he was in Paddan Aram"

#### Genesis 31:21

##### the River

This refers to the Euphrates River.

#### Genesis 31:22

##### On the third day

"Two days after they had left"

##### that Jacob had fled

"that Jacob had fled with his wives and children"

#### Genesis 31:23

##### So he took

"So Laban took"

##### pursued him

"chased after Jacob"

##### He overtook him

"He caught up to him"

#### Genesis 31:24

##### Now God came to Laban the Aramean in a dream at night

"That night God came to Laban in a dream"

##### Be careful that you speak to Jacob neither good nor bad

"Do not say anything to try and stop Jacob from leaving"

#### Genesis 31:25

##### Laban overtook Jacob. Now Jacob had pitched his tent in the hill country. Laban also camped with his relatives in the hill country of Gilead

"When Laban caught up with Jacob, Jacob had set up camp in the hill country. Then Laban and his relatives also camped in the hill country of Gilead"

#### Genesis 31:26

##### carried away my daughters like captives of the sword

Laban speaks about Jacob taking his family with him back to the land of Canaan as if Jacob took them as prisoners after a battle and is forcing them to go with him. Laban is exaggerating because he is angry and is trying to make Jacob feel guilty for what he did.

#### Genesis 31:27

##### with celebration

"with joy"

##### with tambourine and with harps

"and with music"

##### tambourine

a musical instrument with a head like a drum that can be hit and with pieces of metal around the side that sound when the instrument is shaken

#### Genesis 31:28

##### to kiss my grandsons

"to kiss my grandchildren"

#### Genesis 31:29

##### It is in my power to do you harm

"I have enough people with me to harm all of you"

##### Be careful that you speak to Jacob neither good nor bad

"Do not say anything to try and stop Jacob from leaving"

#### Genesis 31:30

##### you have gone away

This "you" is singular and refers to Jacob.

##### to your father's house

"to be home with your father and the rest of your family"

##### my gods

"my idols"

#### Genesis 31:32

##### Whoever has stolen your gods will not continue to live

"We will kill whoever has stolen your gods"

##### In the presence of our relatives

All the relatives will watch to make sure everything is fair and honest.

##### identify whatever with me is yours and take it

"look for whatever we have that is yours and take it"

#### Genesis 31:33

##### the two female servants

This refers to Zilpah and Bilhah.

##### he did not find them

"he did not find his idols"

#### Genesis 31:34

##### saddle

a seat placed on the back of an animal so a person can ride on it

#### Genesis 31:35

##### my master

Calling someone "my master" is a way of honoring them.

##### that I cannot stand up before you

"because I am unable to stand up in your presence"

##### for I am having my period

This refers to the time of the month when a woman bleeds from her womb.

#### Genesis 31:36

##### He said to him

"Jacob said to Laban"

##### What is my offense? What is my sin, that you have hotly pursued me?

"What have I done wrong that you should pursue me like this?"

##### hotly pursued me

Here the word "hotly" means Laban urgently chased Jacob intending to capture him.

#### Genesis 31:37

##### What have you found of all your household goods?

"What have you found that belongs to you?"

##### Set them here before our relatives

"Lay anything you have found in front of our relatives"

##### they may judge between the two of us

"they may judge between the two of us"

#### Genesis 31:38

##### ewes

female sheep

##### have not miscarried

This means they have not had a pregnancy end early and unexpectedly with the lamb or kid born dead.

#### Genesis 31:39

##### What was torn by beasts I did not bring to you

"I did not bring to you any of your animals that a wild beast tore apart" or "When a wild animal killed any of your animals I did not bring it to you"

##### I bore the loss of it

"Instead of counting it a loss from your flock, I counted it as a loss from my flock"

##### You demanded payment from my hand

"You demanded that I pay you for any animal of yours that was missing"

##### whether stolen by day or stolen by night

Possble meanings are 1) "whether someone stole it during the day or at night" or 2) "whether an animal took it during the day or night."

#### Genesis 31:40

##### There I was; in the day the heat consumed me, and the frost by night

"I stayed with your flocks even during hottest part of the day and the coldest part of the night"

#### Genesis 31:41

##### changed my wages ten times

"changed what he said he would pay me ten times." See how you translated "my wages" in Genesis 31:7.

#### Genesis 31:42

##### Unless the God of my father, the God of Abraham, and the one Isaac fears, had been with me

"If the God of Abraham and Isaac, my father, had not been with me"

##### the one Isaac fears

Here the word "fears" refers to the "fear of Yahweh," which means to deeply respect him and show that respect by obeying him.

##### empty-handed

"with absolutely nothing"

##### God has seen my affliction and my toil

"God has seen how hard I worked and how you afflicted me"

#### Genesis 31:43

##### But what can I do today to these my daughters, or to their children whom they have borne?

"But, there is nothing I can do to bring my daughters and grandchildren back with me."

#### Genesis 31:44

##### let it be for a witness

Here the word "witness" does not refer to a person, but it is used figuratively and refers to the covenant that Jacob and Laban are making. The covenant is spoken of as if it were a person who is there when they agree to act peacefully to one another.

#### Genesis 31:45

##### pillar

This means that a large stone was simply set up on its end to mark the place where this important event happened.

#### Genesis 31:46

##### made a pile

"stacked them on top of each other"

##### Then they ate there by the pile

Eating a meal together was a part of making the covenant with one another. The full meaning of this may be made explicit.

#### Genesis 31:47

##### Jegar Sahadutha

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Jegar Sahadutha means 'heap of witness' in Laban's language."

##### Galeed

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Galeed means 'heap of witness' in Jacob's language.

#### Genesis 31:48

##### This pile is a witness between me and you

"This pile will be a reminder between me and you"

#### Genesis 31:49

##### Mizpah

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Mizpah means 'watchtower.'"

##### when we are out of sight one from another

"when we are no longer with each other"

#### Genesis 31:50

##### although no one else is with us

"even if no one else is there to see us"

##### see

"look" or "remember" or "pay attention to what i am about to tell you"

#### Genesis 31:52

##### This pile is a witness, and the pillar is a witness

These piles of stones were to act as a remembrance and a boundary marker for Jacob and Laban regarding their peace agreement. They are spoken of as if they are human witnesses.

#### Genesis 31:53

##### the Fear of his father Isaac

Here the word "Fear" refers to Yahweh, who Isaac deeply respected and showed that respect by obeying him.

#### Genesis 31:54

##### called his relatives to eat a meal

Eating a meal together was part of making the covenant with one another.

#### Genesis 31:55

##### blessed

This means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to someone.

Chapter 32

1Jacob also went on his way, and the angels of God met him.2When Jacob saw them, he said, "This is God's camp," so he called the name of that place Mahanaim.

3Jacob sent messengers on ahead of him to his brother Esau in the land of Seir, in the region of Edom.4He commanded them, saying, "This is what you will say to my master Esau: This is what your servant Jacob says: 'I have been staying with Laban, and have delayed my return until now.5I have cattle and donkeys, and flocks, male servants, and female servants. I have sent this message to my master, so that I may find favor in your eyes.'"6The messengers returned to Jacob and said, "We went to your brother Esau. He is coming to meet you, and four hundred men are with him."7Then Jacob was very afraid and upset. So he divided the people who were with him into two camps, and also the flocks, the herds, and the camels.8He said, "If Esau comes to one camp and attacks it, then the camp that remains will escape."9Jacob said, "God of my father Abraham, and God of my father Isaac, Yahweh, who said to me, 'Return to your country and to your kindred, and I will prosper you,'10I am not worthy of all your acts of covenant faithfulness and of all the trustworthiness that you have done for your servant. For with only my staff I passed over this Jordan, and now I have become two camps.11Please rescue me from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau, for I am afraid of him, that he will come and attack me and the mothers with the children.12But you said, 'I will certainly make you prosper. I will make your descendants like the sand of the sea, which cannot be numbered for their number.'"

13Jacob stayed there that night. He took some of what he had with him as a gift for Esau, his brother:14two hundred female goats and twenty male goats, two hundred ewes and twenty rams,15thirty milking camels and their colts, forty cows and ten bulls, twenty female donkeys and ten male donkeys.16These he gave into the hand of his servants, every herd by itself. He said to his servants, "Go on ahead of me and put a space between each of the herds."17He instructed the first servant, saying, "When Esau my brother meets you and asks you, saying, 'To whom do you belong? Where are you going? Whose animals are these that are in front of you?'18Then you will say, 'They are your servant Jacob's. They are a gift sent to my master Esau. See, he is also coming after us.'"19Jacob also gave instructions to the second group, the third, and all the men who followed the herds. He said, "You will say the same thing to Esau when you meet him.20You must also say, 'Your servant Jacob is coming after us.'" For he thought, "I will appease him with the gifts that I am sending ahead of me. Then later, when I will see him, perhaps he will receive me."21So the gifts went on ahead of him. He himself stayed that night in the camp.

22Jacob got up during the night, and he took his two wives, his two women servants, and his eleven sons. He sent them across the ford of the Jabbok.23In this way he sent them across the stream along with all his possessions.24Jacob was left alone, and a man wrestled with him until dawn.25When the man saw that he could not defeat him, he struck Jacob's hip, so that his hip was dislocated as he wrestled with him.26The man said, "Let me go, for the dawn is breaking." Jacob said, "I will not let you go unless you bless me."27The man said to him, "What is your name?" Jacob said, "Jacob."28The man said, "Your name will no longer be called Jacob, but Israel. For you have struggled with God and with men and have prevailed."29Jacob asked him, "Please tell me your name." He said, "Why is it that you ask my name?" Then he blessed him there.30Jacob called the name of the place Peniel for he said, "I have seen God face to face, and my life is delivered."31The sun rose on Jacob as he passed Peniel. He was limping because of his hip.32That is why to this day the people of Israel do not eat the ligaments of the hip which are at the hip joint, because the man injured those ligaments while dislocating Jacob's hip.

#### Genesis 32:2

##### Mahanaim

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Mahanaim means 'two camps.'"

#### Genesis 32:3

##### Seir

This is a mountainous area in the region of Edom.

#### Genesis 32:4

##### This is what you will say to my master Esau: This is what your servant Jacob says: 'I have been ... have delayed my return until now.

"'This is what I want you to tell my master Esau. Tell him that I have been ... have delayed my return until now.'"

#### Genesis 32:5

##### that I may find favor in your eyes

"that you may approve of me"

#### Genesis 32:9

##### God of my father Abraham, and God of my father Isaac, Yahweh

"Yahweh, who is God of my grandfather Abraham and my father Isaac"

##### to your kindred

"to your family"

##### I will prosper you

"I will do good for you" or "I will treat you well"

#### Genesis 32:10

##### I am not worthy of all your acts of covenant faithfulness and of all the trustworthiness that you have done for your servant

"I do not deserve for you to remain faithful to your covenant or for you to be loyal to me, your servant"

##### your servant

This is a polite way of saying "me."

##### now I have become two camps

"and now I have enough people, flocks, and possessions with me to make two camps"

#### Genesis 32:11

##### rescue me

"save me"

##### from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau

"from the power of my brother, Esau" or "from my brother, Esau"

#### Genesis 32:12

##### But you said, 'I will certainly make you prosper. I will make your descendants ... number.'

"But you said that you would certainly prosper me, and that you would make my descendants ... number"

##### I will make your descendants like the sand of the sea

This speaks about the very large number of Jacob's descendants as if their number will be like the grains of sand on the seashore.

##### which cannot be numbered for their number

"which no one can count because of their number"

#### Genesis 32:15

##### their colts

"their young"

#### Genesis 32:16

##### These he gave into the hand of his servants, every herd by itself

"He divided them into small herds, and gave each of his servants control over one herd"

#### Genesis 32:17

##### He instructed

"He commanded"

##### asks you ... that are in front of you?'

"asks you who your master is, where you are going, and who owns these animals that are ahead of you"

#### Genesis 32:18

##### Then you will say, 'They are your servant Jacob's. They are a gift sent to my master Esau. See, he is also coming after us.'

"Then I want you to tell him that all of these things belong to Jacob, his servant, and he his giving them to his master, Esau. And tell him that Jacob is on the way to meet him"

##### coming after us

Here "us" refers to the servant speaking and the other servants bringing herds to Esau.

#### Genesis 32:20

##### You must also say, 'Your servant Jacob

Possible meanings are 1) "You will say also, 'Your servant Jacob'" or 2) "You will say, 'Also, Your servant Jacob.'"

##### I will appease him

"I will calm him down" or "I will make his anger go away"

##### he will receive me

"he will welcome me kindly"

#### Genesis 32:21

##### So the gifts went on ahead of him

Here "gifts" stands for the servants taking the gifts.

##### He himself stayed

Here "himself" emphasizes that Jacob did not go with the servants.

#### Genesis 32:22

##### his two women servants

"his two servant wives." This means Zilpah and Bilhah.

##### ford

a shallow place in a river that is easy to cross

##### Jabbok

This is the name of a river.

#### Genesis 32:23

##### all his possessions

"all that he had"

#### Genesis 32:25

##### he struck Jacob's hip, so that his hip was dislocated

"he struck Jacob's hip and dislocated it" or "he struck Jacob's hip and injured it"

##### his hip was dislocated

Possible meanings are that 1) the top of Jacob's leg bone moved out of the hole in the hip where it normally is, or 2) a muscle or something that attaches the top of the leg to the hip was torn.

#### Genesis 32:26

##### for the dawn is breaking

"the sun will rise soon"

##### bless

Here "bless" means to pronounce a formal blessing on someone and to cause good things to happen to that person.

##### I will not let you go unless you bless me

"I will let you go only if you bless me" or "Absolutely not! You must bless me first, then I will let you go"

#### Genesis 32:28

##### Israel

"The name Israel means 'He struggles with God.'"

##### with men

Here "men" means "people" in general.

#### Genesis 32:29

##### He said, "Why is it that you ask my name?"

"Do not ask me for my name!"

#### Genesis 32:30

##### Peniel

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Peniel means 'the face of God.'"

##### face to face

Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.

##### and my life is delivered

"yet he spared my life"

#### Genesis 32:32

##### to this day

This means to the day that the author was writing this.

##### ligaments of the hip

This refers to the muscle that connects the thigh bone to the thigh socket.

##### hip joint

"thigh socket"

##### while dislocating

"while striking"

Chapter 33

1Jacob looked up and, behold, Esau was coming, and with him were four hundred men. Jacob divided the children among Leah, Rachel, and the two female servants.2Then he put the female servants and their children in front, followed by Leah and her children, and followed by Rachel and Joseph last of all.3He himself went on ahead of them. He bowed toward the ground seven times, until he came near to his brother.4Esau ran to meet him, embraced him, hugged his neck, and kissed him. Then they wept.5When Esau looked up, he saw the women and the children. He said, "Who are these people with you?" Jacob said, "The children whom God has graciously given your servant."6Then the female servants came forward with their children, and they bowed down.7Next Leah also and her children came forward and bowed down. Finally Joseph and Rachel came forward and bowed down.8Esau said, "What do you mean by all these groups that I met?" Jacob said, "To find favor in the sight of my master."9Esau said, "I have enough, my brother. Keep what you have for yourself."10Jacob said, "No, please, if I have found favor in your eyes, then accept my gift from my hand, for indeed, I have seen your face, and it is like seeing the face of God, and you have accepted me.11Please accept my gift that was brought to you, because God has dealt graciously with me, and because I have enough." Thus Jacob urged him, and Esau accepted it.12Then Esau said, "Let us be on our way. I will go before you."13Jacob said to him, "My master knows that the children are young, and that the sheep and the cattle are nursing their young. If they are driven hard even one day, all the animals will die.14Please let my master go on ahead of his servant. I will travel more slowly, at the pace of the livestock that are before me, and at the pace of the children, until I come to my master in Seir."15Esau said, "Let me leave with you some of my men who are with me." But Jacob said, "Why do that? Let me find favor in the sight of my lord."16So Esau that day started on his way back to Seir.17Jacob traveled to Sukkoth, built himself a house, and made shelters for his livestock. Therefore the name of the place is called Sukkoth.

18When Jacob came from Paddan Aram, he arrived safely at the city of Shechem, which is in the land of Canaan. He camped near the city.19Then he bought the piece of ground where he had pitched his tent from the sons of Hamor, Shechem's father, for a hundred pieces of silver.20There he set up an altar and called it El Elohe Israel.

#### Genesis 33:1

##### behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to a surprising new part of the story.

##### Jacob divided the children ... female servants

This does not mean Jacob divided the children evenly so that each woman had the same amount of children with her. Jacob divided the children so that each one went with his or her mother.

#### Genesis 33:3

##### He himself went on ahead of them

Here "himself" emphasizes that Jacob went alone in front of the others.

##### He bowed

Here the word "bow" means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone.

#### Genesis 33:4

##### meet him

"meet Jacob"

##### embraced him, hugged his neck, and kissed him

"Esau put his arms around Jacob, hugged him, and kissed him"

##### Then they wept

"Then Esau and Jacob cried because they were happy to see each other again"

#### Genesis 33:5

##### he saw the women and the children

"he saw the women and children who were with Jacob"

#### Genesis 33:8

##### What do you mean by all these groups that I met?

"Why did you send all of those different groups to meet me?"

##### To find favor in the sight of my master

"So that you, my master, would be pleased with me"

#### Genesis 33:9

##### I have enough

"I have enough animals" or "I have enough property"

#### Genesis 33:10

##### if I have found favor in your eyes

"if you are pleased with me"

##### my gift from my hand

"this gift that I am giving to you"

##### I have seen your face, and it is like seeing the face of God

The meaning of this simile is unclear. Possible meanings are 1) Jacob is happy that Esau has forgiven him like God has forgiven him or 2) Jacob is amazed to see his brother again like he was amazed to see God or 3) Jacob is humbled to be in Esau's presence like he was humbled to be in God's presence.

#### Genesis 33:11

##### God has dealt graciously with me

"God has treated me very well" or "God has blessed me very much"

##### Thus Jacob urged him, and Esau accepted it

It was customary to refuse a gift first, but then to accept the gift before the giver was offended.

#### Genesis 33:13

##### the children are young

"the children are too young to travel fast"

##### If they are driven hard even one day

"If we force them to go too fast even for one day"

#### Genesis 33:14

##### Please let my master go on ahead of his servant

"My lord, I am your servant. Please go ahead of me"

##### at the pace of the livestock that are before me

"at the speed the animals I am looking after can go"

#### Genesis 33:15

##### Why do that?

"Do not do that!" or "You do not need to do that!"

#### Genesis 33:17

##### Sukkoth

Translators may also add a footnote that says, "The name Sukkoth means 'shelters.'"

##### built himself a house

"built a house for himself and his family"

##### for his livestock

"for the animals he looked after"

#### Genesis 33:18

##### When Jacob came from Paddan Aram

"After Jacob left Paddan Aram"

##### He camped near

"He set up his camp near"

#### Genesis 33:19

##### piece of ground

"piece of land"

##### Hamor

This is the name of a man.

##### Shechem's father

Shechem is the name of a city and the name of a man.

#### Genesis 33:20

##### El Elohe Israel

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name El Elohe Israel means 'God, the God of Israel.'"

Chapter 34

1Now Dinah, Leah's daughter whom she bore to Jacob, went out to meet the young women of the land.2Shechem son of Hamor the Hivite, the prince of the land, saw her. He took her and lay with her, and he humiliated her.3He was drawn to Dinah, the daughter of Jacob. He loved the young woman and spoke tenderly to her.4Shechem spoke to his father Hamor, saying, "Get this young woman for me as a wife."5Now Jacob heard that he had defiled Dinah his daughter. His sons were with his livestock in the field, so Jacob held his peace until they came.6Hamor the father of Shechem went out to Jacob to speak with him.7The sons of Jacob came in from the field when they heard of the matter. The men were offended. They were very angry because he had disgraced Israel by lying with Jacob's daughter, for such a thing should not have been done.8Hamor spoke with them, saying, "My son Shechem loves your daughter. Please give her to him as a wife.9Intermarry with us, give your daughters to us, and take our daughters for yourselves.10You will live with us, and the land will be open to you to live and trade in, and to acquire property."11Shechem said to her father and to her brothers, "Let me find favor in your eyes, and whatever you tell me I will give.12Ask me for as great a bride price and gift as you will, and I will give whatever you say to me, but give me the young woman as a wife."13The sons of Jacob answered Shechem and Hamor his father with deceit, because Shechem had defiled Dinah their sister.14They said to them, "We cannot do this thing, to give our sister to anyone who is uncircumcised; for that would be a disgrace to us.15Only on this condition will we agree with you: If you will become circumcised as we are, if every male among you is circumcised.16Then will we give our daughters to you, and we will take your daughters to ourselves, and we will live with you and become one people.17But if you do not listen to us and become circumcised, then we will take our sister and we will leave."

18Their words pleased Hamor and his son Shechem.19The young man did not delay to do what they said, because he delighted in Jacob's daughter, and because he was the most honored person in all his father's household.20Hamor and Shechem his son went to the gate of their city and spoke with the men of their city, saying,21"These men are at peace with us, so let them live in the land and trade in it for, really, the land is large enough for them. Let us take their daughters as wives, and let us give them our daughters.22Only on this condition will the men agree to live with us and become one people: If every male among us is circumcised, as they are circumcised.23Will not their livestock and their property—all their animals be ours? So let us agree with them, and they will live among us."24All who went out to the gates of his city listened to Hamor and Shechem, his son. All males were circumcised, all who went out to the gates of his city.25On the third day, when they were still in pain, two of the sons of Jacob (Simeon and Levi, Dinah's brothers), each took his sword and they attacked the city that was certain of its security, and they killed all the males.26They killed Hamor and his son Shechem with the edge of the sword. They took Dinah from Shechem's house and went away.27The other sons of Jacob came to the dead bodies and plundered the city, because the people had defiled their sister.28They took their flocks, their herds, their donkeys, and everything in the city and in the surrounding fields.29They captured all their wealth, all their children, and their wives. They even plundered everything that was in the houses.30Jacob said to Simeon and Levi, "You have brought trouble on me, to make me stink to the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites and the Perizzites. I am few in number. If they gather themselves together against me and attack me, then I will be destroyed, I and my household."31But Simeon and Levi said, "Should Shechem have dealt with our sister as with a prostitute?"

#### Genesis 34:1

##### Now

Here this word is used to mark a new part of the story.

##### Dinah

This is the name of Leah's daughter. See how you translated this name in Genesis 30:21.

#### Genesis 34:2

##### the prince of the land

This is referring to Hamor not Shechem. Also, "prince" here does not mean son of a king. It means Hamor was the leader of the people in that area.

##### He took her and lay with her

"he grabbed her and had sexual relations with her"

#### Genesis 34:3

##### He was drawn to Dinah

"He wanted very much to be with Dinah"

##### spoke tenderly to her

He tried to convince her that he loved her and that he wanted her to love him also.

#### Genesis 34:5

##### Jacob heard that he

The word "he" refers to Shechem.

##### he had defiled

This means that Shechem had greatly dishonored and disgraced Dinah by forcing her to sleep with him.

##### held his peace

This is a way of saying that Jacob did not say or do anything about the matter.

#### Genesis 34:7

##### he had disgraced Israel

"he had humiliated the family of Israel" or "he had brought shame on the people of Israel"

##### for such a thing should not have been done

"for he should not have done such a terrible thing"

#### Genesis 34:8

##### Hamor spoke with them

"Hamor spoke with Jacob and his sons"

#### Genesis 34:9

##### Intermarry with us

"Allow marriages between your people and ours"

#### Genesis 34:10

##### the land will be open to you

"the land will be available to you"

#### Genesis 34:11

##### Let me find favor in your eyes, and whatever you tell me I will give

"If you will approve of me, then I will give you whatever you ask"

#### Genesis 34:12

##### bride price

In some cultures, it is customary for a man to give money, property, cattle, and other gifts to the bride's family at the time of marriage.

#### Genesis 34:13

##### The sons of Jacob answered Shechem and Hamor his father with deceit

"But the sons of Jacob lied to Shechem and Hamor when they answered them"

#### Genesis 34:14

##### We cannot do this thing, to give our sister

"We cannot agree to give Dinah in marriage"

##### for that would be a disgrace to us

"for that would cause us shame." Here "us" refers to Jacob's sons and all the people of Israel.

#### Genesis 34:16

##### give our daughters to you ... take your daughters to ourselves

This means they will allow a person from Jacob's family to marry a person who lives in Hamor's land.

#### Genesis 34:18

##### Their words pleased Hamor and his son Shechem

"Hamor and his son Shechem agreed with what Jacob's sons said"

#### Genesis 34:19

##### to do what they said

"to become circumcised"

##### Jacob's daughter

"Jacob's daughter Dinah"

##### because he was the most honored person in all his father's household

"Shechem knew all the men in his father's household would agree with him because he was the most honored among them"

#### Genesis 34:20

##### the gate of their city

It was common for leaders to meet at the city gate to make official decisions.

#### Genesis 34:21

##### These men

"Jacob, his sons, and the people of Israel"

##### peace with us

Here "us" includes Hamor, his son and all the people they spoke with at the city gate.

##### let them live in the land and trade in it

"let them live and trade in the land"

#### Genesis 34:23

##### Will not their livestock and their property—all their animals be ours?

"All of their animals and property will be ours."

#### Genesis 34:24

##### All males were circumcised

"All adult males were circumcised" or "So Hamor and Shechem had someone circumcise all the adult men"

#### Genesis 34:25

##### On the third day

"After two days"

##### each took his sword

"took their swords"

##### they attacked the city

"they attacked the people of the city"

##### security, and they killed all the males

"security. Simeon and Levi killed all the men of the city"

#### Genesis 34:27

##### the dead bodies

"the dead bodies of Hamor, Shechem, and their men"

##### plundered the city

"stole everything in the city that was valuable"

##### because the people had defiled their sister

Shechem alone had defiled Dinah, but Jacob's sons considered Shechem's entire family and everyone in the city responsible for this act.

#### Genesis 34:28

##### They took their flocks, their herds, their donkeys, and everything

"Jacob's sons took the people's flocks, herds, and donkeys, as well as everything"

#### Genesis 34:29

##### They captured all their wealth, all their children, and their wives

"They took all their wealth, and they captured all their children and their wives"

#### Genesis 34:30

##### brought trouble on me

"caused great problems for me"

##### to make me stink to the inhabitants of the land

"You have made me repulsive to the people who live in the land"

##### I am few in number ... against me and attack me, then I will be destroyed, I and my household

"My household is small ... against us and attack us, then they will destroy all of us"

Chapter 35

1God said to Jacob, "Arise, go up to Bethel, and dwell there. Build an altar there to God, who appeared to you when you fled from Esau your brother."2Then Jacob said to his household and to all who were with him, "Get rid of the foreign gods that are among you, purify yourselves, and change your clothes.3Then let us depart and go up to Bethel. I will build an altar there to God, who answered me in the day of my distress, and has been with me wherever I have gone."4So they gave to Jacob all the foreign gods that were in their hand, and the rings that were in their ears. Jacob buried them under the oak that was near Shechem.5As they traveled, God made panic to fall on the cities that were around them, so those people did not pursue the sons of Jacob.6So Jacob arrived at Luz (that is, Bethel), which is in the land of Canaan, he and all the people who were with him.7He built an altar there and called the place El Bethel, because there God had revealed himself to him, when he was fleeing from his brother.8Deborah, Rebekah's nurse, died. She was buried down from Bethel under the oak tree, so it was called Allon Bakuth.

9When Jacob came from Paddan Aram, God appeared to him again and blessed him.10God said to him, "Your name is Jacob, but your name will no longer be called Jacob. Your name will be Israel." So God called his name Israel.11God said to him, "I am God Almighty. Be fruitful and multiply. A nation and a company of nations will come from you, and kings will be among your descendants.12The land that I gave to Abraham and Isaac, I will give to you. To your descendants after you I also give the land."13God went up from him in the place where he spoke with him.14Jacob set up a pillar in the place where God had spoken to him, a pillar of stone. He poured out a drink offering over it and poured oil on it.15Jacob called the name of the place where God spoke with him, Bethel.

16They journeyed on from Bethel. While they were still some distance from Ephrath, Rachel went into labor. She had hard labor.17While she was in hardest labor, the midwife said to her, "Do not be afraid, for now you will have another son."18As she was dying, with her dying breath she named him Ben-Oni, but his father called him Benjamin.19Rachel died and was buried on the way to Ephrath (that is, Bethlehem).20Jacob set up a pillar upon her grave. It is the marker of Rachel's grave to this day.21Israel traveled on and pitched his tent beyond the watchtower of the flock.22While Israel was living in that land, Reuben lay with Bilhah his father's concubine, and Israel heard of it.

Now Jacob had twelve sons.

23His sons by Leah were Reuben, Jacob's firstborn, and Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun.

24His sons by Rachel were Joseph and Benjamin.

25His sons by Bilhah, Rachel's female servant, were Dan and Naphtali.

26The sons of Zilpah, Leah's female servant, were Gad and Asher. All these were the sons of Jacob who were born to him in Paddan Aram.

27Jacob came to Isaac, his father, in Mamre in Kiriath Arba (the same as Hebron), where Abraham and Isaac had lived.

28Isaac lived for one hundred eighty years.29Isaac breathed his last and died, and was gathered to his ancestors, an old man full of days. Esau and Jacob, his sons, buried him.

#### Genesis 35:1

##### go up to Bethel

The phrase "go up" is used because Bethel is higher in elevation than Shechem.

##### Build an altar there to God

"Build an altar there to me, your God"

#### Genesis 35:2

##### said to his household

"said to his family"

##### Get rid of the foreign gods that are among you

"Throw away your idols" or "Get rid of your false gods"

##### purify yourselves, and change your clothes

This was the custom of cleansing oneself morally and physically before going to worship God.

##### change your clothes

Putting on a new clothes was a sign that they had made themselves clean before approaching God.

#### Genesis 35:4

##### that were in their hand

"that were in their possession" or "that they had"

##### the rings that were in their ears

"their earrings." Possible meanings are 1) the gold in the earrings could have been used to make more idols or 2) they took these earrings from the city of Shechem after they attacked it and killed all the people. The earrings would have reminded them of their sin.

#### Genesis 35:5

##### God made panic to fall on the cities

"God made the people in the surrounding cities afraid of Jacob and those with him"

##### on the cities

Here "cities" stands for the people who live in the cities.

##### the sons of Jacob

"Jacob's family" or "Jacob's household"

#### Genesis 35:6

##### Luz

This is the name of a city. See how you translated this in Genesis 28:19.

#### Genesis 35:7

##### El Bethel

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name El Bethel means 'God of Bethel.'"

#### Genesis 35:8

##### Deborah

This is the name of a woman.

##### Rebekah's nurse

A nurse is a woman who takes care of another woman's child. The nurse was highly honored and important to the family.

##### Allon Bakuth

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Allon Bakuth means 'Oak tree where there is weeping.'"

#### Genesis 35:9

##### When Jacob came from Paddan Aram

"After Jacob left Paddan Aram, and while he was in Bethel"

##### blessed

Here "bless" means to pronounce a formal blessing on someone and to cause good things to happen to that person.

#### Genesis 35:10

##### but your name will no longer be called Jacob

"but your name will no longer be Jacob"

#### Genesis 35:11

##### God said to him

"God said to Jacob"

##### Be fruitful and multiply

God told Jacob to produce children so that there would be many of them. The word "multiply" explains how he was to be "fruitful."

##### A nation and a company of nations will come from you

Here "nation" and "nations" refer to Jacob's descendants who will establish these nations.

#### Genesis 35:13

##### God went up from him

"God left him"

#### Genesis 35:14

##### pillar

This is a memorial pillar which was simply a large stone or boulder set up on its end.

##### He poured out a drink offering over it and poured oil on it

This is a sign that he is dedicating the pillar to God.

#### Genesis 35:15

##### Bethel

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Bethel means 'house of God.'"

#### Genesis 35:16

##### Ephrath

This is another name for the town of Bethlehem.

##### She had hard labor

"She was having a very difficult time giving birth to the child"

#### Genesis 35:17

##### While she was in hardest labor

"When the labor pain was at its worst"

##### midwife

a person who helps a woman when she is giving birth to a child

#### Genesis 35:18

##### As she was dying, with her dying breath

"Just before she died, as she was taking her last breath"

##### Ben-Oni

Translator may add a footnote that says "The name Ben-Oni means 'son of my sorrow.'"

##### Benjamin

Translator may add a footnote that says "The name Benjamin means 'son of the right hand.'" The phrase "right hand" indicates a place of special favor.

#### Genesis 35:19

##### was buried

"they buried her"

##### on the way

"alongside the road"

#### Genesis 35:20

##### It is the marker of Rachel's grave to this day

"It marks Rachel's grave to the time that the author was writing this"

#### Genesis 35:21

##### the watchtower of the flock

Some English translations understand this phrase as a proper name, either "Migdal Eder" or "the tower of Eder."

#### Genesis 35:22

##### lay with

"had sexual relations with"

##### Now Jacob had twelve sons

This sentence begins a new paragraph, which continues into the following verses.

#### Genesis 35:26

##### Zilpah

This is the name of Leah's female servant. See how you translated this name in Genesis 29:24.

##### who were born to him in Paddan Aram

"who were born to him in Paddan Aram, except Benjamin who was born in the land of Canaan"

#### Genesis 35:27

##### Jacob came to Isaac

Here "came" can be stated as "went."

##### Mamre

This was another name for the city of Hebron. It may have been named after Mamre, the friend of Abraham who lived there.

##### Kiriath Arba

This is the name of a city. See how you translated this in Genesis 23:2.

#### Genesis 35:29

##### was gathered to his ancestors

"he joined his family members who had already died"

##### an old man full of days

"after he had lived a very long time and was very old"

Chapter 36

1These were the descendants of Esau (also called Edom).

2Esau took his wives from the Canaanites. These were his wives: Adah the daughter of Elon the Hittite; Oholibamah the daughter of Anah, the granddaughter of Zibeon the Hivite;3and Basemath, Ishmael's daughter, sister of Nebaioth.4Adah bore Eliphaz to Esau, and Basemath bore Reuel.5Oholibamah bore Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. These were the sons of Esau who were born to him in the land of Canaan.6Esau took his wives, his sons, his daughters, and all the members of his household, his livestock—all his other animals, and all his possessions, which he had gathered in the land of Canaan, and went into a land away from his brother Jacob.7He did this because their possessions were too many for them to stay together. The land where they were sojourning could not support them because of their livestock.8So Esau, also known as Edom, settled in the hill country of Seir.

9These were the descendants of Esau, the ancestor of the Edomites in the hill country of Seir.

10These were the names of Esau's sons: Eliphaz son of Adah, the wife of Esau; Reuel son of Basemath, the wife of Esau.

11The sons of Eliphaz were Teman, Omar, Zepho, Gatam, and Kenaz.

12Timna, a concubine of Eliphaz, Esau's son, bore Amalek. These were the grandsons of Adah, Esau's wife.

13These were the sons of Reuel: Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah. These were the grandsons of Basemath, Esau's wife.

14These were the sons of Oholibamah, Esau's wife, who was the daughter of Anah and the granddaughter of Zibeon. She bore to Esau Jeush, Jalam, and Korah.

15These were the clans among Esau's descendants: the descendants of Eliphaz, the firstborn of Esau: Teman, Omar, Zepho, Kenaz,16Korah, Gatam, and Amalek. These were the clans descended from Eliphaz in the land of Edom. They were the grandsons of Adah.

17These were the clans from Reuel, Esau's son: Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, Mizzah. These were the clans descended from Reuel in the land of Edom. They were the grandsons of Basemath, Esau's wife.

18These were the clans of Oholibamah, Esau's wife: Jeush, Jalam, Korah. These are the clans that descended from Esau's wife Oholibamah, daughter of Anah.19These were the sons of Esau (who was known as Edom), and these were their chiefs.

20These were the sons of Seir the Horite, the inhabitants of the land: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah,21Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. These were the clans of the Horites, the inhabitants of Seir in the land of Edom.

22The sons of Lotan were Hori and Heman, and Timna was Lotan's sister.

23These were the sons of Shobal: Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho, and Onam.

24These were the sons of Zibeon: Aiah and Anah. This is Anah who found the hot springs in the wilderness, as he was pasturing donkeys of Zibeon his father.

25These were the children of Anah: Dishon and Oholibamah, the daughter of Anah.

26These were the sons of Dishon: Hemdan, Eshban, Ithran, and Keran.

27These were the sons of Ezer: Bilhan, Zaavan, and Akan.

28These were the sons of Dishan: Uz and Aran.

29These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah,30Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: These were clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir.

31These were the kings who reigned in the land of Edom before any king reigned over the sons of Israel:

32Bela son of Beor, reigned in Edom, and the name of his city was Dinhabah.

33When Bela died, then Jobab son of Zerah of Bozrah, reigned in his place.

34When Jobab died, Husham who was of the land of the Temanites, reigned in his place.

35When Husham died, Hadad son of Bedad who defeated the Midianites in the land of Moab, reigned in his place. The name of his city was Avith.

36When Hadad died, then Samlah of Masrekah reigned in his place.

37When Samlah died, then Shaul of Rehoboth by the river reigned in his place.

38When Shaul died, then Baal-Hanan son of Akbor reigned in his place.

39When Baal-Hanan son of Akbor died, then Hadar reigned in his place. The name of his city was Pau. His wife's name was Mehetabel, the daughter of Matred, the granddaughter of Me-Zahab.

40These were the names of the heads of clans from Esau's descendants, according to their clans and their regions, by their names: Timna, Alvah, Jetheth,41Oholibamah, Elah, Pinon,42Kenaz, Teman, Mibzar,43Magdiel, and Iram. These were the clan heads of Edom, according to their settlements in the land they possessed. This was Esau, the father of the Edomites.

#### Genesis 36:1

##### These were the descendants of Esau (also called Edom)

"This is an account of the descendants of Esau, who is also called Edom"

#### Genesis 36:2

##### Adah ... Oholibamah

These are names of Esau's wives.

##### Elon the Hittite

"Elon the descendant of Heth" or "Elon a descendant of Heth." This is the name of a man. See how you translate this in Genesis 26:34.

##### Anah ... Zibeon

These are names of men.

##### Hivite

This refers to a larger group of people. See how you translated it in Genesis 10:17.

#### Genesis 36:3

##### Nebaioth

a man's name

##### Basemath

This is the name of one of Esau's wives. See how you translated this in Genesis 26:34.

##### Nebaioth

This is the name of one of Ishmael's sons. See how you translated this in Genesis 28:9.

#### Genesis 36:4

##### Eliphaz ... Reuel

These are names of Esau's sons.

#### Genesis 36:5

##### Jeush ... Jalam ... Korah

These are names of Esau's sons.

#### Genesis 36:6

##### which he had gathered in the land of Canaan

"which he had accumulated while living in the land of Canaan"

##### went into a land

"went to live in another land"

#### Genesis 36:7

##### their possessions

"Esau's and Jacob's possessions"

##### where they were sojourning

"where they were living as foreigners"

#### Genesis 36:9

##### in the hill country of Seir

"who lived in the hill country of Seir"

#### Genesis 36:11

##### Teman, Omar, Zepho, Gatam, and Kenaz

These are names of the sons of Eliphaz.

#### Genesis 36:12

##### Amalek

a son of Eliphaz

##### Timna

This is the name of Eliphaz's concubine.

#### Genesis 36:13

##### Nahath ... Zerah ... Shammah ... Mizzah

These are names of Reuel's sons.

#### Genesis 36:14

##### Anah ... Zibeon

These are the names of men.

#### Genesis 36:18

##### Anah

This the name of a man.

#### Genesis 36:20

##### Seir

The word "Seir" is the name of a man and of a country.

##### the Horite

The word "Horite" refers to a people group.

##### Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah

These are names of men.

#### Genesis 36:21

##### Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan

These are names of men.

#### Genesis 36:22

##### Lotan ... Hori and Heman

These are names of men.

##### Timna

This is the name of a woman.

#### Genesis 36:23

##### Shobal

This is the name of man.

##### Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho, and Onam

These are names of men.

#### Genesis 36:24

##### Zibeon

This is the name of a man.

##### Aiah and Anah

These are names of men.

#### Genesis 36:26

##### Dishon ... Hemdan, Eshban, Ithran, and Keran

These are names of men.

#### Genesis 36:27

##### Ezer ... Bilhan, Zaavan, and Akan

These are names of men.

#### Genesis 36:28

##### Dishan ... Uz and Aran

These are names of men.

#### Genesis 36:30

##### in the land of Seir

"of those who lived in the land of Seir"

#### Genesis 36:32

##### Bela ... Beor

These are names of men.

##### Dinhabah

This is the name of a place.

#### Genesis 36:33

##### Bela ... Jobab ... Zerah

These are names of men.

##### Bozrah

This is the name of a place.

##### reigned in his place

"succeeded Bela as king" or "became king after him"

#### Genesis 36:34

##### Husham

This is the name of a man.

##### Husham who was of the land of the Temanites

"Husham who lived in the land of the Temanites"

##### Temanites

descendants of a man named Teman

#### Genesis 36:35

##### Husham ... Hadad ... Bedad

These are names of men.

##### Avith

These are names of places.

#### Genesis 36:36

##### Hadad ... Samlah

These are names of men.

##### Samlah of Masrekah

"Samlah from Masrekah"

##### Masrekah

These are names of places.

#### Genesis 36:37

##### Samlah

This is the name of a man.

#### Genesis 36:38

##### Shaul ... Baal-Hanan ... Akbor

These are names of men.

#### Genesis 36:39

##### Baal-Hanan ... Akbor ... Hadar ... Matred ... Me-Zahab

These are names of men.

##### Pau

These are names of places.

##### Mehetabel

This is the name of a woman.

##### the daughter of Matred, the granddaughter of Me-Zahab

"she was the daughter of Matred, and the granddaughter of Me-Zahab"

#### Genesis 36:40

##### according to their clans and their regions, by their names

"the names of their clans and the regions where they lived were named after them. These are their names"

##### Timna, Alvah, Jetheth

These are names of people groups.

#### Genesis 36:41

##### Oholibamah, Elah, Pinon

These are names of people groups.

#### Genesis 36:42

##### Kenaz, Teman, Mibzar

These are names of people groups.

#### Genesis 36:43

##### Magdiel, and Iram

These are names of people groups.

##### their settlements

"their dwelling places" or "the places they lived"

##### This was Esau

"This is the list of the descendants of Esau"

Chapter 37

1Jacob lived in the land where his father had sojourned, in the land of Canaan.

2This is the account of Jacob. Joseph, who was a young man seventeen years old, was guarding the flock with his brothers. He was with the sons of Bilhah and with the sons of Zilpah, his father's wives. Joseph brought an unfavorable report about them to their father.3Now Israel loved Joseph more than all his sons because he was the son of his old age. He made him a beautifully decorated garment.4His brothers saw that their father loved him more than all his brothers. They hated him and would not speak peaceably to him.

5Joseph dreamed a dream, and he told his brothers about it. They hated him even more.6He said to them, "Please listen to this dream which I dreamed.7Behold, we were tying bundles of grain in the field and behold, my bundle rose and stood upright, and behold, your bundles came around and bowed down to my bundle."8His brothers said to him, "Will you really reign over us? Will you actually rule over us?" They hated him even more for his dreams and for his words.9He dreamed another dream and told it to his brothers. He said, "Look, I have dreamed another dream: The sun and the moon and eleven stars bowed down to me."10He told it to his father just as to his brothers, and his father rebuked him. He said to him, "What is this dream that you have dreamed? Will your mother and I and your brothers actually come to bow down to the ground to you?"11His brothers were jealous of him, but his father kept the matter in mind.

12His brothers went to tend their father's flock in Shechem.13Israel said to Joseph, "Are not your brothers tending the flock in Shechem? Come, and I will send you to them." Joseph said to him, "I am ready."14He said to him, "Go now, see whether it is well with your brothers and well with the flock, and bring me word." So Jacob sent him out of the Valley of Hebron, and Joseph went to Shechem.15A certain man found Joseph. Behold, Joseph was wandering in a field. The man asked him, "What do you seek?"16Joseph said, "I am seeking my brothers. Tell me, please, where they are tending the flock."17The man said, "They left this place, for I heard them say, 'Let us go to Dothan.'" Joseph went after his brothers and found them at Dothan.

18They saw him from a distance, and before he came near to them, they plotted against him to kill him.19His brothers said to one another, "Look, this master of dreams is approaching.20Come now, therefore, let us kill him and cast him into one of the pits. We will say, 'A wild animal has devoured him.' We will see what will become of his dreams."21Reuben heard it and rescued him from their hand. He said, "Let us not take his life."22Reuben said to them, "Shed no blood. Throw him into this pit that is in the wilderness, but lay no hand upon him"—that he might rescue him out of their hand to bring him back to his father.23It came about that when Joseph reached his brothers, they stripped him of his beautifully decorated garment.24They took him and threw him into the pit. The pit was empty with no water in it.

25They sat down to eat bread. They lifted up their eyes and looked, and, behold, a caravan of Ishmaelites was coming from Gilead, with their camels bearing spices and balm and myrrh. They were traveling to carry them down to Egypt.26Judah said to his brothers, "What profit is it if we kill our brother and cover up his blood?27Come, and let us sell him to the Ishmaelites and not lay our hands upon him. For he is our brother, our flesh." His brothers listened to him.28The Midianite merchants passed by. His brothers drew Joseph up and lifted him up out of the pit. They sold Joseph to the Ishmaelites for twenty pieces of silver. The Ishmaelites carried Joseph into Egypt.

29Reuben returned to the pit, and, behold, Joseph was not in the pit. He tore his clothes.30He returned to his brothers and said, "The boy is not there! And I, where can I go?"31They slaughtered a goat and then took Joseph's garment and dipped it into the blood.32Then they brought the beautifully decorated garment to their father and said, "We found this. Please see whether it is your son's garment or not."33Jacob recognized it and said, "It is my son's clothing. A wild animal has devoured him. Joseph has certainly been torn to pieces."34Jacob tore his garments and put sackcloth upon his loins. He mourned for his son many days.35All his sons and daughters rose up to comfort him, but he refused to be comforted. He said, "Indeed I will go down to Sheol mourning for my son." His father wept for him.36The Midianites sold him in Egypt to Potiphar, an officer of Pharaoh, the captain of the bodyguard.

#### Genesis 37:2

##### wives

These women were servants of Leah and Rachel whom they had given to Jacob to produce children.

##### an unfavorable report about them

"a bad report about his brothers"

#### Genesis 37:3

##### loved

This refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member. This is natural human love between friends or relatives.

##### of his old age

"who was born when Israel was an old man"

##### He made him

"Israel made Joseph"

##### a beautifully decorated garment

"a beautiful robe"

#### Genesis 37:5

##### Joseph dreamed a dream, and he told his brothers about it. They hated him even more

This is a summary of the events that will happen in 37:6-11.

##### They hated him even more

"And Joseph's brothers hated him even more than they hated him before"

#### Genesis 37:7

##### Behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### we were

The word "we" refers to Joseph and includes all of his brothers.

##### tying bundles of grain

When grain is reaped it is tied into bundles and stacked until it is time to separate the grain from the straw.

##### behold

Here the word "behold" here shows that Joseph was surprised by what he saw.

##### my bundle rose and stood upright ... your bundles came around and bowed down

Here the bundles of grain are standing and kneeling as if they were people. These bundle represent Joseph and his brothers.

#### Genesis 37:8

##### Will you really reign over us? Will you actually rule over us?

"You will never be our king, and we will never bow down to you!"

##### reign over us

The word "us" refers to Joseph's brothers but not Joseph.

##### for his dreams and for his words

"because of his dreams and what he said"

#### Genesis 37:10

##### his father rebuked him. He said to him

"Israel scolded him, saying"

##### What is this dream that you have dreamed? Will your mother ... to the ground to you?

"This dream you had is not real. Your mother, brothers, and I will not bow down before you!"

#### Genesis 37:11

##### jealous

This means being angry because someone else is successful or more popular.

##### kept the matter in mind

"kept thinking about what the dream might mean"

#### Genesis 37:13

##### Are not your brothers tending the flock in Shechem?

"You brothers are tending the flock in Shechem."

##### Come

"Get ready"

#### Genesis 37:14

##### He said to him

"Israel said to Joseph"

##### bring me word

"come tell me what you find out" or "give me a report"

##### out of the Valley

"from the Valley"

#### Genesis 37:15

##### Behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of doing this.

##### What do you seek?

"What are you looking for?"

#### Genesis 37:17

##### Dothan

This is the name of a place that is about 22 kilometers from Shechem.

#### Genesis 37:18

##### They saw him from a distance

"Joseph's brothers saw him while he was far away"

#### Genesis 37:19

##### this master of dreams is approaching

"here comes the wonderful person who has great dreams." The phrase "this master of dreams" is sarcastic. If your language has a way of showing that the brothers used these words to show that they hated Joseph, you may want to use it here.

#### Genesis 37:20

##### Come now, therefore

"So now"

##### devoured

to eagerly have eaten

##### We will see what will become of his dreams

"That way we will make sure his dreams do not come true"

#### Genesis 37:21

##### heard it

"heard what they were saying"

##### from their hand

"from them" or "from their plans"

##### Let us not take his life

"Let us not kill Joseph"

#### Genesis 37:22

##### Shed no blood

"Do not spill any blood" or "Do not kill him"

##### that he might rescue him

"Rueben said this so that he might rescue Joseph"

##### out of their hand

"from them" or "from their plans"

##### to bring him back

"and return him"

#### Genesis 37:23

##### It came about that when

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### they stripped him of his beautifully decorated garment

"they tore his beautiful garment off of him"

#### Genesis 37:25

##### They sat down to eat bread

"They sat down to eat food" or "Joseph's brothers sat down to eat"

##### They lifted up their eyes and looked, and, behold, a caravan

"They looked up and they suddenly saw a caravan"

##### bearing

carrying

##### spices

seasonings

##### balm

an oily substance with a sweet smell used for healing and protecting skin. "medicine"

##### traveling to carry them down to Egypt

"bringing them down to Egypt to sell them"

#### Genesis 37:26

##### What profit is it if we kill our brother and cover up his blood?

"We do not gain a profit by killing our brother and covering up his blood"

##### cover up his blood

"hide his murder"

#### Genesis 37:27

##### to the Ishmaelites

"to these men who are descendants of Ishmael"

##### not lay our hands upon him

"not hurt him"

##### he is our brother, our flesh

"he is our blood relative"

##### His brothers listened to him

"Judah's brothers listened to him" or "Judah's brothers agreed with him"

#### Genesis 37:28

##### Midianite ... Ishmaelites

Both names refer to the same group of traders that Joseph's brothers meet.

##### for twenty pieces of silver

"for the price of 20 pieces of silver"

##### carried Joseph into Egypt

"took Joseph to Egypt"

#### Genesis 37:29

##### Reuben returned to the pit, and, behold, Joseph was not in the pit

"Reuben returned to the pit, and was surprised to see that Joseph was not there." The word "behold" here shows that Reuben was surprised to find out Joseph was gone.

##### He tore his clothes

"He was so grieved that he tore his clothes"

#### Genesis 37:30

##### The boy is not there! And I, where can I go?

"The boy is gone! I cannot go back home now!"

#### Genesis 37:31

##### Joseph's garment

This refers to the beautiful garment that his father made for him.

##### the blood

"the goat's blood"

#### Genesis 37:33

##### has devoured him

"has eaten him"

##### Joseph has certainly been torn to pieces

"It has certainly torn Joseph to pieces"

#### Genesis 37:34

##### Jacob tore his garments

"Jacob was so grieved that he tore his garments"

##### put sackcloth upon his loins

"put on sackcloth"

#### Genesis 37:35

##### rose up

"came to him"

##### but he refused to be comforted

"but he would not let them comfort him"

##### Indeed I will go down to Sheol mourning

"Indeed when I die and go down to Sheol I will still be mourning"

#### Genesis 37:36

##### The Midianites sold him

"The Midianites sold Joseph"

##### the captain of the bodyguard

"the leader of the soldiers who guarded the king"

Chapter 38

1It came about at that time that Judah left his brothers and stayed with a certain Adullamite, whose name was Hirah.2He met there a daughter of a Canaanite man whose name was Shua. He took her and went to her.3She conceived and had a son. He was named Er.4She conceived again and had a son. She called his name Onan.5She again had a son and called his name Shelah. It was at Kezib where she gave birth to him.6Judah found a wife for Er, his firstborn. Her name was Tamar.7Er, Judah's firstborn, was wicked in the sight of Yahweh. Yahweh killed him.8Judah said to Onan, "Go to your brother's wife. Do the duty of a brother-in-law to her, and raise up a child for your brother."9Onan knew that the child would not be his. Whenever he went to his brother's wife, he wasted it on the ground so he would not have a child for his brother.10What he did was evil in the sight of Yahweh. Yahweh killed him also.11Then Judah said to Tamar, his daughter-in-law, "Remain a widow in your father's house until Shelah, my son, grows up." For he feared, "He might also die, just like his brothers." Tamar left and lived in her father's house.

12After a long time, Shua's daughter, the wife of Judah, died. Judah was comforted and went up to the shearers of his sheep at Timnah, he and his friend Hirah the Adullamite.13Tamar was told, "Look, your father-in-law is going up to Timnah to shear his sheep."14She took off the clothing of her widowhood and covered herself with her veil and wrapped herself. She sat in the gate of Enaim, which is by the road to Timnah. For she saw that Shelah had grown up but she had not been given to him as a wife.15When Judah saw her he thought that she was a prostitute because she had covered her face.16He went to her by the road and said, "Come, please let me come to you"—for he did not know that she was his daughter-in-law—and she said, "What will you give me so you can come to me?"17He said, "I will send you a young goat from the flock." She said, "Will you give me a pledge until you send it?"18He said, "What pledge can I give you?" She replied, "Your seal and cord, and the staff that is in your hand." He gave them to her and he went to her, and she conceived by him.19She got up and went away. She took off her veil and put on the clothing of her widowhood.20Judah sent the young goat by his friend the Adullamite in order that he might receive the pledge back from the woman's hand, but he did not find her.21Then the Adullamite asked the men of the place, "Where is the cultic prostitute who was at Enaim by the road?" They said, "There has not been a cultic prostitute here."22He returned to Judah and said, "I did not find her. Also, the men of the place said, 'There has not been a cultic prostitute here.'"23Judah said, "Let her keep the things, that we not be put to shame. Indeed, I sent this young goat, but you did not find her."

24It came about after about three months that it was told to Judah, "Tamar your daughter-in-law has committed prostitution, and indeed, she is pregnant by it." Judah said, "Bring her here and let her be burned."25When she was brought out, she sent to her father-in-law a message, "By the man who owns these I am pregnant." She said, "Determine please whose these are, the seal and cords and staff."26Judah recognized them and said, "She is more righteous than I am, since I did not give her as a wife to Shelah, my son." He did not know her again.27It came about at the time for her to give birth that, behold, twins were in her womb.28It came about as she was giving birth one put out a hand, and the midwife took a scarlet thread and tied it on his hand and said, "This one came out first."29But then he drew back his hand, and, behold, his brother came out first. The midwife said, "How you have broken out!" So he was named Perez.30Then his brother came out, who had the scarlet thread upon his hand, and he was named Zerah.

#### Genesis 38:1

##### It came about at that time that Judah

This introduces a new part of the story that focuses on Judah.

##### a certain Adullamite, whose name was Hirah

Hirah is the name of a man who lived in the village of Adullam.

#### Genesis 38:2

##### whose name was Shua

Shua is a Canaanite woman who married Judah.

##### he ... went to her

This is a polite way of saying that he had sexual relations with her.

#### Genesis 38:3

##### She conceived

"Judah's wife became pregnant"

##### He was named Er

"His father named him Er"

#### Genesis 38:4

##### called his name

"named him"

##### Onan

Judah's son

#### Genesis 38:5

##### Shelah

Judah's son

##### Kezib

This is the name of a place

#### Genesis 38:7

##### was wicked in the sight of Yahweh

"was wicked and Yahweh saw it"

##### Yahweh killed him

"So Yahweh killed him"

#### Genesis 38:8

##### Go to your brother's wife

This is a polite way of telling him to have sexual relations with his brother's wife

##### Do the duty of a brother-in-law to her

This refers to a custom that when the oldest brother dies before he and his wife have a son, the next oldest brother would marry and have sexual relations with the widow. When the widow gave birth to the first son, that son was considered the son of the oldest brother and he would receive the oldest brother's inheritance.

#### Genesis 38:9

##### he wasted it on the ground

"he destroyed his semen by having it flow on the ground" or "he did not send his semen into her"

#### Genesis 38:11

##### his daughter-in-law

"his oldest son's wife"

##### in your father's house

"and live in your father's house"

##### until Shelah, my son, grows up

"and when Shelah, my son, grows up, he can marry you"

##### For he feared, "He might also die, just like his brothers

"For he feared, 'If he marries her he may also die like his brothers did"

#### Genesis 38:12

##### Judah was comforted and

"When Judah was no longer grieving, he"

##### Timnah

This is the name of a place.

##### he and his friend Hirah the Adullamite

"His friend Hiram, from Adullam, went with him"

#### Genesis 38:13

##### Tamar was told

"Someone told Tamar"

##### your father-in-law

"your husband's father"

#### Genesis 38:14

##### Enaim

This is the name of a place.

##### of her widowhood

"that widows wear"

##### veil

a very thin material used to cover a woman's head and face

##### wrapped herself

"wrapped herself in her clothing so that people would not recognize her"

##### she had not been given to him as a wife

"Judah had not given her to Shelah as a wife"

#### Genesis 38:15

##### When Judah saw her

The word "her" here refers to Tamar, but your reader should understand that Judah did not know that the woman he was looking at was Tamar.

##### because she had covered her face

"because she had covered her head and sat where prostitutes often sat"

#### Genesis 38:16

##### He went to her by the road

"He went to where she was sitting by the road"

##### please let me come to you

"Please have sexual relations with me" or "Please lie with me"

#### Genesis 38:17

##### from the flock

"from my flock of goats"

#### Genesis 38:18

##### seal and cord ... staff

A "seal" is similar to a coin with a design engraved on it, used to imprint melted wax. The "cord" was put through the seal so the owner could wear it around his neck. A staff was long wooden stick that helped in walking over rough ground.

##### she conceived by him

"he caused her to become pregnant"

#### Genesis 38:19

##### clothing of her widowhood

"clothing that widows wear."

#### Genesis 38:20

##### receive the pledge

"take back the pledge"

##### from the woman's hand

"from the woman"

#### Genesis 38:21

##### the men of the place

"some of the men who lived there"

##### cultic prostitute

"prostitute who serves in the temple"

#### Genesis 38:23

##### that we not be put to shame

"or else people will laugh at us when they find out what happened"

#### Genesis 38:24

##### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### it was told to Judah

"someone told Judah"

##### Tamar your daughter-in-law

"Tamar, your oldest son's wife"

##### she is pregnant by it

"it has made her pregnant" or "she is pregnant"

##### let her be burned

"we will burn her to death"

#### Genesis 38:25

##### her father-in-law

"her husband's father"

#### Genesis 38:26

##### He did not know her again

This is a polite way of saying that Judah did not have sexual relations with her again.

#### Genesis 38:27

##### It came about at the time

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### behold

The word "behold" alerts us to the surprise that Tamar was carrying twins, which was previously unknown.

#### Genesis 38:28

##### one put out a hand

"one of the babies put out his hand"

##### midwife

This is a person who helps a woman when she is giving birth to a child.

##### scarlet thread

"bright red thread"

##### on his hand

"around his wrist"

#### Genesis 38:29

##### behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

##### How you have broken out!

"So this is how you break your way out first!" or "You have burst out first!"

##### he was named

"she named him"

##### Perez

This is the name of a boy. Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Perez means 'breaking out.'"

#### Genesis 38:30

##### Zerah

This is the name of a boy. Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Zerah means 'scarlet or bright red.'"

Chapter 39

1Joseph was brought down to Egypt. Potiphar, an official of Pharaoh who was captain of the guard and an Egyptian, bought him from the Ishmaelites, who had brought him down there.2Yahweh was with Joseph and he became a prosperous man. He lived in the house of his Egyptian master.3His master saw that Yahweh was with him and that Yahweh prospered everything that he did.4Joseph found favor in his sight. He served Potiphar. Potiphar made Joseph manager over his house, and everything that he possessed, he put under his care.5It came about from the time that he made him manager over his house and over everything he possessed, that Yahweh blessed the Egyptian's house because of Joseph. The blessing of Yahweh was on everything that Potiphar had in the house and in the field.6Potiphar put everything that he had under Joseph's care. He did not have to think about anything except the food that he ate. Now Joseph was handsome and attractive.7It came about after this that his master's wife cast her eyes on Joseph and said, "Lie with me."8But he refused and said to his master's wife, "Look, my master does not pay attention to what I do in the house, and he has put everything that he owns under my care.9No one is greater in this house than I am. He has not kept back anything from me but you, because you are his wife. How then can I do this great wickedness and sin against God?"10She spoke to Joseph day after day, but he refused to lie with her or to be with her.11It came about one day that he went into the house to do his work. None of the men of the house were there in the house.12She caught him by his clothes and said, "Lie with me." He left his clothing in her hand, fled, and went outside.13It came about, when she saw that he had left his clothing in her hand and had fled outside,14that she called to the men of her house and told them, "See, Potiphar has brought in a Hebrew to mock us. He came to me to lie with me, and I screamed.15It came about when he heard me scream, that he left his clothing with me, fled, and went outside."16She set his clothing next to her until his master came home.17She told him this explanation, "The Hebrew servant whom you brought to us, came in to mock me.18It came about that when I screamed, he left his clothing with me and fled outside."

19It came about that, when his master heard the explanation his wife told him, "This is what your servant did to me," he became very angry.20Joseph's master took him and put him in prison, the place where the king's prisoners were confined. He was there in the prison.21But Yahweh was with Joseph and showed covenant faithfulness to him. He gave him favor in the sight of the prison warden.22The prison warden gave into Joseph's hand all the prisoners who were in the prison. Whatever they did there, Joseph was in charge of it.23The prison warden did not worry about anything that was in his hand, because Yahweh was with him. Whatever he did, Yahweh prospered.

#### Genesis 39:1

##### Joseph was brought down to Egypt

"The Ishmaelites had taken Joseph to Egypt"

#### Genesis 39:2

##### Yahweh was with Joseph

"Yahweh guided Joseph and helped him"

##### He lived in the house

"he worked in the house"

##### his Egyptian master

Joseph was now Potiphar's slave.

#### Genesis 39:3

##### that Yahweh prospered everything that he did

"Yahweh caused everything that Joseph did to prosper"

#### Genesis 39:4

##### Joseph found favor in his sight

Possible meanings are 1) Alternate translation: "Potiphar was pleased with Joseph" or 2) Alternate translation: "Yahweh was pleased with Joseph"

##### Potiphar made Joseph manager over his house, and everything that he possessed

"Potiphar put Joseph in charge of his household and everything that belonged to Potiphar"

#### Genesis 39:5

##### It came about from the time that he made him manager over his house and over everything he possessed, that Yahweh blessed the Egyptian's house because of Joseph

"The Egyptian made Joseph manager over his house and over everything he possessed, and it came about from the time that that Yahweh blessed the Egyptian's house because of Joseph"

##### The blessing of Yahweh was on

"Yahweh blessed"

##### everything that Potiphar had in the house and in the field

"Potiphar's household and all of his crops and livestock"

#### Genesis 39:6

##### Potiphar put everything that he had under Joseph's care

"So Potiphar put Joseph in charge of everything that he had"

##### He did not have to think about anything except the food that he ate

"The only thing he had to think about was the food that he ate"

##### Now

The word "now" marks a stop in the story as the author gives background information about Joseph.

##### handsome and attractive

"handsome and strong"

#### Genesis 39:7

##### It came about after this that

"And so." This phrase is used here to mark a new event.

##### Lie with me

"Have sexual relations with me"

#### Genesis 39:8

##### my master does not pay attention to what I do in the house

"my master has no concern about his household with me in charge" or "my master trusts me with his household"

##### he has put everything that he owns under my care

"he has put me in charge of everything that belongs to him"

#### Genesis 39:9

##### No one is greater in this house than I am

"I have more authority in this house than anyone else"

##### He has not kept back anything from me but you

"He has given me everything except you"

##### How then can I do this great wickedness and sin against God?

"I certainly cannot do such a wicked thing and sin against God."

#### Genesis 39:10

##### She spoke to Joseph day after day

"She kept on asking Joseph to sleep with her"

##### to be with her

"to be near her"

#### Genesis 39:11

##### None of the men of the house

"None of the other men who worked in the house"

#### Genesis 39:12

##### fled, and went outside

"and quickly ran outside" or "and quickly ran out of the house"

#### Genesis 39:14

##### the men of her house

"the men who worked in her house"

##### See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you."

##### He came to me to lie with me

"He came into my room to have sexual relations with me"

#### Genesis 39:16

##### his master

"Joseph's master." This refers to Potiphar.

#### Genesis 39:17

##### She told him this explanation

"She explained it like this"

##### brought to us

The word "us" refers to Potiphar, his wife, and includes the rest of the household.

##### came in to mock me

"came into where I was and tried to force me to sleep with him"

#### Genesis 39:18

##### fled outside

"ran quickly out of the house"

#### Genesis 39:19

##### his master

"Joseph's master, Potiphar"

##### heard the explanation his wife told him

"heard his wife explain to him." The word "his" and "him" here refer to Potiphar.

##### he became very angry

"Potiphar became very angry"

#### Genesis 39:20

##### the place where the king's prisoners were confined

"the place where the king put his prisoners"

##### He was there

"Joseph stayed there"

#### Genesis 39:21

##### But Yahweh was with Joseph

"But Yahweh was kind to Joseph" or "But Yahweh took care of Joseph"

##### showed covenant faithfulness to him

"was faithful to his covenant with him" or "faithfully loved him"

##### He gave him favor in the sight of the prison warden

"Yahweh caused the prison warden to be pleased with Joseph"

##### the prison warden

"the prison manager" or "the man in charge of the prison"

#### Genesis 39:22

##### gave into Joseph's hand

"put Joseph in charge of"

##### Whatever they did there, Joseph was in charge of it

"Joseph was in charge of everything they did there"

#### Genesis 39:23

##### because Yahweh was with him

"because Yahweh guided Joseph"

##### Whatever he did, Yahweh prospered

"Yahweh caused everything that Joseph did to prosper"

Chapter 40

1It came about that after these things, the cupbearer of the king of Egypt and king's baker offended their master, the king of Egypt.2Pharaoh was angry with his two officials, the chief of the cupbearers and the chief of the bakers.3He put them in custody in the house of the captain of the guard, in the same prison where Joseph was confined.4The captain of the guard assigned Joseph to them, and he served them. They remained in custody for some time.5Both of them dreamed a dream—the cupbearer and the baker of the king of Egypt who were confined in the prison—each man had his own dream in the same night, and each dream had its own interpretation.6Joseph came to them in the morning and saw them. Behold, they were upset.7He asked Pharaoh's officials who were with him in custody in his master's house, saying, "Why do you look so sad today?"8They said to him, "We have both dreamed a dream and no one can interpret it." Joseph said to them, "Do not interpretations belong to God? Tell me, please."

9The chief of the cupbearers told his dream to Joseph. He said to him, "In my dream, behold, a vine was in front of me.10In the vine were three branches. As it budded, its blossoms came out and the clusters of grapes ripened.11Pharaoh's cup was in my hand. I took the grapes and squeezed them into Pharaoh's cup, and I placed the cup into Pharaoh's hand."12Joseph said to him, "This is the interpretation of it. The three branches are three days.13Within three days Pharaoh will lift up your head and restore you to your office. You will put Pharaoh's cup into his hand, just as when you were his cupbearer.14But think of me when it goes well with you, and please show kindness to me. Mention me to Pharaoh and bring me out of this prison.15For indeed I was abducted out of the land of the Hebrews. Here also have I done nothing that they should put me in this dungeon."

16When the chief of the bakers saw that the interpretation was favorable, he said to Joseph, "I also had a dream, and, behold, three baskets of bread were on my head.17In the top basket there were all kinds of baked goods for Pharaoh, but the birds ate them out of the basket on my head."18Joseph answered and said, "This is the interpretation. The three baskets are three days.19Within three days Pharaoh will lift up your head from you and will hang you on a tree. The birds will eat your flesh off you."20It came about on the third day that it was Pharaoh's birthday. He made a feast for all his servants. He lifted up the head of the chief of the cupbearers and the head of the chief of the bakers, among his servants.21He restored the chief of the cupbearers to his responsibility, and he put the cup into Pharaoh's hand again.22But he hanged the chief of the bakers, just as Joseph had interpreted to them.23Yet the chief cupbearer did not remember Joseph, but forgot about him.

#### Genesis 40:1

##### It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark a new event in the story.

##### the cupbearer

This is the person who brought drinks to the king.

##### king's baker

This is the person who made food for the king.

##### offended their master

"upset their master"

#### Genesis 40:2

##### the chief of the cupbearers and the chief of the bakers

"the leading cupbearer and the leading baker"

#### Genesis 40:3

##### He put them in custody in the house of the captain of the guard

"He put them in the prison that was in the house that was overseen by the captain of the guard"

##### in the same prison where Joseph was confined

"This was the same prison that Joseph was in" or "This was the same prison Potiphar put Joseph in"

#### Genesis 40:4

##### They remained in custody for some time

"They remained in prison for a long time"

#### Genesis 40:6

##### Behold, they were upset

"He was surprised to see that they were upset"

#### Genesis 40:7

##### Pharaoh's officials who were with him

This refers to the cupbearer and the baker.

##### in custody in his master's house

"In prison in him master's house." "His master" refers to Joseph's master, the captain of the guard.

#### Genesis 40:8

##### Tell me, please

"Tell me the dreams, please"

#### Genesis 40:11

##### squeezed them

"squeezed the juice from them"

#### Genesis 40:12

##### This is the interpretation of it

"Here is what the dream means"

##### The three branches are three days

"The three branches represent three days"

#### Genesis 40:13

##### Within three days

"In three more days"

##### restore you to your office

"will give you back your job"

##### just as when

"just as you did when"

#### Genesis 40:14

##### please show kindness to me

"please be kind to me"

##### Mention me to Pharaoh and bring me out of this prison

"Help me get out of this prison by telling Pharaoh about me"

#### Genesis 40:15

##### For indeed I was abducted

"For indeed people took me" or "For indeed the Ishmaelites took me"

##### the land of the Hebrews

"the land where the Hebrew people live"

##### Here also have I done nothing that they should put me in this dungeon

"and also while I have been here in Egypt, I have done nothing for which I deserved to be put in prison"

#### Genesis 40:16

##### behold, three baskets of bread were on my head

"there were three baskets of bread on my head!" The baker uses word "behold" here to show that he was surprised by what he saw in his dream and to alert Joseph to pay attention.

#### Genesis 40:19

##### will lift up your head from you

"will lift up your head with a knife" or "will lift up your head with a noose"

##### flesh

Here "flesh" literally means the soft tissue on a person's body.

#### Genesis 40:20

##### It came about on the third day that

"Afterward, on the third day." The phrase "it came about" is used here to mark a new event in the story.

##### He lifted up the head of the chief of the cupbearers and the head of the chief of the bakers

"He lifted up the heads of the chief of the cupbearers and the chief of the bakers"

#### Genesis 40:21

##### He restored the chief of the cupbearers to his responsibility

"He gave the chief of the cupbearers his job back"

#### Genesis 40:22

##### But he hanged the chief of the bakers

"But he commanded for the chief of the bakers to be hanged" or "But he commanded his guards to hang the chief of the bakers"

##### just as Joseph had interpreted to them

"just as Joseph had said would happen when he interpreted the two men's dreams"

Chapter 41

1It came about at the end of two full years that Pharaoh had a dream. Behold, he stood by the Nile.2Behold, seven cows came up out of the Nile, desirable and fat, and they grazed in the reeds.3Behold, seven other cows came up after them out of the Nile, undesirable and thin. They stood by the other cows on the bank of the river.4Then the undesirable and thin cows ate the seven desirable and fat cows. Then Pharaoh woke up.5Then he slept and dreamed a second time. Behold, seven heads of grain came up on one stalk, wholesome and good.6Behold, seven heads, thin and scorched by the east wind, sprouted up after them.7The thin heads swallowed up the seven wholesome and full heads. Pharaoh woke up, and, behold, it was a dream.8It came about in the morning that his spirit was troubled. He sent and called for all the magicians and wise men of Egypt. Pharaoh told them his dreams, but there was no one who could interpret them to Pharaoh.

9Then the chief cupbearer said to Pharaoh, "I have remembered my sins today.10Pharaoh was angry with his servants, and put me in custody in the house of the captain of the guard, the chief baker and me.11We dreamed a dream the same night, he and I. We dreamed each man according to the interpretation of his dream.12There was with us there a young Hebrew man, a servant of the captain of the guard. We told him and he interpreted for us our dreams. He interpreted for each of us according to his dream.13It came about as he interpreted for us, so it happened. Pharaoh restored me to my post, but the other one he hanged."

14Then Pharaoh sent and called for Joseph. They quickly took him out of the dungeon. He shaved himself, changed his clothes, and came in to Pharaoh.15Pharaoh said to Joseph, "I had a dream, but there is no interpreter for it. But I have heard about you, that when you hear a dream you can interpret it."16Joseph answered Pharaoh, saying, "It is not in me. God will answer Pharaoh with favor."17Pharaoh spoke to Joseph, "In my dream, behold, I stood on the bank of the Nile.18Behold, seven cows came up out of the Nile, fat and desirable, and they grazed among the reeds.19Behold, seven other cows came up after them, weak, very undesirable, and thin. I never saw in all the land of Egypt such undesirableness like them.20The thin and undesirable cows ate up the first seven fat cows.21When they had eaten them up, it could not be known that they had eaten them, for they were still as undesirable as before. Then I awoke.22I looked in my dream, and, behold, seven heads came up upon one stalk, full and good.23Behold, seven more heads—withered, thin, and scorched by the east wind—sprang up after them.24The thin heads swallowed up the seven good heads. I told these dreams to the magicians, but there was none that could explain it to me."

25Joseph said to Pharaoh, "The dreams of Pharaoh are the same. What God is about to do, he has declared to Pharaoh.26The seven good cows are seven years, and the seven good heads are seven years. The dreams are the same.27The seven thin and undesirable cows that came up after them are seven years, and also the seven thin heads scorched by the east wind will be seven years of famine.28That is the thing which I spoke to Pharaoh. What God is about to do he has revealed to Pharaoh.29Look, seven years of great abundance will come throughout all the land of Egypt.30Seven years of famine will come after them, and all the abundance will be forgotten in the land of Egypt, and the famine will devastate the land.31The abundance will not be remembered in the land because of the famine that will follow, for it will be very severe.32That the dream was repeated to Pharaoh is because the matter has been established by God, and God will soon do it.33Now let Pharaoh look for a man discerning and wise, and put him over the land of Egypt.34Let Pharaoh appoint officials over the land, and let them take a fifth of the crops of Egypt in the seven abundant years.35Let them gather all the food of these good years that are coming and store up grain under the authority of Pharaoh, for food to be used in the cities. They should preserve it.36The food will be a supply for the land for the seven years of famine which will be in the land of Egypt. In this way the land will not be devastated by the famine."

37This advice was good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of all his servants.38Pharaoh said to his servants, "Can we find such a man as this, in whom is the Spirit of God?"39So Pharaoh said to Joseph, "Since God has shown you all this, there is none so discerning and wise as you.40You will be over my house, and according to your word will all my people be ruled. Only in the throne will I be greater than you."41Pharaoh said to Joseph, "See, I have put you over all the land of Egypt."42Pharaoh took off his signet ring from his hand and put it upon Joseph's hand. He clothed him with clothes of fine linen, and put a gold chain on his neck.43He had him ride in the second chariot which he possessed. Men shouted before him, "Bend the knee." Pharaoh put him over all the land of Egypt.44Pharaoh said to Joseph, "I am Pharaoh, and apart from you, no man will lift his hand or his foot in all the land of Egypt."45Pharaoh called Joseph's name "Zaphenath-Paneah." He gave him Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera priest of On, as a wife. Joseph went out over the land of Egypt.

46Joseph was thirty years old when he stood before Pharaoh, king of Egypt. Joseph went out from the presence of Pharaoh, and went throughout all the land of Egypt.47In the seven bountiful years the land produced abundantly.48He gathered up all the food of the seven years that was in the land of Egypt and put the food in the cities. He put into each city the food from the fields that surrounded it.49Joseph stored up grain like the sand of the sea, so much that he stopped counting, because it was beyond counting.50Joseph had two sons before the years of famine came, whom Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera priest of On, bore to him.51Joseph called the name of his firstborn Manasseh, for he said, "God has made me forget all my trouble and all my father's household."52He called the name of the second son Ephraim, for he said, "God has made me fruitful in the land of my affliction."53The seven years of abundance that was in the land of Egypt came to an end.54The seven years of famine began, as Joseph had said. There was famine in all lands, but in all the land of Egypt there was food.55When all the land of Egypt was famished, the people loudly called on Pharaoh for food. Pharaoh said to all the Egyptians, "Go to Joseph and do what he says."56The famine was over all the face of the whole land. Joseph opened all the storehouses and sold to the Egyptians. The famine was severe in the land of Egypt.57All the earth was coming to Egypt to buy grain from Joseph, because the famine was severe in all the earth.

#### Genesis 41:1

##### at the end of two full years

Two years passed after Joseph correctly interpreted the dreams of Pharaoh's cupbearer and baker, who had been in prison with Joseph.

##### he stood

"Pharaoh was standing"

#### Genesis 41:2

##### desirable and fat

"healthy and fat"

##### grazed in the reeds

"were eating the grass along the side of the river"

##### reeds

tall, thin grasses that grow in wet areas

#### Genesis 41:3

##### Behold, seven other cows

The word "behold" here shows that Pharaoh was again surprised by what he saw.

##### undesirable and thin

"sick and thin"

##### bank of the river

"beside the river" or "riverside." This is the higher ground along the edge of a river.

#### Genesis 41:4

##### woke up

"awakened"

#### Genesis 41:5

##### a second time

"again"

##### Behold, seven heads

The word "behold" here shows that Pharaoh was surprised by what he saw.

##### heads of grain

The heads are parts of the corn plant on which the seeds grow.

##### came up on one stalk

"grew up on one stem." The stalk is the thick or tall part of a plant.

##### on one stalk, wholesome and good

"on one stock and they were healthy and beautiful"

#### Genesis 41:6

##### thin and scorched by the east wind

"that were thin and burned because of the hot wind from the east"

##### sprouted up

"grew up" or "developed"

#### Genesis 41:7

##### The thin heads

"The thin heads of grain"

##### it was a dream

"he had been dreaming"

#### Genesis 41:8

##### his spirit was troubled

"he was troubled in his inner being" or "he was troubled"

##### He sent and called

"He sent his servants to call" or "He sent his servants to summon"

##### all the magicians and wise men of Egypt

Ancient kings and rulers used magicians and wise men as advisers.

#### Genesis 41:9

##### I have remembered my sins today

"I realize now that I have sinned." The phrase "my sins" is used for emphasis. His "sins" are that he should have told Pharaoh something much earlier but he did not.

#### Genesis 41:10

##### Pharaoh was angry

"You, Pharaoh, were angry"

##### with his servants

"with us, your servants"

##### put me in custody in the house of the captain of the guard, the chief baker and me

"put the chief baker and me in the prison where the captain of the guard was in charge." Here "house" refers to the prison.

##### the chief baker

The most important person who made food for the king. See how you translated a similar phrase in Genesis 40:2.

#### Genesis 41:11

##### We dreamed a dream the same night, he and I

"One night we both had dreams"

##### We dreamed

Here "We" refers to the chief cupbearer and the chief baker.

##### We dreamed each man according to the interpretation of his dream

"Our dreams had different meanings"

#### Genesis 41:12

##### There was with us there

"In prison there was with the chief baker and me"

##### We told him and he interpreted for us our dreams

"We told him our dreams and he explained their meanings to us"

##### He interpreted for each of us according to his dream

"He explained what was going to happen to both of us"

#### Genesis 41:13

##### as he interpreted for us, so it happened

"what he explained about the dreams is what later happened"

##### Pharaoh restored me to my post

"You allowed me to return to my job"

##### the other one

"the chief baker"

##### he hanged

"you ordered your soldiers to hang"

#### Genesis 41:14

##### Pharaoh sent and called for

"Pharaoh sent his servants to get Joseph"

##### out of the dungeon

"out of the jail" or "out of the prison"

##### came in to Pharaoh

"went before Pharaoh"

#### Genesis 41:15

##### there is no interpreter for it

"no one can explain the meaning"

##### you can interpret it

"you can explain its meaning"

#### Genesis 41:16

##### It is not in me

"I am not the one who can explain the meaning"

##### God will answer Pharaoh with favor

"God will answer Pharaoh favorably"

#### Genesis 41:17

##### behold, I stood

Pharaoh uses the word "behold" to make Joseph pay attention to surprising information.

#### Genesis 41:19

##### undesirable, and thin

"weak, and skinny."

##### such undesirableness

"such ugly cows" or "such worthless looking cows"

#### Genesis 41:20

##### fat cows

"well-fed cows."

#### Genesis 41:21

##### it could not be known that they had eaten them

"no one would have been able to tell that the thin cows had eaten the fat cows"

#### Genesis 41:22

##### I looked in my dream

"Then I dreamed again"

##### seven heads

"seven heads of grain"

##### came up upon one stalk

"grew up on one stem." The stalk is the thick or tall part of a plant.

#### Genesis 41:23

##### withered

dead and dried

##### sprang up

"grew up" or "developed"

#### Genesis 41:24

##### there was none that could

"there was not a single one that could" or "none of them could"

#### Genesis 41:25

##### The dreams of Pharaoh are the same

"Both dreams mean the same thing"

##### What God is about to do, he has declared to Pharaoh

"God is showing you what he will soon do"

#### Genesis 41:26

##### seven good heads

"seven good heads of grain"

#### Genesis 41:27

##### thin and undesirable cows

"skinny and weak cows."

##### seven thin heads scorched by the east wind

"seven thin heads of grain scorched because of the hot wind from the east"

#### Genesis 41:28

##### That is the thing which I spoke to Pharaoh ... revealed to Pharaoh

"These events will happen just as I have told you ... revealed to you, Pharaoh"

##### he has revealed

"he has made known"

#### Genesis 41:29

##### seven years of great abundance will come throughout all the land of Egypt

"there will be seven years in which there will be plenty of food throughout the land of Egypt"

#### Genesis 41:30

##### Seven years of famine will come after them

"Then there will be seven years when there is very little food"

##### all the abundance will be forgotten in the land of Egypt

"the people of Egypt will forget about the years in which there was plenty of food"

##### will devastate the land

Here "land" refers to the soil, the people, and the entire country.

#### Genesis 41:31

##### The abundance will not be remembered ... because of the famine that will follow

Joseph expresses an idea in two ways to emphasize its importance.

#### Genesis 41:32

##### That the dream was repeated to Pharaoh is because the matter has been established by God

"God gave you two dreams to show you that he will certainly cause these things to happen"

#### Genesis 41:33

##### let Pharaoh look

"You, Pharaoh, should look"

##### put him over the land of Egypt

"give him authority over the kingdom of Egypt" or "put him in charge of the kingdom of Egypt"

##### land of Egypt

Here "land" stands for all the people and everything in Egypt.

#### Genesis 41:34

##### let them take a fifth of the crops of Egypt

"let them divide the crops of Egypt into five equal parts, then take one of those parts"

##### in the seven abundant years

"during the seven years in which there is plenty of food"

#### Genesis 41:35

##### Let them gather

"Allow the overseers to gather"

##### of these good years that are coming

"during the good years that will soon happen"

##### store up grain under the authority of Pharaoh

"use the authority of Pharaoh to store the grain"

##### They should preserve it

"The overseers should leave soldiers there to guard the grain"

#### Genesis 41:36

##### The food will be a supply for the land

"This food will be for the people"

##### In this way the land will not be devastated by the famine

"This way the people will not starve during the famine"

#### Genesis 41:37

##### This advice was good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of all his servants

"Pharaoh and his servants thought this was a good plan"

#### Genesis 41:38

##### such a man as this

"a man like the one Joseph described"

##### in whom is the Spirit of God

"in whom the Spirit of God lives"

#### Genesis 41:39

##### there is none so discerning

"no one else is as capable in making decisions."

#### Genesis 41:40

##### You will be over my house

"You will be in charge of everyone in my palace"

##### according to your word will all my people be ruled

"you will rule over my people and they will do what you command"

##### Only in the throne

"Only in my role as king"

#### Genesis 41:42

##### signet ring

This ring had Pharaoh's seal engraved on it. This gave Joseph the authority and money needed to carry out his plans.

##### clothes of fine linen

"Linen" here is a smooth, strong cloth made from the blue-flowered flax plant.

#### Genesis 41:43

##### He had him ride in the second chariot which he possessed

This act makes clear to the people that Joseph is second only to Pharaoh.

##### Bend the knee

"Bow down and honor Joseph." To bend the knee and bow down was a sign of honor and respect.

#### Genesis 41:44

##### apart from you, no man will lift his hand or his foot in all the land of Egypt

"no person in Egypt will do anything without your permission" or "every person in Egypt must ask your permission before they do anything"

#### Genesis 41:45

##### Zaphenath-Paneah

Translators may add the following footnote: The name Zaphenath-Paneah means "a revealer of secrets."

##### He gave him Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera priest of On, as a wife

Priests in Egypt were the highest and most privileged caste. This marriage signifies Joseph's place of honor and privilege.

##### priest of On

On is a city, also called Heliopolis, which was "the City of the Sun" and the center of worship of the sun god Ra.

##### Joseph went out over the land of Egypt

Joseph traveled over the land to supervise the preparations for the coming drought.

#### Genesis 41:46

##### when he stood before Pharaoh

"when he started to serve Pharaoh"

##### went throughout all the land of Egypt

Joseph is inspecting the country as he prepares to carry out his plans.

#### Genesis 41:47

##### In the seven bountiful years

"During the seven good years"

##### the land produced abundantly

"the land produced big harvests"

#### Genesis 41:48

##### He gathered up ... He put

"Joseph ordered his servants to gather ... They put"

#### Genesis 41:49

##### Joseph stored up grain like the sand of the sea

"The grain that Joseph stored was as plentiful as the sand on the seashore"

##### Joseph stored up ... he stopped

"Joseph had his servants store up ... they stopped"

#### Genesis 41:50

##### before the years of famine came

"before the seven years of the famine began"

#### Genesis 41:51

##### Manasseh

Translators may also add a footnote that says, "The name 'Manasseh' means 'to cause to forget.'"

##### father's household

This refers to Joseph's father Jacob and his family.

#### Genesis 41:52

##### Ephraim

Translators may also add a footnote that says, "The name 'Ephraim' means 'to be fruitful' or 'to have children.'"

##### made me fruitful

Here "fruitful" means to prosper or to have children.

##### in the land of my affliction

"in this land where I have suffered"

#### Genesis 41:54

##### in all lands

In all the surrounding nations beyond Egypt, including the land of Canaan.

##### but in all the land of Egypt there was food

It is implied that there was food because of Joseph commanded his people to store food during the seven good years.

#### Genesis 41:55

##### When all the land of Egypt was famished

"When all the Egyptians were starving"

#### Genesis 41:56

##### Joseph opened all the storehouses and sold to the Egyptians

"Joseph had his servants open all the storehouses and sell grain to the Egyptians"

#### Genesis 41:57

##### All the earth was coming to Egypt

"People were coming to Egypt from all the surrounding regions"

Chapter 42

1Now Jacob became aware that there was grain in Egypt. He said to his sons, "Why do you look at one another?"2He said, "See here, I have heard that there is grain in Egypt. Go down there and buy for us from there so we may live and not die."3Joseph's ten brothers went down to buy grain from Egypt.4But Jacob did not send Benjamin, Joseph's brother, with his brothers, for he said, "I fear that harm might come to him."5The sons of Israel came to buy among those who came, for the famine was in the land of Canaan.6Now Joseph was the governor over the land. He was the one who sold to all the people of the land. Joseph's brothers came and bowed down to him with their faces to the ground.7Joseph saw his brothers and recognized them, but he disguised himself to them and spoke severely with them. He said to them, "Where have you come from?" They said, "From the land of Canaan to buy food."8Joseph recognized his brothers, but they did not recognize him.9Then Joseph remembered the dreams he had dreamed about them, and he said to them, "You are spies! You have come to see the undefended parts of the land."10They said to him, "No, my master. Your servants have come to buy food.11We are all one man's sons. We are honest men. Your servants are not spies."12He said to them, "No, you have come to see the undefended parts of the land."13They said, "We your servants are twelve brothers, the sons of one man in the land of Canaan. See, the youngest is this day with our father, and one brother is no longer alive."14Joseph said to them, "It is what I said to you; you are spies.15By this you will be tested. By the life of Pharaoh, you will not leave here, unless your youngest brother comes here.16Send one of yourselves and let him get your brother. You will remain in prison, that your words may be tested, whether there is truth in you. Or else, by the life of Pharaoh, surely you are spies."17He put them all in custody for three days.

18Joseph said to them on the third day, "Do this and live, for I fear God.19If you are honest men, let one of your brothers be confined in this prison, but you go, carry grain for the famine of your houses.20Bring your youngest brother to me so your words will be verified and you will not die." So they did so.21They said to one another, "We are truly guilty concerning our brother in that we saw the distress of his soul when he pleaded with us and we would not listen. Therefore this distress has come upon us."22Reuben answered them, "Did I not tell you, 'Do not sin against the boy,' but you would not listen? Now, see, his blood is required of us."23They did not know that Joseph understood them, for there was an interpreter between them.24He turned from them and wept. He returned to them and spoke to them. He took Simeon from among them and bound him before their eyes.25Then Joseph commanded his servants to fill his brothers' bags with grain, and to put every man's money back into his sack, and to give them provisions for the journey. It was done for them.

26The brothers loaded their donkeys with their grain and departed from there.27As one of them opened his sack to give his donkey feed in the lodging place, he saw his money. Behold, it was in the opening of his sack.28He said to his brothers, "My money has been put back. Look at it; it is in my sack." Their hearts sank and they turned trembling to one another, saying, "What is this that God has done to us?"29They went to Jacob, their father in the land of Canaan and told him all that had happened to them. They said,30"The man, the lord of the land, spoke roughly with us and thought that we were spies in the land.31We said to him, 'We are honest men. We are not spies.32We are twelve brothers, sons of our father. One is no longer alive, and the youngest is this day with our father in the land of Canaan.'33The man, the lord of the land, said to us, 'By this I will know that you are honest men. Leave one of your brothers with me, take grain for the famine in your houses, and go your way.34Bring your youngest brother to me. Then I will know that you are not spies, but that you are honest men. Then I will release your brother to you, and you will trade in the land.'"

35It came about as they emptied their sacks, that, behold, every man's bag of silver was in his sack. When they and their father saw their bags of silver, they were afraid.36Jacob their father said to them, "You have bereaved me of my children. Joseph is no longer alive, Simeon is gone, and you will take Benjamin away. All these things are against me."37Reuben spoke to his father, saying, "You may kill my two sons if I do not bring Benjamin back to you. Put him in my hands, and I will bring him to you again."38Jacob said, "My son will not go down with you. For his brother is dead and he alone is left. If harm comes to him on the road in which you go, then you will bring down my gray hair with sorrow to Sheol."

#### Genesis 42:1

##### Why do you look at one another?

"Do not just sit here!"

#### Genesis 42:2

##### Go down there

It was common to speak of going from Canaan to Egypt as going "down."

#### Genesis 42:3

##### from Egypt

"from those selling grain in Egypt"

#### Genesis 42:4

##### Jacob did not send Benjamin, Joseph's brother, with his brothers

Benjamin and Joseph had the same father and mother; their mother was different from the mothers of the other brothers. Jacob did not want to risk sending Rachel's last son.

#### Genesis 42:5

##### The sons of Israel came to buy among those who came

"The sons of Israel went to by grain along with other people who went to Egypt"

#### Genesis 42:6

##### all the people of the land

"all the people of all the nations that came to buy grain"

##### bowed down to him with their faces to the ground

This is a way of showing respect.

#### Genesis 42:7

##### he disguised himself to them

"he acted like he was not their brother" or "he did not let them know that he was their brother"

##### Where have you come from?

This was not a rhetorical question even though Joseph knew the answer. It was part of his choice to keep his identity from his brothers.

#### Genesis 42:9

##### You are spies

Spies are people who secretly try to get information about a country to help another country.

##### You have come to see the undefended parts of the land

"You have come to find out where we are not guarding our land so that you can attack us"

#### Genesis 42:10

##### my master

This is a way to refer to someone to honor them.

##### Your servants have

"We, your servants, have" or "We have"

#### Genesis 42:12

##### He said to them

"Joseph said to his brothers"

#### Genesis 42:13

##### the youngest is this day with our father

"right now our youngest brother is with our father"

#### Genesis 42:14

##### It is what I said to you; you are spies

"like I already said, you are spies."

#### Genesis 42:15

##### By this you will be tested

"This is how I will test you"

##### By the life of Pharaoh

"I swear by the life of Pharaoh"

#### Genesis 42:16

##### Send one of yourselves and let him get your brother

"Choose one of you to go get your brother"

##### You will remain in prison

"The rest of you will remain in prison"

##### that your words may be tested, whether there is truth in you

"so that I may find out if you are telling the truth"

#### Genesis 42:17

##### in custody

"in prison"

#### Genesis 42:18

##### Do this and live

"If you will do what I say, I will let you live"

##### fear God

This refers to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him.

#### Genesis 42:19

##### let one of your brothers be confined in this prison

"leave one of your brothers here in prison"

##### but you go

"but the rest of you go"

##### carry grain for the famine of your houses

"carry grain home to help your family during this famine"

#### Genesis 42:20

##### so your words will be verified

"so I may know what you say is true"

##### you will not die

This implies that Joseph would have his soldiers execute the brothers if he finds out they are spies.

#### Genesis 42:21

##### in that we saw the distress of his soul

"because we saw how distressed Joseph was" or "because we saw that Joseph was suffering"

##### Therefore this distress has come upon us

"That is why we are suffering like this now"

#### Genesis 42:22

##### Did I not tell you, 'Do not sin against the boy,' but

"Did I not tell you not to sin against the boy, but" or "I told you not to harm the boy, but"

##### his blood is required of us

"we are getting what we deserve for his death" or "we are suffering for having killed him"

#### Genesis 42:23

##### They did not know ... an interpreter between them

This changes from the main story to background information that explains why the brothers thought Joseph could not understand them.

##### an interpreter

An "interpreter" is someone who translates what one person says into another language. Joseph placed an interpreter between himself and his brothers to make it seem like he did not speak their language.

#### Genesis 42:24

##### He turned from them and wept

It is implied that Joseph wept because he was emotional after hearing what his brothers said.

##### spoke to them

Joseph was still speaking a different language and using the interpreter to speak to his brothers.

##### bound him before their eyes

"bound him in their sight" or "bound him as they watched"

#### Genesis 42:25

##### to give them provisions

"to give them the supplies they needed"

##### It was done for them

"The servants did for them everything that Joseph commanded"

#### Genesis 42:27

##### As one of them opened his sack to give his donkey feed in the lodging place, he saw his money. Behold, it was in the opening of his sack

"When they stopped at a place for the night, one of the brothers opened his sack to get food for his donkey. In the sack he saw his money!"

#### Genesis 42:28

##### My money has been put back

"Someone has put my money back"

##### Look at it

"Look in my sack!"

##### Their hearts sank

"They became very afraid"

#### Genesis 42:30

##### lord of the land

"the lord of Egypt"

##### spoke roughly

"spoke harshly"

#### Genesis 42:32

##### One is no longer alive

"One brother is no longer alive"

##### the youngest is this day with our father

"the youngest brother is with our father right now"

#### Genesis 42:33

##### take grain for the famine in your houses

"take grain to help your family during the famine"

##### go your way

"go home" or "leave"

#### Genesis 42:34

##### you will trade in the land

"I will allow you to buy and sell in this land"

#### Genesis 42:36

##### You have bereaved me of my children

"you have deprived me of my children" or "you have caused me to lose two of my children"

##### All these things are against me

"all these things hurt me"

#### Genesis 42:37

##### Put him in my hands

"Put me in charge of him" or "Let me take care of him"

#### Genesis 42:38

##### My son will not go down with you

"My son, Benjamin, will not go with you to Egypt"

##### with you

Here "you" is plural and refers to Jacob's older sons.

##### For his brother is dead and he alone is left

"For my wife, Rachel, only had two children. Joseph is dead and Benjamin is the only one left"

##### on the road in which you go

"while you a traveling to Egypt and back" or "while you are away." Here "road" stands for traveling.

##### then you will bring down my gray hair with sorrow to Sheol

"then you will cause me, an old man, to die of sorrow"

Chapter 43

1The famine was severe in the land.2It came about when they had eaten the grain that they had brought out of Egypt, their father said to them, "Go again; buy us some food."3Judah told him, "The man solemnly warned us, 'You will not see my face unless your brother is with you.'4If you send our brother with us, we will go down and buy you food.5But if you do not send him, we will not go down. For the man said to us, 'You will not see my face unless your brother is with you.'"6Israel said, "Why did you treat me so badly by telling the man that you had another brother?"7They said, "The man asked details about us and our family. He said, 'Is your father still alive? Do you have another brother?' We answered him according to these questions. How could we have known that he would say, 'Bring your brother down?'"8Judah said to Israel his father, "Send the boy with me. We will rise and go that we may live and not die, both we, you, and also our children.9I will be a guarantee for him. You will hold me responsible. If I do not bring him back to you and set him before you, then let me bear the blame forever.10For if we had not delayed, surely by now we would have come back here a second time."11Their father Israel said to them, "If it be so, now do this. Take some of the best products of the land in your bags. Carry down to the man a gift—some balm and honey, spices and myrrh, pistachio nuts and almonds.12Take double money in your hand. The money that was returned in the opening of your sacks, carry again in your hand. Perhaps it was a mistake.13Take also your brother. Rise and go again to the man.14May God Almighty give you mercy before the man, so that he may release to you your other brother and Benjamin. If I am bereaved of my children, I am bereaved."15The men took this gift, and in their hand they took double the amount of money, along with Benjamin. They got up and went down to Egypt and stood before Joseph.

16When Joseph saw Benjamin with them, he said to the steward of his house, "Bring the men into the house, slaughter an animal and prepare it, for the men will eat with me at noon."17The steward did as Joseph said. He brought the men to Joseph's house.18The men were afraid because they were brought to Joseph's house. They said, "It is because of the money that was returned in our sacks the first time we were brought in, that he may seek an opportunity against us. He might arrest us and take us as slaves, and take our donkeys."19They approached the steward of Joseph's house, and they spoke to him at the door of the house,20saying, "My master, we came down the first time to buy food.21It came about, when we reached the lodging place, that we opened our sacks, and, behold, every man's money was in the opening of his sack, our money in full weight. We have brought it back in our hands.22Other money we have also brought down in our hand to buy food. We do not know who put our money in our sacks."23The steward said, "Peace be to you, do not fear. Your God and the God of your father must have put your money in your sacks. I received your money." The steward then brought Simeon out to them.24The steward took the men into Joseph's house. He gave them water, and they washed their feet. He gave feed to their donkeys.25They prepared the gifts for Joseph's coming at noon, for they had heard that they would eat there.

26When Joseph came home, they brought the gifts which were in their hand into the house, and bowed down before him to the ground.27He asked them about their welfare and said, "Is your father well, the old man of whom you spoke? Is he still alive?"28They said, "Your servant our father is well. He is still alive." And they bowed down and gave him honor.29When he lifted up his eyes he saw Benjamin his brother, his mother's son, and he said, "Is this your youngest brother of whom you spoke to me?" Then he said, "May God be gracious to you, my son."30Joseph hurried to go out of the room, for he was deeply moved about his brother. He sought somewhere to weep. He went to his room and wept there.31He washed his face and came out. He controlled himself, saying, "Serve the food."32The servants served Joseph by himself and the brothers by themselves. The Egyptians there ate with him by themselves because the Egyptians could not eat bread with the Hebrews, for that is detestable to the Egyptians.33The brothers sat before him, the firstborn according to his birthright, and the youngest according to his youth. The men were astonished together.34Joseph sent portions to them from the food in front of him. But Benjamin's portion was five times as much as any of his brothers. They drank freely and were merry with him.

#### Genesis 43:1

##### The famine was severe in the land

"The famine was severe in the land of Canaan"

#### Genesis 43:2

##### when they had eaten

"when Jacob and his family had eaten"

##### they had brought

"Jacob's older sons had brought"

##### buy us

Here "us" refers to Jacob, his sons, and the rest of the family.

#### Genesis 43:3

##### Judah told him

"Judah told his father Jacob"

##### The man

This refers to Joseph, but the brothers did not know it was Joseph.

##### warned us, 'You will not see my face unless your brother is with you.'

"warned us that we would not see his face unless we brought our youngest brother with us"

##### solemnly warned us

"was very serious when he warned us, saying"

##### You will not see my face

"You will not see me"

##### your brother is with you

Judah is referring to Benjamin, Rachel's last born before she died.

#### Genesis 43:6

##### Why did you treat me so badly

"Why did you cause me so much trouble"

#### Genesis 43:7

##### The man asked details

"The man asked many questions"

##### about us

Here "us" is exclusive and refers to the brothers who went to Egypt and spoke with "the man."

##### He said, 'Is your father still alive? Do you have another brother?'

"He asked us directly if our father was still alive and if we had another brother."

##### We answered him according to these questions

"We answered the questions he asked us"

#### Genesis 43:8

##### We will rise and go that we may live and not die, both we, you, and also our children

"We will go now to Egypt and get grain so our whole family will live"

##### both we

Here "we" refers to the brothers.

##### we, you

Here "you" is singular and refers to Israel.

##### also our children

Here "our" refers to the brothers. This refers to the small children who were most likely to die during a famine.

#### Genesis 43:9

##### I will be a guarantee for him

"I will promise to bring him back"

##### You will hold me responsible

"You will make me answer to you about what happens to Benjamin"

##### let me bear the blame

"you may blame me"

#### Genesis 43:10

##### we would have come back here a second time

"we could have gone and returned twice"

#### Genesis 43:11

##### If it be so, now do this

"If this is our only choice, then do it"

##### balm

an oily substance with a sweet smell used for healing and protecting skin. Alternate translation: "medicine"

##### spices

seasonings.

##### pistachio nuts

small, green tree nuts

##### almonds

tree nuts with a sweet flavor

#### Genesis 43:12

##### Take double money in your hand

"Take double the money with you"

##### The money that was returned in the opening of your sacks, carry again in your hand

"take back to Egypt the money someone put in your sacks"

#### Genesis 43:13

##### Take also your brother

"Take also Benjamin"

##### go again

"return"

#### Genesis 43:14

##### May God Almighty give you mercy before the man

"May God Almighty cause the man to be kind to you"

##### your other brother

"Simeon"

##### If I am bereaved of my children, I am bereaved

"If I lose my children, then I lose my children." This means that Jacob knows he must accept whatever happens to his sons.

#### Genesis 43:15

##### in their hand they took

"they took"

#### Genesis 43:16

##### Benjamin with them

"Benjamin with Joseph's older brothers"

##### the steward of his house

The "steward" was responsible for managing Joseph's household activities.

#### Genesis 43:18

##### The men were afraid

"Joseph's brothers were afraid"

##### It is because of the money that was returned in our sacks the first time we were brought in

"The steward is bringing us into the house because of the money that someone put back in our sacks"

##### that he may seek an opportunity against us. He might arrest us

"He is waiting for the opportunity to accuse us, so that he might arrest us"

#### Genesis 43:21

##### when we reached the lodging place

"when we came to the place that we were going to stay for the night"

##### behold

The word "behold" here shows that the brothers were surprised by what they saw.

##### every man's money was in the opening of his sack, our money in full weight

"each one of us found the full amount of his money in his sack"

##### We have brought it back in our hands

"We have brought the money back with us"

#### Genesis 43:22

##### Other money we have also brought down in our hand to buy food

"We have also brought more money to buy food"

#### Genesis 43:23

##### Peace be to you

"Relax" or "Calm yourselves"

##### Your God and the God of your father

"Your God, the God your father worships"

#### Genesis 43:24

##### washed their feet

This custom helped tired travelers to refresh themselves after walking long distances.

##### feed to their donkeys

"Feed" is dry food that is set aside for animals

#### Genesis 43:28

##### Your servant our father

"Our father who serves you"

##### they bowed down and gave him honor

They lay down in front of the man to show him respect.

#### Genesis 43:29

##### he lifted up his eyes

This means "he looked up."

##### his mother's son, and he said

"his mother's son. Joseph said"

##### my son

"young man"

#### Genesis 43:30

##### for he was deeply moved about his brother

"for he had strong feelings of compassion for his brother" or "for he had strong feelings of affection for his brother"

#### Genesis 43:31

##### saying

"and said to his servants"

##### Serve the food

This means to distribute the food so that people may eat.

#### Genesis 43:32

##### The servants served Joseph by himself and the brothers by themselves. The Egyptians there ate with him by themselves

"The servants served Joseph by himself and the brothers by themselves and the Egyptians, who were eating with him, by themselves"

##### because the Egyptians could not eat bread with the Hebrews, for that is detestable to the Egyptians

This can be translated as a new sentence: "They did this because the Egyptians thought it was shameful to eat with the Hebrews"

#### Genesis 43:33

##### The brothers sat before him

"The brothers sat across from the man, according to how he arranged their places"

##### the firstborn according to his birthright, and the youngest according to his youth

The "firstborn" and the "youngest" are used together to mean all the brothers were sitting in order according to their age.

##### The men were astonished together

"The men were very surprised when they realized this"

#### Genesis 43:34

##### But Benjamin's portion was five times as much as any of his brothers

"But Benjamin received a portion that was much bigger than what his brothers received"

Chapter 44

1Joseph commanded the steward of his house, saying, "Fill the men's sacks with food, as much as they can carry, and put every man's money in his sack's opening.2Put my cup, the silver cup, in the sack's opening of the youngest, and also his money for the grain." The steward did as Joseph had said.3The morning dawned, and the men were sent away, they and their donkeys.4When they were out of the city but were not yet far off, Joseph said to his steward, "Get up, follow after the men, and when you overtake them, say to them, 'Why have you returned evil for good?5Is this not the cup from which my master drinks, and the cup that he uses for divination? You have done evil, this thing that you have done.'"6The steward overtook them and spoke these words to them.7They said to him, "Why does my master speak such words as these? Far be it from your servants that they would do such a thing.8Look, the money that we found in our sacks' openings, we brought again to you out of the land of Canaan. How then could we steal out of your master's house silver or gold?9If any of your servants is found with it, let him die, and we also will be my master's slaves."10The steward said, "Now also let it be according to your words. He with whom the cup is found will be my slave, and you others will be innocent."11Then each man hurried and brought his sack down to the ground, and each man opened his sack.12The steward searched. He began with the oldest and finished with the youngest, and the cup was found in Benjamin's sack.13Then they tore their clothes. Each man loaded his donkey and returned to the city.

14Judah and his brothers came to Joseph's house. He was still there, and they bowed before him to the ground.15Joseph said to them, "What is this that you have done? Do you not know that a man like me practices divination?"16Judah said, "What can we say to my master? What can we speak? Or how can we justify ourselves? God has found out the iniquity of your servants. Look, we are my master's slaves, both we and he also in whose hand the cup was found."17Joseph said, "Far be it from me that I should do so. The man in whose hand the cup was found, that person will be my slave, but as for you others, go up in peace to your father."

18Then Judah came near to him and said, "My master, please let your servant speak a word in my master's ears, and do not let your anger burn against your servant, for you are just like Pharaoh.19My master asked his servants, saying, 'Do you have a father or a brother?'20We said to my master, 'We have a father, an old man, and a child of his old age, a little one. But his brother is dead, and he alone is left of his mother, and his father loves him.'21Then you said to your servants, 'Bring him down to me that I may see him.'22After that, we said to my master, 'The boy cannot leave his father. For if he should leave his father his father would die.'23Then you said to your servants, 'Unless your youngest brother comes down with you, you will not see my face again.'24Then it came about when we went up to your servant my father, we told him the words of my master.25Our father said, 'Go again, buy us some food.'26Then we said, 'We cannot go down. If our youngest brother is with us, then will we go down, for we will not be able to see the man's face unless our youngest brother is with us.'27Your servant my father said to us, 'You know that my wife bore me two sons.28One of them went out from me and I said, "Surely he is torn in pieces, and I have not seen him since."29Now if you also take this one from me, and harm comes to him, you will bring down my gray hair with sorrow to Sheol.'30Now, therefore, when I come to your servant my father, and the young man is not with us, since his life is bound up in the boy's life,31it will come about, when he sees the boy is not with us, he will die. Your servants will bring down the gray hair of your servant our father with sorrow to Sheol.32For your servant became a guarantee for the boy to my father and said, 'If I do not bring him to you, then I will bear the guilt to my father forever.'33Now therefore, please let your servant stay instead of the boy as slave to my master, and let the boy go up with his brothers.34For how can I go up to my father if the boy is not with me? I am afraid to see the evil that would come on my father."

#### Genesis 44:1

##### steward of his house

The "steward" was responsible for managing Joseph's household activities.

##### every man's money

Their money was silver coins most likely in a small bag.

##### in his sack's opening

"in his sack"

#### Genesis 44:2

##### Put my cup, the silver cup

"Put my silver cup"

##### in the sack's opening of the youngest

"in the youngest brother's sack"

#### Genesis 44:3

##### The morning dawned

"The morning light shown"

##### the men were sent away, they and their donkeys

"they sent the men away, along with their donkeys"

#### Genesis 44:4

##### Why have you returned evil for good?

"You have treated us badly, after we were good to you!"

#### Genesis 44:5

##### Is this not the cup from which my master drinks, and the cup that he uses for divination?

"You already know that this is the cup that my master uses for drinking and for fortune telling!"

##### You have done evil, this thing that you have done

"What you have done is very evil"

#### Genesis 44:6

##### spoke these words to them

"spoke what Joseph told him to say"

#### Genesis 44:7

##### Why does my master speak such words as these?

"Why are you saying this, my master?"

##### Far be it from your servants that they would do such a thing.

"We would never do such a thing!"

#### Genesis 44:8

##### Look, the money

"Listen to what we are about to say and you will see that we are speaking the truth: the money"

##### the money that we found in our sacks' openings

"you know the money that we found in our sacks"

##### we brought again to you out of the land of Canaan

"we brought back to you from Canaan"

##### How then could we steal out of your master's house silver or gold?

"So we would never take anything from your master's house!"

#### Genesis 44:9

##### If any of your servants is found with it

"If you find that one of us has stolen the cup"

##### we also will be my master's slaves

"you may take us as your slaves"

#### Genesis 44:10

##### He with whom the cup is found will be my slave

"If I find the cup in one of your sacks, that person will be my slave"

#### Genesis 44:11

##### brought his sack down

"lowered his sack"

#### Genesis 44:12

##### youngest, and the cup was found in Benjamin's sack

"youngest. The steward found the cup in Benjamin's sack"

#### Genesis 44:13

##### Then they tore their clothes

The word "they" refers to the brothers. Tearing clothes was a sign of great distress and sorrow.

#### Genesis 44:15

##### Do you not know that a man like me practices divination?

"Surely you know that a man like me can learn things by magic!"

#### Genesis 44:16

##### What can we say to my master? What can we speak? Or how can we justify ourselves?

"We have nothing to say, my master. We cannot speak anything of value. We cannot justify ourselves."

##### God has found out the iniquity of your servants

"God is punishing us for our past sins"

#### Genesis 44:17

##### Far be it from me that I should do so

"It is not like me to do something like that"

##### The man in whose hand the cup was found

"The man who had my cup"

#### Genesis 44:18

##### came near to

"approached"

##### let your servant

"let me, your servant"

##### speak a word in my master's ears

"speak to you, my master"

##### do not let your anger burn against your servant

"please do not be angry with me, your servant"

##### for you are just like Pharaoh

"for you are as powerful as Pharaoh and could have your soldiers kill me"

#### Genesis 44:19

##### My master asked his servants, saying, 'Do you have a father or a brother?'

"My master asked us if we have a father or a brother."

#### Genesis 44:21

##### Then you said to your servants, 'Bring him down to me that I may see him.'

"And you said to your servants that we should bring our youngest brother to you so that you may see him"

#### Genesis 44:22

##### After that, we said to my master, 'The boy cannot ... father would die.'

"In response, we said to my master that the boy cannot ... father would die from sorrow"

#### Genesis 44:23

##### Then you said to your servants, 'Unless your youngest brother comes down with you, you will not see my face again.'

"Then you said to your servants that unless our youngest brother comes with us, we would not see you again."

#### Genesis 44:24

##### we told him the words of my master

"we told him what you said, my master"

#### Genesis 44:26

##### Then we said, 'We cannot go down. If our youngest brother ... is with us.'

"Then we said to him that we cannot go down to Egypt. We told him that if our youngest brother is with us ... is with us"

##### to see the man's face

"to see the man"

#### Genesis 44:27

##### said to us

Here "us" does not include Joseph.

##### You know

Here "You" is plural and refers to the brothers.

#### Genesis 44:28

##### he is torn in pieces

"a wild animal has torn him to pieces"

#### Genesis 44:29

##### Now if you also take this one from me, and harm comes to him, you will bring down my gray hair with sorrow to Sheol

"This is what your servant my father said to us: 'You know that my wife bore me two sons. One of them went out from me and I said that surely he had been torn in pieces, and I have not seen him since. Now if you also take this one from me, and harm comes to him, you will bring down my gray hair with sorrow to Sheol.'"

##### harm comes to him

Something bad happening to a person is spoken of as if "harm" were something that travels and comes to a person.

##### you will bring down my gray hair with sorrow to Sheol

"then you will cause me, an old man, to die of sorrow"

##### my gray hair

"me, an old man"

#### Genesis 44:30

##### since his life is bound up in the boy's life

"since he said he would die if the boy did not come back"

#### Genesis 44:31

##### Your servants will bring down the gray hair of your servant our father with sorrow to Sheol

"And we your servants will have caused our old father to die of sorrow"

#### Genesis 44:32

##### For your servant became a guarantee for the boy to my father

"For I promised my father concerning the boy"

##### For your servant

"For I, your servant" or "For I"

##### then I will bear the guilt to my father

"then my father may blame me"

#### Genesis 44:33

##### let your servant stay instead of the boy as slave to my master

"let your servant remain as a slave to my master instead of the boy"

##### let the boy go up

It was going to use the phrase "go up" when speaking about traveling from Egypt to Canaan.

#### Genesis 44:34

##### For how can I go up to my father if the boy is not with me?

"I cannot return to my father if the boy is not with me."

##### I am afraid to see the evil that would come on my father

"I am afraid to see how much my father would suffer"

Chapter 45

1Then Joseph could not control himself before all the servants who stood by him. He said loudly, "Everyone must leave me." So no servant stood by him when Joseph made himself known to his brothers.2He wept loudly, the Egyptians heard it, and the house of Pharaoh heard of it.3Joseph said to his brothers, "I am Joseph. Is my father still alive?" His brothers could not answer him, for they were shocked in his presence.4Then Joseph said to his brothers, "Come near to me, please." They came near. He said, "I am Joseph your brother, whom you sold into Egypt.5Do not be grieved or angry with yourselves that you sold me here, for God sent me ahead of you to preserve life.6For these two years the famine has been in the land, and there are still five years in which there will be neither plowing nor harvest.7God sent me ahead of you to preserve you as a remnant in the earth, and to keep you alive by a great deliverance.8So now it was not you who sent me here but God, and he has made me a father to Pharaoh, master of all his house, and ruler of all the land of Egypt.9Hurry and go up to my father and say to him, 'This is what your son Joseph says, "God has made me master of all Egypt. Come down to me, do not delay.10You will live in the land of Goshen, and you will be near me, you and your children and your children's children, and your flocks and your herds, and all that you have.11I will provide for you there, for there are still five years of famine, so that you do not come to poverty, you, your household, and all that you have."'12Look, your eyes see, and the eyes of my brother Benjamin, that it is my mouth that speaks to you.13You will tell my father about all my honor in Egypt and of all that you have seen. You will hurry and bring my father down here."14He hugged his brother Benjamin's neck and wept, and Benjamin wept on his neck.15He kissed all his brothers and wept over them. After that his brothers talked with him.

16The news of the matter was told in Pharaoh's house: "Joseph's brothers have come." It pleased Pharaoh and his servants very much.17Pharaoh said to Joseph, "Say to your brothers, 'Do this: Load your animals and go to the land of Canaan.18Get your father and your households and come to me. I will give you the good of the land of Egypt, and you will eat the fat of the land.'19Now you are commanded, 'Do this, take carts out of the land of Egypt for your children and for your wives. Get your father and come.20Do not be concerned about your possessions, for the good of all the land of Egypt is yours.'"

21The sons of Israel did so. Joseph gave them carts, according to the command of Pharaoh, and gave them provisions for the journey.22To all of them he gave each man changes of clothing, but to Benjamin he gave three hundred pieces of silver and five changes of clothing.23For his father he sent this: ten donkeys loaded with the good things of Egypt; and ten female donkeys loaded with grain, bread, and other supplies for his father for the journey.24So he sent his brothers away and they left. He said to them, "See that you do not quarrel on the journey."25They went up out of Egypt and came to the land of Canaan, to Jacob their father.26They told him saying "Joseph is still alive, and he is ruler over all the land of Egypt." His heart was astonished, for he could not believe what they told him.27They told him all the words of Joseph that he had said to them. When Jacob saw the carts that Joseph had sent to carry him, the spirit of Jacob their father revived.28Israel said, "It is enough. Joseph my son is still alive. I will go and see him before I die."

#### Genesis 45:1

##### could not control himself

"was about to start crying"

##### by him

"near him"

#### Genesis 45:2

##### house of Pharaoh

"everyone in Pharaoh's palace"

#### Genesis 45:3

##### shocked in his presence

"terrified of him"

#### Genesis 45:4

##### whom you sold into Egypt

"whom you sold as a slave to the trader who brought me to Egypt"

#### Genesis 45:5

##### Do not be grieved

"do not be upset" or "do not be distressed"

##### that you sold me here

"that you sold me as a slave and sent me here to Egypt"

##### to preserve life

"so I could save many lives"

#### Genesis 45:6

##### there are still five years in which there will be neither plowing nor harvest

"and the famine will last five more years"

#### Genesis 45:7

##### to preserve you as a remnant in the earth

"so that you and your families would not completely perish from the earth" or "to make sure your descendants would survive"

##### to keep you alive by a great deliverance

"to keep you alive by rescuing you in a mighty way"

#### Genesis 45:8

##### he has made me a father to Pharaoh

"he has made me a guide to Pharaoh" or "he has made me the chief adviser to Pharaoh"

##### of all his house

"of all his household" or "of all his palace"

##### ruler of all the land of Egypt

"ruler over all the people of Egypt"

#### Genesis 45:9

##### go up to my father

"go back to my father"

##### Come down to me

"Come here to me"

#### Genesis 45:11

##### I will provide ... all that you have

"say to him that his son Joseph says that God has made him master of all Egypt, so he must go down to Joseph and not delay. He will live in the land of Goshen, and he will be near Joseph, he and his children and his children's children, and his flocks and his herds, and all that he has. Joseph will provide for him there, for there are still five years of famine, so that he does not come to poverty, him, his household, and all that he has."

#### Genesis 45:12

##### your eyes see, and the eyes of my brother Benjamin

"All of you and Benjamin can see"

##### that it is my mouth that speaks to you

"that I, Joseph, am speaking to you"

#### Genesis 45:13

##### about all my honor in Egypt

"how the people in Egypt greatly honor me"

#### Genesis 45:14

##### He hugged his brother Benjamin's neck and wept, and Benjamin wept on his neck

"Joseph hugged his brother Benjamin, and they both wept"

#### Genesis 45:15

##### wept over them

This means Joseph was crying while he kissed them.

##### After that his brothers talked with him

"After that his brothers talked freely with him"

#### Genesis 45:16

##### The news of the matter was told in Pharaoh's house: "Joseph's brothers have come."

"Everyone in Pharaoh's palace heard that Joseph's brothers had come."

#### Genesis 45:19

##### you are commanded

"I also command you to tell them" or "also tell them"

##### take carts out

"Carts" are wagons with two or four wheels. Animals pull the carts.

#### Genesis 45:20

##### Do not be concerned about your possessions, for the good of all the land of Egypt is yours.'

"Now you are commanded to tell them to take carts out of the land of Egypt for their children and for their wives, to get their father, and to come. They are not to be concerned about their possessions, for the good of all the land of Egypt will be theirs."

#### Genesis 45:21

##### gave them provisions for the journey

"gave them what they needed for traveling"

#### Genesis 45:22

##### he gave each man changes of clothing

Each man received a set of clothes except for Benjamin who received 5 sets of clothes.

#### Genesis 45:23

##### ten donkeys ... and ten female donkeys

The donkeys were included as part of the gift.

#### Genesis 45:24

##### do not quarrel

Possible meanings include 1) "do not argue" and 2) "do not become afraid"

#### Genesis 45:26

##### he is ruler over all the land of Egypt

"he rules all the people of Egypt"

##### His heart was astonished

"and he was astonished" or "he was very surprised"

##### he could not believe what they told him

"he did not accept that what they said was true"

#### Genesis 45:27

##### They told him

"They told Jacob"

##### all the words of Joseph that he had said to them

"everything that Joseph had said to them"

##### the spirit of Jacob their father revived

"Jacob their father recovered" or "Jacob their father became very excited"

Chapter 46

1Israel made his journey with all that he had and went to Beersheba. There he offered sacrifices to the God of his father Isaac.2God spoke to Israel in a vision at night, saying, "Jacob, Jacob." He said, "Here I am."3He said, "I am God, the God of your father. Do not fear to go down to Egypt, for there I will make you a great nation.4I will go down with you into Egypt, and I will surely bring you up again and Joseph will close your eyes with his own hand."5Jacob rose up from Beersheba. The sons of Israel transported Jacob their father, their children, and their wives, in the carts that Pharaoh had sent to carry him.6They took their livestock and their possessions that they had accumulated in the land of Canaan. They came into Egypt, Jacob and all his descendants with him.7He brought with him to Egypt his sons and his sons' sons, his daughters and his sons' daughters, and all his descendants.

8These are the names of the sons of Israel who came to Egypt: Jacob and his descendants, Reuben, Jacob's firstborn;

9the sons of Reuben, Hanok, Pallu, Hezron, and Karmi;

10the sons of Simeon, Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jakin, Zohar, and Shaul, the son of a Canaanite woman;

11and the sons of Levi, Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

12The sons of Judah were Er, Onan, Shelah, Perez, and Zerah (but Er and Onan had died in the land of Canaan). The sons of Perez were Hezron and Hamul.

13The sons of Issachar were Tola, Puah, Jashub, and Shimron.

14The sons of Zebulun were Sered, Elon, and Jahleel.15These were the sons of Leah whom she bore to Jacob in Paddan Aram, along with his daughter Dinah. His sons and his daughters numbered thirty-three.

16The sons of Gad were Zephon, Haggi, Shuni, Ezbon, Eri, Arodi, and Areli.

17The sons of Asher were Imnah, Ishvah, Ishvi, and Beriah; and Serah was their sister. The sons of Beriah were Heber and Malkiel.18These were the sons of Zilpah, whom Laban had given to Leah his daughter. These sons she bore to Jacob—sixteen in all.

19The sons of Jacob's wife Rachel were Joseph and Benjamin.20In Egypt Manasseh and Ephraim were born to Joseph by Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera priest of On.

21The sons of Benjamin were Bela, Beker, Ashbel, Gera, Naaman, Ehi, Rosh, Muppim, Huppim, and Ard.22These were the sons of Rachel who were born to Jacob—fourteen in all.

23The son of Dan was Hushim.

24The sons of Naphtali were Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shillem.25These were the sons born to Jacob by Bilhah, whom Laban gave to Rachel his daughter—seven in all.

26All those who went to Egypt with Jacob, who were his direct descendants, not counting Jacob's sons' wives, were sixty-six in all.27With the two sons of Joseph who were born to him in Egypt, the people of the house of Jacob who went to Egypt were seventy in all.

28Jacob sent Judah ahead of him to Joseph to show the way before him to Goshen, and they came to the land of Goshen.29Joseph prepared his chariot and went up to meet Israel his father in Goshen. He saw him, hugged his neck, and wept on his neck a long time.30Israel said to Joseph, "Now let me die, since I have seen your face, that you are still alive."31Joseph said to his brothers and to his father's house, "I will go up and tell Pharaoh, saying, 'My brothers and my father's house, who were in the land of Canaan, have come to me.32The men are shepherds, for they have been keepers of livestock. They have brought their flocks, their herds, and all that they have.'33It will come about, when Pharaoh calls you and asks, 'What is your occupation?'34that you should say, 'Your servants have been keepers of livestock from our youth until now, both we, and our forefathers.' Do this so that you may live in the land of Goshen, for every shepherd is an abomination to the Egyptians."

#### Genesis 46:2

##### Here I am

"Yes, I am listening"

#### Genesis 46:3

##### I will make you a great nation

"I will give you many descendants, and they will become a great nation"

#### Genesis 46:4

##### I will surely bring you up again

"I will surely bring your descendants out of Egypt again"

##### Joseph will close your eyes with his own hand

"Joseph will even be present with you at the time of your death"

#### Genesis 46:5

##### rose up from

"set out from"

#### Genesis 46:6

##### they had accumulated

"they had acquired" or "they had gained"

#### Genesis 46:7

##### He brought with him

"Jacob brought with him"

##### his sons' sons

"his grandsons"

##### his sons' daughters

"his granddaughters"

#### Genesis 46:15

##### His sons and his daughters numbered thirty-three

"Altogether he had 33 sons, daughters, and grandchildren"

#### Genesis 46:26

##### direct descendants

A person's "direct descendants" are natural sons, daughters, and grandchildren, not those who have become part of the family by marrying a direct descendant.

#### Genesis 46:28

##### to show the way before him to Goshen

"to show them the way to Goshen"

#### Genesis 46:29

##### Joseph prepared his chariot and went up

"Joseph's servants prepared his chariot and Joseph went up"

##### went up to meet Israel

"went to meet Israel"

#### Genesis 46:30

##### Now let me die

"Now I am ready to die" or "Now I will die happy"

##### since I have seen your face, that you are still alive

"since I have seen you alive again"

#### Genesis 46:31

##### his father's house

"his father's family" or "his father's household"

##### I will go up and tell Pharaoh

"I will go tell Pharaoh"

#### Genesis 46:32

##### The men are shepherds ... all that they have

"I will go up and tell Pharaoh and say that my brothers and my father's house, who were in the land of Canaan, have come to me. I will tell him that the men are shepherds, for they have been keepers of livestock, and that they have brought their flocks, their herds, and all that they have."

#### Genesis 46:34

##### you should say, 'Your servants have been keepers of livestock from our youth until now, both we, and our forefathers.'

"when Pharaoh ... asks what your occupation is, that you should say that you have been keepers of livestock from your youth until now, both you and your forefathers. Do this"

##### Your servants

"We, your servants"

##### every shepherd is an abomination to the Egyptians

"Egyptians think shepherds are disgusting"

Chapter 47

1Then Joseph went in and told Pharaoh, "My father and my brothers, their flocks, their herds, and all that they own, have arrived from the land of Canaan. See, they are in the land of Goshen."2He took five of his brothers and introduced them to Pharaoh.3Pharaoh said to his brothers, "What is your occupation?" They said to Pharaoh, "Your servants are shepherds, as our ancestors."4Then they said to Pharaoh, "We come as temporary residents in the land. There is no pasture for your servants' flocks, because the famine is severe in the land of Canaan. So now, please let your servants live in the land of Goshen."5Then Pharaoh spoke to Joseph, saying, "Your father and your brothers have come to you.6The land of Egypt is before you. Settle your father and your brothers in the best region, the land of Goshen. If you know any capable men among them, put them in charge of my livestock."7Then Joseph brought in Jacob his father and presented him to Pharaoh. Jacob blessed Pharaoh.8Pharaoh said to Jacob, "How long have you lived?"9Jacob said to Pharaoh, "The years of my sojourning are 130. The years of my life have been few and painful. They have not been as long as the days of my ancestors' sojourning."10Then Jacob blessed Pharaoh and went out from his presence.11Then Joseph settled his father and his brothers. He gave them a possession in the land of Egypt, the best of the land, in the land of Rameses, as Pharaoh had commanded.12Joseph provided food for his father, his brothers, and all his father's household, according to the number of their little ones.

13Now there was no food in all the land; for the famine was severe. The land of Egypt and the land of Canaan wasted away because of the famine.14Joseph gathered all the money that was in the land of Egypt and in the land of Canaan, by selling grain to the inhabitants. Then Joseph brought the money to Pharaoh's palace.15When all the money of the lands of Egypt and Canaan was spent, all the Egyptians came to Joseph saying, "Give us food! Why should we die in your presence because our money is gone?"16Joseph said, "If your money is gone, bring your livestock and I will give you food in exchange for your livestock."17So they brought their livestock to Joseph. Joseph gave them food in exchange for the horses, for the flocks, for the herds, and for the donkeys. He fed them with bread in exchange for all their livestock that year.18When that year was ended, they came to him the next year and said to him, "We will not hide from my master that our money is all gone, and the herds of cattle are my master's. There is nothing left in the sight of my master, except our bodies and our land.19Why should we die before your eyes, both we and our land? Buy us and our land in exchange for food, and we and our land will be servants to Pharaoh. Give us seed that we may live and not die, and that the land may not become desolate."

20So Joseph bought all the land of Egypt for Pharaoh. For every Egyptian sold his field, because the famine was very severe. In this way, the land became Pharaoh's.21As for the people, he made them slaves from one end of Egypt's border to the other end.22It was only the land of the priests that Joseph did not buy, because the priests were given an allowance. They ate from the allotment which Pharaoh gave them. Therefore they did not sell their land.23Then Joseph said to the people, "See, I have bought you and your land today for Pharaoh. Now here is seed for you, and you will plant the land.24At the harvest, you must give a fifth to Pharaoh, and four parts will be your own, for seed of the field and for food for your households and your little ones."25They said, "You have saved our lives. May we find favor in your eyes. We will be Pharaoh's servants."26So Joseph made it a statute which is in effect in the land of Egypt to this day, that one-fifth belongs to Pharaoh. Only the land of the priests did not become Pharaoh's.

27So Israel lived in the land of Egypt, in the land of Goshen. His people gained possessions there. They were fruitful and multiplied greatly.28Jacob lived in the land of Egypt seventeen years, so the years of Jacob's life were one hundred forty-seven years.29When the time approached for Israel to die, he called his son Joseph and said to him, "If now I have found favor in your eyes, put your hand under my thigh, and show me faithfulness and trustworthiness. Please do not bury me in Egypt.30When I lie down with my fathers, you will carry me out of Egypt and bury me in my forefathers' burial place." Joseph said, "I will do as you have said."31Israel said, "Swear to me," and Joseph swore to him. Then Israel bowed down at the head of his bed.

#### Genesis 47:3

##### Your servants are shepherds

"Your servants shepherd flocks"

##### Your servants

"We, your servants" or "We"

##### as our ancestors

"both we and our forefathers" or "both we and our ancestors"

#### Genesis 47:4

##### We come as temporary residents in the land

"We have come to stay for a while in Egypt"

##### There is no pasture

"There is no grass to eat"

#### Genesis 47:6

##### The land of Egypt is before you

"The land of Egypt is open to you" or "All of the land of Egypt is available to you"

##### Settle your father and your brothers in the best region, the land of Goshen

"Settle your father and your brothers in the land of Goshen, which is the best region"

##### If you know any capable men among them

"If you know of any men among them who have great skill taking care of animals"

#### Genesis 47:7

##### Jacob blessed Pharaoh

Here "blessed" means to express a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.

#### Genesis 47:8

##### How long have you lived?

"How old are you?"

#### Genesis 47:9

##### The years of my sojourning are 130

"I have lived as a foreigner in many places on the earth for 130 years"

##### The years of my life have been few ... not been as long as the days of my ancestors' sojourning

Jacob means his life is short compared to the lives of Abraham and Isaac.

##### painful

Jacob has experienced much pain and trouble during his life.

#### Genesis 47:11

##### Then Joseph settled his father and his brothers

"Then Joseph took care of his father and his brothers and helped them establish where they would live"

##### the land of Rameses

This is another name for the land of Goshen.

#### Genesis 47:12

##### according to the number of their little ones

"according to how many small children were in their families"

#### Genesis 47:13

##### The land of Egypt and the land of Canaan

"The people of Egypt and the people of Canaan"

##### wasted away

"became thin and weak"

#### Genesis 47:14

##### Joseph gathered all the money that was in the land of Egypt and in the land of Canaan, by selling grain to the inhabitants

"The people of Egypt and Canaan spent all of their money buying grain from Joseph"

##### Joseph gathered ... Joseph brought

Most likely Joseph ordered his servants to gather and bring the money.

#### Genesis 47:15

##### When all the money of the lands of Egypt and Canaan was spent

"When the people of Egypt and Canaan used up all their money"

##### Why should we die in your presence because our money is gone?

"Please, do not let us die because we have used up all of our money!"

#### Genesis 47:17

##### He fed them with bread

"He gave them food" or "He provided them with food"

#### Genesis 47:18

##### they came to him

"the people came to Joseph"

##### We will not hide from my master

"We will not hide from you, our master" or "We will not hide from you"

##### There is nothing left in the sight of my master, except our bodies and our land

"The only things we have left in the sight of my master is our bodies and our land"

##### There is nothing left in the sight of my master

"We have nothing left to give you, our master"

#### Genesis 47:19

##### Why should we die before your eyes, both we and our land?

"Please do not just watch as we die and our land is ruined!"

#### Genesis 47:20

##### In this way, the land became Pharaoh's

"So the land became Pharaoh's"

#### Genesis 47:22

##### It was only the land of the priests that Joseph did not buy

"But he did not buy the land of the priests"

##### the priests were given an allowance

"Pharaoh gave the priests a certain amount of food each day"

##### They ate from the allotment which Pharaoh gave them

"They ate from what Pharaoh gave them"

#### Genesis 47:23

##### and you will plant

"that you might sow"

#### Genesis 47:24

##### At the harvest, you must give a fifth to Pharaoh, and four parts will be your own

"At harvest time you will divide the crops into five parts. You will give one part back to Pharaoh for payment and the four parts are for your own"

##### for food for your households and your little ones

"for food for your households and for food for your little ones"

#### Genesis 47:25

##### May we find favor in your eyes

"May you be pleased with us"

#### Genesis 47:26

##### to this day

This means to the time that the author was writing this.

#### Genesis 47:27

##### They were fruitful and multiplied greatly

"They had very many children"

#### Genesis 47:29

##### When the time approached for Israel to die

"When it was almost time for Israel to die"

##### If now I have found favor in your eyes

"If I have found favor with you" or "If I have pleased you"

##### put your hand under my thigh

This act is a sign of making a serious promise.

##### show me faithfulness and trustworthiness

"treat me in a faithful and trustworthy manner"

##### Please do not bury me in Egypt

The word "please" adds emphasis to this request.

#### Genesis 47:30

##### When I lie down with my fathers

"When I die and join my family members who died before me"

#### Genesis 47:31

##### Swear to me

"Promise me" or "Make an oath to me"

##### swore to him

"promised him" or "made an oath to him"

Chapter 48

1It came about after these things, that one said to Joseph, "Look, your father is sick." So he took with him his two sons, Manasseh and Ephraim.2When Jacob was told, "Look, your son Joseph has arrived to see you," Israel gathered strength and sat up in bed.3Jacob said to Joseph, "God Almighty appeared to me at Luz in the land of Canaan. He blessed me4and said to me, 'Behold, I will make you fruitful, and multiply you. I will make of you an assembly of nations. I will give this land to your descendants as an everlasting possession.'5Now your two sons, who were born to you in the land of Egypt before I came to you into Egypt, they are mine. Ephraim and Manasseh will be mine, just as Reuben and Simeon are mine.6The offspring who are born after them will be yours; they will be listed under the names of their brothers in their inheritance.7But as for me, when I came from Paddan, to my sorrow Rachel died in the land of Canaan on the way, while there was still some distance to go to Ephrath. I buried her there on the way to Ephrath" (that is, Bethlehem).

8When Israel saw Joseph's sons, he said, "Whose are these?"9Joseph said to his father, "They are my sons, whom God has given me here." Israel said, "Bring them to me, that I may bless them."10Now Israel's eyes were failing because of his age, so he could not see. So Joseph brought them near to him, and he kissed them and embraced them.11Israel said to Joseph, "I never expected to see your face again, but God has even allowed me to see your children."12Joseph brought them out from between Israel's knees, and then he bowed with his face to the earth.13Joseph took them both, Ephraim in his right hand toward Israel's left hand, and Manasseh in his left hand toward Israel's right hand, and brought them close to him.14Israel reached out with his right hand and laid it upon Ephraim's head, who was the younger, and his left hand upon Manasseh's head. He crossed his hands, for Manasseh was the firstborn.15Israel blessed Joseph, saying,"The God before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked,the God who has cared for me to this day,16the angel who has protected me from all harm, may he bless these boys.May my name be named in them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac.May they grow into a multitude on the earth."

17When Joseph saw his father place his right hand upon the head of Ephraim, it displeased him. He took his father's hand to move it from Ephraim's head to Manasseh's head.18Joseph said to his father, "Not so, my father; for this is the firstborn. Put your right hand upon his head."19His father refused and said, "I know, my son, I know. He also will become a people, and he also will be great. Yet his younger brother will be greater than he, and his descendants will become a multitude of nations."20Israel blessed them that day with these words,"The people of Israel will pronounce blessings by your names saying,'May God make you like Ephraim and like Manasseh'." In this way, Israel put Ephraim before Manasseh.

21Israel said to Joseph, "See, I am about to die, but God will be with you, and will bring you back to the land of your fathers.22To you, as one who is above your brothers, I give to you the mountain slope that I took from the Amorites with my sword and my bow."

#### Genesis 48:1

##### one said to Joseph

"someone said to Joseph"

##### So he took

"So Joseph took"

#### Genesis 48:2

##### your son Joseph has arrived to see you

"your son Joseph has come to you"

##### Israel gathered strength and sat up in bed

"Israel made a great effort to sit up in bed" or "Israel struggled as he sat up in bed"

#### Genesis 48:3

##### Luz

This is the name of a city.

#### Genesis 48:4

##### said to me, 'Behold, I will make you fruitful, and multiply you. I will make of you an assembly of nations. I will give this land to your descendants as an everlasting possession.'

"said to me that he would make me fruitful and multiply me. And, he said that he would make me an assembly of nations and he would give this land to my descendants as an everlasting possession."God used the word "behold" here to alert Jacob to pay attention to what he was about to tell him.

##### I will make you fruitful, and multiply you

"I will give you very many descendants"

##### I will make of you an assembly of nations

"I will make your descendants into many nations"

##### an everlasting possession

"a permanent possession"

#### Genesis 48:5

##### Ephraim and Manasseh will be mine

Ephraim and Manasseh each will receive a portion of land just like Joseph's brothers.

#### Genesis 48:6

##### they will be listed under the names of their brothers in their inheritance

"as for their inheritance, you will list them under the names of their brothers"

#### Genesis 48:7

##### Ephrath

This is another name for the town of Bethlehem.

#### Genesis 48:8

##### Whose are these?

"Whose sons are these?"

#### Genesis 48:9

##### bless

A father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children or grandchildren.

#### Genesis 48:10

##### he kissed them

"Israel kissed them"

#### Genesis 48:11

##### to see your face again

"to see you again"

#### Genesis 48:12

##### between Israel's knees

When Joseph placed his sons on Israel's lap or knees it was a sign that Israel was adopting them. This gave the children special inheritance rights from Jacob.

##### then he bowed with his face to the earth

Joseph bowed down to show honor to his father.

#### Genesis 48:13

##### Manasseh in his left hand toward Israel's right hand

Joseph places the boys so that Israel will put his right hand on Manasseh. Manasseh was the oldest brother and the right hand was the sign he would receive the greater blessing.

#### Genesis 48:14

##### his right hand and laid it upon Ephraim's head

Placing the right hand on Ephraim's head was the sign that he would receive the greater blessing.

#### Genesis 48:15

##### Israel blessed Joseph

Here "Joseph" also stands for Ephraim and Manasseh. Since Joseph is the father, he is the only one mentioned here.

##### The God before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked

"The God who my grandfather Abraham and father Isaac served"

##### who has cared for me

"who has cared for me like a shepherd cares for his animals"

#### Genesis 48:16

##### the angel

These words could refer to 1) the angel that God sent to protect Jacob or 2) God, who appeared in angel form to protect Jacob.

##### protected me

"delivered me"

##### May my name be named in them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac

"May people remember Abraham, Isaac, and me because of Ephraim and Manasseh"

##### May they grow into a multitude on the earth

"May they have many descendants who will live all over the earth"

#### Genesis 48:19

##### He also will become a people, and he also will be great

"Your older son will have many descendants, and they will become a great people"

#### Genesis 48:20

##### that day with these words

"that day, saying"

##### The people of Israel will pronounce blessings by your names saying

"The people of Israel will speak your names when they are blessing others"

##### by your names saying, 'May God make you like Ephraim and like Manasseh'

"by your names. They will ask God to make others like Ephraim and like Manasseh"

##### Israel put Ephraim before Manasseh

Giving Ephraim the greater blessing and making him more important than Manasseh is spoken of as if Israel physically put Ephraim in front of Manasseh.

#### Genesis 48:21

##### will be with you ... bring you back ... your fathers

Here "you" and "your" are plural and refer to all the people of Israel.

##### will be with you

"God will help you" or "God will bless you"

##### land of your fathers

"land of your ancestors"

#### Genesis 48:22

##### To you, as one who is above your brothers, I give to you the mountain slope

"To you, I give one more ridge than I give your brothers. I give to you the mountain slope"

##### To you

Here "you" is singular and refers to Joseph.

##### the mountain slope that I took from the Amorites with my sword and my bow

"the portion of land I fought for and took from the Amorites"

Chapter 49

1Then Jacob called for his sons, and said:"Gather yourselves together,that I may tell you what will happen to you in the future.2Assemble yourselves and listen, you sons of Jacob.Listen to Israel, your father.  
  
3Reuben, you are my firstborn, my might,and the beginning of my strength,outstanding in dignity, and outstanding in power.4Uncontrollable as rushing water,you will not have the preeminence,because you went up to your father's bed.Then you defiled it; you went up to my couch.  
  
5Simeon and Levi are brothers.Weapons of violence are their swords.6O my soul, do not come into their council;O my glory, do not join in their meetings.For in their anger they killed men.It was for pleasure that they hamstrung oxen.7May their anger be cursed, for it was fierceand their fury, for it was severe.I will divide them in Jacob and scatter them in Israel.  
  
8Judah, your brothers will praise you.Your hand will be on the neck of your enemies.Your father's sons will bow down before you.9Judah is a lion's cub. My son, you have gone up from your victims.He stooped down, he crouched like a lion, like a lioness.Who would dare to awaken him?10The scepter will not depart from Judah,nor the ruler's staff from between his feet,until Shiloh comes. The nations will obey him.11Binding his donkey to the vine,and his donkey's colt to the choice vine,he has washed his garments in wine,and his robe in the blood of grapes.12His eyes will be as dark as wine,and his teeth as white as milk.  
  
13Zebulun will live by the shore of the sea.He will be a harbor for ships,and his border will extend to Sidon.  
  
14Issachar is a strong donkey,lying down between the sheepfolds.15He sees a good resting placeand the pleasant land.He will bend his shoulder to the burdenand become a servant for forced labor.  
  
16Dan will judge his peopleas one of the tribes of Israel.17Dan will be a snake beside the road,a poisonous snake in the paththat bites the horse's heels,so that his rider falls backward.18I wait for your salvation, Yahweh.  
  
19Gad—raiders will attack him,but he will attack them at their heels.  
  
20Asher's food will be rich,and he will provide royal delicacies.  
  
21Naphtali is a doe let loose;he will have beautiful fawns.  
  
22Joseph is a fruitful bough,a fruitful bough near a spring,whose branches climb over the wall.23The archers will attack him bitterlyand shoot at him with hostility.24But his bow will remain steady,and his hands will be skillfulbecause of the hands of the Mighty One of Jacob,because of the name of the Shepherd, the Rock of Israel.25The God of your father will help youand the Almighty God will bless youwith blessings of the sky above,blessings of the deep that lies beneath,and blessings of the breasts and womb.26The blessings of your father are greaterthan the blessings of the ancient mountainsor the desirable things of the ancient hills.May they be on the head of Joseph,even upon the crown of the head of the prince of his brothers.  
  
27Benjamin is a hungry wolf.In the morning he will devour the prey,and in the evening he will divide the plunder."

28These are the twelve tribes of Israel. This is what their father said to them when he blessed them. Each one he blessed with an appropriate blessing.29Then he instructed them and said to them, "I am about to go to my people. Bury me with my forefathers in the cave that is in the field of Ephron the Hittite,30in the cave that is in the field of Machpelah, which is near Mamre in the land of Canaan, the field that Abraham bought for a burial place from Ephron the Hittite.31There they buried Abraham and Sarah his wife; there they buried Isaac and Rebekah his wife; and there I buried Leah.32The field and the cave that is in it were purchased from the people of Heth."33When Jacob finished these instructions to his sons, he pulled his feet into the bed, breathed his last, and went to his people.

#### Genesis 49:3

##### my firstborn, my might, and the beginning of my strength

"my first child after I became a man"

##### outstanding in dignity, and outstanding in power

"You are first in honor and power" or "You surpass everyone else in honor and power"

#### Genesis 49:4

##### you will not have the preeminence

"you shall not be first among your brothers"

##### because you went up to your father's bed. Then you defiled it; you went up to my couch

"because you went to my bed and slept with Bilhah my concubine. You have shamed me"

#### Genesis 49:5

##### Simeon and Levi are brothers

This does not just mean they are brothers by birth. Jacob is emphasizing that they worked together to kill the people of Shechem.

##### Weapons of violence are their swords

"They use their swords to hurt and to kill people"

#### Genesis 49:6

##### O my soul ... my glory

Jacob uses the words "soul" and "glory" to refer to himself and is saying that other people, and perhaps God also, honor him so much that he does not wish to join with those who make plans to do evil.

##### they hamstrung oxen

This refers to Simeon and Levi crippling oxen just for fun.

##### hamstrung

This refers to cutting the sinews of an animal's leg so that it cannot walk.

#### Genesis 49:7

##### May their anger be cursed, for it was fierce—and their fury, for it was severe

"The Lord says, 'I will curse them because of their fierce anger and their cruel fury" or "I, the Lord, will curse them because of their fierce anger and their cruel fury"

##### I will divide them in Jacob and scatter them in Israel

"I will divide their descendants and scatter them among all the people of Israel"

#### Genesis 49:8

##### will praise you. Your hand

"will praise you. For your hand" or "will praise you because your hand"

##### Your hand will be on the neck of your enemies

This is a way of saying "You will conquer your enemies."

##### bow down

This means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone.

#### Genesis 49:9

##### Judah is a lion's cub

"Judah is like a young lion"

##### My son, you have gone up from your victims

"You, my son, have come back from eating your prey"

##### like a lioness

Jacob also compares Judah to a female lion. The lioness is the primary hunter and protector of her cubs.

##### Who would dare to awaken him?

"No one wants to wake him up."

#### Genesis 49:10

##### The scepter will not depart from Judah, nor the ruler's staff from between his feet

"The power to rule will always be with the descendants of Judah"

##### until Shiloh comes. The nations will obey him

Possible meanings are 1) "until the nations obey him and bring him tribute" or 2) "Shiloh" refers to the city of Shiloh. Alternate translation: "until the ruler comes to Shiloh. Then the nations will obey him" Many people consider this a prophecy about the Messiah, who is a descendant of King David. David is a descendant of Judah.

#### Genesis 49:11

##### Binding his donkey ... to the choice vine

Both statements mean the same thing. It is implied that the vines are so full of grapes that the master does not mind that his donkey eats some of them.

##### his ... he

Possible meanings for all occurrences of "his" or "he" are 1) they refer to Judah's descendants or 2) they refer to the ruler in Genesis 49:10.

##### he has washed

"they will wash" or "he will wash"

##### the blood of grapes

This speaks about the grape juice as if it were blood. This emphasizes how red the juice is.

#### Genesis 49:13

##### Zebulun will live

"The descendants of Zebulun will live"

##### He will be a harbor

Here "He" stands for sea towns that the people of Zebulun will inhabit or build. These cities will provide shelter for ships.

#### Genesis 49:14

##### Issachar is a strong donkey

"The descendants of Issachar will be like a strong donkey"

##### lying down between the sheepfolds

Possible meanings are 1) "lying down between the packs they were carrying" or 2) "lying down between two sheep pens." Either way, Jacob speaks about Issachar's descendants as if they are donkeys that have worked hard and are lying down to rest.

#### Genesis 49:15

##### He sees ... He will

These words refer to the descendants of Issachar in 49:14).

##### He will bend his shoulder to the burden

The phrase "bend his shoulder to the burden" is a way of saying "work very hard to carry the load"

##### become a servant for forced labor

"will work for others as slaves"

#### Genesis 49:16

##### Dan will judge his people

"The descendants of Dan will judge their people"

##### his people

Possible meanings for "his people" are 1) "the people of Dan" or 2) "the people of Israel"

#### Genesis 49:18

##### I wait for your salvation, Yahweh

"I wait for you, Yahweh, to save me"

##### I wait

The word "I" refers to Jacob.

#### Genesis 49:19

##### Gad ... attack him, but he

"The descendants of Gad ... attack them, but they"

##### at their heels

Here "heels" stands for the raiders who are running away from the descendants of Gad.

#### Genesis 49:20

##### Asher's food ... and he

"Asher's descendants' food ... and they"

##### food will be rich

Here "rich" is a way of saying "delicious."

#### Genesis 49:21

##### Naphtali is ... he will

"The descendants of Naphtali are ... they will"

##### Naphtali is a doe let loose

"The descendants of Naphtali will be like deer set free"

##### have beautiful fawns

A "fawn" is a baby deer. The meaning of the Hebrew word is unclear. Some versions translate it as "have beautiful words" or "speak beautiful things"

#### Genesis 49:22

##### Joseph is a fruitful bough

"The descendants of Joseph are a fruitful bough"

##### bough

a main branch of a tree

##### whose branches climb over the wall

Branches that grow and extend over a wall are spoken of as if they were climbing.

#### Genesis 49:24

##### his bow will remain steady

"he will hold his bow steady as he aims at his enemy"

##### the hands of the Mighty One

"the power of the Mighty One"

##### because of the name of the Shepherd

"because of the Shepherd"

##### the Shepherd

Jacob speak of Yahweh as if he were a "Shepherd." This emphasizes that Yahweh guides and protects his people.

##### the Rock

Jacob speaks of Yahweh as if he were a "Rock" that people can climb upon to find safety from enemies. This emphasizes that Yahweh protects his people.

#### Genesis 49:25

##### help you ... bless you

"help your descendants ... bless them"

##### blessings of the sky

Here "sky" stands for the rain that helps the crops to grow.

##### blessings of the deep that lies beneath

Here "deep" stands for the water underneath the ground that supplies rivers and wells.

##### blessings of the breasts and womb

Here "breasts and womb" stand for the ability for a mother to have children and feed them milk.

#### Genesis 49:26

##### the ancient mountains

The meaning of the original language is not certain. Some Bible translations have "my ancestors" instead of "ancient mountains."

##### May they be on the head of Joseph

Here "they" refers to the blessings of his father.

##### upon the crown of the head of the prince of his brothers

"on the head of the most important of Joseph's descendants"

##### prince of his brothers

"most important of his brothers"

#### Genesis 49:27

##### Benjamin is a hungry wolf

"The descendants of Benjamin will be like hungry wolves"

#### Genesis 49:28

##### when he blessed them

Here the word "blessed" refers to the speaking of formal blessings.

##### Each one he blessed with an appropriate blessing

"He gave each son a fitting blessing"

#### Genesis 49:29

##### he instructed them

"he commanded them"

##### I am about to go to my people

"I am about to die"

##### go to my people

Jacob is referring to where his inner man will go when he dies. He expects to join Abraham and Isaac in the afterlife.

#### Genesis 49:32

##### in it were purchased

"in it were purchased by Abraham"

##### from the people of Heth

"from the Hittites"

#### Genesis 49:33

##### finished these instructions to his sons

"finished instructing his sons" or "finished commanding his sons"

##### he pulled his feet into the bed

Jacob was sitting on the bed. Now, Jacob turns and puts his feet in the bed so he can lie down.

##### breathed his last

This is a polite way of saying a person died.

##### went to his people

After Jacob died, his inner man went to the same place as his relatives who died before him.

Chapter 50

1Then Joseph was so distressed that he collapsed on the face of his father, and he wept over him, and he kissed him.2Joseph commanded his servants the physicians to embalm his father. So the physicians embalmed Israel.3They took forty days, for that was the full time for embalming. The Egyptians wept for him seventy days.

4When the days of weeping were over, Joseph spoke to the house of Pharaoh, saying, "If now I have found favor in your eyes, please speak to Pharaoh, saying,5'My father made me swear, saying, "See, I am about to die. Bury me in my tomb that I dug for myself in the land of Canaan. There you will bury me." Now let me go up and bury my father, and then I will return.'"6Pharaoh answered, "Go and bury your father, as he made you swear."7Joseph went up to bury his father. All the servants of Pharaoh went with him—the elders of his household, all the senior officials of the land of Egypt,8with all Joseph's household and his brothers, and his father's household. But their children, their flocks, and their herds were left in the land of Goshen.9Chariots and horsemen also went with him. It was a very large group of people.10When they came to the threshing floor of Atad on the other side of the Jordan, they mourned with very great and grievous sorrow. There Joseph made a seven-day mourning for his father.11When the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites, saw the mourning at the threshing floor of Atad, they said, "This is a very sad occasion for the Egyptians." That is why the name of the place was called Abel Mizraim, which is beyond the Jordan.12So his sons did for Jacob just as he had instructed them.13His sons carried him to the land of Canaan and buried him in the cave in the field of Machpelah, near Mamre. Abraham had bought the cave with the field for a burial place. He had bought it from Ephron the Hittite.14After he had buried his father, Joseph returned into Egypt, he, along with his brothers, and all who had accompanied him to bury his father.

15When Joseph's brothers saw that their father was dead, they said, "What if Joseph continues to be angry against us and wants to repay us in full for all the evil we did to him?"16So they commanded the presence of Joseph, saying, "Your father gave instructions before he died, saying,17'Tell Joseph this, "Please forgive the transgression of your brothers and their sin when they did evil to you."' Now please forgive the servants of the God of your father." Joseph wept when they spoke to him.18His brothers also went and lay facedown before him. They said, "See, we are your servants."19But Joseph answered them, "Do not be afraid. Am I in the place of God?20As for you, you meant to harm me, but God meant it for good, to preserve the lives of many people, as you see today.21So now do not be afraid. I will provide for you and your little children." He comforted them in this way and spoke kindly to their hearts.

22Joseph lived in Egypt, together with his father's family. He lived one hundred ten years.23Joseph saw Ephraim's children to the third generation. He also saw the children of Makir son of Manasseh, who were placed on the knees of Joseph.24Joseph said to his brothers, "I am about to die; but God will surely come to you and lead you up out of this land to the land which he swore to give to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob."25Then Joseph made the sons of Israel swear an oath. He said, "God will surely come to you. At that time you must carry up my bones from here."26So Joseph died, 110 years old. They embalmed him and he was placed in a coffin in Egypt.

#### Genesis 50:1

##### that he collapsed on the face of his father

"that he fell on his father in grief"

#### Genesis 50:2

##### his servants the physicians

"his servants who took care of dead bodies"

##### to embalm his father

"to prepare his father's body for burial"

#### Genesis 50:4

##### days of weeping

"days of mourning him" or "days of weeping for him"

##### Joseph spoke to the house of Pharaoh

"Joseph spoke to Pharaoh's officials"

##### If now I have found favor in your eyes

"If I have found favor with you" or "If you are pleased with me"

#### Genesis 50:5

##### My father made me swear, saying, "See, I am about to die. Bury me in my tomb that I dug for myself in the land of Canaan. There you will bury me." Now let me go up ... I will return.

"If now I have found favor in your eyes, please speak to Pharaoh and tell him that my father made me swear, saying that he was about to die and that I was to bury him in his tomb that he dug for himself in the land of Canaan. I was to bury him there. Now let me go up ... I will return."

##### let me go up

It was common to use the phrase "go up" when speaking of traveling from Egypt to Canaan.

#### Genesis 50:6

##### Pharaoh answered

It is implied that the members of the court spoke to Pharaoh, and now Pharaoh is replying to Joseph.

##### as he made you swear

"as you swore to him"

#### Genesis 50:7

##### All the servants ... the elders ... the senior officials

All of Pharaoh's most important leaders attended the burial procession.

##### servants of Pharaoh

These were probably government officials, not household servants.

##### the elders of his household

Here "household" refers to Pharaoh's royal court.

#### Genesis 50:8

##### with all Joseph's household and his brothers, and his father's household

"Joseph's household, his brothers, and his father's household also went with him"

#### Genesis 50:9

##### Chariots

Here this stands for the men riding in the chariots.

##### It was a very large group of people

"It was a very large gathering"

#### Genesis 50:10

##### When they came

The word "they" refers to the participants in the burial procession.

##### floor of Atad

Possible meanings are 1) the word "Atad" means "thorn" and it may refer to a place where large amounts of thorns grew, or 2) it may be the name of the person who owns the threshing floor.

##### they mourned with very great and grievous sorrow

"they were extremely sad and they mourned very much"

#### Genesis 50:11

##### This is a very sad occasion for the Egyptians

"The mourning of the Egyptians is very great"

##### Abel Mizraim

"The name Abel Mizraim means "the mourning of Egypt.'"

#### Genesis 50:12

##### So his sons

"So Jacob's sons"

##### just as he had instructed them

"just as he had directed them"

#### Genesis 50:13

##### His sons carried him

"His sons took his body"

##### Machpelah

Machpela was the name of an area or region.

##### Mamre

This was another name for the city of Hebron.

##### Ephron the Hittite

This is the name of a man. "Hittite" means "descendent of Heth."

#### Genesis 50:14

##### all who had accompanied him

"all who had come with him"

#### Genesis 50:15

##### wants to repay us in full for all the evil we did to him

"wants revenge for the evil thing we did to him"

#### Genesis 50:16

##### Your father gave instructions before he died, saying

"Before our father died he said"

#### Genesis 50:17

##### Tell Joseph this, "Please forgive the transgression of your brothers and their sin when they did evil to you."

"Your father instructed us before he died to tell you to please forgive our transgression and our sin when we did evil to you."

##### and their sin when they did evil to you

"for the wicked things they did to you"

##### please forgive the servants of the God of your father

"please forgive us, the servants of the God of our father"

##### Joseph wept when they spoke to him

"Joseph wept when he heard this message"

#### Genesis 50:18

##### lay facedown before him

They lay down with their faces toward the ground. This is a sign of humility and respect for Joseph.

#### Genesis 50:19

##### Am I in the place of God?

"I am not in the place of God." or "I am not God."

#### Genesis 50:20

##### you meant to harm me

"you intended to do evil against me"

##### God meant it for good

"God intended it for good"

#### Genesis 50:21

##### So now do not be afraid

"So do not fear me"

##### I will provide for you and your little children

"I will always make sure you and your children have enough to eat"

##### He comforted them in this way and spoke kindly to their hearts

"He comforted them by speaking kindly to them"

#### Genesis 50:23

##### Ephraim's children to the third generation

"Ephraim's children and grandchildren"

##### Makir

This is the name of Joseph's grandson.

##### who were placed on the knees of Joseph

This expression means that Joseph adopted these children of Machir as his own children. This means they would have special inheritance rights from Joseph.

#### Genesis 50:24

##### surely come to you

The word "you" refers to Joseph's brothers, but it also stands for their descendants.

##### lead you up out of this land to the land

"bring you out of this land and take you to the land"

#### Genesis 50:26

To "embalm" is a special way of preserving a dead body before it is buried.

##### he was placed

"they placed him"

##### in a coffin

"in a chest" or "in a case." This is a box a dead person is placed in.

## Translation Words

### Aaron

#### Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

* Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
* While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
* God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the priests for the people of Israel.

(See also: [priest](../kt/priest.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 23:14
* Acts 07:38-40
* Exodus 28:1-3
* Luke 01:05
* Numbers 16:45

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H175, G2

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Aaron, Aaron's

### Abel

#### Facts:

Abel was Adam and Eve's second son. He was Cain's younger brother.

* Abel was a shepherd.
* Abel sacrificed some of his animals as an offering to God.
* God was pleased with Abel and his offerings.
* Adam and Eve's firstborn son Cain murdered Abel.

(See also: [Cain](../names/cain.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 04:02
* Genesis 04:09
* Hebrews 12:24
* Luke 11:49-51
* Matthew 23:35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1893, G6

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abel, Abel's

### Abiathar

#### Facts:

Abiathar was a high priest for the nation of Israel during the time of King David.

* When King Saul killed the priests, Abiathar escaped and went to David in the wilderness.
* Abiathar and another high priest named Zadok served David faithfully throughout his reign.
* After David's death, Abiathar helped Adonijah try to become king instead of Solomon.
* Because of this, King Solomon removed Abiathar from the priesthood.

(See also: [Zadok](../names/zadok.md), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md), [Adonijah](../names/adonijah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
* 1 Kings 01:07
* 1 Kings 02:22-23
* 2 Samuel 17:15
* Mark 02:25-26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H54, G8

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abiathar, Abiathar's

### Abijah

#### Facts:

Abijah was a king of Judah who reigned from 915 to 913 B.C. He was a son of King Rehoboam. There were also several other men named Abijah in the Old Testament:

* Samuel's sons Abijah and Joel were leaders over the people of Israel at Beersheba. Because Abijah and his brother were dishonest and greedy, the people asked Samuel to appoint a king to rule them instead.
* Abijah was one of the temple priests during the time of King David.
* Abijah was one of King Jeroboam's sons.
* Abijah was also a chief priest who returned with Zerubbabel to Jerusalem from the Babylonian captivity.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 15:03
* 1 Samuel 08:1-3
* 2 Chronicles 13:02
* 2 Chronicles 13:19
* Luke 01:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H29, G7

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abijah, Abijah's

### Abimelek

#### Facts:

Abimelek was a Philistine king over the region of Gerar during the time when Abraham and Isaac were living in the land of Canaan.

* Abraham deceived King Abimelek by telling him that Sarah was his sister rather than his wife.
* Abraham and Abimelek made an agreement regarding ownership of wells at Beersheba.
* Many years later, Isaac also deceived Abimelek and the other men of Gerar by saying that Rebekah was his sister, not his wife.
* King Abimelek rebuked Abraham, and later Isaac, for lying to him.
* Another man by the name of Abimelek was a son of Gideon and a brother of Jotham. Some translations may use a slightly different spelling of his name to make it clear that he is a different person from King Abimelek.

(See also: [Beersheba](../names/beersheba.md), [Gerar](../names/gerar.md), [Gideon](../names/gideon.md), [Jotham](../names/jotham.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 11:21
* Genesis 20:03
* Genesis 20:05
* Genesis 21:22
* Genesis 26:11
* Judges 09:54

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H40

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abimelek, Abimelek's

### Abner

#### Facts:

Abner was a cousin of King Saul in the Old Testament.

* Abner was the chief commander of Saul's army, and introduced young David to Saul after David killed Goliath the giant.
* After King Saul's death, Abner appointed Saul's son Ishbosheth as king in Israel, while David was appointed king in Judah.
* Later, Abner was treacherously killed by David's chief commander, Joab.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 26:26-28
* 1 Kings 02:5-6
* 1 Kings 02:32
* 1 Samuel 17:55-56
* 2 Samuel 03:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H74

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abner, Abner's

### Abraham

#### Related Words:

Abram

#### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

* The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
* "Abraham" means "father of many."
* God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
* Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
* Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Chaldea](../names/chaldeans.md), [Sarah](../names/sarah.md), [Isaac](../names/isaac.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 03:08
* Genesis 11:29-30
* Genesis 21:04
* Genesis 22:02
* James 02:23
* Matthew 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H87, H85, G11

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abraham, Abraham's, Abram

### Absalom

#### Facts:

Absalom was the third son of King David. He was known for his handsome appearance and fiery temperament.

* When Absalom's sister Tamar was raped by their half-brother, Amnon, Absalom made a plan to have Amnon killed.
* After the murder of Amnon, Absalom fled to the region of Geshur (where his mother Maacah was from) and stayed there three years. Then King David sent for him to come back to Jerusalem, but did not allow Absalom to come into his presence for two years.
* Absalom turned some of the people against King David and led a revolt against him.
* David's army fought against Absalom and killed him. David was very grieved when this happened.

(See also: [Geshur](../names/geshur.md), [Amnon](../names/amnon.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 03:1-3
* 1 Kings 01:06
* 2 Samuel 15:02
* 2 Samuel 17:1-4
* 2 Samuel 18:18
* Psalm 003:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H53

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Absalom, Absalom's

### Adam

#### Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

* God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
* Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
* The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
* All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
* Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(See also: [death](../other/death.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [Eve](../names/eve.md), [image of God](../kt/imageofgod.md), [life](../kt/life.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 02:14
* Genesis 03:17
* Genesis 05:01
* Genesis 11:05
* Luke 03:38
* Romans 05:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H120, G76

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Adam, Adam's, the man, mankind

### Adonijah

#### Facts:

Adonijah was the fourth son of King David.

* Adonijah tried to take over as king of Israel after the deaths of his brothers Absalom and Amnon.
* God, however, had promised that David's son Solomon would be king., so Adonijah's plot was overthrown and Solomon was made king.
* When Adonijah tried a second time to make himself king, Solomon put him to death.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md))

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H138

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Adonijah, Adonijah's

### Ahab

#### Facts:

Ahab was a very evil king who reigned over the northern kingdom of Israel from 875 to 854 BC.

* King Ahab influenced the people of Israel to worship false gods.
* The prophet Elijah confronted Ahab and told him there would be a severe drought for three and a half years as punishment for the sins that Ahab caused Israel to commit.
* Ahab and his wife Jezebel did many other evil things, including using their power to kill innocent people.

(See also: [Baal](../names/baal.md), [Elijah](../names/elijah.md), [Jezebel](../names/jezebel.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:1-2
* 1 Kings 20:1-3
* 2 Chronicles 21:06
* 2 Kings 09:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H256

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ahab, Ahab's

### Ahaz

#### Facts:

Ahaz was a wicked king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah from 732 BC to 716 BC. This was about 140 years before the time when many people in Israel and Judah were taken as captives to Babylonia.

* While he was ruling Judah, Ahaz had an altar built for worshiping the false gods of the Assyrians, which caused the people to turn away from the one true God, Yahweh.
* King Ahaz was 20 years old when he started to rule over Judah, and he ruled for 16 years.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 08:35-37
* 2 Chronicles 28:01
* 2 Kings 16:20
* Hosea 01:01
* Isaiah 01:1
* Isaiah 07:04
* Matthew 01:9-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H271

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ahaz, Ahaz's

### Ahaziah

#### Facts:

Ahaziah was the name of two kings: one ruled over the kingdom of Israel, and the other ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

* Judah's King Ahaziah was the son of King Jehoram. He reigned for one year (841 B.C.) and then was killed by Jehu. Ahaziah's young son Joash eventually took his place as king.
* Israel's King Ahaziah was the son of King Ahab. He reigned for two years (850-49 B.C.). He died from injuries suffered in a fall at his palace, and his brother Joram became king.

(See also: [Jehu](../names/jehu.md), [Ahab](../names/ahab.md), [Jeroboam](../names/jeroboam.md), [Joash](../names/joash.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 22:39-40
* 2 Chronicles 22:02
* 2 Chronicles 25:23-24
* 2 Kings 11:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H274

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ahaziah, Ahaziah's

### Ahijah

#### Facts:

Ahijah was the name of several different men in the Old Testament. The following are some of these men:

* Ahijah was the name of a priest in the time of Saul.
* A man named Ahijah was a secretary during the reign of King Solomon.
* Ahijah was the name of a prophet from Shiloh who predicted that the nation of Israel would be divided into two kingdoms.
* The father of King Baasha of Israel was also named Ahijah.

(See also: [Baasha](../names/baasha.md), [Shiloh](../names/shiloh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 15:27-28
* 1 Kings 21:21-22
* 1 Samuel 14:19
* 2 Chronicles 10:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H281

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ahijah, Ahijah's

### Ai

#### Facts:

In Old Testament times, Ai was the name of a Canaanite town located just south of Bethel and about 8 km northwest of Jericho.

* After defeating Jericho, Joshua led the Israelites in an attack of Ai. But they were easily defeated because God was not pleased with them.
* An Israelite named Achan had stolen plunder from Jericho, and God ordered that he and his family be killed. Then God helped the Israelites defeat the people of Ai.

(See also: [Bethel](../names/bethel.md), [Jericho](../names/jericho.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezra 02:27-30
* Genesis 12:8-9
* Genesis 13:3-4
* Joshua 07:03
* Joshua 08:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5857

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ai

### Almighty

#### Facts:

The term "Almighty" literally means "all-powerful"; in the Bible, it always refers to God.

* The titles "the Almighty" or "the Almighty One" refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
* This term is also used to describe God in the titles "Almighty God" and "God Almighty" and "Lord Almighty" and "Lord God Almighty."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could also be translated as "All-powerful" or "Completely Powerful One" or "God, who is completely powerful."
* Ways to translate the phrase "Lord God Almighty" could include "God, the Powerful Ruler" or "Powerful Sovereign God" or "Mighty God who is Master over everything."

(See also: [God](../kt/god.md), [lord](../kt/lord.md), [power](../kt/power.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 06:2-5
* Genesis 17:01
* Genesis 35:11-13
* Job 08:03
* Numbers 24:15-16
* Revelation 01:7-8
* Ruth 01:19-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7706, G3841

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Almighty, Almighty's

### Amalekite

#### Related Words:

Amalek

#### Facts:

The Amalekites were a nomadic people group who lived throughout the southern part of Canaan, from the Negev desert to the country of Arabia. This people group was descended from Amalek, the grandson of Esau.

* The Amalekites were bitter enemies of Israel from the time when Israel first came to live in Canaan.
* Sometimes the term "Amalek" is used figuratively to refer to all the Amalekites.
* In one battle against the Amalekites, when Moses held up his hands, the Israelites were winning. When he got tired and his hands came down, they started losing. So Aaron and Hur helped Moses keep his hands up until the Israelite army had defeated the Amalekites.
* Both King Saul and King David led military expeditions against the Amalekites.
* After one victory over the Amalekites, Saul disobeyed God by keeping some of the plunder and by not killing the Amalekite king as God had commanded him to do.

(See also: [Arabia](../names/arabia.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Esau](../names/esau.md), [Negev](../names/negev.md), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 04:43
* 2 Samuel 01:08
* Exodus 17:10
* Numbers 14:23-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6002, H6003

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Amalek, Amalekite, Amalekites

### Amaziah

#### Facts:

Amaziah became king over the kingdom of Judah when his father, King Joash, was murdered.

* King Amaziah reigned over Judah for twenty-nine years, from 796 BC to 767 BC.
* He was a good king, but he did not destroy the high places where idols were worshiped.
* Amaziah eventually put to death all the men who were responsible for the murder of his father.
* He defeated the rebellious Edomites and brought them back under the control of the Kingdom of Judah.
* He challenged King Jehoash of Israel to a battle, but lost. Part of the walls of Jerusalem were broken down and the silver and gold vessels of the temple were stolen.
* Years later King Amaziah turned away from Yahweh and certain men in Jerusalem plotted together and killed him.

(See also: [Joash](../names/joash.md), [Edom](../names/edom.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
* 1 Chronicles 04:34
* 2 Chronicles 25:9-10
* 2 Kings 14:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H558

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Amaziah, Amaziah's

### Ammon

#### Related Words:

Ammonite

#### Facts:

The "people of Ammon" or the "Ammonites" were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

* The term "Ammonitess" refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as "Ammonite woman."
* The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
* At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(See also: [curse](../kt/curse.md), [Jordan River](../names/jordanriver.md), [Lot](../names/lot.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
* Ezekiel 25:02
* Genesis 19:38
* Joshua 12:1-2
* Judges 11:27
* Zephaniah 02:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5983, H5984, H5985

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites

### Amnon

#### Facts:

Amnon was the oldest son of King David. His mother was King David's wife Ahinoam.

* Amnon raped his half-sister Tamar, who was also Absalom's sister.
* Because of this, Absalom plotted against Amnon and had him killed.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [Absalom](../names/absalom.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 03:1-3
* 2 Samuel 13:02
* 2 Samuel 13:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H550

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Amnon, Amnon's

### Amorite

#### Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

* Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
* The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
* God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
* Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

#### Bible References:

* Amos 02:09
* Ezekiel 16:03
* Genesis 10:16
* Genesis 15:14-16
* Joshua 09:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H567

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Amorite, Amorites, Amorites'

### Amos

#### Facts:

Amos was an Israelite prophet who lived during the time of King Uzziah of Judah.

* Before being called as a prophet, Amos was originally a shepherd and fig farmer living in the kingdom of Judah.
* Amos prophesied against the prosperous northern kingdom of Israel regarding their unjust treatment of people.

(See also: [fig](../other/fig.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md), [Uzziah](../names/uzziah.md))

#### Bible References:

* Amos 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5986

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Amos, Amos'

### Amoz

#### Facts:

Amoz was the father of the prophet Isaiah.

* The only times he is mentioned in the Bible are when Isaiah is identified as the "son of Amoz."
* This name is different from the name of the prophet Amos and should be spelled differently.

(See also: [Amos](../names/amos.md), [Isaiah](../names/isaiah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 19:02
* Isaiah 37:1-2
* Isaiah 37:21-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H531

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Amoz, Amoz's

### Andrew

#### Facts:

Andrew was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his closest disciples (later called apostles).

* Andrew's brother was Simon Peter. Both of them were fishermen.
* Peter and Andrew were fishing in the Sea of Galilee when Jesus called them to be his disciples.
* Before Peter and Andrew met Jesus, they had been disciples of John the Baptizer.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* John 01:40
* Mark 01:17
* Mark 01:29-31
* Mark 03:17-19
* Matthew 04:19
* Matthew 10:2-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G406

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Andrew, Andrew's

### Annas

#### Facts:

Annas was the Jewish high priest in Jerusalem for 10 years, from approximately AD 6 to AD 15. Then he was removed from the high priesthood by the Roman government, although he continued to be an influential leader among the Jews.

* Annas was father-in-law to Caiaphas, the official high priest during the ministry of Jesus.
* After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office, so Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
* During his trial before the Jewish leaders, Jesus was first brought to Annas for questioning.

(See also: [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:5-7
* John 18:22-24
* Luke 03:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G452

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Annas, Annas'

### Antioch

#### Facts:

Antioch was the name of two cities in the New Testament. One was in Syria, near the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. The other was in the Roman province of Pisidia, near the city of Colossae.

* The local church at Antioch of Syria was the first place where believers in Jesus were called "Christians." The church there was also active in sending out missionaries to reach the Gentiles.
* The leaders of the church in Jerusalem sent a letter to the believers in the church at Antioch in Syria to help them know they didn't have to keep the Jewish laws in order to be Christians.
* Paul, Barnabas and John Mark traveled to the Antioch in Pisidia to share the gospel. Some Jews from other cities came there to stir up trouble, and they tried to kill Paul. But many other people, both Jews and Gentiles, listened to the teaching and believed in Jesus.

(See also:[Barnabas](../names/barnabas.md), [Colossae](../names/colossae.md), [John Mark](../names/johnmark.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [province](../other/province.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [Syria](../names/syria.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 03:10-13
* Acts 06:5-6
* Acts 11:19-21
* Acts 11:26
* Galatians 02:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G491

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Antioch

### Apollos

#### Facts:

Apollos was a Jew from the city of Alexandria in Egypt who had a special ability in teaching people about Jesus.

* Apollos was well educated in the Hebrew Scriptures and was a gifted speaker.
* He was instructed by two Christians in Ephesus named Aquila and Priscilla.
* Paul emphasized that he and Apollos, as well as other evangelists and teachers, were working toward the same goal of helping people to believe in Jesus.

(See also: [Aquila](../names/aquila.md), [Ephesus](../names/ephesus.md), [Priscilla](../names/priscilla.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 01:13
* 1 Corinthians 16:12
* Acts 18:25
* Titus 03:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G625

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Apollos, Apollos'

### Aquila

#### Facts:

Aquila was a Jewish Christian from the province of Pontus, a region along the southern coast of the Black Sea.

* Aquila and Priscilla lived in Rome, Italy, for a time, but then the Roman emperor, Claudius, forced all Jews to leave Rome.
* After that Aquila and Priscilla traveled to Corinth, where they met the apostle Paul.
* They worked as tentmakers with Paul and also helped him with his missionary work.
* Both Aquila and Priscilla taught believers the truth about Jesus; one of those believers was a gifted teacher named Apollos.

(See also: [Apollos](../names/apollos.md), [Corinth](../names/corinth.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
* 2 Timothy 04:19-22
* Acts 18:02
* Acts 18:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Aquila, Aquila's

### Arabah

#### Facts:

The Old Testament term "Arabah" often refers to a very large desert and plains region that includes the valley surrounding the Jordan River and extends south to the northern tip of the Red Sea.

* The Israelites traveled through this desert region on their journey from Egypt to the land of Canaan.
* The "Sea of the Arabah" could also be translated as "sea located in the Arabah desert region." This sea is often referred to as the "Salt Sea" or the "Dead Sea."
* The term "arabah" can also be a general reference to any desert region.

(See also: [desert](../other/desert.md), [Sea of Reeds](../names/redsea.md), [Jordan River](../names/jordanriver.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 23:24-25
* 2 Kings 25:4-5
* 2 Samuel 02:29
* Jeremiah 02:4-6
* Job 24:5-7
* Zechariah 14:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1026, H6160

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Arabah

### Arabia

#### Related Words:

Arab, Arabian

#### Facts:

Arabia is the largest peninsula in the world, covering nearly 3,000,000 square kilometers. It is located southeast of Israel, and is bordered by the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf.

* The term "Arabian" is used to refer to someone who lives in Arabia or to something that is connected with Arabia.
* The earliest people to live in Arabia were grandchildren of Shem. Other early inhabitants of Arabia included Abraham's son Ishmael and his descendants, as well as descendants of Esau.
* The desert region where the Israelites wandered for 40 years was located in Arabia.
* After becoming a believer in Jesus, the apostle Paul spent a few years in the desert of Arabia.
* In his letter to the Christians in Galatia, Paul mentioned that Mt. Sinai was located in Arabia.

(See also: [Esau](../names/esau.md), [Galatia](../names/galatia.md), [Ishmael](../names/ishmael.md), [Shem](../names/shem.md), [Sinai](../names/sinai.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 10:14-15
* Acts 02:11
* Galatians 01:15-17
* Galatians 04:24-25
* Jeremiah 25:24-26
* Nehemiah 02:19-20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6152, H6153, H6163, G688, G690

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Arab, Arabia, Arabian, Arabians

### Aram

#### Related Words:

Aram of Damascus, Aramaic, Aramean

#### Facts:

"Aram" was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

* One of Shem's sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah.
* The region of Aram was probably named after one of the two men.
* The people living in Aram became known as "Arameans" and spoke "Aramaic."
* The region of Aram later became known by the Greek name "Syria."
* The term "Paddan Aram" means "plain of Aram" and this plain was located in the northern part of Aram.
* Some of Abraham's relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in "Paddan Aram."
* In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms "Aram" and "Paddan Aram" refer to the same region.
* The term "Aram Naharaim" may mean "Aram of Two Rivers." This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of "Paddan Aram."
* Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.

(See also: [Mesopotamia](../names/mesopotamia.md), [Paddan Aram](../names/paddanaram.md), [Rebekah](../names/rebekah.md), [Shem](../names/shem.md), [Syria](../names/syria.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:17-19
* 2 Samuel 08:06
* Amos 01:5
* Ezekiel 27:16
* Genesis 31:19-21
* Hosea 12:12
* Psalm 060:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H130, H726, H758, H761, H762, H763, H1834, H7421

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Aram, Aram of Damascus, Aramaic, Aramean, Arameans

### Ararat

#### Facts:

In the Bible, "Ararat" is the name given to a land, a kingdom, and a mountain range.

* The "land of Ararat" was probably located in what is now the northeastern part of the country of Turkey.
* Ararat is best known as the name of the mountain that Noah's ark came to rest on after the waters of the great flood began to recede.
* In modern times, a mountain called "Mount Ararat" is often thought to be the location of the "mountains of Ararat" in the Bible.

(See also: [ark](../kt/ark.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 19:35-37
* Genesis 08:4-5
* Isaiah 37:38
* Jeremiah 51:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H780

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ararat

### Artaxerxes

#### Facts:

Artaxerxes was a king who reigned over the Persian empire from about 464 to 424 BC.

* During Artaxerxes' reign, the Israelites from Judah were in exile in Babylon, which was under the control of Persia at that time.
* Artaxerxes allowed Ezra the priest and other Jewish leaders to leave Babylon and go back to Jerusalem to teach the Israelites the Law of God.
* Later during this time, Artaxerxes also allowed his cupbearer Nehemiah to return to Jerusalem to lead the Jews in rebuilding the walls surrounding the city.
* Because Babylon was under the rule of Persia, Artaxerxes was sometimes called the "king of Babylon."
* Note that Artaxerxes is not the same person as Ahasuerus (Xerxes).

(See also: [Xerxes](../names/ahasuerus.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [cupbearer](../other/cupbearer.md), [Ezra](../names/ezra.md), [Nehemiah](../names/nehemiah.md), [Persia](../names/persia.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezra 04:7-8
* Ezra 07:1-5
* Nehemiah 02:01
* Nehemiah 13:6-7

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H783

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Artaxerxes, Artaxerxes'

### Asa

#### Facts:

Asa was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah for forty years, from 913 B.C. to 873 B.c.

* King Asa was a good king who removed many idols of false gods and caused the Israelites to start worshiping Yahweh again.
* Yahweh gave King Asa success in his warfare against other nations.
* Later in his reign, however, King Asa stopped trusting Yahweh and became sick with a disease that eventually killed him.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:14-16
* 1 Kings 15:7-8
* 2 Chronicles 14:03
* Jeremiah 41:09
* Matthew 01:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H609

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Asa, Asa's

### Asaph

#### Facts:

Asaph was a Levite priest and gifted musician who composed the music for the psalms of King David. He also wrote his own psalms.

* Asaph was appointed by King David to be one of three musicians who were responsible for providing songs for worship in the temple. Some of these songs were also prophecies.
* Asaph trained his sons and they carried on this responsibility, playing musical instruments and prophesying in the temple.
* Some of the musical instruments included the lute, harp, trumpet, and cymbals.
* Psalms 50 and 73-83 are said to be from Asaph. It may be that some of these psalms were written by his family members.

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [harp](../other/harp.md), [lute](../other/lute.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [psalm](../kt/psalm.md), [trumpet](../other/trumpet.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:39-43
* 2 Chronicles 35:15
* Nehemiah 02:08
* Psalm 050:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H623

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Asaph, Asaph's

### Ashdod

#### Related Words:

Azotus

#### Facts:

Ashdod was one of the five most important cities of the Philistines. It was located in southwestern Canaan near the Mediterranean Sea, halfway between the cities of Gaza and Joppa.

* The temple of the Philistine's false god Dagon was located in Ashdod.
* God severely punished the people of Ashdod when the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant and put it in the pagan temple at Ashdod.
* "Azotus" was the Greek name for this city. It was one of the cities where the evangelist Philip preached the gospel.

(See also: [Ekron](../names/ekron.md), [Gath](../names/gath.md), [Gaza](../names/gaza.md), [Joppa](../names/joppa.md), [Philip](../names/philip.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 05:1-3
* Acts 08:40
* Amos 01:8
* Joshua 15:45-47
* Zechariah 09:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H795, G108

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ashdod, Azotus

### Asher

#### Facts:

Asher was the eighth son of Jacob. His descendants formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel and this tribe was also called "Asher."

* Asher's mother was Zilpah, the servant of Leah.
* His name means "happy" or "blessed."
* Asher was also the name of the territory assigned to the tribe of Asher when the Israelites entered the promised land.

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
* 1 Kings 04:16
* Ezekiel 48:1-3
* Genesis 30:13
* Luke 02:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H836

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Asher, Asher's

### Asherah

#### Related Words:

Asherah pole, Ashtoreth

#### Facts:

Asherah was the name of a goddess that was worshiped by Canaanite people groups during Old Testament times. "Ashtoreth" may be another name for "Asherah," or it could be the name of a different goddess that was very similar.

* The term "Asherah poles" refers to carved wooden images or carved trees that were made to represent this goddess.
* Asherah poles were often set up near altars of the false god Baal, who was thought of as Asherah's husband. Some people groups worshiped Baal as the sun god and Asherah or Ashtoreth as the moon goddess.
* God commanded the Israelites to destroy all the carved images of Asherah.
* Some Israelite leaders such as Gideon, King Asa, and King Josiah obeyed God and led the people in destroying these idols.
* But other Israelite leaders such as King Solomon, King Manasseh, and King Ahab did not get rid of the Asherah poles and influenced the people to worship these idols.

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [Baal](../names/baal.md), [Gideon](../names/gideon.md), [image](../other/image.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 18:04
* 2 Kings 21:03
* Isaiah 27:9
* Judges 03:7-8
* Micah 05:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H842, H6253

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Asherahs, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths

### Ashkelon

#### Facts:

In Bible times, Ashkelon was a major Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. It still exists in Israel today.

* Ashkelon was one of the five most important Philistine cities, along with Ashdod, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
* The Israelites did not completely conquer the people of Ashkelon, even though the kingdom of Judah occupied its hill country.
* Ashkelon remained occupied by the Philistines for hundreds of years.

(See also: [Ashdod](../names/ashdod.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Ekron](../names/ekron.md), [Gath](../names/gath.md), [Gaza](../names/gaza.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md), [Mediterranean](../names/mediterranean.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 06:17-18
* Amos 01:8
* Jeremiah 25:19-21
* Joshua 13:2-3
* Judges 01:18-19
* Zechariah 09:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H831

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ashkelon

### Asia

#### Facts:

In Bible times, "Asia" was the name of a province of the Roman Empire. It was located in the western part of what is now the country of Turkey.

* Paul traveled to Asia and shared the gospel in several cities there. Among these were the cities of Ephesus and Colossae.
* To avoid confusion with modern day Asia, it may be necessary to translate this as, "the ancient Roman province called Asia" or "Asia Province."
* All of the churches referenced in Revelation were in the Roman province of Asia.

(See also: [Rome](../names/rome.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Ephesus](../names/ephesus.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
* 1 Peter 01:1-2
* 2 Timothy 01:15-18
* Acts 06:8-9
* Acts 16:07
* Acts 27:1-2
* Revelation 01:4-6
* Romans 16:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G773

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Asia

### Assyria

#### Related Words:

Ashur, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

#### Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

* The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
* The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
* In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
* The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.
* Ashur was a city on the Tigris River. It was the capital of Assyria. Sometimes it is not clear whether the word Ashur refers to the city or the nation.
* Ashur was also the name of a person.

(See also: [Samaria](../names/samaria.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 10:11
* Genesis 25:17-18
* Isaiah 07:16-17
* Jeremiah 50:17
* Micah 07:11-13

#### Word Data:

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ashur, Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire, Assyrians

### Athaliah

#### Facts:

Athaliah was the evil wife of Jehoram king of Judah. She was the granddaughter of the evil King Omri of Israel.

* Athaliah's son Ahaziah became king after Jehoram died.
* When her son Ahaziah died, Athaliah made a plan to kill all the rest of the king's family.
* But Athaliah's young grandson Joash was hidden by his aunt and saved from being killed. After Athaliah had ruled the land for six years, she was killed and Joash became king.

(See also: [Ahaziah](../names/ahaziah.md), [Jehoram](../names/jehoram.md), [Joash](../names/joash.md), [Omri](../names/omri.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 22:02
* 2 Chronicles 24:6-7
* 2 Kings 11:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6271

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Athaliah

### Azariah

#### Facts:

Azariah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

* One Azariah is best known by his Babylonian name, Abednego. He was one of many Israelites from Judah who were captured by Nebuchadnezzar's army and taken to live in Babylon. Azariah and his fellow Israelites Hananiah and Mishael refused to worship the Babylonian king, so he had them thrown into a blazing furnace as punishment. But God protected them and they were not harmed at all.
* Uzziah king of Judah was also known as "Azariah."
* Another Azariah was an Old Testament high priest.
* In the time of the prophet Jeremiah, a man named Azariah wrongly urged the Israelites to disobey God by leaving their homeland.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [Hananiah](../names/hananiah.md), [Mishael](../names/mishael.md), [Jeremiah](../names/jeremiah.md), [Uzziah](../names/uzziah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:38
* 1 Kings 04:02
* 2 Chronicles 15:01
* Daniel 01:6-7
* Jeremiah 43:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5838

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Azariah, Azariah's

### Baal

#### Facts:

"Baal" means "lord" or "master" and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

* There were also local false gods that had "Baal" as part of their names, such as "Baal of Peor." Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as "the Baals."
* Some people had names that included the word "Baal" in them.
* The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
* At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
* During the reign of King Ahab, God's prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshiping Yahweh again.

(See also: [Ahab](../names/ahab.md), [Asherah](../names/asherim.md), [Elijah](../names/elijah.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [prostitute](../other/prostitute.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 16:31
* 1 Samuel 07:3-4
* Jeremiah 02:7-8
* Judges 02:11
* Numbers 22:41

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G896

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Baal, Baal's

### Baasha

#### Facts:

Baasha was one of Israel's evil kings, who influenced the Israelites to worship idols.

* Baasha was the third king of Israel and reigned for twenty-four years, during the time when Asa was king of Judah.
* He was a military commander who became king by killing the previous king, Nadab.
* During Baasha's reign there were many wars between the kingdoms of Israel and Judah, especially with King Asa of Judah.
* Baasha's many sins caused God to eventually remove him from office by his death.

(See also: [Asa](../names/asa.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 15:17
* 2 Kings 09:09
* Jeremiah 41:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1201

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Baasha, Baasha's

### Babel

#### Facts:

Babel was a chief city in a region called Shinar in the southern part of Mesopotamia. Shinar was later called Babylonia.

* The city of Babel was founded by Ham's great-grandson, Nimrod, who ruled the region of Shinar.
* The people of Shinar became proud and decided to build a tower high enough to reach heaven. This later became known as the "Tower of Babel."
* Because the people building the tower refused to spread out as God had commanded, he confused their languages so that they could not understand one another. This forced them to move away to live in many different places across the earth.
* The root meaning of the word for "Babel" is "confusion," named for when God confused the people's language.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Ham](../names/ham.md), [Mesopotamia](../names/mesopotamia.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 10:8-10
* Genesis 11:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H894

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Babel, Babel's

### Babylon

#### Related Words:

Babylonia, Babylonian

#### Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

* Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
* Sometimes the word "Babylon" refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the "king of Babylon" ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
* The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
* Part of this region was called "Chaldea" and the people living there were the "Chaldeans." As a result, the term "Chaldea" was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [[rc://en/ta/man/jit/figs-synecdoche])
* In the New Testament, the term "Babylon" is sometimes used as a metaphor to refer to places, people, and thinking patterns that are associated with idol-worship and other sinful behaviors.
* The phrase "Babylon the Great" or "great city of Babylon" refers metaphorically to a city or nation that was large, wealthy, and sinful, just as the ancient city of Babylon was. (See: [Metaphor](rc://en/ta/man/jit/figs-metaphor))

(See also: [Babel](../names/babel.md), [Chaldea](../names/chaldeans.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Nebuchadnezzar](../names/nebuchadnezzar.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:01
* 2 Kings 17:24-26
* Acts 07:43
* Daniel 01:02
* Ezekiel 12:13
* Matthew 01:11
* Matthew 01:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Babylon, Babylon's, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians

### Balaam

#### Facts:

Balaam was a pagan prophet whom King Balek hired to curse Israel while they were camped at the Jordan River in northern Moab, preparing to enter the land of Canaan.

* Balaam was from the city of Pethor, which was located in the region around the Euphrates River, about 400 miles away from the land of Moab.
* The Midianite king, Balek, was afraid of the strength and numbers of the Israelites, so he hired Balaam to curse them.
* As Balaam was traveling toward Israel, an angel of God stood in his path so that Balaam's donkey stopped. God also gave the donkey the ability to speak to Balaam.
* God did not allow Balaam to curse the Israelites and commanded him to bless them instead.
* Later however, Balaam still brought evil on the Israelites when he influenced them to worship the false god Baal-peor.

(See also: [bless](../kt/bless.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [curse](../kt/curse.md), [donkey](../other/donkey.md), [Euphrates River](../names/euphrates.md), [Jordan River](../names/jordanriver.md), [Midian](../names/midian.md), [Moab](../names/moab.md), [Peor](../names/peor.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:16
* Deuteronomy 23:3-4
* Joshua 13:22-23
* Numbers 22:05
* Revelation 02:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1109, G903

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Balaam, Balaam's

### Barabbas

#### Facts:

Barabbas was a prisoner in Jerusalem at the time when Jesus was arrested.

* Barabbas was a criminal who had committed crimes of murder and rebellion against the Roman government.
* When Pontius Pilate offered to either release Barabbas or Jesus, the people chose Barabbas.
* So Pilate allowed Barabbas to go free, but condemned Jesus to be killed.

(See also: [Pilate](../names/pilate.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 18:40
* Luke 23:19
* Mark 15:07
* Matthew 27:15-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Barabbas, Barabbas'

### Barnabas

#### Facts:

Barnabas was one of the early Christians who lived during the time of the apostles.

* Barnabas was from the Israelite tribe of Levi and was from the island of Cyprus.
* When Saul (Paul) became a Christian, Barnabas urged the other believers to accept him as a fellow believer.
* Barnabas and Paul traveled together to preach the good news about Jesus in different cities.
* His name was Joseph, but he was called "Barnabas," which means "son of encouragement."

(See also: [Christian](../kt/christian.md), [Cyprus](../names/cyprus.md), [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [Levite](../names/levite.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:36
* Acts 11:26
* Acts 13:03
* Acts 15:33
* Colossians 04:10-11
* Galatians 02:9-10
* Galatians 02:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G921

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Barnabas, Barnabas'

### Bartholomew

#### Facts:

Bartholomew was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

* Along with the other apostles, Bartholomew was sent out to preach the gospel and do miracles in Jesus' name.
* He was also one of those who saw Jesus return to heaven.
* A few weeks after that, he was with the other apostles in Jerusalem at Pentecost when the Holy Spirit came upon them.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [Pentecost](../kt/pentecost.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 03:17-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G918

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bartholomew, Bartholomew's

### Baruch

#### Facts:

Baruch is the name of several men in the Old Testament.

* One Baruch (son of Zabbal) worked with Nehemiah to repair the walls of Jerusalem.
* Also during the time of Nehemiah, another Baruch (son of Kol-Hozeh) was one of the leaders who settled in Jerusalem after its walls were restored.
* A different Baruch (son of Neriah) was an assistant to the prophet Jeremiah, who helped him with various practical tasks such as writing down the messages God gave to Jeremiah and then reading them to the people.

(See also: [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [Jeremiah](../names/jeremiah.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [Nehemiah](../names/nehemiah.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md))

#### Bible References:

* Jeremiah 32:12
* Jeremiah 36:04
* Jeremiah 43:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1263

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Baruch, Baruch's

### Bashan

#### Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

* An Old Testament city of refuge called "Golan" was located in the region of Bashan.
* Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
* Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
* During Israel's wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
* Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(See also: [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [oak](../other/oak.md), [Sea of Galilee](../names/seaofgalilee.md), [Syria](../names/syria.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 04:13
* Amos 04:01
* Jeremiah 22:20-21
* Joshua 09:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1316

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bashan, Bashan's

### Bathsheba

#### Facts:

Bathsheba was the wife of Uriah, a soldier in King David's army. After Uriah's death, she became the wife of David, and the mother of Solomon.

* David committed adultery with Bathsheba while she was married to Uriah.
* When Bathsheba became pregnant with David's child, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle.
* David then married Bathsheba and she gave birth to their child.
* God punished David for his sin by causing the child to die several days after he was born.
* Later, Bathsheba gave birth to another son, Solomon, who grew up to become king after David.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md). [Uriah](../names/uriah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 03:4-5
* 1 Kings 01:11
* 2 Samuel 11:03
* Psalm 051:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1339

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bathsheba, Bathsheba's

### Beelzebul

#### Facts:

Beelzebul is another name for Satan, or the devil. It is also sometimes spelled, "Beelzebub."

* This name literally means "lord of flies" which means, "ruler over demons." But it is best to translate this term close to the original spelling rather than translate the meaning.
* It could also be translated as "Beelzebul the devil" to make it clear who is being referred to.
* This name is related to the name of the false god "Baal-zebub" of Ekron.

(See also: [demon](../kt/demon.md), [Ekron](../names/ekron.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 11:15
* Mark 03:22
* Matthew 10:25
* Matthew 12:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G954

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Beelzebul, Beelzebul's

### Beersheba

#### Facts:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

* The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
* The name of this city means "well of the oath." It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech's men for seizing control of one of Abraham's wells.

(See also: [Abimelech](../names/abimelech.md), [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Hagar](../names/hagar.md), [Ishmael](../names/ishmael.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [oath](../other/oath.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 03:20
* 2 Samuel 17:11
* Genesis 21:14-16
* Genesis 21:31
* Genesis 46:01
* Nehemiah 11:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H884

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Beersheba

### Benaiah

#### Facts:

Benaiah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

* Benaiah son of Jehoiada was one of David's mighty men. He was a skilled warrior and was put in charge of David's bodyguards.
* When Solomon was being made king, Benaiah helped him overthrow his enemies. He eventually became commander of the Israelite army.
* Other men in the Old Testament named Benaiah include three Levites: a priest, a musician, and a descendant of Asaph.

(See also: [Asaph](../names/asaph.md), [Jehoiada](../names/jehoiada.md), [Levite](../names/levite.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 04:36
* 1 Kings 01:08
* 2 Samuel 23:20-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1141

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Benaiah, Benaiah's

### Benjamin

#### Related Words:

Benjamite

#### Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, "son of my right hand."

* He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
* The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
* The term "Benjamite" refers to a person who belonged to the tribe of Benjamin.
* King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
* The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Joseph (OT)](../names/josephot.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Rachel](../names/rachel.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
* 1 Kings 02:08
* Acts 13:21-22
* Genesis 35:18
* Genesis 42:04
* Genesis 42:35-36
* Philippians 03:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1144, G958

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Benjamin, Benjamin's, Benjamite, Benjamites

### Berea

#### Facts:

In New Testament times, Berea (or Beroea) was a prosperous Greek city in southeast Macedonia, about 80 kilometers south of Thessalonica.

* Paul and Silas fled to the city of Berea after their fellow Christians helped them escape from certain Jews who had caused trouble for them in Thessalonica.
* When the people living in Berea heard Paul preach, they researched the Scriptures to confirm that what he was telling them was true.

(See also: [Macedonia](../names/macedonia.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Silas](../names/silas.md), [Thessalonica](../names/thessalonica.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 17:11
* Acts 17:13-15
* Acts 20:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G960

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Berea

### Beth Shemesh

#### Facts:

Beth Shemesh was the name of a Canaanite city approximately 30 kilometers west of Jerusalem.

* The Israelites captured Beth Shemesh during the time of Joshua's leadership.
* Beth Shemesh was a city that was set aside as a place for the Levite priests to live.
* When the Philistines were taking the captured ark of the covenant back to Jerusalem, Beth Shemesh was the first city where they stopped with it.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [Joshua](../names/joshua.md), [Levite](../names/levite.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 04:09
* 1 Samuel 06:09
* Joshua 19:20-22
* Judges 01:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1053

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Beth Shemesh

### Bethany

#### Facts:

The town of Bethany was located at the base of the eastern slope of the Mount of Olives, about 2 miles east of Jerusalem.

* Bethany was near the road that ran between Jerusalem and Jericho.
* Jesus often visited Bethany where his close friends Lazarus, Martha, and Mary lived.
* Bethany is especially known as the place where Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead.

(See also: [Jericho](../names/jericho.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [Lazarus](../names/lazarus.md), [Martha](../names/martha.md), [Mary (sister of Martha)](../names/marysisterofmartha.md), [Mount of Olives](../names/mountofolives.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 01:26-28
* Luke 24:50-51
* Mark 11:01
* Matthew 21:15-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G963

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bethany

### Bethel

#### Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called "Luz."

* After receiving God's promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as "Bethel," which was better known.
* When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
* This city did not have the name "Bethel" until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as "Luz (later called Bethel)" in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
* Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [altar](../kt/altar.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 12:8-9
* Genesis 35:01
* Hosea 10:15
* Judges 01:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1008

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bethel

### Bethlehem

#### Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as "Ephrathah," which was probably its original name.

* Bethlehem has been called the "city of David," since King David was born there.
* The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from "Bethlehem Ephrathah."
* Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
* The name "Bethlehem" means "house of bread" or "house of food."

(See also: [Caleb](../names/caleb.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Micah](../names/micah.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 35:16
* John 07:42
* Matthew 02:06
* Matthew 02:16
* Ruth 01:02
* Ruth 01:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H672, H1035, G965

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bethlehem

### Bethuel

#### Facts:

Bethuel was the son of Abraham's brother Nahor.

* Bethuel was the father of Rebekah and Laban.
* There was also a town called Bethuel, which may have been located in southern Judah, not far from the town of Beersheba.

(See also: [Beersheba](../names/beersheba.md), [Laban](../names/laban.md), [Nahor](../names/nahor.md), [Rebekah](../names/rebekah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 04:30
* Genesis 28:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1328

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bethuel, Bethuel's

### Boaz

#### Facts:

Boaz was an Israelite man who was the husband of Ruth, the great grandfather of King David, and an ancestor of Jesus Christ.

* Boaz lived during the time when there were judges in Israel.
* He was a relative of an Israelite woman named Naomi who had returned to Israel after her husband and sons died in Moab.
* Boaz "redeemed" Naomi's widowed daughter-in-law Ruth by marrying her and giving her a future with a husband and children.
* He is seen as a picture of how Jesus rescued and redeemed us from sin.

(See also: [Moab](../names/moab.md), [redeem](../kt/redeem.md), [Ruth](../names/ruth.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:12
* 2 Chronicles 03:17
* Luke 03:30-32
* Matthew 01:05
* Ruth 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1162

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Boaz, Boaz's

### Book of Life

#### Definition:

The term "Book of Life" is used to refer to where God has written the names of all the people whom he has redeemed and given eternal life to.

* Revelation refers to this book as "the Lamb's Book of Life." This could be translated as "the book of life belonging to Jesus, the Lamb of God." The sacrifice of Jesus on the cross paid the penalty for people's sins so that they can have eternal life through faith in him.
* The word for "book" can also mean "scroll" or "letter" or "writing" or "legal document." It may be literal or figurative.

(See also: [everlasting](../kt/eternity.md), [lamb](../kt/lamb.md), [life](../kt/life.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [scroll](../other/scroll.md))

#### Bible References:

* Philippians 04:03
* Psalms 069:28-29
* Revelation 03:5-6
* Revelation 20:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2416, H5612, G976, G2222

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Book of Life

### Caesar

#### Related Words:

the emperor

#### Facts:

The term "Caesar" was the name or title used by many of the rulers of the Roman Empire. In the Bible, this name refers to three different Roman rulers.

* The first Roman ruler named Caesar was "Caesar Augustus," who was ruling during the time that Jesus was born.
* About thirty years later, at the time when John the Baptist was preaching, Tiberius Caesar was the ruler of the Roman Empire.
* Tiberius Caesar was still ruling Rome when Jesus told the people to pay Caesar what was due him and to give to God what is due him.
* When Paul appealed to Caesar, this referred to the Roman emperor, Nero, who also had the title "Caesar."
* When "Caesar" is used by itself as a title, it can also be translated as: "the Emperor" or "the Roman Ruler."
* In names such as Caesar Augustus or Tiberius Caesar, "Caesar" can be spelled close to the way a national language spells it.
* An emperor is the ruler of an empire.

(See also: [king](../other/king.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 25:06
* Luke 02:01
* Luke 20:23-24
* Luke 23:02
* Mark 12:13-15
* Matthew 22:17
* Philippians 04:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2541, G4575

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Caesar, Caesar's, the emperor

### Caesarea

#### Related Words:

Caesarea Philippi

#### Facts:

Caesarea was an important city on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 39 km south of Mount Carmel. Caesarea Philippi was a city located in the northeastern part of Israel, near Mount Hermon.

* These cities were named for the Caesars who ruled the Roman empire.
* The coastal Caesarea became the capital city of the Roman province of Judea around the time of the birth of Jesus.
* The apostle Peter first preached to the Gentiles in Caesarea.
* Paul sailed from Caesarea to Tarsus and also passed through this city on two of his missionary journeys.
* Jesus and his disciples traveled in the region surrounding Caesarea Philippi in Syria. Both cities were named after Herod Philip.

(See also: [Caesar](../names/caesar.md), [Gentile](../kt/gentile.md), [the sea](../names/mediterranean.md), [Carmel](../names/carmel.md), [Mount Hermon](../names/mounthermon.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [Tarsus](../names/tarsus.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:30
* Acts 10:1-2
* Acts 25:01
* Acts 25:14
* Mark 08:27
* Matthew 16:13-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2542, G5376

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Caesarea, Caesarea Philippi

### Caiaphas

#### Facts:

Caiaphas was the high priest of Israel during the time of John the Baptist and Jesus.

* Caiaphas played a major role in the trial and condemnation of Jesus.
* The high priests Annas and Caiaphas were at the trial of Peter and John when they were arrested after healing a crippled man.
* Caiaphas is the one who said that it was better for one man to die for the whole nation than for the whole nation to perish. God caused him to say this as a prophecy about how Jesus would die to save his people.

(See also: [Annas](../names/annas.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:5-7
* John 18:12
* Luke 03:02
* Matthew 26:3-5
* Matthew 26:57-58

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2533

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Caiaphas, Caiaphas'

### Cain

#### Facts:

Cain and his younger brother Abel were the first sons of Adam and Eve mentioned in the Bible.

* Cain was a farmer who produced food crops while Abel was a sheep herder.
* Cain killed his brother Abel in a fit of jealousy because God had accepted Abel's sacrifice but had not accepted Cain's sacrifice.
* As punishment, God sent him away from Eden and told him that the land would no longer yield crops for him.
* God put a mark on Cain's forehead as a sign that God would protect him from being killed by other people as he wandered.

(See also: [Adam](../names/adam.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:12
* Genesis 04:02
* Genesis 04:09
* Genesis 04:15
* Hebrews 11:4
* Jude 01:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7014, G2535

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cain, Cain's

### Caleb

#### Facts:

Caleb was one of the twelve Israelite spies whom Moses sent to explore the land of Canaan.

* He and Joshua told the people to trust God to help them defeat the Canaanites.
* Joshua and Caleb were the only men of their generation who were allowed to enter the Promised Land of Canaan.
* Caleb requested that the land of Hebron be given to him and his family. He knew that God would help him defeat the people who lived there.

(See also: [Hebron](../names/hebron.md), [Joshua](../names/joshua.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 04:13
* Joshua 14:6-7
* Judges 01:12
* Numbers 32:10-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3612, H3614

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Caleb, Caleb's

### Cana

#### Facts:

Cana was a village or town in the province of Galilee, located about nine miles north of Nazareth.

* Cana was the hometown of Nathanael, one of the Twelve.
* Jesus attended a wedding feast in Cana and performed his first miracle there when he turned water into wine.
* Some time after that, Jesus came back to Cana and met an official there from Capernaum who requested healing for his son.

(See also: [Capernaum](../names/capernaum.md), [Galilee](../names/galilee.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 02:1-2
* John 04:46-47

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2580

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cana

### Canaan

#### Related Ideas:

Canaanite

#### Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

* The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
* This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
* God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(See also: [Ham](../names/ham.md), [Promised Land](../kt/promisedland.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 13:19-20
* Exodus 03:7-8
* Genesis 09:18
* Genesis 10:19-20
* Genesis 13:07
* Genesis 47:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3667, H3669, G5478

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Canaan, Canaanite, Canaanites

### Capernaum

#### Facts:

Capernaum was a fishing village on the northwest shore of the Sea of Galilee.

* Jesus lived in Capernaum whenever he was teaching in Galilee.
* Several of his disciples were from Capernaum.
* Jesus also did many miracles in this city, including bringing a dead girl back to life.
* Capernaum was one of three cities that Jesus publicly rebuked because their people rejected him and did not believe his message. He warned them that God would punish them for their unbelief.

(See also: [Galilee](../names/galilee.md), [Sea of Galilee](../names/seaofgalilee.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 02:12
* Luke 04:31
* Luke 07:1
* Mark 01:21
* Mark 02:02
* Matthew 04:12-13
* Matthew 17:24-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2584

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Capernaum

### Carmel

#### Related Ideas:

Carmelite, Mount Carmel

#### Facts:

"Mount Carmel" refers to a mountain range that was located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea just north of the Plain of Sharon. Its highest peak is 546 meters high.

* There was also a town called "Carmel" located in Judah, south of the Salt Sea.
* The wealthy landowner Nabal and his wife Abigail lived near the town of Carmel where David and his men helped guard Nabal's sheep shearers.
* On Mount Carmel, Elijah challenged the prophets of Baal to a contest in order to prove that Yahweh is the only true God.
* To make it clear that this wasn't just a single mountain, "Mount Carmel" could be translated as, "mountain on the Carmel mountain range" or "Carmel mountain range."

(See also: [Baal](../names/baal.md), [Elijah](../names/elijah.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:18-19
* 1 Samuel 15:12
* Jeremiah 46:18
* Micah 07:14-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3760, H3761, H3762

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Carmel, Carmelite, Mount Carmel

### Chaldeans

#### Related Words:

Chaldea

#### Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

* The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as "Ur of the Chaldeans."
* King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
* After many years, around 600 BC, the term "Chaldean" came to mean "Babylonian."

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Shinar](../names/shinar.md), [Ur](../names/ur.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:4-5
* Ezekiel 01:01
* Genesis 11:27-28
* Genesis 11:31-32
* Genesis 15:6-8
* Isaiah 13:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G5466

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Chaldea, Chaldean, Chaldeans, Chaldeans'

### Christ

#### Related Ideas:

Christ Jesus, Jesus Christ, Messiah

#### Facts:

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

* Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
* In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
* Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
* Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
* The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus." "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who will reign forever.
* Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
* For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
* This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
* Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah."
* The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term, as in "Christ, the Anointed One."
* Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
* Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [anoint](../kt/anoint.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 05:1-3
* Acts 02:35
* Acts 05:40-42
* John 01:40-42
* John 03:27-28
* John 04:25
* Luke 02:10-12
* Matthew 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Christ, Christ Jesus, Jesus Christ, Messiah

### Christian

#### Definition:

Some time after Jesus went back to heaven, people made up the name "Christian" which means, "follower of Christ."

* It was in the city of Antioch where Jesus' followers were first called "Christians."
* A Christian is a person who believes that Jesus is the Son of God, and who trusts Jesus to save him from his sins.
* In our modern times, often the term "Christian" is used for someone who identifies with the Christian religion, but who is not really following Jesus. This is not the meaning of "Christian" in the Bible.
* Because the term "Christian" in the Bible always refers to someone who truly believes in Jesus, a Christian is also called a "believer."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could be translated as "Christ-follower" or "follower of Christ" or perhaps something like, "Christ-person."
* Make sure that the translation of this term is translated differently than terms used for disciple or apostle.
* Be careful to translate this term with a word that can refer to everyone who believes in Jesus, not just certain groups.
* Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [Antioch](../names/antioch.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [church](../kt/church.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:7-8
* 1 Peter 04:16
* Acts 11:26
* Acts 26:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5546

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Christian, Christians

### Cilicia

#### Facts:

Cilicia was a small Roman province located in the southeastern part of what is now the modern-day country of Turkey. It borders the Aegean Sea.

* The apostle Paul was a citizen from the city of Tarsus located in Cilicia.
* Paul spent several years in Cilicia after his encounter with Jesus on the road to Damascus.
* Some of the Jews from Cilicia were among those who confronted Stephen and influenced the people to stone him to death.

(See also: [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Stephen](../names/stephen.md), [Tarsus](../names/tarsus.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:8-9
* Acts 15:41
* Acts 27:3-6
* Galatians 01:21-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2791

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cilicia

### Colossae

#### Related Words:

Colossae, Colossians

#### Facts:

In New Testament times, Colossae was a city located in the Roman province of Phrygia, an area of land that is now southwestern Turkey. The Colossians were the people who lived in Colossae.

* Located about 100 miles inland from the Mediterranean Sea, Colossae was on an important trade route between the city of Ephesus and the Euphrates River.
* While in prison in Rome, Paul wrote a letter to the "Colossians" to correct false teachings among the believers at Colossae.
* When he wrote this letter, Paul had not visited the church at Colossae, but had heard about the believers there from his coworker, Epaphras.
* Epaphras was probably the Christian worker who started the church at Colossae.
* The book of Philemon was a letter by Paul addressed to a slave owner in Colossae.

(See also: [Ephesus](../names/ephesus.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 01:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2857

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Colossae, Colossians

### Corinth

#### Related Words:

Corinth, Corinthians

#### Facts:

Corinth was a city in the country of Greece, about 50 miles west of Athens. The Corinthians were the people who lived at Corinth.

* Corinth was the location of one of the early Christian churches.
* The New Testament books, 1 Corinthians and 2 Corinthians were letters written by Paul to the Christians living in Corinth.
* On his first missionary journey, Paul stayed in Corinth for approximately 18 months.
* Paul met the believers Aquila and Priscilla while in Corinth.
* Other early church leaders associated with Corinth include Timothy, Titus, Apollos, and Silas.

(See also: [Apollos](../names/apollos.md), [Timothy](../names/timothy.md), [Titus](../names/titus.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 01:03
* 2 Corinthians 01:23-24
* 2 Timothy 04:19-22
* Acts 18:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2881, G2882

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Corinth, Corinthians

### Cornelius

#### Facts:

Cornelius was a Gentile, or non-Jewish man, who was a military officer in the Roman army.

* He prayed regularly to God and was very generous in giving to the poor.
* When Cornelius and his family heard the apostle Peter explain the gospel, they became believers in Jesus.
* The people of Cornelius' household were the first non-Jewish people to become believers.
* This showed Jesus' followers that he had come to save all people, including Gentiles.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [Gentile](../kt/gentile.md), [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [Greek](../names/greek.md), [centurion](../kt/centurion.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 10:01
* Acts 10:08
* Acts 10:18
* Acts 10:22
* Acts 10:24
* Acts 10:26
* Acts 10:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2883

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cornelius, Cornelius'

### Crete

#### Related Words:

Cretan

#### Facts:

Crete is an island that is located off the southern coast of Greece. A "Cretan" is someone who lives on this island.

* The apostle Paul traveled to the island of Crete during his missionary journeys.
* Paul left his co-worker Titus on Crete to teach the Christians and to help appoint leaders for the church there.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:11
* Acts 27:08
* Amos 09:7-8
* Titus 01:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2912, G2914

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cretan, Cretans, Crete

### Cush

#### Related Ideas:

Cushite

#### Facts:

Cush was the oldest son of Noah's son Ham. He was also the ancestor of Nimrod. Two of his brothers were named Egypt and Canaan.

* In Old Testament times, "Cush" was the name of a large region of land south of Israel. It is probable that the land was named after Ham's son Cush.
* The ancient region of Cush covered an area of land that may have, at different times, included parts of the modern-day countries of Sudan, Egypt, Ethiopia, and possibly, Saudi Arabia.
* Another man named Cush is mentioned in the Psalms. He was a Benjamite.

(See also: [Arabia](../names/arabia.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Ethiopia](../names/ethiopia.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:8-10
* Ezekiel 29:10
* Genesis 02:13
* Genesis 10:6-7
* Jeremiah 13:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3568, H3569, H3570, H3571

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cush, Cushite, Cushites

### Cyprus

#### Facts:

Cyprus is an island in the Mediterranean Sea, about 64 kilometers south of the modern-day country of Turkey.

* Barnabas was from Cyprus so it is probable that his cousin John Mark was also from there.
* Paul and Barnabas preached together on the island of Cyprus at the beginning of their first missionary journey. John Mark came along to help them on that trip.
* Later on, Barnabas and Mark visited Cyprus again.
* In the Old Testament, Cyprus is mentioned as being a rich source of cypress trees.

(See also: [Barnabas](../names/barnabas.md), [John Mark](../names/johnmark.md), [the sea](../names/mediterranean.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:36-37
* Acts 13:05
* Acts 15:41
* Acts 27:04
* Ezekiel 27:6-7
* Isaiah 23:10-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2953, G2954

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cyprus

### Cyrene

#### Related Ideas:

Cyrenian

#### Facts:

Cyrene was a Greek city on the north coast of Africa on the Mediterranean Sea, directly south of the island of Crete.

* In New Testament times, both Jews and Christians lived in Cyrene.
* Cyrene is probably most well-known in the Bible as the home city of a man named Simon who carried the cross of Jesus.

(See also: [Crete](../names/crete.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 11:19-21
* Matthew 27:32-34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2956, G2957

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cyrene, Cyrenians

### Cyrus

#### Facts:

Cyrus was a Persian king who founded the Persian empire in about 550 BC, through military conquest. In history he was also known as Cyrus the Great.

* King Cyrus conquered the city of Babylon, which led to the release of the Israelites who had been kept in exile there.
* Cyrus was known for his tolerant attitude toward the people of the nations he conquered. His kindness toward the Jews led to the rebuilding of the Jerusalem temple after the exile.
* Cyrus was reigning during the time when Daniel, Ezra, and Nehemiah were living.

(See also: [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [Darius](../names/darius.md), [Ezra](../names/ezra.md), [Nehemiah](../names/nehemiah.md), [Persia](../names/persia.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 36:23
* Daniel 01:21
* Ezra 05:13
* Isaiah 44:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3566

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cyrus, Cyrus'

### Damascus

#### Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

* Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
* During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
* Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
* Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future, more complete destruction of this city.
* In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(See also: [Aram](../names/aram.md), [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [Syria](../names/syria.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
* Acts 09:1-2
* Acts 09:03
* Acts 26:12
* Galatians 01:15-17
* Genesis 14:15-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1834, G1154

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Damascus

### Dan

#### Related Words:

Danite

#### Facts:

Dan was the fifth son of Jacob and was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.The region settled by the tribe of Dan in the northern part of Canaan also was given this name.

* During the time of Abram, there was a city named Dan located west of Jerusalem.
* Years later, during the time the nation of Israel entered the promised land, a different city named Dan was located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem.
* The term "Danites" refers to the descendants of Dan, who were also members of his clan.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 12:35
* 1 Kings 04:25
* Exodus 01:1-5
* Genesis 14:14
* Genesis 30:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1835, H1839, H2051

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Dan, Dan's, Danite, Danites

### Daniel

#### Facts:

Daniel was an Israelite prophet who as a young man was taken captive by the Babylonian king Nebuchadnezzar around 600 BC.

* This was during the time that many other Israelites from Judah were held captive in Babylon for 70 years.
* Daniel was given the Babylonian name Belteshazzar.
* Daniel was an honorable and righteous young man who obeyed God.
* God enabled Daniel to interpret several dreams or visions for the Babylonian kings.
* Because of this ability and because of his honorable character, Daniel was given a high leadership position in the Babylonian empire.
* Many years later, Daniels enemies tricked the Babylonian king Darius into making a law forbidding the worship of anyone except the king. Daniel continued to pray to God, so he was arrested and thrown into a den of lions. But God rescued him and he was not harmed at all.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Nebuchadnezzar](../names/nebuchadnezzar.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 01:6-7
* Daniel 05:29
* Daniel 07:28
* Ezekiel 14:12-14
* Matthew 24:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1840, H1841, G1158

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Daniel, Daniel's

### Darius

#### Facts:

Darius was the name of several kings of Persia. It is possible that "Darius" was a title rather than a name.

* "Darius the Mede" was the king who was tricked into having the prophet Daniel thrown into a lion's den as punishment for worshiping God.
* "Darius the Persian" helped facilitate the reconstruction of the temple in Jerusalem during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah.

(See also: [Persia](../names/persia.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [Ezra](../names/ezra.md), [Nehemiah](../names/nehemiah.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezra 04:4-6
* Haggai 01:01
* Nehemiah 12:22
* Zechariah 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1867, H1868

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Darius, Darius'

### David

#### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

* When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
* David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
* King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
* David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
* Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(See also: [Goliath](../names/goliath.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 17:12-13
* 1 Samuel 20:34
* 2 Samuel 05:02
* 2 Timothy 02:08
* Acts 02:25
* Acts 13:22
* Luke 01:32
* Mark 02:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1732, G1138

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

David, David's

### Delilah

#### Facts:

Delilah was a Philistine woman who was loved by Samson, but was not his wife.

* Delilah loved money more than she loved Samson.
* The Philistines bribed Delilah to trick Samson into telling her how he could be made weak. When his strength was gone, the Philistines captured him.

(See also: [bribe](../other/bribe.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md), [Samson](../names/samson.md))

#### Bible References:

* Judges 16:4-5
* Judges 16:6-7
* Judges 16:10
* Judges 16:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1807

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Delilah, Delilah's

### Eden

#### Related Ideas:

garden of Eden

#### Facts:

In ancient times, Eden was a region that had a garden where God placed the first man and woman to live.

* The garden where Adam and Eve lived was only part of Eden.
* The exact location of the region of Eden is not certain, but the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers were flowing through it.
* The word "Eden" comes from a Hebrew word meaning to "take great delight in."

(See also: [Adam](../names/adam.md), [Euphrates River](../names/euphrates.md), [Eve](../names/eve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 28:11-13
* Genesis 02:7-8
* Genesis 02:10
* Genesis 02:15
* Genesis 04:16-17
* Joel 02:3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5729, H5731

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Eden, garden of Eden

### Edom

#### Related Words:

Edomite, Idumea

#### Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as "Edom" and later, "Idumea." The "Edomites" were his descendants.

* The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
* During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it "Idumea."
* The name "Edom" means "red," which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
* In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
* The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(See also: [adversary](../other/adversary.md), [birthright](../kt/birthright.md), [Esau](../names/esau.md), [Obadiah](../names/obadiah.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 25:30
* Genesis 32:03
* Genesis 36:01
* Isaiah 11:14-15
* Joshua 11:16-17
* Obadiah 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H123, H130, G2401

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Edom, Edom's, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea

### Egypt

#### Related Words:

Egyptian

#### Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

* In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
* Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
* Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
* For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
* Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(See also: [Herod the Great](../names/herodthegreat.md), [Joseph (NT)](../names/josephnt.md), [Nile River](../names/nileriver.md), [patriarchs](../other/patriarchs.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 04:7-9
* Acts 07:10
* Exodus 03:07
* Genesis 41:29
* Genesis 41:57
* Matthew 02:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4692, H4693, H4713, H4714, G124, G125

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Egypt, Egypt's, Egyptian, Egyptians, Egyptians'

### Ekron

#### Related Words:

Ekronite

#### Facts:

Ekron was a major city of the Philistines, located nine miles inland from the Mediterranean Sea.

* A temple of the false god Baal-zebub was located at Ekron.
* When the Philistines captured the ark of the covenant, they took it to Ashdod and then moved it to Gath and Ekron because God kept causing people to get sick and die in whatever city the ark was taken to. Finally the Philistines sent the ark back to Israel.
* When King Ahaziah fell through the roof of his house and injured himself, he sinned by trying to find out from the false god Baal-zebub of Ekron as to whether or not he would die from his injuries. Because of this sin, Yahweh said that he would die.

(See also: [Ahaziah](../names/ahaziah.md), [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [Ashdod](../names/ashdod.md), [Beelzebul](../names/beelzebul.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [Gath](../names/gath.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 05:10
* Joshua 13:2-3
* Judges 01:18-19
* Zechariah 09:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6138, H6139

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ekron, Ekronites

### Elam

#### Related Words:

Elamite

#### Facts:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

* The descendants of Elam were called "Elamites," and they lived in a region that was also called "Elam."
* The region of Elam was located southeast of the Tigris River in what is now western Iran.

(See also: [Noah](../names/noah.md), [Shem](../names/shem.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:17-19
* Acts 02:09
* Ezra 08:4-7
* Isaiah 22:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5867, H5962, G1639

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Elam, Elamites

### Eleazar

#### Facts:

Eleazar was the name of several men in the Bible.

* Eleazar was the third son of Moses' brother Aaron. After Aaron died, Eleazar became the high priest in Israel.
* Eleazar was also the name of one of David's "mighty men."
* Another Eleazar was one of Jesus' ancestors.

(See also: [Aaron](../names/aaron.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [David](../names/david.md), [mighty](../other/mighty.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 24:03
* Judges 20:27-28
* Numbers 26:1-2
* Numbers 34:16-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H499, G1648

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Eleazar, Eleazar's

### Eliakim

#### Facts:

Eliakim was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

* One man named Eliakim was the manager of the palace under King Hezekiah.
* Another man named Eliakim was a son of King Josiah. He was made king of Judah by the Egyptian pharaoh Necho.
* Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim.

(See also: [Hezekiah](../names/hezekiah.md), [Jehoiakim](../names/jehoiakim.md), [Josiah](../names/josiah.md), [Pharaoh](../names/pharaoh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 18:18
* 2 Kings 18:26
* 2 Kings 18:37
* 2 Kings 23:34-35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H471, G1662

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Eliakim, Eliakim's

### Elijah

#### Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

* God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
* Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
* He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
* At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
* Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(See also: [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 17:1
* 2 Kings 01:3-4
* James 05:16-18
* John 01:19-21
* John 01:24-25
* Mark 09:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H452, G2243

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Elijah, Elijah's

### Elisha

#### Facts:

Elisha was a prophet in Israel during the reigns of several kings of Israel: Ahab, Ahaziah, Jehoram, Jehu, Jehoahaz, and Jehoash.

* God told the prophet Elijah to anoint Elisha as prophet.
* When Elijah was taken to heaven in a fiery chariot, Elisha became God's prophet to the kings of Israel.
* Elisha did many miracles, including healing a man from Syria who had leprosy and raising from the dead the son of a woman from Shunem.

(See also: [Elijah](../names/elijah.md), [Naaman](../names/naaman.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 19:15-16
* 2 Kings 03:15
* 2 Kings 05:08
* Luke 04:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H477

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Elisha, Elisha's

### Elizabeth

#### Facts:

Elizabeth was the mother of John the Baptist. Her husband's name was Zechariah.

* Zechariah and Elizabeth had never been able to have children, but in their old age, God promised Zechariah that Elizabeth would bear him a son.
* God kept his promise, and soon Zechariah and Elizabeth were able to conceive, and she gave birth to a son. They named the baby John.
* Elizabeth was also a relative of Mary, Jesus' mother.

(See also: [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [Zechariah (NT)](../names/zechariahnt.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 01:05
* Luke 01:24-25
* Luke 01:41

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1665

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Elizabeth, Elizabeth's

### En Gedi

#### Facts:

En Gedi was the name of a city in the wilderness of Judah southeast of Jerusalem.

* En Gedi was located on the western bank of the Salt Sea.
* Part of its name means "fountain," referring to a spring of water that flows down from the city into the sea.
* En Gedi was known for having beautiful vineyards and other fertile land, probably due to the continual watering by the fountain of water.
* There were strongholds in En Gedi which David fled to when he was being chased by King Saul.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [desert](../other/desert.md), [fountain](../other/fountain.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [rest](../other/rest.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md), [stronghold](../other/stronghold.md), [vineyard](../other/vineyard.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 20:02
* Song of Solomon 01:12-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5872

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

En Gedi

### Enoch

#### Facts:

Enoch was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

* One man named Enoch was descended from Seth. He was the great grandfather of Noah.
* This Enoch had a close relationship with God and when he was 365 years old, God took him to heaven while he was still alive.
* A different man named Enoch was a son of Cain.

(See also: [Cain](../names/cain.md), [Seth](../names/seth.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:03
* Genesis 05:18-20
* Genesis 05:24
* Jude 01:14
* Luke 03:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2585, G1802

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Enoch, Enoch's

### Ephesus

#### Related Words:

Ephesian

#### Facts:

Ephesus was an ancient Greek city on the west coast of what is now the present-day country of Turkey.

* During the time of the early Christians, Ephesus was the capital of Asia, which was a small Roman province at that time.
* Because of its location, this city was an important center of trade and travel.
* A well-known pagan temple for the worship of the goddess Artemis (Diana) was located in Ephesus.
* Paul lived and worked in Ephesus for more than two years and later appointed Timothy to lead the new believers there.
* The book of Ephesians in the New Testament is a letter that Paul wrote to the believers in Ephesus.

(See also: [Asia](../names/asia.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Timothy](../names/timothy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:32
* 1 Timothy 01:03
* 2 Timothy 04:11-13
* Acts 19:01
* Ephesians 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2179, G2180, G2181

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ephesian, Ephesians, Ephesus

### Ephraim

#### Related Words:

Ephraimite

#### Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

* The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
* Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel.
* Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to "the hill country of Ephraim" or "the mountains of Ephraim."

(See also: [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
* 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
* Ezekiel 37:16
* Genesis 41:52
* Genesis 48:1-2
* John 11:54

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ephraim, Ephraim's, Ephraimite, Ephraimites

### Ephrathah

#### Related Words:

Ephrath, Ephrathite

#### Facts:

Ephrathah was the name of a city and region in the northern part of Israel. The city of Ephrathah was also called "Ephrath," and later it was called "Bethlehem" and "Ephrathah-Bethlehem."

* Ephrathah was also the name of Caleb's second wife. She was also called Ephrath.
* A person who was from the city of Ephrathah was called an "Ephrathite."
* Boaz, the great-grandfather of David, was an Ephrathite.

(See also: [Bethlehem](../names/bethlehem.md), [Boaz](../names/boaz.md), [Caleb](../names/caleb.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md))

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H672, H673

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ephrath, Ephrathah, Ephrathite, Ephrathites

### Esau

#### Facts:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born to them. His twin brother was Jacob.

* Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
* Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
* Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(See also: [Edom](../names/edom.md), [Isaac](../names/isaac.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Rebekah](../names/rebekah.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 25:26
* Genesis 25:29-30
* Genesis 26:34
* Genesis 27:11-12
* Genesis 32:05
* Hebrews 12:17
* Romans 09:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6215, G2269

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Esau, Esau's

### Esther

#### Facts:

Esther was a Jewish woman who became queen of the Persian kingdom during the time of the Babylonian captivity of the Jews.

* The book of Esther tells the story of how Esther became the wife of the Persian King Xerxes and how God used her to save her people.
* Esther was an orphan who was raised by her godly older cousin, Mordecai.
* Her obedience to her adoptive father helped her to be obedient to God.
* Esther obeyed God and risked her life in order to save her people, the Jews.
* The story of Esther illustrates God's sovereign control over the events of history, especially how he protects his people and works through those who obey him.

(See also: [Xerxes](../names/ahasuerus.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Mordecai](../names/mordecai.md), [Persia](../names/persia.md))

#### Bible References:

* Esther 02:7
* Esther 02:15
* Esther 07:01
* Esther 08:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H635

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Esther, Esther's

### Ethiopia

#### Related Words:

Ethiopian

#### Facts:

Ethiopia is a country in Africa located just south of Egypt, bordered by the Nile River to the west and by the Red Sea to the east. A person from Ethiopia is an "Ethiopian."

* Ancient Ethiopia was located south of Egypt and included land that is now part of several modern-day African countries, such as Sudan, modern Ethiopia, Somalia, Kenya, Uganda, Central African Republic, and Chad.
* In the Bible, Ethiopia is sometimes called "Cush" or "Nubia."
* The countries of Ethiopia ("Cush") and Egypt are often mentioned together in the Bible, perhaps because they were located next to each other and their people may have had some of the same ancestors.
* God sent Philip the evangelist to a desert where he shared the good news about Jesus with an Ethiopian eunuch.

(See also: [Cush](../names/cush.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [eunuch](../kt/eunuch.md), [Philip](../names/philip.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:27
* Acts 08:30
* Acts 08:32-33
* Acts 08:36-38
* Isaiah 18:1-2
* Nahum 03:09
* Zephaniah 03:9-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G128

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ethiopia, Ethiopian

### Euphrates

#### Related Words:

Euphrates River, the River

#### Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

* The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
* Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
* The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
* This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
* Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called "the River."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:7-9
* 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
* Exodus 23:30-33
* Genesis 02:13-14
* Isaiah 07:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5104, H6578, G2166

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Euphrates, Euphrates River, the River

### Eve

#### Facts:

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means "life" or "living."

* God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
* Eve was created to be Adam's "helper." She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
* Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(See also: [Adam](../names/adam.md), [life](../kt/life.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 02:13
* 2 Corinthians 11:03
* Genesis 03:20
* Genesis 04:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2332, G2096

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Eve, Eve's

### Ezekiel

#### Facts:

Ezekiel was a prophet of God during the exile period when many Jews were taken to Babylon.

* Ezekiel was a priest living in the kingdom of Judah when he and many other Jews were captured by the Babylonian army.
* For over twenty years, he and his wife lived in Babylon near a river, and the Jews came there to hear him speak messages from God.
* Among other things, Ezekiel prophesied about the destruction and restoration of Jerusalem and the temple.
* He also prophesied about the future kingdom of the Messiah.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [exile](../other/exile.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 01:03
* Ezekiel 24:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3168

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ezekiel, Ezekiel's

### Ezra

#### Facts:

Ezra was an Israelite priest and expert in Jewish law who recorded the history of the Israelites' return to Jerusalem from Babylon where Israel had been held captive for 70 years.

* Ezra recorded this part of Israel's history in the biblical book of Ezra. He may also have written the book of Nehemiah, since these two books had originally been one single book.
* When Ezra returned to Jerusalem he re-established the Law, since the Israelites had stopped obeying the Sabbath laws and had intermarried with women who practiced pagan religions.
* Ezra also helped rebuild the temple, which had been destroyed by the Babylonians when they captured Jerusalem.
* There are two other men named Ezra mentioned in the Old Testament.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [exile](../other/exile.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [Nehemiah](../names/nehemiah.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezra 07:06
* Nehemiah 08:1-3
* Nehemiah 12:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H250, H5830, H5831

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ezra, Ezra's

### Gabriel

#### Facts:

Gabriel is the name of one of God's angels. He is mentioned by name several times, in both the Old and New Testaments.

* God sent Gabriel to tell the prophet Daniel the meaning of a vision he had seen.
* Another time, while Daniel was praying, the angel Gabriel flew to him and prophesied about what would happen in the future. Daniel described him as a "man."
* In the New Testament it is recorded that Gabriel came to Zechariah to prophesy that his aged wife Elizabeth would have a son, John.
* Sixth months after that, Gabriel was sent to Mary to tell her that God would miraculously enable her to conceive a child who would be the "Son of God." Gabriel told Mary to name her son "Jesus."

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [Elizabeth](../names/elizabeth.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [Mary](../names/mary.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [Zechariah (NT)](../names/zechariahnt.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 08:15-17
* Daniel 09:21
* Luke 01:19
* Luke 01:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1403, G1043

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gabriel, Gabriel's

### Gad

#### Related Words

Gadite

#### Facts:

Gad was one of the sons of Jacob. Jacob was also named Isreal.

* Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
* Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
* The names of the cities Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."
* A Gadite was a person from the tribe of Gad.

(See also: [census](../other/census.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:18
* Exodus 01:1-5
* Genesis 30:11
* Joshua 01:12
* Joshua 21:38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1410, H1425, G1045

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gad, Gadite, Gadites, Gad's

### Galatia

#### Related Words:

Galatian

#### Facts:

In New Testament times, Galatia was a large Roman province located in the central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

* Part of Galatia bordered the Black Sea, which was to the north. It was also bordered by the provinces of Asia, Bithynia, Cappadocia, Celicia, and Pamphylia.
* The apostle Paul wrote a letter to the Christians who lived in the province of Galatia. This letter is the New Testament book called "Galatians."
* One reason that Paul wrote his letter to the Galatians was to emphasize again the gospel of salvation by grace, not by works.
* The Jewish Christians there were incorrectly teaching the Gentile Christians there that it was necessary for believers to keep certain Jewish laws.

(See also: [Asia](../names/asia.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [Cilicia](../names/cilicia.md), [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [works](../kt/works.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 16:1-2
* 1 Peter 01:1-2
* 2 Timothy 04:9-10
* Acts 16:6-8
* Galatians 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1053, G1054

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Galatia, Galatians

### Galilee

#### Related Words:

Galilean

#### Facts:

Galilee was the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A "Galilean" was a person who lived in Galilee or who lived in Galilee.

* Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
* Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the "Sea of Galilee."
* Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
* Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: [Nazareth](../names/nazareth.md), [Samaria](../names/samaria.md), [Sea of Galilee](../names/seaofgalilee.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:32
* Acts 13:31
* John 02:1-2
* John 04:03
* Luke 13:03
* Mark 03:07
* Matthew 02:22-23
* Matthew 03:13-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1551, G1056, G1057

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Galilee, Galilean, Galileans

### Gath

#### Related Words:

Gittite

#### Facts:

Gath was one of the five major cities of the Philistines. It was located north of Ekron and east of Ashdod and Ashkelon.

* The Philistine warrior Goliath was from the city of Gath.
* During the time of Samuel, the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant from Israel and took it to their pagan temple at Ashdod. It was then moved to Gath and later to Ekron. But God punished the people of those cities with disease, so they sent it back to Israel again.
* When David was escaping from King Saul, he fled to Gath and lived there awhile with his two wives and with six hundred men who were his loyal followers.
* A Gittite was a person from the city of Gath.

(See also: [Ashdod](../names/ashdod.md), [Ashkelon](../names/ashkelon.md), [Ekron](../names/ekron.md), [Gaza](../names/gaza.md), [Goliath](../names/goliath.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 02:39
* 1 Samuel 05:8-9
* 2 Chronicles 26:6-8
* Joshua 11:21-22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1661, H1663

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gath, Gittite, Gittites

### Gaza

#### Related Words

Gazite

#### Facts:

During Bible times, Gaza was a prosperous Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 38 kilometers south of Ashdod. It was one of the Philistines' five major cities.

* Because of its location, Gaza was a key seaport where commercial activities took place between many different people groups and nations.
* Today, the city of Gaza is still an important seaport in the Gaza Strip, which is a region of land located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea bordered by Israel on the north and east, and by Egypt on the south.
* Gaza was the city that the Philistines took Samson to after they had captured him.
* Philip the evangelist was walking along the desert road to Gaza when he met an Ethiopian eunuch.
* A Gazite was a person from the city of Gaz.

(See also: [Ashdod](../names/ashdod.md), [Philip](../names/philip.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md), [Ethiopia](../names/ethiopia.md), [Gath](../names/gath.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 04:24-25
* Acts 08:26
* Genesis 10:19
* Joshua 10:40-41
* Judges 06:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5804, H5841, G1048

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gaza, Gazites

### Gentile

#### Facts:

The term "Gentile" refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

* In the Bible, the term "uncircumcised" is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
* Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
* The Jews were also called "Israelites" or "Hebrews" at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a "Gentile."
* Gentile could also be translated as "not a Jew" or "non-Jewish" or "not an Israelite" (Old Testament) or "non-Jew.".
* Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Jew](../kt/jew.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:13-16
* Acts 14:5-7
* Galatians 02:16
* Luke 02:32
* Matthew 05:47
* Matthew 06:5-7
* Romans 11:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1471, G1482, G1484

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gentile, Gentiles

### Gerar

#### Facts:

Gerar was a city and region in the land of Canaan, located southwest of Hebron and northwest of Beersheba.

* King Abimelech was the ruler of Gerar when Abraham and Sarah settled there.
* The Philistines dominated the region of Gerar during the time that the Israelites were living in Canaan.

(See also: [Abimelech](../names/abimelech.md), [Beersheba](../names/beersheba.md), [Hebron](../names/hebron.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 14:12-13
* Genesis 20:1-3
* Genesis 26:1
* Genesis 26:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1642

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gerar

### Geshur

#### Related Words:

Geshurite

#### Facts:

During the time of King David, Geshur was a small kingdom located on the east side of the Sea of Galilee between the countries of Israel and Aram.

* King David married Maacah, the daughter of Geshur's king, and she bore him a son, Absalom.
* After murdering his half-brother Amnon, Absalom fled northeast from Jerusalem to Geshur, a distance of about 140 kilometers. He stayed there three years.
* A Geshurite was a person from the kingom of Geshur.\*

(See also: [Absalom](../names/absalom.md), [Amnon](../names/amnon.md), [Aram](../names/aram.md), [Sea of Galilee](../names/seaofgalilee.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:23
* 2 Samuel 03:2-3
* Deuteronomy 03:14
* Joshua 12:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1650

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Geshur, Geshurites

### Gethsemane

#### Facts:

Gethsemane was a garden of olive trees east of Jerusalem beyond the Kidron valley and near the Mount of Olives.

* The garden of Gethsemane was a place where Jesus and his followers would go to be alone and rest, away from the crowds.
* It was in Gethsemane that Jesus prayed in deep sorrow, before being arrested there by Jewish leaders.

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](../names/judasiscariot.md), [Kidron Valley](../names/kidronvalley.md), [Mount of Olives](../names/mountofolives.md))

#### Bible References:

* Mark 14:32
* Matthew 26:36

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1068

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gethsemane

### Gibeah

#### Facts:

Gibeah was a city located north of Jerusalem and south of Bethel.

* Gibeah was in the territory of the tribe of Benjamin.
* It was the site of a huge battle between the Benjamites and Israel.

(See also: [Benjamin](../names/benjamin.md), [Bethel](../names/bethel.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:26-27
* 2 Samuel 21:06
* Hosea 09:09
* Judges 19:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1390

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gibeah

### Gibeon

#### Related Words:

Gibeonite

#### Facts:

Gibeon was a city that was located about 13 kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. The people living in Gibeon were the Gibeonites.

* When the Gibeonites heard about how the Israelites had destroyed the cities of Jericho and Ai, they were afraid.
* So the Gibeonites came to the leaders of Israel at Gilgal and pretended to be people from a far-away country.
* The Israelite leaders were deceived and made an agreement with the Gibeonites that they would protect them and not destroy them.

(See also: [Gilgal](../names/gilgal.md), [Jericho](../names/jericho.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 08:29
* 1 Kings 03:4-5
* 2 Samuel 02:12-13
* Joshua 09:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1391, H1393

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gibeon, Gibeonite, Gibeonites

### Gideon

#### Facts:

Gideon was an Israelite man whom God raised up to deliver the Israelites from their enemies.

* During the time when Gideon lived, a people group called the Midianites kept attacking the Israelites and destroying their crops.
* Even though Gideon was afraid, God used him to lead the Israelites to fight against the Midianites and defeat them.
* Gideon also obeyed God by taking down altars to the false gods Baal and Asherah.
* He not only led the people in defeating their enemies but also encouraged them to obey and worship Yahweh, the one true God.

(See also: [Baal](../names/baal.md), [Asherah](../names/asherim.md), [deliver](../other/deliverer.md), [Midian](../names/midian.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 11:32-34
* Judges 06:11
* Judges 06:23
* Judges 08:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1439, H1441

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gideon, Gideon's

### Gilead

#### Gileadite

#### Facts:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

* This region was also referred to as the "hill country of Gilead" or "Mount Gilead."
* "Gilead" was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.
* A Giliadite was a descendant of Gilead and a member of his clan.

(See also: [Gad](../names/gad.md), [Jephthah](../names/jephthah.md), [Manasseh](../names/manasseh.md), [Reuben](../names/reuben.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:22
* 1 Samuel 11:01
* Amos 01:03
* Deuteronomy 02:36-37
* Genesis 31:21
* Genesis 37:25-26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1568, H1569

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites

### Gilgal

#### Facts:

Gilgal was a town north of Jericho and was the first place that the Israelites camped after crossing the Jordan River to enter Canaan.

* At Gilgal, Joshua set up twelve stones taken from the dry river bed of the Jordan River that they had just crossed over.
* Gilgal was the city that Elijah and Elisha were leaving as they crossed the Jordan when Elijah was taken up to heaven.
* There were also several other places called "Gilgal" in the Old Testament.
* The word "gilgal" means "circle of stones," perhaps referring to a place where a circular altar was built.
* In the Old Testament, this name almost always occurs as "the gilgal." This may indicate that it was not a specific place name but rather was a description of a certain kind of place.

(See also: [Elijah](../names/elijah.md), , [Elisha](../names/elisha.md), [Jericho](../names/jericho.md), [Jordan River](../names/jordanriver.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 07:15-17
* 2 Kings 02:1-2
* Hosea 04:15
* Judges 02:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1537

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gilgal

### Girgashites

#### Facts:

The Girgashites were a people group living near the Sea of Galilee in the land of Canaan.

* They were descendants of Ham's son Canaan and so were one of the many people groups who were also known as "Canaanites."
* God promised the Israelites that he would help them defeat the Girgashites and other Canaanite people groups.
* Like all the Canaanite peoples, the Girgashites worshiped false gods and did immoral things as part of that worship.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md) , [Ham](../names/ham.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:14
* Deuteronomy 07:1
* Genesis 10:16
* Joshua 03:9-11
* Joshua 24:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1622

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Girgashites

### God

#### Related Ideas:

the living God

#### Facts:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

* God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
* He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
* God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
* He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
* People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
* God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
* The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being."
* Other ways to translate "God" could be "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
* Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
* Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
* Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god."
* The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(See also: [create](../other/creation.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 Samuel 10:7-8
* 1 Timothy 04:10
* Colossians 01:16
* Deuteronomy 29:14-16
* Ezra 03:1-2
* Genesis 01:02
* Hosea 04:11-12
* Isaiah 36:6-7
* James 02:20
* Jeremiah 05:05
* John 01:03
* Joshua 03:9-11
* Lamentations 03:43
* Micah 04:05
* Philippians 02:06
* Proverbs 24:12
* Psalms 047:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H136, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2623, H3069, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2312, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God, God's, the living God

### God the Father

#### Related Ideas:

Father, heavenly Father, my Father

#### Facts:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

* God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
* God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world, and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
* Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
* The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
* Usually "Father" is capitalized when it refers to God.

(See also: [ancestor](../other/father.md), [God](../kt/god.md), [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
* 1 John 02:01
* 1 John 02:23
* 1 John 03:01
* Colossians 01:1-3
* Ephesians 05:18-21
* Luke 10:22
* Matthew 05:16
* Matthew 23:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1, H2, G3962

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Father, God the Father, heavenly Father, my Father

### Golgotha

#### Facts:

"Golgotha" was the name of the place where Jesus was crucified. Its name comes from an Aramaic word that means "Skull" or "Place of the Skull."

* Golgotha was located outside the city walls of Jerusalem, somewhere nearby. It was perhaps located on a slope of the Mount of Olives.
* In some older English versions of the Bible, Golgotha is translated as "Calvary," which comes from the Latin word for "skull."
* Many Bible versions use a word that looks or sounds similar to "Golgotha," since its meaning is already explained in the Bible text.

(See also: [Aram](../names/aram.md), [Mount of Olives](../names/mountofolives.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 19:17
* Mark 15:22
* Matthew 27:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1115

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Golgotha

### Goliath

#### Facts:

Goliath was a very tall and very large soldier in the army of the Philistines who was killed by David.

* Goliath was between two and three meters tall. He is often referred to as a giant because of his great size.
* Although Goliath had better weapons and was much bigger than David, God gave David the strength and ability to defeat Goliath.
* The Israelites were declared victorious over the Philistines as a result of David's victory over Goliath.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 20:4-5
* 1 Samuel 17:4-5
* 1 Samuel 21:8-9
* 1 Samuel 22:9-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1555

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Goliath, Goliath's

### Gomorrah

#### Facts:

Gomorrah was a city located in a fertile valley near Sodom, where Abraham's nephew Lot chose to live.

* The exact location of Gomorrah and Sodom is unknown, but there are indications that they may have been located directly south of the Salt Sea, near the Valley of Siddim.
* There were many kings at war in the region where Sodom and Gomorrah were located.
* When Lot's family was captured in a conflict between Sodom and other cities, Abraham and his men rescued them.
* Not long after that, Sodom and Gomorrah were destroyed by God because of the wickedness of the people who lived there.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md) , [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Lot](../names/lot.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md), [Sodom](../names/sodom.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:06
* Genesis 10:19
* Genesis 14:1-2
* Genesis 18:21
* Isaiah 01:9
* Matthew 10:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6017

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gomorrah

### Goshen

#### Facts:

Goshen was the name of a fertile region of land located along the Nile River in the northern part of Egypt.

* When Joseph was a ruler in Egypt, his father and brothers and their families came to live in Goshen to escape a famine in Canaan.
* They and their descendants lived well in Goshen for over 400 years, but then they were forced into slavery by the Egyptian pharaoh.
* Finally God sent Moses to help the people of Israel leave the land of Goshen and escape this slavery.

(See also: [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [famine](../other/famine.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Nile River](../names/nileriver.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 08:22-24
* Genesis 45:11
* Genesis 47:02
* Genesis 50:7-9
* Joshua 10:40-41

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1657

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Goshen

### Greece

#### Facts:

During New Testament times, Greece was a province in the Roman Empire.

* Like the modern-day country of Greece, it was located on a peninsula that is bordered by the Mediterranean Sea, the Aegean Sea, and the Ionian Sea.
* The apostle Paul visited several cities in Greece and established churches in the cities of Corinth, Thessalonica, and Philippi and probably others.

(See also: [Corinth](../names/corinth.md), [Gentile](../kt/gentile.md), [Greek](../names/greek.md), [Hebrew](../kt/hebrew.md), [Philippi](../names/philippi.md), [Thessalonica](../names/thessalonica.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 08:21
* Daniel 10:20-21
* Daniel 11:1-2
* Zechariah 09:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3120, G1671

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Greece

### Greek

#### Related Words:

Grecian

#### Facts:

The term "Greek" refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece. It is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The term "Grecian" means "Greek-speaking."

* Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as "Greeks" in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
* The phrase "Grecian Jews" referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the "Hebraic Jews" who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic.
* Other ways to translate "Grecian" could include, "Greek-speaking" or "culturally Greek" or "Greek."
* When referring to non-Jews, "Greek" could be translated as "Gentile."

(See also: [Aram](../names/aram.md), [Gentile](../kt/gentile.md), [Greece](../names/greece.md), [Hebrew](../kt/hebrew.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:1
* Acts 09:29
* Acts 11:20
* Acts 14:1-2
* Colossians 03:11
* Galatians 02:3-5
* John 07:35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3125, G1672, G1673, G1674, G1675, G1676

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Greek, Greeks, Grecian

### Habakkuk

#### Facts:

Habakkuk was an Old Testament prophet who lived around the time that King Jehoiakim was reigning over Judah. The prophet Jeremiah was also alive during some of this time.

* This prophet wrote the book of Habakkuk around 600 BC when the Babylonians conquered Jerusalem and took many of the people of Judah into exile.
* Yahweh gave Habakkuk the prophecy about how the "Chaldeans" (Babylonians) would come and conquer the people of Judah.
* One of Habakkuk's most well-known statements is: "the righteous person shall live by his faith."

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Jehoiakim](../names/jehoiakim.md), [Jeremiah](../names/jeremiah.md))

#### Bible References:

* Habakkuk 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2265

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Habakkuk, Habakkuk's

### Hades

#### Related Ideas:

Sheol

#### Definition:

The terms "Hades" and "Sheol" are used in the Bible to refer to death and the place where the souls of people go when they die. Their meanings are similar.

* The Hebrew term "Sheol" is often used in the Old Testament to refer generally to the place of death.
* In the New Testament, the Greek term "Hades" refers to a place for the souls of people who rebelled against God. These souls are referred to as going "down" to Hades. This is sometimes contrasted to going "up" to heaven, where the souls of people who believe in Jesus live.
* The term "Hades" is coupled with the term "death" in the book of Revelation. In the end times, both death and Hades will be thrown into the Lake of Fire, which is hell.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The Old Testament term "Sheol" could be translated as "place of the dead" or "place for dead souls." Some translations translate this as "the pit" or "death," depending on the context.
* The New Testament term "Hades" could also be translated as "place for unbelieving dead souls" or "place of torment for the dead" or "place for the souls of unbelieving dead people."
* Some translations keep the words "Sheol" and "Hades," spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation.
* A phrase could also be added to each term to explain it, examples of doing this are, "Sheol, place where dead people are" and "Hades, place of death."

(See also: [death](../other/death.md), [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [hell](../kt/hell.md), [tomb](../other/tomb.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:31
* Genesis 44:29
* Jonah 02:02
* Luke 10:15
* Luke 16:23
* Matthew 11:23
* Matthew 16:18
* Revelation 01:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7585, G86

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hades, Sheol

### Hagar

#### Facts:

Hagar was an Egyptian woman who was Sarai's personal slave.

* When Sarai was not able to bear children, she gave Hagar to her husband Abram to have a child by him.
* Hagar conceived and gave birth to Abram's son Ishmael.
* God watched over Hagar when she was in distress in the desert and promised to bless her descendants.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [Ishmael](../names/ishmael.md), [Sarah](../names/sarah.md), [servant](../other/servant.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:25
* Genesis 16:1-4
* Genesis 21:09
* Genesis 25:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1904

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hagar

### Haggai

#### Facts:

Haggai was a prophet of Judah after the Jews returned home from being captives in Babylon.

* During the period when Haggai was prophesying, King Uzziah was reigning over Judah.
* The prophet Zechariah was also prophesying during this period.
* Haggai and Zechariah exhorted the Jews to rebuild the temple, which had been destroyed by the Babylonians under King Nebuchadnezzar.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Nebuchadnezzar](../names/nebuchadnezzar.md), [Uzziah](../names/uzziah.md), [Zechariah (OT)](../names/zechariahot.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezra 05:1-2
* Ezra 06:13-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2292

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Haggai, Haggai's

### Ham

#### Related Words:

Hamite

#### Facts:

Ham was the second of Noah's three sons.

* During the worldwide flood that covered the whole earth, Ham and his brothers were with Noah in the ark, along with their wives.
* After the flood, there was an occasion where Ham was very dishonoring to his father, Noah. As a result, Noah cursed Ham's son Canaan and all his descendants, who eventually became known as the Canaanites.

(See also: [ark](../kt/ark.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [dishonor](../other/dishonor.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 05:32
* Genesis 06:10
* Genesis 07:13-14
* Genesis 10:1
* Genesis 10:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2526

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ham, Hamite, Hamites

### Hamath

#### Related Words:

Hamath Zobah, Hamathite, Lebo Hamath

#### Facts:

Hamath was an important city in northern Syria, north of the land of Canaan. The Hamathites were descendants of Noah's son Canaan.

* The name "Lebo Hamath" probably refers to a mountain pass near the city of Hamath.
* Some versions translate "Lebo Hamath" as "entrance to Hamath."
* King David defeated enemies of King Tou of Hamath, causing them to be on good terms.
* Hamath Zobah was one of Solomon's storehouse cities which he had conquered. Hamath Zobah was used as a place to keep provisions (see 2 Chronicles 8:3).
* The land of Hamath was where King Zedekiah was killed by King Nebuchadnezzar and where King Jehoahaz was captured by an Egyptian pharaoh.
* The term "Hamathite" could also be translated as "person from Hamath."

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Nebuchadnezzar](../names/nebuchadnezzar.md), [Syria](../names/syria.md), [Zedekiah](../names/zedekiah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:3-4
* 2 Samuel 08:09
* Amos 06:1-2
* Ezekiel 47:15-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2574, H2577

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hamath, Hamath Zobah, Hamathites, Lebo Hamath

### Hamor

#### Facts:

Hamor was a Canaanite man living in the city of Shechem when Jacob and his family were living in nearby Sukkoth. He was a Hivite.

* Jacob bought a family burial ground from Hamor's sons.
* While they were there, Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah.
* Dinah's brothers took revenge on Hamor's family and killed all the men in the city of Shechem.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Hivite](../names/hivite.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Shechem](../names/shechem.md), [Sukkoth](../names/succoth.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:14-16
* Genesis 34:02
* Genesis 34:21
* Joshua 24:32-33
* Judges 09:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2544

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hamor, Hamor's

### Hananiah

#### Facts:

Hananiah was the name of several different men in the Old Testament.

* One Hananiah was an Israelite captive in Babylon whose name was changed to "Shadrach."
* He was given a position as a royal servant due to his excellent character and abilities.
* Once Hanahiah (Shadrach) and two other Israelite young men were thrown into a fire in a furnace because they refused to worship the Babylonian king. God showed his power by protecting them from being harmed.
* Another man named Hananiah was listed as a descendant of King Solomon.
* A different Hananiah was a false prophet during the time of the prophet Jeremiah.
* One man named Hananiah was a priest who helped lead a celebration during the time of Nehemiah.

(See also: [Azariah](../names/azariah.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [false prophet](../other/falseprophet.md), [Jeremiah](../names/jeremiah.md), [Mishael](../names/mishael.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 01:6-7
* Daniel 02:17-18
* Jeremiah 28:01
* Jeremiah 28:5-7
* Jeremiah 28:15-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2608

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hananiah, Hananiah's

### Hannah

#### Facts:

Hannah was the mother of the prophet Samuel. She was one of two wives of Elkanah.

* Hannah was not able to conceive a child, which was a great grief to her.
* At the temple, Hannah earnestly prayed for God to give her a son, promising to dedicate him to serving God.
* God granted her request and when the boy Samuel was old enough, she brought him to serve at the temple.
* God also gave Hannah other children after that.

(See also: [conceive](../other/conceive.md), [Samuel](../names/samuel.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 01:1-2
* 1 Samuel 02:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2584

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hannah, Hannah's

### Haran

#### Facts:

Haran was a younger brother of Abram and the father of Lot.

* Haran was also the name of the town where Abram and his family lived awhile on their journey from the city of Ur to the land of Canaan.
* A different man named Haran was a son of Caleb.
* A third man in the Bible named Haran was a descendant of Levi.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Caleb](../names/caleb.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Levite](../names/levite.md), [Lot](../names/lot.md), [Terah](../names/terah.md), [Ur](../names/ur.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 19:12
* Acts 07:1-3
* Genesis 11:31
* Genesis 27:43-45
* Genesis 28:10-11
* Genesis 29:4-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2039

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Haran

### Hebrew

#### Facts:

The "Hebrews" were people who were descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob. Abraham is the first person in the Bible to be called a "Hebrew."

* The term "Hebrew" also refers to the language that the Hebrew people spoke. The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the Hebrew language.
* In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called "Jewish people" or "Israelites." It is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 26:12-14
* Genesis 39:13-15
* Genesis 40:15
* Genesis 41:12-13
* John 05:1-4
* John 19:13
* Jonah 01:8-10
* Philippians 03:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5680, G1445, G1446, G1447

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hebrew, Hebrews, Hebrews'

### Hebron

#### Related Words:

Hebronite

#### Facts:

Hebron was a city located in the high, rocky hills about 20 miles south of Jerusalem.

* The city was built around 2000 BC during the time of Abram. It was mentioned many times in the historical accounts given in the Old Testament.
* Hebron had a very important role in King David's life. Several of his sons, including Absalom, were born there.
* The city was destroyed around AD 70 by the Romans.

(See also: [Absalom](../names/absalom.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 02:10-11
* Genesis 13:18
* Genesis 23:1-2
* Genesis 35:27
* Genesis 37:12-14
* Judges 01:10
* Numbers 13:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2275, H2276

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hebron, Hebronites, Hebronites', Hebronite's, Hebron's

### Hermon

#### Facts:

Mount Hermon is the name of the tallest mountain in Israel at the southern tip of the Lebanon mountain range.

* It is located north of the Sea of Galilee, at the northern border between Israel and Syria.
* Other names given to Mount Hermon by other people groups were "Mount Sirion" and "Mount Senir."
* Mount Hermon has three major peaks. The tallest peak is around 2,800 meters high.

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Sea of Galilee](../names/seaofgalilee.md), [Syria](../names/syria.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:23-24
* Ezekiel 27:4-5
* Joshua 11:16-17
* Psalms 042:06
* Song of Solomon 04:8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2768, H2769, H8149

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hermon, Mount Hermon, Senir

### Herod Antipas

#### Facts:

During most of Jesus' lifetime, Herod Antipas was the ruler of the part of the Roman Empire that included Galilee province.

* Like his father Herod the Great, Antipas was sometimes referred to as "King Herod" even though he was not really a king.
* Herod Antipas ruled one-fourth of the Roman Empire and so he was also called "Herod the tetrarch."
* Antipas is the "Herod" who gave the order for John the Baptist to be killed by beheading.
* It was also Herod Antipas who questioned Jesus before his crucifixion.
* The other Herods in the New Testament were Antipas' son (Agrippa) and grandson (Agrippa 2) who ruled during the time of the apostles.

(See also: [crucify](../kt/crucify.md), [Herod the Great](../names/herodthegreat.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [king](../other/king.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 03:1-2
* Luke 03:20
* Luke 09:09
* Luke 13:32
* Luke 23:09
* Mark 06:20
* Matthew 14:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2264, G2267

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Herod, Herod Antipas

### Herod the Great

#### Facts:

Herod the Great was ruling over Judea at the time Jesus was born. He was the first of several Edomite rulers named Herod who ruled over parts of the Roman Empire.

* His ancestors converted to Judaism and he was raised as a Jew.
* Caesar Augustus named him "King Herod" even though he was not a true king. He ruled over the Jews in Judea for 33 years.
* Herod the Great was known for the beautiful buildings he ordered to be built and for the rebuilding of the Jewish temple in Jerusalem.
* This Herod was very cruel and had many people killed. When he heard that a "king of the Jews" had been born in Bethlehem, he had all the baby boys in that town killed.
* His sons Herod Antipas and Herod Philip and his grandson Herod Agrippa also became Roman rulers. His great-grandson Herod Agrippa II (called "King Agrippa") ruled over the entire area of Judea.

(See also: [Herod Antipas](../names/herodantipas.md), [Judea](../names/judea.md), [king](../other/king.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* Matthew 02:03
* Matthew 02:12
* Matthew 02:16
* Matthew 02:20
* Matthew 02:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2264

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Herod, Herod the Great, Herod's

### Herodias

#### Facts:

Herodias was the wife of Herod Antipas in Judea during the time of John the Baptist.

* Herodias was originally the wife of Herod Antipas' brother Philip, but later she unlawfully married Herod Antipas.
* John the Baptist rebuked Herod and Herodias for their unlawful marriage. Because of this, Herod put John in prison and because of Herodias eventually was beheaded.

(See also: [Herod Antipas](../names/herodantipas.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 03:19
* Mark 06:17
* Mark 06:22
* Matthew 14:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2266

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Herodias, Herodias'

### Hezekiah

#### Facts:

Hezekiah was the 13th king over the kingdom of Judah. He was a king who trusted and obeyed God.

* Unlike his father Ahaz, who had been an evil king, King Hezekiah was a good king who destroyed all the places of idol worship in Judah.
* One time when Hezekiah became very sick and almost died, he earnestly prayed that God would spare his life. God healed him and allowed him to live 15 more years.
* As a sign to Hezekiah that this would happen, God performed a miracle and caused the sun to move backwards in the sky.
* God also answered Hezekiah's prayer to save his people from King Sennacherib of Assyria, who was attacking them.

(See also: [Ahaz](../names/ahaz.md), [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [Sennacherib](../names/sennacherib.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 03:13-14
* 2 Kings 16:19-20
* Hosea 01:01
* Matthew 01:9-11
* Proverbs 25:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2396, H3169, G1478

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hezekiah, Hezekiah's

### Hilkiah

#### Facts:

Hilkiah was the high priest during the reign of King Josiah.

* When the temple was being repaired, Hilkiah the high priest found the Book of the Law and ordered that it be brought to King Josiah.
* After the Book of the Law was read to him, Josiah was grieved and caused the people of Judah to worship Yahweh again and obey his laws.
* Another man named Hilkiah was the son of Eliakim and worked in the palace during the time of King Hezekiah.

(See also: [Eliakim](../names/eliakim.md), [Hezekiah](../names/hezekiah.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [Josiah](../names/josiah.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [law](../other/law.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 18:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2518

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hilkiah, Hilkiah's

### Hittite

#### Facts:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

* Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
* Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
* One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
* Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
* The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [Esau](../names/esau.md), [foreigner](../other/foreigner.md), [Ham](../names/ham.md), [mighty](../other/mighty.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md), [Uriah](../names/uriah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 09:20-21
* Exodus 03:7-8
* Genesis 23:11
* Genesis 25:10
* Joshua 01:4-5
* Nehemiah 09:08
* Numbers 13:27-29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2850

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hittite, Hittites

### Hivite

#### Facts:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

* All these groups, including the Hivites, were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
* Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
* When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Hamor](../names/hamor.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md), [Shechem](../names/shechem.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
* Exodus 03:7-8
* Genesis 34:02
* Joshua 09:1-2
* Judges 03:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2340

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hivite, Hivites

### Holy One

#### Related Ideas:

holy one

#### Definition:

The term "Holy One" is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

* In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase "Holy One of Israel."
* In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the "Holy One."
* The term "holy one" is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The literal term is "the Holy" (with "One" being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as "One" or "God").
* This term could also be translated as "God, who is holy" or "the Set Apart One."
* The phrase "the Holy One of Israel" could be translated as "the Holy God whom Israel worships" or "the Holy One who rules Israel."
* It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate "holy."

(See also: [holy](../kt/holy.md), [God](../kt/god.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:20
* 2 Kings 19:22
* Acts 02:27
* Acts 03:13-14
* Isaiah 05:15-17
* Isaiah 41:14
* Luke 04:33-34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6918, G40, G3741

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Holy One, holy ones

### Holy Spirit

#### Related Ideas:

Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit of the Lord Yahweh

#### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

* The Holy Spirit is also referred to as "the Spirit" and "Spirit of Yahweh" and "Spirit of truth."
* Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
* Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
* When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
* The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate "holy" and "spirit."
* Ways to translate this term could also include "Pure Spirit" or "Spirit who is Holy" or "God the Spirit."

(See also: [holy](../kt/holy.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [God](../kt/god.md), [Lord](../kt/lord.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [gift](../kt/gift.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:10
* 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
* Acts 08:17
* Galatians 05:25
* Genesis 01:1-2
* Isaiah 63:10
* Job 33:04
* Matthew 12:31
* Matthew 28:18-19
* Psalms 051:10-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Holy Spirit, Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit of the Lord Yahweh

### Horeb

#### Facts:

Mount Horeb is another name for Mount Sinai, where God gave Moses the stone tablets with the ten commandments.

* Mount Horeb is called the "mountain of God."
* Horeb was the place where Moses saw the burning bush when he was tending sheep.
* Mount Horeb was the place where God revealed his covenant to the Israelites by giving them the stone tablets with his commandments written on them.
* It was also the place where God later told Moses to strike a rock to provide water for the Israelites as they were wandering in the desert.
* The exact location of this mountain is not known, but it may have been in the southern part of what is now the Sinai Peninsula.
* It is possible that "Horeb" was the actual name of the mountain and that "Mount Sinai" simply means "mountain of Sinai," referring to the fact that Mount Horeb was located in the desert of Sinai.

(See also: [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Sinai](../names/sinai.md), [Ten Commandments](../other/tencommandments.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:9-11
* 2 Chronicles 05:9-10
* Deuteronomy 01:02
* Exodus 03:1-3
* Psalms 106:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2722

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Horeb

### Hosea

#### Facts:

Hosea was a prophet of Israel who lived and prophesied about 750 years before the time of Christ.

* His ministry lasted for many years through the reigns of several kings, such as Jeroboam, Zechariah, Jotham, Ahaz, Hoshea, Uzziah, and Hezekiah.
* Hosea was told by God to marry a prostitute named Gomer and to continue to love her, even though she was unfaithful to him.
* This was a picture of God's love for his unfaithful people, Israel.
* Hosea prophesied against the people of Israel because of their sin, warning them to turn away from worshipping idols.

(See also: [Ahaz](../names/ahaz.md), [Hezekiah](../names/hezekiah.md), [Hoshea](../names/hoshea.md), [Jeroboam](../names/jeroboam.md), [Jotham](../names/jotham.md), [Uzziah](../names/uzziah.md), [Zechariah (OT)](../names/zechariahot.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hosea 01:1-2
* Hosea 01:3-5
* Hosea 01:6-7

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1954, G5617

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hosea, Hosea's

### Hoshea

#### Facts:

Hoshea was the name of a king of Israel and several other men in the Old Testament.

* Hoshea son of Alah was a king of Israel for nine years during part of the reigns of Ahaz and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.
* Joshua son of Nun was formerly named Hoshea. Moses changed Hoshea's name to Joshua before sending him and eleven other men to spy out the land of the Canaanites.
* After Moses died, Joshua led the people of Israel to take possession of the land of Canaan.
* A different man named Hoshea was a son of Azaziah and was one of the leaders of the Ephraimites.

(See also: [Ahaz](../names/ahaz.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Ephraim](../names/ephraim.md), [Hezekiah](../names/hezekiah.md), [Joshua](../names/joshua.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 27:20
* 2 Kings 15:30
* 2 Kings 17:03
* 2 Kings 18:01
* 2 Kings 18:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1954

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hoshea, Hoshea's

### Iconium

#### Facts:

Iconium was a city in the south central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

* On Paul's first missionary journey, he and Barnabas went to Iconium after the Jews forced them to leave the city of Antioch.
* Then the unbelieving Jews and Gentiles in Iconium also planned to stone Paul and his coworkers, but they escaped to the nearby city of Lystra.
* After that the people from both Antioch and Iconium came to Lystra and stirred up the people there to stone Paul.

(See also: [Barnabas](../names/barnabas.md), [Lystra](../names/lystra.md), [stone](../kt/stone.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 03:10-13
* Acts 14:01
* Acts 14:19-20
* Acts 16:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2430

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Iconium

### Isaac

#### Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

* The name "Isaac" means "he laughs." When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
* But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
* God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
* When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham's faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
* Isaac's son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [eternity](../kt/eternity.md), [fulfill](../kt/fulfill.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Sarah](../names/sarah.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:28-29
* Genesis 25:9-11
* Genesis 25:19
* Genesis 26:1
* Genesis 26:08
* Genesis 28:1-2
* Genesis 31:18
* Matthew 08:11-13
* Matthew 22:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3327, H3446, G2464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Isaac, Isaac's

### Isaiah

#### Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

* He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
* The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
* Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
* Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
* Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(See also: [Ahaz](../names/ahaz.md), [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [Hezekiah](../names/hezekiah.md), [Jotham](../names/jotham.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Uzziah](../names/uzziah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 20:1-3
* Acts 28:26
* Isaiah 01:1
* Luke 03:4
* Mark 01:01
* Mark 07:06
* Matthew 03:03
* Matthew 04:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3470, G2268

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Isaiah, Isaiah's

### Ishmael

Related Words:

Ishmaelite

#### Facts:

Ishmael was the son of Abraham and the Egyptian slave Hagar. There were several other men in the Old Testament named Ishmael.

* The name "Ishmael" means "God hears."
* God promised to bless Abraham's son Ishmael, but he was not the son God had promised to establish his covenant with.
* God protected Hagar and Ishmael when they were sent into the desert.
* While Ishmael was living in the desert of Paran, he married an Egyptian woman.
* Ishmael son of Nethaniah was an army officer from Judah who led a group of men to kill a governor who had been appointed by the Babylonian king, Nebuchadnezzar.
* There were also four other men named Ishmael in the Old Testament.
* An Ishmaelite was a descendant of Ishmael.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [desert](../other/desert.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Hagar](../names/hagar.md), [Isaac](../names/isaac.md), [Nebuchadnezzar](../names/nebuchadnezzar.md), [Paran](../names/paran.md), [Sarah](../names/sarah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:28-31
* 2 Chronicles 23:01
* Genesis 16:12
* Genesis 25:9-11
* Genesis 25:16
* Genesis 37:25-26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3458, H3459

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ishmael, Ishmaelite, Ishmaelites, Ishmael's

### Israel

#### Related Ideas:

Israelite

#### Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means "he struggles with God."

* The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
* God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
* The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
* Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
* Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [nation](../other/nation.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:01
* 1 Kings 08:02
* Acts 02:36
* Acts 07:24
* Acts 13:23
* John 01:49-51
* Luke 24:21
* Mark 12:29
* Matthew 02:06
* Matthew 27:09
* Philippians 03:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Israel, Israel's, Israelite, Israelite's, Israelites, Israelites'

### Issachar

#### Facts:

Issachar was the fifth son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

* The tribe of Issachar was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
* Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.
* It was located just south of the Sea of Galilee.

(See also: [Gad](../names/gad.md), [Manasseh](../names/manasseh.md), [Naphtali](../names/naphtali.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md), [Zebulun](../names/zebulun.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 01:1-5
* Ezekiel 48:23-26
* Genesis 30:18
* Joshua 17:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3485, G2466

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Issachar, Issachar's

### Jacob

#### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

* Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
* Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
* Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
* Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
* Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
* A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [deceive](../other/deceive.md), [Esau](../names/esau.md), [Isaac](../names/isaac.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Rebekah](../names/rebekah.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:11
* Acts 07:46
* Genesis 25:26
* Genesis 29:1-3
* Genesis 32:1-2
* John 04:4-5
* Matthew 08:11-13
* Matthew 22:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3290, G2384

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jacob, Jacob's

### James brother of Jesus

#### Facts:

James was a son of Mary and Joseph. He was one of Jesus' younger half-brothers.

* Jesus' other half-brothers were named Joseph, Judas, and Simon.
* During Jesus' lifetime, James and his brothers did not believe that Jesus was the Messiah.
* Later, after Jesus was raised from the dead, James believed in him and became a leader of the church in Jerusalem.
* The New Testament book of James is a letter that James wrote to Christians who had fled to other countries to escape persecution.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [church](../kt/church.md), [Judas the son of James](../names/judassonofjames.md), [persecute](../other/persecute.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 01:18-20
* Galatians 02:9-10
* James 01:1-3
* Jude 01:1-2
* Mark 09:1-3
* Matthew 13:54-56

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2385

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

James

### James son of Alphaeus

#### Facts:

James, the son of Alphaeus, was one of Jesus' twelve disciples. Jesus also called these men apostles.

* His name is given in the lists of Jesus' disciples in the gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke.
* He is also mentioned in the book of Acts as one of the eleven disciples who were together praying in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up to heaven.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [James (brother of Jesus)](../names/jamesbrotherofjesus.md), [James (son of Zebedee)](../names/jamessonofzebedee.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 03:17-19
* Mark 14:32-34
* Matthew 10:2-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2385

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

James son of Alphaeus

### James son of Zebedee

#### Facts:

James, a son of Zebedee, was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He had a younger brother named John who was also one of Jesus' apostles.

* James and his brother John worked by fishing with their father Zebedee.
* James and John were nicknamed the "Sons of Thunder," perhaps because they got angry quickly.
* Peter, James, and John were Jesus' closest disciples and were with him for amazing events such as when Jesus was on a mountaintop with Elijah and Moses and when Jesus caused a dead little girl to come back to life.
* This is a different James than the one who wrote a book in the Bible. Some languages may have to write their names differently to make it clear that they were two different men.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [Elijah](../names/elijah.md), [James (brother of Jesus)](../names/jamesbrotherofjesus.md), [James (son of Alphaeus)](../names/jamessonofalphaeus.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 09:28-29
* Mark 01:19-20
* Mark 01:29-31
* Mark 03:17
* Matthew 04:21-22
* Matthew 17:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2385

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

James son of Zebedee, James

### Japheth

#### Facts:

Japheth was one of Noah's three sons.

* During the worldwide flood that covered the whole earth, Japheth and his two brothers were with Noah in the ark, along with their wives.
* Noah's sons are usually listed as, "Shem, Ham, and Japheth." This indicates that Japheth was the youngest brother.

(See also: [ark](../kt/ark.md), [flood](../other/flood.md), [Ham](../names/ham.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md), [Shem](../names/shem.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:04
* Genesis 05:32
* Genesis 06:10
* Genesis 07:13-14
* Genesis 10:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3315

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Japheth, Japheth's

### Jebus

#### Related Words

Jebusite

#### Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

* The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
* Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Ham](../names/ham.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [Melchizedek](../names/melchizedek.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:14
* 1 Kings 09:20-21
* Exodus 03:7-8
* Genesis 10:16
* Joshua 03:9-11
* Judges 01:20-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2982, H2983

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jebus, Jebusite, Jebusites

### Jehoiachin

#### Facts:

Jehoiachin was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

* Jehoiachin became king when he was 18 years old. He only reigned three months, and after that he was captured by the Babylonian army and taken to Babylon.
* During his short reign, Jehoiachin did evil things like the ones his grandfather King Manasseh and his father King Jehoiakim had done.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Jehoiakim](../names/jehoiakim.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Manasseh](../names/manasseh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 36:8
* 2 Kings 24:15-17
* Esther 02:06
* Ezekiel 01:1-3
* Jeremiah 22:24
* Jeremiah 37:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3078, H3112, H3204, H3659

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jehoiachin, Jehoiachin's

### Jehoiada

#### Facts:

Jehoiada was a priest who helped hide and protect King Ahaziah's son Joash until he was old enough to be declared king.

* Jehoiada arranged for hundreds of bodyguards to protect young Joash as he was proclaimed king by the people in the temple.
* Jehoiada led the people in getting rid of all the altars of the false god Baal.
* For the rest of his life, Jehoiada the priest advised King Joash to help him obey God and rule the people wisely.
* Another man named Jehoiada was the father of Benaiah.

(See also: [Ahaziah](../names/ahaziah.md), [Baal](../names/baal.md), [Benaiah](../names/benaiah.md), [Joash](../names/joash.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 11:04
* 2 Kings 12:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3077

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jehoiada, Jehoiada's

### Jehoiakim

#### Facts:

Jehoiakim was an evil king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah, beginning around 608 B.C. He was King Josiah's son. His name was originally Eliakim.

* The Egyptian pharaoh Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim and made him king of Judah.
* Necho forced Jehoiakim to pay high taxes to Egypt.
* When Judah was later invaded by King Nebuchadnezzar, Jehioakim was among those who were captured and taken to Babylon.
* Jehoiakim was an evil king who led Judah away from Yahweh. Jeremiah the prophet prophesied against him.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Eliakim](../names/eliakim.md), [Jeremiah](../names/jeremiah.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Nebuchadnezzar](../names/nebuchadnezzar.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 03:15-16
* 2 Kings 23:34-35
* 2 Kings 24:01
* Daniel 01:02
* Jeremiah 01:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3079

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jehoiakim, Jehoiakim's

### Jehoram

#### Facts:

"Jehoram" was the name of two kings in the Old Testament. Both kings were also known as "Joram."

* One King Jehoram ruled over the kingdom of Judah for eight years. He was the son of King Jehoshaphat. This is the king that is most commonly known as Jehoram.
* The other King Jehoram ruled over the kingdom of Israel for twelve years. He was the son of King Ahab.
* King Jehoram of Judah reigned during the time that the prophets Jeremiah, Daniel, Obadiah, and Ezekiel were prophesying in the kingdom of Judah.
* King Jehoram also reigned during some of the time that his father King Jehoshaphat was reigning over Judah.
* Some translations may choose to consistently use the name "Jehoram" when the king of Israel is mentioned and the name "Joram" for the king of Judah.
* Another way to clearly identify each one would be to include the name of his father.

(See also: [Ahab](../names/ahab.md), [Jehoshaphat](../names/jehoshaphat.md), [Joram](../names/joram.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [Obadiah](../names/obadiah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 22:48-50
* 2 Chronicles 21:03
* 2 Kings 11:1-3
* 2 Kings 12:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3088, H3141, G2496

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jehoram, Jehoram's

### Jehoshaphat

#### Facts:

Jehoshaphat was the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

* The best known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
* He restored peace between Judah and Israel and destroyed the altars of false gods.
* Another Jehoshaphat was a "recorder" for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(See also: [altar](../kt/altar.md), [David](../names/david.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
* 1 Kings 04:17
* 2 Chronicles 17:01
* 2 Kings 01:17
* 2 Samuel 08:15-18
* Matthew 01:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3092, G2498

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jehoshaphat, Jehoshaphat's

### Jehu

#### Facts:

Jehu was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

* Jehu son of Hanani was a prophet during the reigns of King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah.
* Jehu son (or descendant) of Jehoshaphat was a general in the Israelite army who was anointed king by order of the prophet Elisha.
* King Jehu killed two evil kings, King Joram of Israel and King Ahaziah of Judah.
* King Jehu also killed all the relatives of the former King Ahab and had the evil queen Jezebel killed.
* King Jehu destroyed all the places of Baal worship in Samaria and killed all the prophets of Baal.
* King Jehu served the only true God, Yahweh, and was king over Israel for twenty-eight years.

(See also: [Ahab](../names/ahab.md), [Ahaziah](../names/ahaziah.md), [Baal](../names/baal.md), [Elisha](../names/elisha.md), [Jehoshaphat](../names/jehoshaphat.md), [Jehu](../names/jehu.md), [Jezebel](../names/jezebel.md), [Joram](../names/joram.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Samaria](../names/samaria.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 04:35
* 1 Kings 16:02
* 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
* 2 Kings 10:09
* Hosea 01:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3058

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jehu, Jehu's

### Jephthah

#### Facts:

Jephthah was a warrior from Gilead who served as a judge over Israel.

* In Hebrews 11:32, Jephthah is praised as an important leader who delivered his people from their enemies.
* He rescued the Israelites from the Ammonites and led his people to defeat the Ephraimites.
* Jepthah however, made a foolish, hasty vow to God which resulted in the sacrifice of his daughter.

(See also: [Ammon](../names/ammon.md), [deliver](../other/deliverer.md), [Ephraim](../names/ephraim.md), [judge](../other/judgeposition.md), [vow](../kt/vow.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 11:32-34
* Judges 11:1-3
* Judges 11:35
* Judges 12:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3316

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jephthah, Jephthah's

### Jeremiah

#### Facts:

Jeremiah was a prophet of God in the kingdom of Judah. The Old Testament book of Jeremiah contains his prophecies.

* Like most of the prophets, Jeremiah often had to warn the people of Israel that God was going to punish them for their sins.
* Jeremiah prophesied that the Babylonians would capture Jerusalem, making some of the people of Judah angry. So they put him in a deep, dry well and left him there to die. But the king of Judah ordered his servants to rescue Jeremiah from the well.
* Jeremiah wrote that he wished his eyes could be a "fountain of tears," to express his deep sadness over the rebellion and sufferings of his people.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [rebel](../other/rebel.md), [suffer](../other/suffer.md), [well](../other/well.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 35:25
* Jeremiah 01:02
* Jeremiah 11:01
* Matthew 02:18
* Matthew 16:13-16
* Matthew 27:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3414, G2408

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jeremiah, Jeremiah's

### Jericho

#### Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

* As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
* Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
* When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Jordan River](../names/jordanriver.md), [Joshua](../names/joshua.md), [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:78
* Joshua 02:1-3
* Joshua 07:2-3
* Luke 18:35
* Mark 10:46-48
* Matthew 20:29-31
* Numbers 22:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3405, G2410

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jericho, Jericho's

### Jeroboam

#### Facts:

Jeroboam son of Nebat was the first king of the northern kingdom of Israel around 900-910 BC. Another Jeroboam, son of King Jehoash, ruled over Israel about 120 years later.

* Yahweh gave Jeroboam son of Nebat a prophecy that he would become king after Solomon and that he would rule ten tribes of Israel.
* When Solomon died, the ten northern tribes of Israel rebelled against Solomon's son Rehoboam and instead made Jeroboam their king, leaving Rehoboam as king of only the southern two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
* Jeroboam became a wicked king who led the people away from worshiping Yahweh and instead set up idols for them to worship. All the other kings of Israel followed Jeroboam's example and were evil like he was.
* Almost 120 years later, another King Jeroboam began ruling the northern kingdom of Israel. This Jeroboam was the son of King Jehoash and was wicked like all the previous kings of Israel had been.
* In spite of the Israelite's wickedness, God had mercy on them and helped this King Jeroboam to gain land and establish boundaries for their territory.

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:16-17
* 1 Kings 12:02
* 2 Chronicles 09:29
* 2 Kings 03:1-3
* Amos 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3379

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jeroboam, Jeroboam's

### Jerusalem

#### Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

* The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
* Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
* It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
* Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
* People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Jebusites](../names/jebusites.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [Zion](../kt/zion.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:26-27
* John 02:13
* Luke 04:9-11
* Luke 13:05
* Mark 03:7-8
* Mark 03:20-22
* Matthew 03:06
* Matthew 04:23-25
* Matthew 20:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jerusalem, Jerusalem's

### Jesse

#### Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

* Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
* He was an "Ephrathite," which means he was from the town of Ephrathah (Bethlehem).
* The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a "shoot" or "branch" that would come from the "root of Jesse" and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(See also: [Bethlehem](../names/bethlehem.md), [Boaz](../names/boaz.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [fruit](../other/fruit.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [king](../other/king.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Ruth](../names/ruth.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:12
* 1 Kings 12:16
* 1 Samuel 16:1
* Luke 03:32
* Matthew 01:4-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3448, G2421

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jesse, Jesse's

### Jesus

#### Related Ideas:

the Lord Jesus

#### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves."

* In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
* Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In many languages "Jesus" is spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesu," "Jezus," "Yesus", and "Hesu" are some of the ways that this name is translated into different languages.
* Also consider how this names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [God](../kt/god.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md), [Mary](../names/mary.md), [Savior](../kt/savior.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:11
* 1 John 02:02
* 1 John 04:15
* 1 Timothy 01:02
* 2 Peter 01:02
* 2 Thessalonians 02:15
* 2 Timothy 01:10
* Acts 02:23
* Acts 05:30
* Acts 10:36
* Hebrews 09:14
* Hebrews 10:22
* Luke 24:20
* Matthew 01:21
* Matthew 04:03
* Philippians 02:05
* Philippians 02:10
* Philippians 04:21-23
* Revelation 01:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2424

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jesus, the Lord Jesus

### Jethro

#### Facts:

The names "Jethro" and "Reuel" both refer to the father of Moses' wife, Zipporah. There were also two other men named "Reuel" in the Old Testament.

* When Moses was a shepherd in the land of Midian, he married the daughter of a Midianite man named Reuel.
* Later on Reuel is referred to as "Jethro, the priest of Midian." It could be that "Reuel" was his clan name.
* When God spoke to Moses from a flaming bush, Moses was tending Jethro's sheep
* Some time later, after God had rescued the Israelites from Egypt, Jethro came out to the Israelites in the wilderness and gave Moses good advice about judging the affairs of the people.
* He believed in God when he heard about all the miracles God had done for the Israelites in Egypt.
* One of Esau's sons was named Reuel.
* Another man named Reuel is mentioned in the genealogy of the Israelites who returned to resettle in Judah after their captivity in Babylon had ended.

(See also: [captive](../other/captive.md), [clan](../other/clan.md), [desert](../other/desert.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Esau](../names/esau.md), [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [desert](../other/desert.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:34-37
* Exodus 02:18-20
* Exodus 03:1-3
* Exodus 18:03
* Numbers 10:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3503, H7467

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jethro, Reuel

### Jew

#### Related Ideas:

Jewish, person of Judah

#### Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

* People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
* Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
* Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:05
* Acts 10:28
* Acts 14:5-7
* Colossians 03:11
* John 02:14
* Matthew 28:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jew, Jewish, Jews, Jews', a person of Judah, the language of Judah, the people of Judah

### Jewish authorities

#### Related Ideas:

Jewish leader

#### Definitions:

The term "Jewish leader" or "Jewish authority" refers to religious leaders such as the priests and teachers of God's laws. They also had the authority to make judgments about non-religious matters as well.

* The Jewish leaders were the high priests, chief priests, and scribes (teachers of God's laws).
* Two main groups of Jewish leaders were the Pharisees and Saduccees.
* Seventy Jewish leaders met together in the Jewish Council in Jerusalem to make judgments about matters of law.
* Many Jewish leaders were proud and thought they were righteous. They were jealous of Jesus and wanted to harm him. They claimed to know God but did not obey him.
* Often the phrase "the Jews" referred to the Jewish leaders, especially in contexts where they were angry at Jesus and were trying to trick or harm him.
* These terms could also be translated as "Jewish rulers" or "men who ruled over the Jewish people" or "Jewish religious leaders."

(See also: [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [chief priests](../other/chiefpriests.md), [council](../other/council.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [Pharisee](../kt/pharisee.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [Sadducee](../kt/sadducee.md), [scribe](../kt/scribe.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 16:22-23
* John 02:19
* John 05:10-11
* John 05:16
* Luke 19:47-48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2453

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jewish authorities, Jewish leader

### Jezebel

#### Facts:

Jezebel was the wicked wife of King Ahab of Israel.

* Jezebel influenced Ahab and the rest of Israel to worship idols.
* She also killed many of God's prophets.
* Jezebel caused an innocent man named Naboth to be killed so that Ahab could steal Naboth's vineyard.
* Jezebel was finally killed due to all the evil things she had done. Elijah prophesied about how she would die and it happened exactly as he had predicted.

(See also: [Ahab](../names/ahab.md), [Elijah](../names/elijah.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 16:31-33
* 1 Kings 19:1-3
* 2 Kings 09:07
* 2 Kings 09:31
* Revelation 02:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H348, G2403

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jezebel, Jezebel's

### Jezreel

Related Words:

Jezreelite

#### Facts:

Jezreel was an important Israelite city in the territory of the Issachar tribe, located southwest of the Salt Sea. A Jezreelite is a person from this city.

* The city of Jezreel is one of the western points in the Plain of Megiddo, which is also called the "Valley of Jezreel."
* Several kings of Israel had their palaces in the city of Jezreel.
* Naboth's vineyard was located near King Ahab's palace in Jezreel. The prophet Elijah prophesied against Ahab there.
* Ahab's evil wife Jezebel was killed in Jezreel.
* Many other significant events happened in this city, including several battles.

(See also: [Ahab](../names/ahab.md), [Elijah](../names/elijah.md), [Issachar](../names/issachar.md), [Jezebel](../names/jezebel.md), [palace](../other/palace.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 04:12
* 1 Samuel 25:43-44
* 2 Kings 08:28-29
* 2 Samuel 02:1-3
* Judges 06:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3157, H3158, H3159

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jezreel, Jezreelite

### Joab

#### Facts:

Joab was an important military leader for King David throughout David's entire reign.

* Before David became king, Joab had already been one of his loyal followers.
* Later, during David's reign as king over Israel, Joab became the commander of King David's army.
* Joab was also King David's nephew, since his mother was one of David's sisters.
* When David's son Absalom betrayed him by trying to take over his kingship, Joab killed Absalom in order to protect the king.
* Joab was a very aggressive fighter and killed many people who were enemies of Israel.

(See also: [Absalom](../names/absalom.md), [David](../names/david.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
* 1 Kings 01:07
* 1 Samuel 26:6-8
* 2 Samuel 02:18
* Nehemiah 07:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3097

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Joab, Joab's

### Joash

#### Facts:

Joash was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

* One Joash was the father of the Israelite deliverer Gideon.
* Another man named Joash was a descendant of Jacob's youngest son, Benjamin.
* The most well-known Joash became king of Judah at the age of seven. He was the son of Ahaziah, king of Judah, who had been murdered.
* When Joash was a very young child, his aunt saved him from being killed by hiding him away until he was old enough to be crowned king.
* King Joash was a good king who at first obeyed God. But he did not remove the high places, and the Israelites started worshiping idols again.
* King Joash ruled Judah during some of the years that King Jehoash was ruling Israel. They were two distinct kings.

(See also: [Ahaziah](../names/ahaziah.md), [altar](../kt/altar.md), [Benjamin](../names/benjamin.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [Gideon](../names/gideon.md), [high places](../other/highplaces.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
* 2 Chronicles 18:25-27
* 2 Kings 11:03
* Amos 01:01
* Judges 06:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3101, H3135

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Joash, Joash's

### Job

#### Facts:

Job was a man who is described in the Bible as blameless and righteous before God. He is best known for persevering in his faith in God through times of terrible suffering.

* Job lived in the land of Uz, which was located somewhere east of the land of Canaan, possibly near the region of the Edomites.
* It is thought that he lived during the time of Esau and Jacob because one of Job's friends was a "Temanite," which was a people group named after Esau's grandson.
* The Old Testament book of Job tells about how Job and others responded to his suffering. It also gives God's viewpoint as the sovereign creator and ruler of the universe.
* After all the disasters, God eventually healed Job and gave him more children and wealth.
* The book of Job says that he was very old when he died.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Esau](../names/esau.md), [flood](../other/flood.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md)[Noah](../names/noah.md), [people group](../other/peoplegroup.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 14:12-14
* James 05:9-11
* Job 01:01
* Job 03:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H347, G2492

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Job, Job's

### Joel

#### Facts:

Joel was a prophet who probably lived during the reign of King Joash of Judah. There were also several other men in the Old Testament named Joel.

* The book of Joel is one of twelve short prophetic books in the last section of the Old Testament.
* The only personal information we have about the prophet Joel is that his father's name was Pethuel.
* In his sermon at Pentecost, the apostle Peter quoted from the book of Joel.

(See also: [Joash](../names/joash.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Pentecost](../kt/pentecost.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:33-35
* 1 Samuel 08:1-3
* Acts 02:16
* Ezra 10:43
* Joel 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3100, G2493

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Joel, Joel's

### John Mark

#### Facts:

John Mark, also known as "Mark," was one of the men who traveled with Paul on his missionary journeys. He is most likely the author of the Gospel of Mark.

* John Mark accompanied his cousin Barnabas and Paul on their first missionary journey.
* When Peter was put in prison in Jerusalem, the believers there were praying for him at John Mark's mother's house.
* Mark was not an apostle, but was taught by both Paul and Peter and worked together with them in ministry.

(See also: [Barnabas](../names/barnabas.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:11-13
* Acts 12:24-25
* Acts 13:05
* Acts 13:13
* Acts 15:36-38
* Acts 15:39-41
* Colossians 04:10-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2491, G3138

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

John Mark, John ... Mark, Mark

### John the Baptist

#### Facts:

John was the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth. Since "John" was a common name, he is often called "John the Baptist" to distinguish him from the other people named John, such as the Apostle John.

* John was the prophet whom God sent to prepare people to believe in and follow the Messiah.
* John told people to confess their sins, turn to God, and stop sinning, so that they would be ready to receive the Messiah.
* John baptized many people in water as a sign that they were sorry for their sins and were turning away from them.
* John was called "John the Baptist" because he baptized many people.

(See also: [baptize](../kt/baptize.md), [Zechariah (NT)](../names/zechariahnt.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 03:22-24
* Luke 01:11-13
* Luke 01:62-63
* Luke 03:7
* Luke 03:15-16
* Luke 07:27-28
* Matthew 03:13
* Matthew 11:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G910 G2491

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

John the Baptist, Baptist, John the Baptist, John's

### John the apostle

#### Facts:

John was one of Jesus' twelve apostles and one of Jesus' closest friends.

* John and his brother James were sons of a fisherman named Zebedee.
* In the gospel that he wrote about Jesus' life, John referred to himself as "the disciple whom Jesus loved." This seems to indicate that John was an especially close friend of Jesus.
* The apostle John wrote five New Testament books: the gospel of John, the Revelation of Jesus Christ, and three letters written to other believers.
* Note that the apostle John was a different person than John the Baptist.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [reveal](../kt/reveal.md), [James (son of Zebedee)](../names/jamessonofzebedee.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [Zebedee](../names/zebedee.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 02:9-10
* John 01:19-21
* Mark 03:17-19
* Matthew 04:21-22
* Revelation 01:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2491

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

John

### Jonah

#### Facts:

Jonah was a Hebrew prophet in the Old Testament.

* The book of Jonah tells the story of what happened when God sent Jonah to preach to the people of Nineveh.
* Jonah refused to go to Nineveh and instead got on a ship headed for a Tarshish.
* God caused a huge storm to overwhelm that ship.
* He told the men sailing the ship that he wasrunning away from God, and he suggested that they throw him into the sea. When they did the storm stopped.
* Jonah was swallowed by a huge fish, and he was inside the belly of that fish for three days and nights.
* After that, Jonah went to Nineveh and preached to the people there, and they turned from their sins.

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [Nineveh](../names/nineveh.md), [turn](../other/turn.md))

#### Bible References:

* Jonah 01:03
* Luke 11:30
* Matthew 12:39
* Matthew 16:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3124, G2495

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jonah, Jonah's

### Jonathan

#### Facts:

Jonathan was the name of at least ten men in the Old Testament. The name means "Yahweh has given."

* David's best friend, Jonathan, is the most well-known Jonathan in the Bible with this name. This Jonathan was King Saul's oldest son.
* Other Jonathans mentioned in the Old Testament include a descendant of Moses; a nephew of King David; several priests, including a son of Abiathar; and an Old Testament scribe in whose house the prophet Jeremiah was imprisoned.

(See also: [Abiathar](../names/abiathar.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Jeremiah](../names/jeremiah.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md), [scribe](../kt/scribe.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 01:41-42
* 1 Samuel 14:1
* 1 Samuel 20:02
* 2 Samuel 01:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3083, H3129

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jonathan, Jonathan's

### Joppa

#### Facts:

In Bible times, the city of Joppa was an important commercial seaport located on the Mediterranean Sea, south of the Plain of Sharon.

* The ancient site of Joppa is the location of the present-day city of Jaffa, which is now part of the city of Tel Aviv.
* In the Old Testament, Joppa was the city where Jonah got on a boat that was going to Tarshish.
* In the New Testament, a Christian woman named Tabitha died in Joppa, and Peter brought her back to life.

(See also: [the sea](../names/mediterranean.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [Sharon](../names/sharon.md), [Tarshish](../names/tarshish.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:37
* Acts 10:08
* Acts 11:4-6
* Acts 11:11
* Jonah 01:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3305, G2445

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Joppa

### Joram

#### Facts:

Joram son of Ahab was a king of Israel. He was also sometimes referred to as "Jehoram."

* King Joram of Israel reigned at the same time as King Jehoram of Judah.
* Joram was an evil king who worshiped false gods and caused Israel to sin.
* King Joram of Israel also reigned during the time of the prophets Elijah and Obadiah.
* Another man named Joram was the son of King Tou of Hamath when David was king.

(See also: [Ahab](../names/ahab.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Elijah](../names/elijah.md), [Hamath](../names/hamath.md), [Jehoram](../names/jehoram.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Obadiah](../names/obadiah.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
* 2 Chronicles 22:4-5
* 2 Kings 01:17
* 2 Kings 08:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3088, H3141, G2496

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Joram, Joram's

### Jordan River

#### Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

* Today, the Jordan River separates the countries of Israel and Jordan. Israel is on the west side of the river, and Jordan is on the east side of the river.
* The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
* When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
* Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as "the Jordan."

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md), [Sea of Galilee](../names/seaofgalilee.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 32:9-10
* John 01:26-28
* John 03:25-26
* Luke 03:3
* Matthew 03:06
* Matthew 03:13-15
* Matthew 04:14-16
* Matthew 19:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3383, G2446

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jordan River, Jordan

### Joseph (New Testament)

#### Facts:

In the New Testament, one of the men named Joseph was Mary's husband. This Joseph was the husband of Jesus' mother Mary. Joseph raised Jesus as if Jesus were his son. Joseph was a righteous man who worked as a carpenter.

* Joseph became engaged to a Jewish girl named Mary, while they were engaged God chose her to become the mother of Jesus the Messiah.
* An angel told Joseph that the Holy Spirit had miraculously caused Mary to be pregnant, and that Mary's baby was the Son of God.
* After Jesus was born, an angel warned Joseph to take the baby and Mary to Egypt in order to escape from Herod.
* Joseph and his family later lived in the city of Nazareth of Galilee, where he earned a living doing carpentry work.

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [Galilee](../names/galilee.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [Nazareth](../names/nazareth.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [virgin](../other/virgin.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 01:43-45
* Luke 01:26-29
* Luke 02:4-5
* Luke 02:15-16
* Matthew 01:18-19
* Matthew 01:24-25
* Matthew 02:19-21
* Matthew 13:54-56

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2500, G2501

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Joseph

### Joseph (Old Testament)

#### Facts:

In the Old Testament, Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

* Joseph was his father's favorite son.
* His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
* While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
* In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
* God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(See also: [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 30:22-24
* Genesis 33:1-3
* Genesis 37:1-2
* Genesis 37:23-24
* Genesis 41:55-57
* John 04:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3084, G2501

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Joseph, Joseph's

### Joshua

#### Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

* Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
* Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
* Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
* In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
* The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
* Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
* There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Haggai](../names/haggai.md), [Jericho](../names/jericho.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Promised Land](../kt/promisedland.md), [Zechariah (OT)](../names/zechariahot.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
* Deuteronomy 03:21
* Exodus 17:10
* Joshua 01:03
* Numbers 27:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1954, H3091, G2424

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Joshua, Joshua's

### Josiah

#### Facts:

Josiah was a godly king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah for thirty-one years. He led the people of Judah to repent and worship Yahweh.

* After his father King Amon was killed, Josiah became king over Judah at eight years of age.
* In the eighteenth year of his reign, King Josiah ordered Hilkiah the high priest to rebuild the temple of the Lord. While this was being done, the books of the Law were found.
* When the books of the Law were read to Josiah, he was grieved at how his people were disobeying God. He ordered that all the places of idol worship be destroyed and that the priests of the false gods be killed.
* He also ordered the people to start celebrating the Passover feast again.

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [law](../other/law.md), [Passover](../kt/passover.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 03:13-14
* 2 Chronicles 33:24-25
* 2 Chronicles 34:03
* Jeremiah 01:03
* Matthew 01:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2977, G2502

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Josiah, Josiah's

### Jotham

#### Facts:

In the Old Testament, there were three men with the name Jotham.

* One man named Jotham was the youngest son of Gideon. Jotham helped defeat his older brother Abimelech, who had killed all the rest of their brothers.
* Another man named Jotham was a king over Judah for sixteen years following the death of his father Uzziah (Azariah).
* Like his father, King Jotham obeyed God and was a good king.
* However, by not removing the places of idol worship he caused the people of Judah to later turn away from God again.
* Jotham is also one of the ancestors listed in the genealogy of Jesus Christ in the book of Matthew.

(See also: [Abimelech](../names/abimelech.md), [Ahaz](../names/ahaz.md), [Gideon](../names/gideon.md), [Uzziah](../names/uzziah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 26:21
* 2 Kings 15:05
* Isaiah 01:1
* Judges 09:5-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3147

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jotham, Jotham's

### Judah

#### Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

* It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
* King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
* When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
* In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
* The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(See also: [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Judea](../names/judea.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
* 1 Kings 01:09
* Genesis 29:35
* Genesis 38:02
* Luke 03:33
* Ruth 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3061, H3063

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judah, Judah's

### Judah

#### Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

* After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
* The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
* Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
* Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Judah](../names/judah.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 30:26-28
* 2 Samuel 12:08
* Hosea 05:14
* Jeremiah 07:33
* Judges 01:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4438, H3063, G2455

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judah, kingdom of Judah, language of Judah

### Judaism

#### Definition:

The term "Judaism" refers to the religion practiced by the Jews.

* The word “Judaism” only appears in the New Testament, since the term did not exist before that time.
* Judaism includes all the Old Testament laws and instructions that God gave to the Israelites to obey. It also includes the customs and traditions that have been added to the Jewish religion over time.
* When translating, the term "Jewish religion" or "religion of the Jews" can be used in both the Old and New Testaments.
* When translating the word “Judaism”, the term “Jewish religion” or “religion of the Jews” can be used.

(See also: [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 01:13
* Galatians 01:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2454

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judaism

### Judas Iscariot

#### Related Words

Judas son of Simon Iscariot

#### Facts:

Judas Iscariot was one of Jesus' apostles. He was the one who betrayed Jesus to the Jewish leaders.

* The name "Iscariot" may mean "from Kerioth," perhaps indicating that Judas grew up in that city.
* Judas Iscariot managed the apostles' money and regularly stole some of it to use for himself.
* Judas betrayed Jesus by telling the religious leaders where Jesus was so they could arrest him.
* After the religious leaders condemned Jesus to die, Judas regretted that he had betrayed Jesus, so he gave the betrayal money back to the Jewish leaders and then killed himself.
* Another apostle was also named Judas, as was one of Jesus' brothers. Jesus' brother was also known as "Jude."

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [betray](../other/betray.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [Judas the son of James](../names/judassonofjames.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 06:14-16
* Luke 22:47-48
* Mark 03:19
* Mark 14:10-11
* Matthew 26:23-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2455, G2469

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judas ... Iscariot

### Judas son of James

#### Facts:

Judas son of James was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. Note that he was not the same man as Judas Iscariot.

* Often in the Bible, men with the same name were distinguished by mentioning whose son they were. Here, Judas was identified as the "son of James."
* Another man named Judas was Jesus' brother. He was also known as "Jude."
* The New Testament book called "Jude" was probably written by Jesus' brother Judas, since the author identified himself as the "brother of James." James was another brother of Jesus.
* It is also possible that the book of Jude was written by Jesus' disciple, Judas, the son of James.

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](../names/judasiscariot.md), [son](../kt/son.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* Luke 06:14-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2455

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judas son of James

### Judea

#### Facts:

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

* Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
* Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
* If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(See also: [Galilee](../names/galilee.md), [Edom](../names/edom.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Samaria](../names/samaria.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:14
* Acts 02:09
* Acts 09:32
* Acts 12:19
* John 03:22-24
* Luke 01:05
* Luke 04:44
* Luke 05:17
* Mark 10:1-4
* Matthew 02:01
* Matthew 02:05
* Matthew 02:22-23
* Matthew 03:1-3
* Matthew 19:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2453

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judea

### Kadesh

#### Facts:

The names Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, and Meribah Kadesh all refer to an important city in Israel's history which was located in the southern part of Israel, near the region of Edom.

* The city of Kadesh was an oasis, a place where there was water and fertile soil in the middle of a desert named Zin.
* Moses sent twelve spies into the land of Canaan from Kadesh Barnea.
* Israel also encamped at Kadesh during the wandering in the wilderness.
* Kadesh Barnea was where Miriam died.
* It was at Meribah Kadesh where Moses disobeyed God and hit a rock to get water for the Israelites, instead of speaking to it as God had told him to do.
* The name "kadesh" comes from the Hebrew word meaning "holy" or "set apart."

(See also: [desert](../other/desert.md), [Edom](../names/edom.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 48:28
* Genesis 14:7-9
* Genesis 16:14
* Genesis 20:1-3
* Joshua 10:40-41
* Numbers 20:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4809, H6946, H6947

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh

### Kedar

#### Facts:

Kedar was Ishmael's second son. It was also an important city, which was probably named after the man.

* The city of Kedar is located in the northern part of Arabia near the southern border of Palestine. In Bible times, it was known for its greatness and beauty.
* The descendants of Kedar formed a large people group that is also called "Kedar."
* The phrase "dark tents of Kedar" refers to the black goathair tents the people of Kedar lived in.
* These people raised sheep and goats. They also used camels for transporting things.
* In the Bible, the phrase "the glory of Kedar" refers to the greatness of that city and its people.

(See also: [Arabia](../names/arabia.md), [goat](../other/goat.md), [Ishmael](../names/ishmael.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* Song of Solomon 01:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6938

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Kedar

### Kedesh

#### Facts:

Kedesh was a Canaanite city that was taken over by the Israelites when they entered the land of Canaan.

* This city was located in the northern part of Israel, in the portion of land that was given to the tribe of Naphtali.
* Kedesh was one of the cities that was chosen as a place where the Levite priests could live, since they did not have any land of their own.
* It was also set apart as a "city of refuge."

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Hebron](../names/hebron.md), [Levite](../names/levite.md), [Naphtali](../names/naphtali.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [refuge](../other/refuge.md), [Shechem](../names/shechem.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:72
* Joshua 19:37
* Judges 04:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6943

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Kedesh

### Kerethites

#### Facts:

The Kerethites were a people group who were probably part of the Philistines. Some versions write this name as "Cherethites."

* The "Kerethites and Pelethites" were a special group of soldiers from King David's army who were especially devoted to him as his bodyguards.
* Benaiah, son of Jehoiada, a member of David's administrative corps, was the leader of the Kerethites and Pelethites.
* The Kerethites remained with David when he had to flee Jerusalem because of Absalom's revolt.

(See also: [Absalom](../names/absalom.md), [Benaiah](../names/benaiah.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md))

#### Bible References:

* Zephaniah 02:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3774

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Kerethites

### Kidron Valley

#### Facts:

The Kidron Valley is a deep valley just outside the city of Jerusalem, between its eastern wall and the Mount of Olives.

* The valley is over 1,000 meters deep and about 32 kilometers long.
* When King David was fleeing from his son Absalom, he went through the Kidron Valley to get to the Mount of Olives.
* King Josiah and King Asa of Judah ordered that the high places and altars of false gods be smashed and burned; the ashes were thrown into the Kidron Valley.
* During the reign of King Hezekiah, the Kidron Valley was where the priests threw everything impure that they removed from the temple.
* The evil queen Athaliah was killed in this valley because of the wicked things she had done.

(See also: [Absalom](../names/absalom.md), [Asa](../names/asa.md), [Athaliah](../names/athaliah.md), [David](../names/david.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [Hezekiah](../names/hezekiah.md), [high places](../other/highplaces.md), [Josiah](../names/josiah.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Mount of Olives](../names/mountofolives.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 18:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5674, H6939, G2748, G5493

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Kidron Valley, Kidron

### King of the Jews

#### Definition:

The term "King of the Jews" is a title that refers to Jesus, the Messiah.

* The first time the Bible records this title is when it was used by the wise men who traveled to Bethlehem looking for the baby who was "King of the Jews."
* The angel revealed to Mary that her son, a descendant of King David, would be a king whose reign would last forever.
* Before Jesus was crucified, Roman soldiers mockingly called Jesus "King of the Jews." This title was also written on a piece of wood and nailed to the top of Jesus' cross.
* Jesus truly is the King of the Jews and the king over all creation.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "King of the Jews" could also be translated as "king over the Jews" or "king who rules over the Jews" or "supreme ruler of the Jews."
* Check to see how the phrase "king of" is translated in other places in the translation.

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [king](../other/king.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md), [wise men](../other/wisemen.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 23:03
* Luke 23:38
* Matthew 02:02
* Matthew 27:11
* Matthew 27:35-37

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G935, G2453

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

King of the Jews, king of the Jews

### Korah

#### Facts:

Korah was the name of three men in the Old Testament.

* One of the sons of Esau was named Korah. He became a leader in his community.
* Korah was also a descendant of Levi and so served in the tabernacle as a priest. He became jealous of Moses and Aaron and led a group of men to rebel against them.
* A third man named Korah is listed as a descendant of Judah.

(See also: [Aaron](../names/aaron.md), [authority](../kt/authority.md), [Caleb](../names/caleb.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [Esau](../names/esau.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:34-37
* Numbers 16:1-3
* Numbers 16:25-27
* Psalm 042:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7141

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Korah, Korahite, Korahites

### Laban

#### Facts:

In the Old Testament, Laban was the uncle and father-in-law of Jacob.

* Jacob lived with Laban's household in Padan Aram and managed his sheep and goats as a condition of marriage to Laban's daughters.
* Jacob's preference was for Laban's daughter Rachel to be his wife.
* Laban deceived Jacob and made him marry his oldest daughter Leah first before giving Rachel to him as his wife.

(See also: [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Nahor](../names/nahor.md), [Leah](../names/leah.md), [Rachel](../names/rachel.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 24:30
* Genesis 24:50
* Genesis 27:43
* Genesis 28:1-2
* Genesis 29:05
* Genesis 29:13
* Genesis 30:26
* Genesis 46:16-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3837

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Laban, Laban's

### Lamech

#### Facts:

Lamech was the name of two men mentioned in the book of Genesis.

* The first Lamech mentioned was a descendant of Cain. He boasted to his two wives that he had killed a man for injuring him.
* The second Lamech was a descendant of Seth. He was also the father of Noah.

(See also: [Cain](../names/cain.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md), [Seth](../names/seth.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 04:18-19
* Genesis 04:24
* Genesis 05:25
* Genesis 05:29
* Genesis 05:31
* Luke 03:36

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3929, G2984

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lamech, Lamech's

### Lazarus

#### Facts:

Lazarus and his sisters, Mary and Martha, were special friends of Jesus. Jesus often stayed with them in their home in Bethany.

* Lazarus is best known for the fact that Jesus raised him from the dead after he had been buried in a tomb for several days.
* The Jewish leaders were angry at Jesus and jealous that he had done this miracle, and they tried to find a way to kill both Jesus and Lazarus.
* Jesus also told a parable about a poor beggar and a rich man in which the beggar was named "Lazarus."

(See also: [beg](../other/beg.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [Martha](../names/martha.md), [Mary](../names/mary.md), [raise](../other/raise.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 11:11
* John 12:1-3
* Luke 16:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2976

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lazarus, Lazarus'

### Leah

#### Facts:

Leah was one of Jacob's wives. She was the mother of ten of Jacob's sons and their descendants were ten of the twelve tribes of Israel.

* Leah's father was Laban, who was the brother of Jacob's mother Rebekah.
* Jacob didn't love Leah as much as he loved his other wife, Rachel, but God abundantly blessed Leah by giving her many children.
* Leah's son Judah was an ancestor of King David and Jesus.

(See also: [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [Laban](../names/laban.md), [Rachel](../names/rachel.md), [Rebekah](../names/rebekah.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 29:17
* Genesis 29:28
* Genesis 31:06
* Ruth 04:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3812

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Leah, Leah's

### Lebanon

#### Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

* King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
* Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people, who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
* The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(See also: [cedar](../other/cedar.md), [cypress](../other/cypress.md), [fir](../other/fir.md), [Phoenicia](../names/phonecia.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 04:32-34
* 2 Chronicles 02:8-10
* Deuteronomy 01:7-8
* Psalms 029:3-5
* Zechariah 10:8-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3844

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lebanon

### Levi

#### Facts:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term "Levite" refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

* The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
* All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
* The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
* Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
* Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [Matthew](../names/matthew.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
* 1 Kings 08:3-5
* Acts 04:36-37
* Genesis 29:34
* John 01:19-21
* Luke 10:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical, Levi's, Levite's, Levites'

### Leviathan

#### Facts:

The term "Leviathan" refers to a very large, extinct animal mentioned in the earliest writings of the Old Testament, the books of Job, Psalms, and Isaiah.

* Leviathan is described as a large, snake-like creature, strong and fierce and able to make the water around it "boil." The descriptions of it were similar to that of a dinosaur.
* Isaiah the prophet refered to Leviathan as "the gliding serpent".
* Job wrote from firsthand knowledge of Leviathan, so the animal was most likely alive during his lifetime.

(See also: [Isaiah](../names/isaiah.md), [Job](../names/job.md), [serpent](../other/serpent.md))

#### Bible References:

* Job 03:08
* Psalms 104:25-26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3882

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Leviathan

### Lord Yahweh

#### Related Ideas:

Yahweh God

#### Facts:

In the Old Testament, "Lord Yahweh" is frequently used to refer to the one true God.

* The term "Lord" is a divine title and "Yahweh" is God's personal name.
* "Yahweh" is also often combined with the term "God" to form "Yahweh God."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If some form of "Yahweh" is used for the translation of God's personal name, the terms "Lord Yahweh" and "Yahweh God" can be translated literally. Also consider how the term "Lord" is translated in other contexts when referring to God.
* Some languages put titles after the name and would translate this as "Yahweh Lord." Consider what is natural in the project language: should the title "Lord" come before or after "Yahweh"?
* "Yahweh God" could also be rendered as "God who is called Yahweh" or "God who is the Living One" or "I am, who is God."
* If the translation follows the tradition of rendering "Yahweh" as "Lord" or "LORD," the term "Lord Yahweh" could be translated as "Lord God" or "God who is the Lord." Other possible translations could be, "Master LORD" or "God the LORD."
* The term "Lord Yahweh" *should not* be rendered as "Lord LORD" because readers may not notice the difference in letter size that has traditionally been used to distinguish these two words and it would look very strange.

(See also: [God](../kt/god.md), [lord](../kt/lord.md), [Lord](../kt/lord.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:3-4
* 2 Samuel 07:21-23
* Deuteronomy 03:23-25
* Ezekiel 39:25-27
* Ezekiel 45:18
* Jeremiah 44:26
* Judges 06:22
* Micah 01:2-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H136, H3068

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

### Lord's Supper

#### Definition:

The term "Lord's Supper" was used by the apostle Paul to refer to the Passover meal that Jesus ate with his disciples on the night he was arrested by the Jewish leaders.

* During this meal, Jesus broke the Passover bread into pieces and called it his body, which would soon be beaten and killed.
* He called the cup of wine his blood, which would soon be spilled out as he died as a sacrifice for sin.
* Jesus commanded that as often as his followers shared this meal together, they should remember his death and resurrection.
* In his letter to the Corinthians, the apostle Paul also further established the Lord's Supper as a regular practice for believers in Jesus.
* Churches today often use the term "communion" to refer to the Lord's Supper. The term "Last Supper" is also sometimes used.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could also be translated as "the Lord's meal" or "the meal of our Lord Jesus" or "the meal in memory of the Lord Jesus."

(See also: [Passover](../kt/passover.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 11:20
* 1 Corinthians 11:25-26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1173, G2960

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lord's Supper

### Lot

#### Facts:

Lot was Abraham's nephew.

* He was the son of Abraham's brother Haran.
* Lot traveled with Abraham to the land of Canaan and settled in the city of Sodom.
* Lot was the ancestor of the Moabites and Ammonites.
* When enemy kings attacked Sodom and captured Lot, Abraham came with several hundred men to rescue Lot and recover his belongings.
* The people living in the city of Sodom were very wicked, so God destroyed that city. But he first told Lot and his family to leave the city so that that they could escape.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Ammon](../names/ammon.md), [Haran](../names/haran.md), [Moab](../names/moab.md), [Sodom](../names/sodom.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:08
* Genesis 11:27-28
* Genesis 12:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3876, G3091

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lot, Lot's

### Luke

#### Facts:

Luke wrote two books of the New Testament: the gospel of Luke and the book of Acts.

* In his letter to the Colossians, Paul refers to Luke as a doctor. Paul also mentions Luke in two of his other letters.
* It is thought that Luke was a Greek and a Gentile who came to know Christ. In his gospel, Luke includes several accounts that highlight Jesus' love for all peoples, both Jews and Gentiles.
* Luke accompanied Paul on two of his missionary journeys and helped him in his work.
* In some early church writings, it is said that Luke was born in the city of Antioch in Syria.

(See also: [Antioch](../names/antioch.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Syria](../names/syria.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:11-13
* Colossians 04:12-14
* Philemon 01:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3065

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Luke, Luke's

### Lystra

#### Facts:

Lystra was a city in ancient Asia Minor that Paul visited on one of his missionary journeys. It was located in the region of Lycaonia, which is now in the modern-day country of Turkey.

* Paul and his companions escaped to Derbe and Lystra when they were threatened by the Jews in Iconium.
* In Lystra, Paul met Timothy, who became a fellow evangelist and church planter.
* After Paul healed a crippled man in Lystra, the people there tried to worship Paul and Barnabas as gods, but the apostles rebuked them and stopped them from doing that.

(See also: [evangelist](../kt/evangelism.md), [Iconium](../names/iconium.md), [Timothy](../names/timothy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 03:10-13
* Acts 14:06
* Acts 14:08
* Acts 14:21-22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3082

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lystra

### Maakah

#### Facts:

Maakah (or Maacah) was one of the sons of Abraham's brother Nahor. Other people in the Old Testament also had this name.

* The city of Maakah or Beth Maakah was located in the far north of Israel, in the region occupied by the tribe of Naphtali.
* It was an important city and was attacked by enemies on several occasions.
* Maakah was the name of several women, including the mother of David's son Absalom.
* King Asa removed his grandmother Maacah from being queen because she had promoted Asherah worship.

(See also: [Asa](../names/asa.md), [Asherah](../names/asherim.md), [Nahor](../names/nahor.md), [Naphtali](../names/naphtali.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4601

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Maakah, Maakah's

### Macedonia

#### Related Words

Macedonian

#### Facts:

In New Testament times, Macedonia was a Roman province located just north of ancient Greece.

* Some important Macedonian cities mentioned in the Bible were Berea, Philippi and Thessalonica.
* Through a vision, God told Paul to preach the gospel to the people in Macedonia.
* Paul and his coworkers went to Macedonia and taught the people there about Jesus and helped the new believers to grow in their faith.
* In the Bible there are letters that Paul wrote to the believers in the Macedonian cities of Philippi and Thessalonica.

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [Berea](../names/berea.md), [faith](../kt/faith.md), [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [Greece](../names/greece.md), [Philippi](../names/philippi.md), [Thessalonica](../names/thessalonica.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
* 1 Thessalonians 04:10
* 1 Timothy 01:3-4
* Acts 16:10
* Acts 20:1-3
* Philippians 04:14-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3109, G3110

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Macedonia, Macedonians

### Maker

#### Facts:

In general, a "maker" is someone who creates or makes things.

* In the Bible, the term "Maker" is sometimes used as a name or title for Yahweh, because he created everything.
* Usually this term is combined with "his" or "my" or "your."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "Maker" can be translated as "the Creator" or "God who creates" or "the One who made everything."
* The phrase "his Maker" could also be translated as "the One who created him" or "God, who created him."
* The phrases "your Maker" and "my Maker" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [create](../other/creation.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hosea 08:13-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3335, H6213, H6466

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

formed, make, Maker, makes, made

### Malachi

#### Facts:

Malachi was one of God's prophets to the kingdom of Judah. He lived around 500 years before Christ was on earth.

* Malachi prophesied during the period when Israel's temple was being rebuilt after returning from the Babylonian captivity.
* Ezra and Nehemiah lived around the same time as Malachi.
* The book of Malachi is the last book of the Old Testament.
* Like all the Old Testament prophets, Malachi urged the people to repent of their sins and to turn back to worshiping Yahweh.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [captive](../other/captive.md), [Ezra](../names/ezra.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Nehemiah](../names/nehemiah.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [repent](../kt/repent.md), [turn](../other/turn.md))

#### Bible References:

* Malachi 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4401

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Malachi, Malachi's

### Manasseh

#### Facts:

There were five men by the name of Manasseh in the Old Testament:

Manasseh was the name of Joseph's firstborn son.

Both Manasseh and his younger brother Ephraim were adopted by Joseph's father, Jacob which gave their descendants the privilege of being among the twelve tribes of Israel.

The descendants of Manasseh formed one of the tribes of Israel.

The tribe of Manasseh was often called the "half-tribe of Manasseh" because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan. Members of the tribe are called "Manassites."

One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh.

King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.

God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.

Two men named Manasseh lived during the time of Ezra. These men were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.

One other Manasseh was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods.

(See also: [altar](../kt/altar.md), [Dan](../names/dan.md), [Ephraim](../names/ephraim.md), [Ezra](../names/ezra.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [pagan](../other/pagan.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 15:09
* Deuteronomy 03:12-13
* Genesis 41:51
* Genesis 48:1-2
* Judges 01:27-28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4519, H4520, G3128

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Manasseh, Manassites, Manasseh's

### Martha

#### Facts:

Martha was a woman from Bethany who followed Jesus.

* Martha had a sister named Mary and a brother named Lazarus, who also followed Jesus.
* One time when Jesus was visiting them in their home, Martha was distracted by meal preparation while her sister Mary sat and listened to Jesus teach.
* When Lazarus died, Martha told Jesus that she believed that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God.

(See also: [Lazarus](../names/lazarus.md), [Mary (sister of Martha)](../names/marysisterofmartha.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 11:02
* John 12:1-3
* Luke 10:39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3136

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Martha, Martha's

### Mary

#### Facts:

Mary was a young woman living in the city of Nazareth who was pledged to be married to a man named Joseph. God chose Mary to be the mother of Jesus the Messiah, the Son of God.

* The Holy Spirit miraculously caused Mary to become pregnant while she was a virgin.
* An angel told Mary that the baby to be born to her was the Son of God and that she must name him Jesus.
* Mary loved God and praised him for being gracious to her.
* Joseph married Mary, but she remained a virgin until after the baby was born.
* Mary thought deeply about the amazing things that the shepherds and wise men said about the baby Jesus.
* Mary and Joseph took the baby Jesus to be dedicated at the temple. Later they took him to Egypt to escape King Herod's plot to kill the baby. Eventually they moved back to Nazareth.
* When Jesus was an adult, Mary was with him when he changed water to wine at a wedding in Cana.
* The gospels also mention that Mary was at the cross when Jesus was dying. He told his disciple John to take care of her like his own mother.

(See also: [Cana](../names/cana.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Herod the Great](../names/herodthegreat.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [Joseph (NT)](../names/josephnt.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [virgin](../other/virgin.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 02:04
* John 02:12
* Luke 01:29
* Luke 01:35
* Mark 06:03
* Matthew 01:16
* Matthew 01:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3137

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mary, the mother of Jesus

### Mary Magdalene

#### Facts:

Mary Magdalene was one of several women who believed in Jesus and followed him in his ministry. She was known as the one whom Jesus had healed from seven demons who had controlled her.

* Mary Magdalene and some other women helped support Jesus and his apostles by giving to them.
* She is also mentioned as one of the women who were the first to see Jesus after he rose from the dead.
* As Mary Magdalene stood outside the empty tomb, she saw Jesus standing there and he told her to go tell the other disciples that he was alive again.

(See also: [demon](../kt/demon.md), [demon-possessed](../kt/demonpossessed.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 08:1-3
* Luke 24:8-10
* Mark 15:39-41
* Matthew 27:54-56

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3094, G3137

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mary ... Magdalene

### Mary sister of Martha

#### Facts:

Mary was a women from Bethany who followed Jesus.

* Mary had a sister named Martha and a brother named Lazarus who also followed Jesus.
* One time Jesus said that Mary had chosen what was best when she chose to listen to him teach rather than being anxious about preparing him a meal as Martha was.
* Jesus brought Mary's brother Lazarus back to life.
* Sometime after that, while Jesus was eating in someone's home in Bethany, Mary poured expensive perfume on his feet in order to worship him.
* Jesus praised her for doing this and said that she was preparing his body for burial.

(See also: [Bethany](../names/bethany.md), [frankincense](../other/frankincense.md), [Lazarus](../names/lazarus.md), [Martha](../names/martha.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 11:1-2
* John 12:1-3
* Luke 10:38-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3137

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mary

### Matthew

#### Facts:

Matthew was one of the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his apostles. He was also known as Levi son of Alphaeus.

* Levi (Matthew) was a tax-collector from Capernaum before he met Jesus.
* Matthew wrote the gospel that bears his name.
* There are several other men named Levi in the Bible.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [Levite](../names/levite.md), [tax collector](../other/tax.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 05:27
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 02:14
* Mark 03:17-19
* Matthew 09:09
* Matthew 10:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3017, G3156

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Matthew, Levi

### Media

#### Facts:

Media was an ancient empire located east of Assyria and Babylonia, and north of Elam and Persia. The Medes were the people who lived in the empire of Media.

* The first ancestor of the Medes was Madai, a descendant of Japheth.
* The Media empire covered parts of what are present-day Turkey, Iran, Syria, Iraq and Afghanistan.
* The Medes were closely associated with the Persians and the two empires joined forces to conquer the Babylonian empire.
* Babylonia was invaded by Darius the Mede during the time that the prophet Daniel was living there.

(See also: [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Cyrus](../names/cyrus.md), [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [Darius](../names/darius.md), [Elam](../names/elam.md), [Persia](../names/persia.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 17:06
* Acts 02:09
* Daniel 05:28
* Esther 01:3-4
* Ezra 06:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4074, H4075, H4076, H4077, G3370

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Madai, Mede, Medes, Media

### Melchizedek

#### Facts:

During the time when Abram lived, Melchizedek was the king of the city of Salem (later "Jerusalem")

* Melchizedek's name means "king of righteousness" and his title "king of Salem" means "king of peace."
* He was also called a "priest of God Most High."
* Melchizedek is first mentioned in the Bible when he served Abram bread and wine after Abram rescued his nephew Lot from powerful kings. Abram gave Melchizedek one-tenth of the plunder from his victory.
* In the New Testament, Melchizedek is described as someone who had no father or mother. He was called a priest and king who will reign forever.
* The New Testament also says that Jesus is a priest according to the priestly "order of Melchizedek." Jesus was not descended from Levi as the Israelite priests were. His priesthood is directly from God, as Melchizedek's was.
* Based on these descriptions of him in the Bible, Melchizedek was a human priest who was also chosen by God to represent or point forward to Jesus, the eternal king of peace and righteousness and our great high priest.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [everlasting](../kt/eternity.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [Levite](../names/levite.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 14:18
* Hebrews 06:20
* Hebrews 07:17
* Psalm 110:4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4442, G3198

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Melchizedek, Melchizedek's

### Memphis

#### Facts:

Memphis was an ancient capital city in Egypt, along the Nile River.

* Memphis was located in Lower Egypt, just south of the Nile River delta, where the soil was very fertile and crops were plentiful.
* Its fertile soil and important location between Upper and Lower Egypt caused Memphis to become a major city of trade and commerce.

(See also: [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Nile River](../names/nileriver.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hosea 09:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4644, H5297

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Memphis

### Meshech

#### Facts:

Meshech is the name of two men in the Old Testament.

* One Meshech was a son of Japheth.
* The other Meshech was a grandson of Shem.
* Meshech was also the name of a region of land, which was probably named after one of these men.
* The region of Meshech may have been located in part of what is now the country of Turkey.

(See also: [Japheth](../names/japheth.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md), [Shem](../names/shem.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:5-7
* Ezekiel 27:12-13
* Genesis 10:2-5
* Psalms 120:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4851, H4902

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Meshech

### Mesopotamia

Related Words:

Aram Naharaim

#### Facts:

Mesopotamia is the area of land between the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers. Its location is in the region of the modern day country of Iraq.

* In the Old Testament, this region was also called "Aram Naharaim."
* The word "Mesopotamia" means "between rivers." The phrase "Aram Naharaim" means "Aram of two rivers."
* Abraham lived in the Mesopotamian cities of Ur and Haran before moving on to the land of Canaan.
* Babylon was another important city in Mesopotamia.
* The region called "Chaldea" was also part of Mesopotamia.

(See also: [Aram](../names/aram.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Chaldea](../names/chaldeans.md), [Euphrates River](../names/euphrates.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:09
* Acts 07:1-3
* Genesis 24:10-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H763, G3318

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mesopotamia, Aram Naharaim

### Micah

#### Facts:

Micah was a prophet of Judah around 700 years before Christ, when the prophet Isaiah was also ministering to Judah. Another man named Micah lived during the time of the judges.

* The book of Micah is near the end of the Old Testament.
* Micah prophesied about the destruction of Samaria by the Assyrians.
* Micah rebuked the people of Judah for disobeying God and warned them that their enemies would attack them.
* His prophecy ends with a message of hope in God, who is faithful and saves his people.
* In the book of Judges, the story is told of a man named Micah living in Ephraim who made an idol out of silver. A young Levite priest who came to live with him stole the idol and other things, and took off with a group of Danites. Eventually the Danites and the priest settled in the city of Laish and they set up that same silver idol to worship.

(See also: [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Dan](../names/dan.md), [Ephraim](../names/ephraim.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [Isaiah](../names/isaiah.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [judge](../other/judgeposition.md), [Levite](../names/levite.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Samaria](../names/samaria.md), [silver](../other/silver.md))

#### Bible References:

* Jeremiah 26:18-19
* Micah 01:1
* Micah 06:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4318

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Micah, Micah's

### Michael

#### Facts:

Michael is the chief of all God's holy, obedient angels. He is the only angel who is specifically referred to as the "archangel" of God.

* The term "archangel" literally means "chief angel" or "ruling angel."
* Michael is a warrior who fights against God's enemies and protects God's people.
* He led the Israelites in fighting against the Persian army. In the end times he will lead the armies of Israel in the final battle against the forces of evil, as foretold in Daniel.
* There are also several men in the Bible with the name Michael. Several men are identified as being the "son of Michael"

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [messenger](../other/messenger.md), [Persia](../names/persia.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 10:13
* Daniel 10:21
* Ezra 08:08
* Revelation 12:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4317, G3413

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Michael, Michael's

### Midian

#### Related Words

Midianite

#### Facts:

Midian was a son of Abraham and his wife Keturah. Midian was also the name of a people group and region located in the northern Arabian Desert to the south of the land of Canaan. The people of that group were called "Midianites."

* When Moses first left Egypt, he went to the region of Midian where he met the daughters of Jethro and helped them water their flocks. Later Moses married one of Jethro's daughters.
* Joseph was taken to Egypt by a group of Midianite slave traders.
* Many years later the Midianites attacked and raided the Israelites in the land of Canaan. Gideon led the Israelites in defeating them.
* Many of the modern-day Arabian tribes are descendants of this group.

(See also [Arabia](../names/arabia.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [flock](../other/flock.md), [Gideon](../names/gideon.md), [Jethro](../names/jethro.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:30
* Exodus 02:16
* Genesis 25:1-4
* Genesis 36:34-36
* Genesis 37:28
* Judges 07:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4080, H4084, H4092

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Midian, Midianite, Midianites, Midian's

### Miriam

#### Facts:

Miriam was the older sister of Aaron and Moses.

* When she was young, Miriam was instructed by her mother to watch over her baby brother Moses who was in a basket among the reeds of the Nile River. When the pharaoh's daughter found the baby and needed someone to take care of him for her, Miriam brought her mother to do it.
* Miriam led the Israelites in a dance of joy and thanksgiving after they had escaped from the Egyptians by crossing the Red Sea.
* Years later as the Israelites were wandering in the desert, Miram and Aaron began speaking badly about Moses because he had married a Cushite woman.
* Because of her rebellion in speaking against Moses, God caused Miriam to become sick with leprosy. But later God healed her when Moses interceded for her.

(See also: [Aaron](../names/aaron.md), [Cush](../names/cush.md), [intercede](../kt/intercede.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Nile River](../names/nileriver.md), [Pharaoh](../names/pharaoh.md), [rebel](../other/rebel.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:1-3
* Deuteronomy 24:8-9
* Micah 06:04
* Numbers 12:02
* Numbers 20:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4813

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Miriam, Miriam's

### Mishael

#### Facts:

Mishael is the name of three men in the Old Testament.

* One man named Mishael was a cousin of Aaron. When two of Aaron's sons were killed by God after they offered incense in a way that did not follow what God had told them to do, Mishael and his brother were given the task of carrying the dead bodies outside the Israelite camp.
* Another man named Mishael stood beside Ezra when he publicly read the rediscovered law.
* During the time when the people of Israel were in exile in Babylon, a young man named Mishael was also captured and forced to live in Babylon. The Babylonians gave him the name, "Meshach." He, along with his companions, Azariah (Shadrach) and Hananiah (Abednego), refused to worship the king's statue and were thrown into a fiery furnace.

(See also: [Aaron](../names/aaron.md), [Azariah](../names/azariah.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [Hananiah](../names/hananiah.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 01:6-7
* Daniel 02:17-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4332, H4333

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mishael, Mishael's

### Mizpah

#### Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means, "look-out point" or "watchtower."

* When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
* One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [Moab](../names/moab.md), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 15:20-22
* 1 Samuel 07:5-6
* 1 Samuel 07:10-11
* Jeremiah 40:5-6
* Judges 10:17-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4708, H4709

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mizpah

### Moab

#### Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. Moab also became the name of the land where Moab and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

* The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
* Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
* The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabitess" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(See also: [Bethlehem](../names/bethlehem.md), [Judea](../names/judea.md), [Lot](../names/lot.md), [Ruth](../names/ruth.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 19:37
* Genesis 36:34-36
* Ruth 01:1-2
* Ruth 01:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4124, H4125

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Moab, Moabite, Moabites, Moabitess, Moab's

### Molech

#### Facts:

Molech was the name of one of the false gods that the Canaanites worshiped. Other spellings are "Moloch" and "Molek."

* People who worshiped Molech sacrificed their children to him by means of fire.
* Some of the Israelites also worshiped Molech instead of the one true God, Yahweh. They followed the evil practices of Molech worshipers, including sacrificing their children.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [God](../kt/god.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [true](../kt/true.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 11:07
* 2 Kings 23:10
* Acts 07:43
* Jeremiah 32:33-35
* Leviticus 18:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4428, H4432, G3434

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Molech

### Mordecai

#### Facts:

Mordecai was a Jewish man living in the country of Persia. He was the guardian of his cousin Esther, who later became the wife of the Persian king, Xerxes.

* While working at the royal palace, Mordecai overheard men plotting together to kill King Xerxes. He reported this and the king's life was saved.
* Some time later, Mordecai also found out about a plan to kill all the Jews in the kingdom of Persia. He advised Esther to appeal to the king to save her people.

(See also: [Xerxes](../names/ahasuerus.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Esther](../names/esther.md), [Persia](../names/persia.md))

#### Bible References:

* Esther 02:06
* Esther 03:06
* Esther 08:02
* Esther 10:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4782

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mordecai, Mordecai's

### Moses

#### Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

* When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
* God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
* After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
* Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(See also: [Miriam](../names/miriam.md), [Promised Land](../kt/promisedland.md), [Ten Commandments](../other/tencommandments.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:21
* Acts 07:30
* Exodus 02:10
* Exodus 09:01
* Matthew 17:04
* Romans 05:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Moses, Moses'

### Most High

#### Facts:

The term "Most High" is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

* The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of "Sovereign" or "Supreme."
* The word "high" in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term can also be translated as "Most High God" or "Most Supreme being" or "God Most High" or "Greatest One" or "Supreme One" or "God, who is Greater than all."
* If a word like "high" is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: [God](../kt/god.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:47-50
* Acts 16:16-18
* Daniel 04:17-18
* Deuteronomy 32:7-8
* Genesis 14:17-18
* Hebrews 07:1-3
* Hosea 07:16
* Lamentations 03:35
* Luke 01:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5945, G5310

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Most High

### Mount of Olives

#### Facts:

The Mount of Olives is a mountain or large hill located near the east side of the city of Jerusalem. It is about 787 meters high.

* In the Old Testament, this mountain is sometimes referred to as "the mountain that is east of Jerusalem."
* The New Testament records several occasions when Jesus and his disciples went to the Mount of Olives to pray and rest.
* Jesus was arrested in the Garden of Gethsemane, which is located on the Mount of Olives.
* This could also be translated as "Olive Hill" or "Olive Tree Mountain."

(See also: [Gethsemane](../names/gethsemane.md), [olive](../other/olive.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 19:29
* Luke 19:37
* Mark 13:03
* Matthew 21:1-3
* Matthew 24:3-5
* Matthew 26:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2132, G3735, G1636

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mount of Olives, mountain that is called Olives

### Naaman

#### Facts:

In the Old Testament, Naaman was the commander of the army of the king of Aram.

* Naaman had a terrible skin disease called leprosy that could not be cured.
* A Jewish slave in Naaman's household told him to go ask the prophet Elisha to heal him.
* Elisha told Naaman to wash seven times in the Jordan River. When Naaman obeyed, God healed him of his disease.
* As a result, Naaman came to believe in the only true God, Yahweh.
* Two other men named Naaman were descendants of Jacob's son Benjamin.

(See also: [Aram](../names/aram.md), [Jordan River](../names/jordanriver.md), [leprosy](../other/leprosy.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 08:6-7
* 2 Kings 05:01
* Luke 04:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5283, G3497

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Naaman, Naaman's

### Nahor

#### Facts:

Nahor was the name of two relatives of Abraham, his grandfather and his brother.

* Abraham's brother Nahor was the grandfather of Isaac's wife Rebekah.
* The phrase "city of Nahor" could mean "the city named Nahor" or "the city where Nahor had lived" or "Nahor's city."

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Rebekah](../names/rebekah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:24-27
* Genesis 31:53
* Joshua 24:02
* Luke 03:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5152, G3493

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nahor, Nahor's

### Nahum

#### Facts:

Nahum was a prophet who preached during the time when the evil King Manasseh was ruling over Judah.

* Nahum was from the town of Elkosh, which was about 20 miles from Jerusalem.
* The Old Testament book of Nahum records his prophecies about the destruction of the Assyrian city of Nineveh.

(See also: [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Manasseh](../names/manasseh.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Nineveh](../names/nineveh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Nahum 01:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5151, G3486

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nahum, Nahum's

### Naphtali

#### Facts:

Naphtali was the sixth son of Jacob. His descendants formed the tribe of Naphtali, which was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

* Sometimes the name Naphtali was used to refer to the land where the tribe lived.
* The land of Naphtali was located in the northern part of Israel, next to the tribes of Dan and Asher. its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Kinnereth.
* This tribe was mentioned in both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible.

(See also: [Asher](../names/asher.md), [Dan](../names/dan.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Sea of Galilee](../names/seaofgalilee.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 04:15
* Deuteronomy 27:13-14
* Ezekiel 48:1-3
* Genesis 30:08
* Judges 01:33
* Matthew 04:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5321, G3508

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Naphtali, Naphtali's

### Nathan

#### Facts:

Nathan was a faithful prophet of God who lived while David was king over Israel.

* God sent Nathan to confront David after David sinned grievously against Uriah.
* Nathan rebuked David in spite of the fact that David was the king.
* David repented of his sin after Nathan confronted him.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Uriah](../names/uriah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 17:1-2
* 2 Chronicles 09:29
* 2 Samuel 12:1-3
* Psalm 051:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5416, G3481

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nathan, Nathan's

### Nazareth

#### Facts:

Nazareth is a town in the region of Galilee in northern Israel. It is about 100 kilometers north of Jerusalem, and it took about three to five days to travel on foot.

* Joseph and Mary were from Nazareth, and this is where they raised Jesus. That is why Jesus was known as "the Nazarene."
* Many of the Jews living in Nazareth did not respect Jesus' teaching because he had grown up among them, and they thought he was just an ordinary person.
* Once, when Jesus was teaching in Nazareths synagogue, the Jews there tried to kill him because he claimed to be the Messiah and had rebuked them for rejecting him.
* The remark Nathaniel made when he heard that Jesus was from Nazareth indicated that this city was not thought of very highly.

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [Galilee](../names/galilee.md), [Joseph (NT)](../names/josephnt.md), [Mary](../names/mary.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 26:9-11
* John 01:43-45
* Luke 01:26-29
* Mark 16:5-7
* Matthew 02:23
* Matthew 21:9-11
* Matthew 26:71-72

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3478, G3479, G3480

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nazareth, Nazarene

### Nazirite

#### Related Ideas:

Nazirite vow

#### Facts:

The term "Nazirite" refers to a person who has taken a "Nazirite vow." Mostly men took this vow, but women could also take it.

* A person who took the Nazirite vow agreed to not have any food or drink made from grapes for period that had been agreed upon for the fulfillment of the vow. During this period he was also not to get his hair cut and not go near a dead body.
* When the required length of time had passed, and the vow had been fulfilled, the Nazirite would go to the priest and provide an offering. This would include the cutting and burning of his hair. All other restrictions would also be removed.
* Samson is a well-known man in the Old Testament who was under the Nazirite vow.
* The angel announcing John the Baptist's birth told Zechariah that his son would not drink strong drink, which may indicate that John was under the Nazirite vow.
* According to a passage in the book of Acts the apostle Paul may also have at one time taken this vow, according to one passage in the book of Acts.

(See also: [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [Samson](../names/samson.md), [vow](../kt/vow.md), [Zechariah (OT)](../names/zechariahot.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 18:18-19
* Amos 02:11-12
* Judges 13:05
* Numbers 06:1-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5139

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nazirite, Nazirite vow, Nazirites

### Nebuchadnezzar

#### Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

* Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the "Babylonian Exile.
* One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar's dreams.
* Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
* King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
* Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(See also: [arrogant](../other/arrogant.md), [Azariah](../names/azariah.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Hananiah](../names/hananiah.md), [Mishael](../names/mishael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:15
* 2 Kings 25:1-3
* Daniel 01:02
* Daniel 04:04
* Ezekiel 26:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5019, H5020

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nebuchadnezzar, Nebuchadnezzar's

### Negev

#### Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

* The original word means "the South," and some English versions translate it this way.
* It could be that the "South" is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
* When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
* Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
* The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
* The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Beersheba](../names/beersheba.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [Kadesh](../names/kadesh.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md), [Simeon](../names/simeon.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 12:09
* Genesis 20:1-3
* Genesis 24:62
* Joshua 03:14-16
* Numbers 13:17-20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5045, H6160

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Negev

### Nehemiah

#### Facts:

Nehemiah was an Israelite forced to move to the Babylonian empire when the people of Israel and Judah were taken captive by the Babylonians.

* While he was the cupbearer to the Persian king, Artaxerxes, Nehemiah asked the king for permission to return to Jerusalem.
* Nehemiah led the Israelites in rebuilding the walls of Jerusalem which had been destroyed by the Babylonians.
* For twelve years Nehemiah was the governor of Jerusalem before returning to the king's palace.
* The Old Testament book of Nehemiah tells the story of Nehemiah's work in rebuilding the walls and his governing of the people in Jerusalem.
* There were also other men named Nehemiah in the Old Testament. Usually the name of the father was added, to distinguish which Nehemiah was being talked about.

(See also: [Artaxerxes](../names/artaxerxes.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [son](../kt/son.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezra 02:1-2
* Nehemiah 01:02
* Nehemiah 10:03
* Nehemiah 12:46

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5166

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nehemiah, Nehemiah's

### Nile River

#### Related Words:

River of Egypt

#### Facts:

The Nile is a very long and wide river in northeastern Africa. It is especially well known as the main river of Egypt.

* The Nile River flows north through Egypt and into the Mediterranean Sea.
* Crops grow well in the fertile land on either side of the Nile River.
* Most Egyptians live near the Nile River since it is an important source of water for food crops.
* The Israelites lived in the land of Goshen, which was very fertile because it was located along the Nile River.
* When Moses was a baby, his parents placed him in a basket among the reeds of the Nile to hide him from Pharaoh's men.

(See also: [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Goshen](../names/goshen.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md))

#### Bible References:

* Amos 08:08
* Genesis 41:1-3
* Jeremiah 46:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H216, H2975, H4714, H5104

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile

### Nineveh

#### Facts:

Nineveh was the capital city of Assyria. A "Ninevite" was a person who lived in Nineveh.

* God sent the prophet Jonah to warn the Ninevites to turn from their wicked ways. The people repented and God did not destroy them.
* The Assyrians later stopped serving God. They conquered the kingdom of Israel and carried the people away to Nineveh.

(See also: [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Jonah](../names/jonah.md), [repent](../kt/repent.md), [turn](../other/turn.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 10:11-14
* Jonah 01:03
* Jonah 03:03
* Luke 11:32
* Matthew 12:41

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5210, G3535, G3536

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nineveh, Ninevite, Ninevites

### Noah

#### Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

* Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
* When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
* Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
* Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [ark](../kt/ark.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 05:30-31
* Genesis 05:32
* Genesis 06:08
* Genesis 08:01
* Hebrews 11:7
* Matthew 24:37

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5146, G3575

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Noah, Noah's

### Obadiah

#### Facts:

Obadiah was an Old Testament prophet who prophesied against the people of Edom, who were the descendants of Esau. There were also many other men named Obadiah in the Old Testament.

* The book of Obadiah is the shortest book in the Old Testament and tells a prophecy that Obadiah received through a vision from God.
* It is not clear when Obadiah lived and prophesied. It may have been during the paeriods that Jehoram, Ahaziah, Joash, and Athaliah, reigned in Judah. The prophets Daniel, Ezekiel, and Jeremiah would also have been prophesying during part of this time.
* Obadiah may also have lived at a later time period, during the reign of King Zedekiah and the Babylonian captivity.
* Other men named Obadiah included a descendant of Saul, a Gadite who became one of David's men, a palace administrator for King Ahab, an official of King Jehoshaphat, a man who helped with repairs to the temple during the time of King Josiah, and a Levite who was also a gatekeeper during the time of Nehemiah.
* It could be that the writer of the book of Obadiah was one of these men.

(See also: [Ahab](../names/ahab.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Edom](../names/edom.md), [Esau](../names/esau.md), [Ezekiel](../names/ezekiel.md), [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [Gad](../names/gad.md), [Jehoshaphat](../names/jehoshaphat.md), [Josiah](../names/josiah.md), [Levite](../names/levite.md), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md), [Zedekiah](../names/zedekiah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 03:21
* 1 Chronicles 08:38-40
* Ezra 08:8-11
* Obadiah 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5662

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Obadiah, Obadiah's

### Omri

#### Facts:

Omri was an army commander who became the sixth king of Israel.

* King Omri reigned for 12 years in the city of Tirzah.
* Like all the kings of Israel before him, Omri was a very evil king who led the people of Israel into more idol worship.
* Omri was also the father of King Ahab.

(See also: [Ahab](../names/ahab.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Jeroboam](../names/jeroboam.md), [Tirzah](../names/tirzah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 22:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6018

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Omri, Omri's

### Paddan Aram

#### Facts:

Paddan Aram was the name of a region where Abraham's family lived before moving to the land of Canaan. It means "plain of Aram."

* When Abraham left Haran in Paddan Aram to travel to the land of Canaan, most of the rest of his family stayed behind in Haran.
* Many years later, Abraham's servant went to Paddan Aram to find a wife for Isaac among his relatives there and found Rebekah, grand-daughter of Bethuel.
* Isaac and Rebekah's son Jacob also traveled to Paddan Aram and married two daughters of Rebekah's brother Laban who was living in Haran.
* Aram, Paddan-Aram, and Aram-Nahariam were all part of the same region that is now where the modern-day country of Syria is located.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Aram](../names/aram.md), [Bethuel](../names/bethuel.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Haran](../names/haran.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Laban](../names/laban.md), [Rebekah](../names/rebekah.md), [Syria](../names/syria.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 28:02
* Genesis 35:09
* Genesis 46:12-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6307

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Paddan Aram, Paddan

### Paran

#### Facts:

Paran was a desert or wilderness area east of Egypt and south of the land of Canaan. There was also a Mount Paran, which may have been another name for Mount Sinai.

* The slave Hagar and her son Ishmael went to live in the wilderness of Paran after Sarah ordered Abraham to send them away.
* When Moses led the Israelites out of Egypt, they passed through the wilderness of Paran.
* It was from Kadesh-Barnea in the wilderness of Paran that Moses sent twelve men to spy out the land of Canaan and bring back a report.
* The wilderness of Zin was north of Paran and the wilderness of Sin was south of Paran.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [desert](../other/desert.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Kadesh](../names/kadesh.md), [Sinai](../names/sinai.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 11:18
* 1 Samuel 25:1
* Genesis 21:19-21
* Numbers 10:11-13
* Numbers 13:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H364, H6290

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Paran

### Passover

#### Facts:

The "Passover" is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

* The name of this festival comes from the fact that God "passed over" the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
* The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
* God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God "passed over" their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "Passover" could be translated by combining the words "pass" and "over" or another combination of words that has this meaning.
* It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:07
* 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
* 2 Kings 23:23
* Deuteronomy 16:02
* Exodus 12:26-28
* Ezra 06:21-22
* John 13:01
* Joshua 05:10-11
* Leviticus 23:4-6
* Numbers 09:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6453, G3957

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Passover

### Paul

#### Related Words

Saul

#### Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

* Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
* Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
* Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
* Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
* Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
* Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name "Paul."
* Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(See also: [christian](../kt/christian.md), [jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 01:03
* Acts 08:03
* Acts 09:26
* Acts 13:10
* Galatians 01:01
* Philemon 01:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3972, G4569

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Paul, Saul, Paul's

### Pentecost

#### Related Ideas:

Festival of Weeks

#### Facts:

The "Festival of Weeks" was a Jewish festival that took place fifty days after Passover. It was later referred to as "Pentecost."

* The Feast of Weeks was seven weeks (fifty days) after the Feast of Firstfruits. In the New Testament times, this festival was called "Pentecost" which has "fifty" as part of its meaning.
* The Festival of Weeks was held to celebrate the beginning of the grain harvest. It was also a time to remember when God first gave the Law to the Israelites on the tablets of stone given to Moses.
* In the New Testament, the Day of Pentecost is especially significant because it was when the believers of Jesus received the Holy Spirit in a new way.

(See also: [festival](../other/festival.md), [firstfruits](../other/firstfruit.md), [harvest](../other/harvest.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [raise](../other/raise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 08:12-13
* Acts 02:01
* Acts 20:15-16
* Deuteronomy 16:16-17
* Numbers 28:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2282, H7620, G4005

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Festival of Weeks, Pentecost

### Peor

#### Related Words

Baal Peor, Beth Peor, Mount Peor

#### Facts:

The terms "Peor" and "Mount Peor" refer to a mountain located northeast of the Salt Sea, in the region of Moab.

* The name "Beth Peor" was the name of a city, probably located on that mountain or near it. This was where Moses died after God showed him the Promised Land.
* "Baal Peor" was a false god of the Moabites that they worshiped at Mount Peor. The Israelites also started worshiping this idol and God punished them for it.

(See also: [Baal](../names/baal.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [Moab](../names/moab.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* Numbers 23:28-30
* Numbers 31:16-17
* Psalms 106:28-29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1047, H1187, H6465

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Baal Peor, Beth Peor, Mount Peor, Peor,

### Perizzite

#### Facts:

​The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

* The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
* Note that the clan of Perez, called the "Perezites," was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 09:20-21
* 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
* Exodus 03:16-18
* Genesis 13:07
* Joshua 03:9-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6522

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Perizzite, Perizzites

### Persia

#### Facts:

Persia was a country that also became a powerful empire founded by Cyrus the Great in 550 BC. The country of Persia was located southeast of Babylonia and Assyria in a region that is now the modern-day country of Iran.

* The people of Persia were called "Persians."
* Under King Cyrus' decree, the Jews were freed from their captivity in Babylon and allowed to go home, and the temple in Jerusalem was rebuilt, with funds provided by the Persian Empire.
* King Artaxerxes was the ruler of the Persian Empire when Ezra and Nehemiah went back to Jerusalem to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
* Esther became a queen of the Persian empire when she married King Xerxes.

(See also: [Xerxes](../names/ahasuerus.md), [Artaxerxes](../names/artaxerxes.md), [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Cyrus](../names/cyrus.md), [Esther](../names/esther.md), [Ezra](../names/ezra.md), [Nehemiah](../names/nehemiah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 36:20
* Daniel 10:13
* Esther 01:3-4
* Ezekiel 27:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6539, H6540, H6542, H6543

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Persia, Persian, Persians

### Peter

#### Related Words:

Cephas, Simon

#### Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

* Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
* Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
* God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
* Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(See also: [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:25
* Galatians 02:6-8
* Galatians 02:12
* Luke 22:58
* Mark 03:16
* Matthew 04:18-20
* Matthew 08:14
* Matthew 14:30
* Matthew 26:33-35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2786, G4074, G4613, G4826

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas, Simon son of Jonah, Simon, Simon's

### Pharaoh

#### Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

* Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
* These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
* Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
* Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as "Pharaoh."

(See also: [egypt](../names/egypt.md), [king](../other/king.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:9-10
* Acts 07:13
* Acts 07:21
* Genesis 12:15
* Genesis 40:07
* Genesis 41:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4428, H4714, H6547, G5328

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Pharaoh, king of Egypt, Pharaoh's

### Pharisee

#### Facts:

The Pharisees were an important, powerful group of Jewish religious leaders in Jesus' time.

* Many of them were middle class businessmen and some of them were also priests.
* Of all the Jewish leaders, the Pharisees were the most strict in obeying the Laws of Moses and other Jewish laws and traditions.
* They were very concerned about keeping the Jewish people separated from the influence of the Gentiles around them. The name "Pharisee" comes from the word to "separate."
* The Pharisees believed in life after death; they also believed in the existence of angels and other spiritual beings.
* The Pharisees and Sadducees actively opposed Jesus and the early Christians.

(See also: [council](../other/council.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [Sadducee](../kt/sadducee.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 26:04
* John 03:1-2
* Luke 11:44
* Matthew 03:07
* Matthew 05:20
* Matthew 09:11
* Matthew 12:02
* Matthew 12:38
* Philippians 03:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5330

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Pharisee, Pharisees

### Philip

#### Facts:

In the early Christian church in Jerusalem, Philip was one of seven leaders chosen to care for the poor and needy Christians, especially the widows.

* God used Philip to share the gospel with people in many different towns in the provinces of Judea and Galilee, including an Ethiopian man he met on the desert road to Gaza from Jerusalem.
* Years later Philip was living in Caesarea when Paul and his companions stayed at his house on their way back to Jerusalem.
* Most Bible scholars think that Philip the evangelist was not the same man as Jesus' apostle by that name. Some languages may prefer to use slightly different spellings for the names of these two men to make it clear they are different men.

(See also: [Philip](../names/philiptheapostle.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:5-6
* Acts 08:06
* Acts 08:13
* Acts 08:31
* Acts 08:36
* Acts 08:40

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5376

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philip, Philip the evangelist

### Philip

#### Facts:

Philip the apostle was one of the original twelve disciples of Jesus. He was from the town of Bethsaida.

* Philip brought Nathanael to meet Jesus.
* Jesus questioned Philip about how to provide food for a crowd of over 5,000 people.
* At the last Passover supper that Jesus ate with his disciples, he talked to them about God, his Father. Philip asked Jesus to show them the Father.
* Some languages may prefer to spell this Philip's name in a different way from the other Philip (the evangelist) to avoid confusion.

(See also: [Philip](../names/philip.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:14
* John 01:44
* John 06:06
* Luke 06:14
* Mark 03:17-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5376

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philip, Philip the apostle, the apostle Philip

### Philippi

#### Related Words

Philippians

#### Facts:

Philippi was a major city and Roman colony located in Macedonia in the northern part of ancient Greece. The people of Philippi were called "Philippians."

* Paul and Silas traveled to Philippi to preach about Jesus to the people there.
* While in Philippi, Paul and Silas were arrested, but God miraculously freed them.
* The New Testament book of Philippians is a letter that the apostle Paul wrote to the Christians in the church at Philippi.
* Note that this is a different city from Caesarea Philippi which was located in northeastern Israel near Mount Hermon.

(See also: [Caesarea](../names/caesarea.md), [Christian](../kt/christian.md), [church](../kt/church.md), [Macedonia](../names/macedonia.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Silas](../names/silas.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:1-2
* Acts 16:11
* Matthew 16:13-16
* Philippians 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5374, G5375

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philippi, Philippians

### Philistia

#### Facts:

Philistia is the name of a large region in the land of Canaan, located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea.

* The region was located along the very fertile coastal plain reaching from Joppa in the north to Gaza in the south. It was about 64 km long and 16 km wide.
* Philistia was occupied by the "Philistines," a powerful people group who were frequent enemies of the Israelites.

(See also: [Philistines](../names/philistines.md), [Gaza](../names/gaza.md), [Joppa](../names/joppa.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:9-10
* Joel 03:04
* Psalms 060:8-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H776, H6429, H6430

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philistia

### Philistines

#### Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia​ along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means "people of the sea."

* There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
* The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
* The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
* The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
* King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(See also: [Ashdod](../names/ashdod.md), [Ashkelon](../names/ashkelon.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Ekron](../names/ekron.md), [Gath](../names/gath.md), [Gaza](../names/gaza.md), [Goliath](../names/goliath.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
* 1 Samuel 13:04
* 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
* Genesis 10:11-14
* Psalm 056:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6429, H6430

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philistines, Philistine, Philistines', Philistine's

### Phinehas

#### Facts:

Phineas was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

* One of Aaron's grandsons was a priest named Phinehas, who strongly opposed the worship of false gods in Israel.
* Phineas saved the Israelites from a plague that Yahweh had sent to punish them for marrying Midianite women and worshiping their false gods.
* On several occasions Phinehas went with the Israelite army to destroy the Midianites.
* The other Phinehas mentioned in the Old Testament was one of the evil sons of Eli the priest during the time of the prophet Samuel.
* Phinehas and his brother Hophni were both killed when the Philistines attacked Israel and stole the Ark of the Covenant.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [Jordan River](../names/jordanriver.md), [Midian](../names/midian.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md), [Samuel](../names/samuel.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 04:04
* Ezra 08:02
* Joshua 22:13-14
* Numbers 25:6-7

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6372

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Phinehas, Phinehas'

### Phoenicia

#### Facts:

In ancient times, Phoenicia was a wealthy nation located in Canaan along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel.

* Phoenicia occupied an area of land that was in the western region of what is the present-day country of Lebanon.
* In New Testament times, the capital of Phoenicia was Tyre. Another important Phoenician city was Sidon. Phoenicia was near Syria, so people from that area were called "Syrophoenician."
* Phoenicians were well-known for their woodworking skills using their country's plentiful cedar trees, for their production of a costly purple dye, and for their ability to travel and trade by sea. They were also highly skilled boat builders.
* One of the earliest alphabets was created by the Phoenician people. Their alphabet was widely used because of their contact with many people groups through trading.

(See also: [cedar](../other/cedar.md), [purple](../other/purple.md), [Sidon](../names/sidon.md), [Tyre](../names/tyre.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 11:19-21
* Acts 15:3-4
* Acts 21:02
* Isaiah 23:10-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3667, G4949, G5403

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Phoenicia, Syrophoenician

### Pilate

#### Facts:

Pilate was the governor of the Roman province of Judea who sentenced Jesus to death.

* Because Pilate was the governor, he had the authority to put criminals to death.
* The Jewish religious leaders wanted Pilate to crucify Jesus, so they lied and said that Jesus was a criminal.
* Pilate realized that Jesus was not guilty, but he was afraid of the crowd and wanted to please them, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

(See also: [crucify](../kt/crucify.md), [governor](../other/governor.md), [guilt](../kt/guilt.md), [Judea](../names/judea.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:27-28
* Acts 13:28
* Luke 23:02
* Mark 15:02
* Matthew 27:13
* Matthew 27:58

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4091, G4194

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Pilate, Pontius Pilate

### Pontus

#### Facts:

Pontus was a Roman province during the time of the Roman Empire and the early Church. It was located along the southern coast of the Black Sea, in the northern part of what is now the country of Turkey.

* As recorded in the book of Acts, people from the province of Pontus were in Jerusalem when the Holy Spirit first came to the apostles on the Day of Pentecost.
* A believer named Aquila was from Pontus.
* When Peter was writing to Christians who were scattered into different regions, Pontus was one of the regions he mentioned.

(See also: [Aquila](../names/aquila.md), [Pentecost](../kt/pentecost.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:1-2
* Acts 02:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4193, G4195

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Pontus

### Potiphar

#### Facts:

Potiphar was an important official for the pharaoh of Egypt during the time that Joseph was sold as a slave to some Ishmaelites.

* Potiphar bought Joseph from the Ishmaelites and appointed him to be in charge of his household.
* When Joseph was falsely accused of doing wrong, Potiphar had Joseph put in prison.

(See also: [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Joseph (OT)](../names/josephot.md), [Pharaoh](../names/pharaoh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 37:34-36
* Genesis 39:02
* Genesis 39:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6318

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Potiphar, Potiphar's

### Priscilla

#### Facts:

Priscilla and her husband Aquila were Jewish Christians who worked with the apostle Paul in his missionary work. She was also known as Prisca.

* Priscilla and Aquila had left Rome because the emperor had forced the Christians to leave there.
* Paul met Aquila and Priscilla in Corinth. They were tentmakers and Paul joined them in this work.
* When Paul left Corinth to go to Syria, Priscilla and Aquila went with him.
* From Syria, the three of them went to Ephesus. When Paul left Ephesus, Priscilla and Aquila stayed behind and continued the work of preaching the gospel there.
* They especially taught a man named Apollos in Ephesus who believed in Jesus and was a gifted speaker and teacher.

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [Christian](../kt/christian.md), [Corinth](../names/corinth.md), [Ephesus](../names/ephesus.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [Syria](../names/syria.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
* 2 Timothy 04:19-22
* Acts 18:01
* Acts 18:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's:

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Priscilla, Prisca

### Promised Land

#### Related Ideas:

Beautiful Land

#### Facts:

The term "Promised Land" only occurs in the Bible stories, not the Bible text. It is an alternate way of referring to the land of Canaan which God had promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

* When Abram was living in the city of Ur, God commanded him to go live in the land of Canaan. He and his descendants, the Israelites, lived there for many years.
* When a severe famine caused there to be no food in Canaan, the Israelites moved to Egypt.
* Four hundred years later, God rescued the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and brought them back to Canaan again, the land God had promised to give them.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "Promised Land" can be translated as the "land that God said he would give to Abraham" or "land that God promised to Abraham" or "land God promised to his people" or "land of Canaan."
* In the Bible text, this term occurs as some form of "the land God promised."

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [promise](../kt/promise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 12:7
* Numbers 14:30
* Deuteronomy 8:1
* Hebrews 11:9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H776, H3068, H5414, H6643, H7650, G1093

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Beautiful Land, Promised Land

### Rabbah

#### Facts:

Rabbah was the most important city of the Ammonite people.

* In battles against the Ammonites, the Israelites often attacked Rabbah.
* Israel's King David captured Rabbah as one of his last conquests.
* The modern-day city Amman Jordan is now where Rabbah used to be located.

(See also: [Ammon](../names/ammon.md), [David](../names/david.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 20:1
* 2 Samuel 12:26
* Deuteronomy 03:11
* Ezekiel 25:3-5
* Jeremiah 49:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7237

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Rabbah

### Rabbi

#### Related Ideas:

Rabboni

#### Definition:

The term "Rabbi" literally means "my master" or "my teacher."

* It was a title of respect that was used to address a man who was a Jewish religious teacher, especially a teacher of God's laws.
* Both John the Baptist and Jesus were sometimes called "Rabbi" by their disciples.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate this term could include "My Master" or "My Teacher" or "Honorable Teacher" or "Religious Teacher." Some languages may capitalize a greeting like this, while others may not.
* The project language may also have a special way that teachers are normally addressed.
* Make sure the translation of this term does not indicate that Jesus was a schoolteacher.
* Also consider how "Rabbi" is translated in a Bible translation in a related language or a national language.

See:

(See also: [teacher](../other/teacher.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 01:49-51
* John 06:24-25
* Mark 14:43-46
* Matthew 23:8-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4461

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Rabbi, Rabboni

### Rachel

#### Facts:

Rachel was one of Jacob's wives. She and her sister Leah were the daughters of Laban, Jacob's uncle.

* Rachel was the mother of Joseph and Benjamin, whose descendants became two of the tribes of Israel.
* For many years, Rachel was not able to have any children. Then God enabled her to give birth to Joseph.
* Years later, as she gave birth to Benjamin, Rachel died, and Jacob buried her near Bethlehem.

(See also: [Bethlehem](../names/bethlehem.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Laban](../names/laban.md), [Leah](../names/leah.md), [Joseph (OT)](../names/josephot.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 29:06
* Genesis 29:19-20
* Genesis 29:30
* Genesis 31:06
* Genesis 33:1-3
* Matthew 02:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7354, G4478

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Rachel, Rachel's

### Rahab

#### Facts:

Rahab was a woman who lived in Jericho when Israel attacked the city. She was a prostitute.

* Rahab hid the two Israelites who came to spy on Jericho before the Israelites attacked it. She helped the spies escape back to the Israelite camp.
* Rahab became a believer in Yahweh.
* She and her family were spared when Jericho was destroyed. Then Rahab and her family lived with the Israelites.

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Jericho](../names/jericho.md), [prostitute](../other/prostitute.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 11:29-31
* James 02:25
* Joshua 02:21
* Joshua 06:17-19
* Matthew 01:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7343, G4460

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Rahab

### Ramah

#### Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

* Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
* When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before being moved to Babylon.
* Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(See also: [Benjamin](../names/benjamin.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 27:27
* 1 Samuel 02:11
* 2 Chronicles 16:1
* Jeremiah 31:15
* Joshua 18:25-28
* Matthew 02:17-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7414, G4471

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ramah

### Ramoth

#### Facts:

Ramoth was an important city in the mountains of Gilead near the Jordan River. It was also called Ramoth Gilead.

* Ramoth belonged to the Israelite tribe of Gad and was designated as a city of refuge.
* King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah waged war against the king of Aram at Ramoth. Ahab was killed in that battle.
* Sometime later, King Ahaziah and King Joram tried to take the city of Ramoth from the king of Aram.
* Ramoth Gilead was where Jehu was anointed king over Israel.

(See also: [Ahab](../names/ahab.md), [Ahaziah](../names/ahaziah.md), [Aram](../names/aram.md), [Gad](../names/gad.md), [Jehoshaphat](../names/jehoshaphat.md), [Jehu](../names/jehu.md), [Joram](../names/joram.md), [Jordan River](../names/jordanriver.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [refuge](../other/refuge.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:73
* 1 Kings 22:03
* 2 Chronicles 18:03
* 2 Kings 08:28-29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7216, H7418, H7433

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ramoth

### Rebekah

#### Facts:

Rebekah was a grand-daughter of Abraham's brother Nahor.

* God chose Rebekah to be the wife of Abraham's son Isaac.
* Rebekah left the region of Aram Naharaim where she lived and went with Abraham's servant to the region of the Negev where Isaac was living.
* For a long time Rebekah did not have any children, but finally God blessed her with twin boys, Esau and Jacob.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Aram](../names/aram.md), [Esau](../names/esau.md), [Isaac](../names/isaac.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Nahor](../names/nahor.md), [Negev](../names/negev.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 24:15
* Genesis 24:45
* Genesis 24:56
* Genesis 24:64
* Genesis 25:28
* Genesis 26:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7259

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Rebekah, Rebekah's

### Rehoboam

#### Facts:

Rehoboam was one of the sons of King Solomon, and he became the king of the nation of Israel after Solomon died.

* At the beginning of his reign, Rehoboam was severe with his people, so ten of the tribes of Israel rebelled against him and formed the "kingdom of Israel" in the north.
* Rehoboam continued as king of the southern kingdom of Judah, which consisted of the remaining two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
* Rehoboam was a wicked king who did not obey Yahweh, but worshiped false gods.

(See also: [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 03:10
* 1 Kings 11:41-43
* 1 Kings 14:21
* Matthew 01:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7346, G4497

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Rehoboam, Rehoboam's

### Reuben

#### Facts:

Reuben was the firstborn son of Jacob. His mother was Leah. Reuben's descendants were called Reubenites.

* When his brothers were planning to kill their younger brother Joseph, Reuben spared Joseph's life by telling them to put him into a pit instead.
* Reuben came back later to rescue Joseph, but the other brothers had sold him as a slave to merchants passing by.
* Reuben's descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

(See also: [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Joseph (OT)](../names/josephot.md), [Leah](../names/leah.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 29:32
* Genesis 35:21-22
* Genesis 42:22
* Genesis 42:37

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7205, H7206, G4502

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Reuben, Reubenites, Reubenite, Reuben's

### Rimmon

#### Facts:

Rimmon was the name of a man and of several places mentioned in the Bible. It was also the name of a false god.

* A man named Rimmon was a Benjamite from the city of Beeroth in Zebulun. This man's sons murdered Ishbosheth, the crippled son of Jonathan.
* Rimmon was a town in the southern part of Judah, in the region occupied by the tribe of Benjamin.
* The "rock of Rimmon" was a place of safety where the Benjamites went to escape from being killed in a battle.
* Rimmon Perez was an unknown location in the Judean wilderness.
* The Syrian commander Naaman spoke of the temple of the false god Rimmon, where the king of Syria worshiped.

(See also: [Benjamin](../names/benjamin.md), [Judea](../names/judea.md), [Naaman](../names/naaman.md), [Syria](../names/syria.md), [Zebulun](../names/zebulun.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 05:18
* 2 Samuel 04:5-7
* Judges 20:45-46
* Judges 21:13-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7417

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Rimmon, Rimmon's

### Rome

#### Facts:

In New Testament times, the city of Rome was the center of the Roman Empire. It is now the capital city of the modern-day country of Italy.

* The Roman Empire ruled over all the regions around the Mediterranean Sea, including Israel.
* The term "Roman" referred to anything relating to the regions that the government in Rome controlled, including Roman citizens and Roman officials.
* The apostle Paul was taken to the city of Rome as a prisoner because he preached the good news about Jesus.
* The New Testament book of "Romans" is a letter that Paul wrote to the Christians in Rome.

(See also: [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [the sea](../names/mediterranean.md), [Pilate](../names/pilate.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 01:15-18
* Acts 22:25
* Acts 28:14
* John 11:48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4514, G4516

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Rome, Roman, Romans

### Ruth

#### Facts:

Ruth was a Moabite woman who lived during the time when judges were leading Israel. She married an Israelite man in Moab after he had moved there with his family because of a famine during the time when judges were leading Israel.

* Ruth's husband died, and some time after that she left Moab to travel with her mother-in-law Naomi, who was returning to her hometown, Bethlehem in Israel.
* Ruth was loyal to Naomi and worked hard to provide food for her.
* She also committed herself to serving the one true God of Israel.
* Ruth married an Israelite man named Boaz and gave birth to a son who became the grandfather of King David. Because King David was an ancestor of Jesus Christ so was Ruth.

(See also: [Bethlehem](../names/bethlehem.md), [Boaz](../names/boaz.md), [David](../names/david.md), [judge](../other/judgeposition.md)])

#### Bible References:

* Matthew 01:05
* Ruth 01:3-5
* Ruth 03:09
* Ruth 04:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7327, G4503

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ruth, Ruth's

### Sabbath

#### Definition:

The term "Sabbath" refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

* After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
* The command to "keep the Sabbath holy" is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
* Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
* Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called "Sabbath day" rather than only the Sabbath.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This could also be translated as "resting day" or "day for resting" or "day of not working" or "God's day of rest."
* Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in "Sabbath Day" or "Resting Day."
* Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [rest](../other/rest.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
* Acts 13:26-27
* Exodus 31:14
* Isaiah 56:6-7
* Lamentations 02:06
* Leviticus 19:03
* Luke 13:14
* Mark 02:27
* Matthew 12:02
* Nehemiah 10:32-33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sabbath, Sabbaths

### Sadducee

#### Definition:

The Sadducees were a political group of Jewish priests during the time of Jesus Christ. They supported Roman rule and did not believe in the resurrection.

* Many Sadducees were wealthy, upper-class Jews who held powerful leadership positions such as chief priest and high priest.
* The duties of the Sadducees included taking care of the temple complex and priestly tasks such as offering sacrifices.
* The Sadducees and the Pharisees strongly influenced the Roman leaders to crucify Jesus.
* Jesus spoke against these two religious groups because of their selfishness and hypocrisy.

(See also: [chief priests](../other/chiefpriests.md), [council](../other/council.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [hypocrite](../kt/hypocrite.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [Pharisee](../kt/pharisee.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:03
* Acts 05:17-18
* Luke 20:27
* Matthew 03:07
* Matthew 16:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4523

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sadducee, Sadducees

### Salt Sea

#### Facts:

The Salt Sea (also called the Dead Sea) is a lake in the Jordan River Valley. The Jordan River flows into the sea.

* In Bible times, Israel was west of the sea, and Moab was east of the sea.
* Because it is smaller than most seas, it could be called "Salt Lake."
* This sea has such a high concentration of minerals (or "salts") that nothing can live in its waters. Its lack of plants and animals is the cause of the name "Dead Sea."
* In the Old Testament, this sea is also called the "Sea of Arabah" and the "Sea of Negev" because of its location near the regions of Arabah and Negev.

(See also: [Ammon](../names/ammon.md), [Arabah](../names/arabah.md), , [Jordan River](../names/jordanriver.md), [Moab](../names/moab.md), [Negev](../names/negev.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 20:1-2
* Deuteronomy 03:17
* Joshua 03:14-16
* Numbers 34:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3220, H4417

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Salt Sea, Dead Sea

### Samaria

#### Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The Plain of Sharon is west of this region, and the Jordan River is east of this region. The people of Samaria were called Samaritans.

* In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
* When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
* The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
* Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
* The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
* In New Testament times, the region of Galilee was north of Samaria, and the region of Judea was south of Samaria.

(See also: [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Galilee](../names/galilee.md), [Judea](../names/judea.md), [Sharon](../names/sharon.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:1-3
* Acts 08:05
* John 04:4-5
* Luke 09:51-53
* Luke 10:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G4540, G4541, G4542

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Samaria, Samaria's, Samaritan, Samaritans

### Samson

#### Facts:

Samson was one of the judges, or deliverers, of Israel. He was from the tribe of Dan.

* God gave Samson superhuman strength, which he used to fight against Israel's enemies, the Philistines.
* Samson was put under a vow to never cut his hair and to never drink wine or any other fermented drink. As long as he kept this vow, God continued to give him strength.
* He finally broke his vow and allowed his hair to be cut, enabling the Philistines to capture him.
* While Samson was in captivity, God enabled him to regain his strength and gave him the opportunity to destroy the temple of the false god Dagon, along with many Philistines.

(See also: [deliver](../other/deliverer.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 11:32-34
* Judges 13:25
* Judges 16:02
* Judges 16:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8123, G4546

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Samson, Samson's

### Samuel

#### Facts:

Samuel was a prophet and the last judge of Israel. He anointed both Saul and David as kings over Israel.

* Samuel was born to Elkanah and Hannah in the town of Ramah.
* Hannah had been barren, so she had prayed earnestly that God would give her a son. Samuel was the answer to that prayer.
* Hannah promised that if, in answer to her desperate prayer that God would give her a male child, her request was granted, she would dedicate her son to Yahweh.
* To fulfill her promise to God, when Samuel was a young boy, Hannah sent him to live with and help Eli the priest in the temple.
* God raised up Samuel to be a great prophet.

(See also: [Hannah](../names/hannah.md), [judge](../kt/judge.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 01:19
* 1 Samuel 09:24
* 1 Samuel 12:17
* Acts 03:24
* Acts 13:20
* Hebrews 11:32-34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8050, G4545

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Samuel, Samuel's

### Sarah

#### Facts:

* Sarah was Abraham's wife.
* Her name was originally "Sarai," but God changed it to "Sarah."
* Sarah gave birth to Isaac, the son God had promised to give her and Abraham.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Isaac](../names/isaac.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 11:30
* Genesis 11:31
* Genesis 17:15
* Genesis 25:9-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8283, H8297, G4564

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sarah, Sarah's, Sarai

### Satan

#### Related Ideas:

devil, evil one

#### Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

* The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
* Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
* God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
* The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
* The word "devil" means "accuser."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
* "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
* These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
* Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [demon](../kt/demon.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md), [tempt](../kt/tempt.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:08
* 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
* 1 Timothy 05:15
* Acts 13:10
* Job 01:08
* Mark 08:33
* Zechariah 03:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7854, G1140, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Satan, devil, devil's, evil one

### Saul

#### Facts:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

* Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
* Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
* In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(See also: [king](../other/king.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
* 1 Samuel 09:01
* 2 Samuel 01:1-2
* Acts 13:22
* Psalm 018:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7586, G4549

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Saul, Saul's

### Savior

#### Definitions:

The term "savior" refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

* In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel's Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
* In the New Testament, "Savior" is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If possible, "Savior" should be translated with a word that is related to the words "save" and "salvation."
* Ways to translate this term could include "the One who saves" or "God, who saves" or "who delivers from danger" or "who rescues from enemies" or "Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin."

(See also: [deliver](../other/deliverer.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [save](../kt/save.md), [save](../kt/save.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 04:10
* 2 Peter 02:20
* Acts 05:29-32
* Isaiah 60:15-16
* Luke 01:47
* Psalms 106:19-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3467, G4990

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Savior, savior

### Sea of Galilee

#### Facts:

The "Sea of Galilee" is a lake in eastern Israel. It was also referred to as the "Sea of Tiberias" and the "lake of Gennesaret." In the Old Testament it was called the "Sea of Kinnereth."

* The water of this lake flows south through the Jordan River down to the Salt Sea.
* Capernaum, Bethsaida, Gennesaret, and Tiberias were some of the towns located on the Sea of Galilee during New Testament times.
* Many events of Jesus' life took place on or near the Sea of Galilee.
* This term could also be translated as "lake in the region of Galilee" or "Lake Galilee" or "lake near Tiberias (Gennesaret)."

(See also: [Capernaum](../names/capernaum.md), [Galilee](../names/galilee.md), [Jordan River](../names/jordanriver.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 06:1-3
* Luke 05:01
* Mark 01:16-18
* Matthew 04:12-13
* Matthew 04:18-20
* Matthew 08:18-20
* Matthew 13:1-2
* Matthew 15:29-31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3220, H3672, G1056, G1082, G2281, G3041, G5085

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias, Kinnereth

### Sea of Reeds

#### Facts:

The "Sea of Reeds" was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the "Red Sea."

* The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
* The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God performed a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
* The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
* This could also be translated as "Reed Sea."

(See also: [Arabia](../names/arabia.md)**.** [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:35-37
* Exodus 13:17-18
* Joshua 04:22-24
* Numbers 14:23-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3220, H5488, G2063, G2281

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

### Sennacherib

#### Facts:

Sennacherib was a powerful king of Assyria who caused Nineveh to become a rich, important city.

* King Sennacherib is known for his wars against Babylon and the kingdom of Judah.
* He was a very arrogant king and he ridiculed Yahweh.
* Sennacherib attacked Jerusalem during the time of King Hezekiah.
* Yahweh caused Sennacherib's army to be destroyed.
* The Old Testament books of Kings and Chronicles record some of the events of Sennacherib's reign.

(See also: [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Hezekiah](../names/hezekiah.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [mock](../other/mock.md), [Nineveh](../names/nineveh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 32:1
* 2 Chronicles 32:16-17
* 2 Kings 18:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5576

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sennacherib, Sennacherib's

### Seth

#### Facts:

In the book of Genesis, Seth was the third son of Adam and Eve.

* Eve said that Seth was given to her in place of her son Abel, who was murdered by his brother Cain.
* Noah was one of Seth's descendants, so everyone who has lived since the time of the Flood is also a descendant of Seth.
* Seth and his family were the first people to "call on the name of the Lord."

(See also: [Abel](../names/abel.md), [Cain](../names/cain.md), [call](../kt/call.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [flood](../other/flood.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:01
* Luke 03:36-38
* Numbers 24:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8352, G4589

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Seth, Seth's

### Sharon

#### Related Words

Lasharon

#### Facts:

Sharon was the name of a flat, fertile area of land along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, south of Mount Carmel. It is also known as the "Plain of Sharon."

* Several cities mentioned in the Bible were located on the Plain of Sharon, including Joppa, Lydda, and Caesarea.
* This could be translated as "the plain called Sharon" or "Sharon Plain."
* People who lived in the region of Sharon were called "Sharonites."
* "Lasharon" is probably another name for "Sharon."

(See also: [Caesarea](../names/caesarea.md), [Carmel](../names/carmel.md), [Joppa](../names/joppa.md), [the sea](../names/mediterranean.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:16-17
* Acts 09:35
* Isaiah 33:9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8289, H8290

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sharon, Plain of Sharon, Lasharon

### Sheba

#### Facts:

In ancient times, Sheba was an ancient civilization or region of land that was located somewhere in southern Arabia. The people of Sheba were called Sabeans.

* The region or country of Sheba was probably located near what are now the present-day countries of Yemen and Ethiopia.
* Its inhabitants were probably descendants of Ham.
* The Queen of Sheba came to visit King Solomon when she heard the fame of his riches and wisdom.
* There were also several men named "Sheba" listed in genealogies in the Old Testament. It is possible that the name of the region of Sheba came from one of these men.
* The city of Beersheba was shortened to Sheba one time in the Old Testament.

(See also: [Arabia](../names/arabia.md), [Beersheba](../names/beersheba.md), [Ethiopia](../names/ethiopia.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:8-10
* 1 Kings 10:1-2
* Isaiah 60:6-7
* Psalms 072:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7614

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sheba, Sabeans

### Shechem

#### Facts:

Shechem was a town in Canaan located about 40 miles north of Jerusalem. Shechem was also the name of a man in the Old Testament.

* The town of Shechem was where Jacob settled after being reconciled to his brother Esau.
* Jacob bought land from the sons of Hamor the Hivite in Shechem. This land later became his family burial ground and the place where his sons buried him.
* Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, resulting in Jacob's sons killing all the men in the town of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: [Hamor](../names/hamor.md)

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Esau](../names/esau.md), [Hamor](../names/hamor.md), [Hivite](../names/hivite.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:14-16
* Genesis 12:6-7
* Genesis 33:19
* Genesis 37:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7928, H7930

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Shechem, Shechem's

### Shem

#### Facts:

Shem was one of Noah's three sons, all of whom went with him into the ark during the worldwide flood described in the book of Genesis.

* Shem was the ancestor of Abraham and his descendants.
* The descendants of Shem were known as "Semites"; they spoke "Semitic" languages such as Hebrew and Arabic.
* The Bible indicates that Shem lived nearly 600 years.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Arabia](../names/arabia.md), [ark](../kt/ark.md), [flood](../other/flood.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 05:32
* Genesis 06:10
* Genesis 07:13-14
* Genesis 10:1
* Genesis 10:31
* Genesis 11:10
* Luke 03:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8035, G4590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Shem, Shem's

### Shiloh

#### Facts:

Shiloh was a walled Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites under the leadership of Joshua.

* The city of Shiloh was located west of the Jordan River and northeast of the city of Bethel.
* During the time that Joshua was leading Israel, the city of Shiloh was a meeting place for the people of Israel.
* The twelve tribes of Israel met together at Shiloh to hear Joshua tell them which portion of the land of Canaan had been assigned to each of them.
* Before any temple was built in Jerusalem, Shiloh was the place where the Israelites came to sacrifice to God.
* When Samuel was a young boy, his mother Hannah took him to live in Shiloh to be trained by the priest Eli to serve Yahweh.

(See also: [Bethel](../names/bethel.md), [dedicate](../other/dedicate.md), [Hannah](../names/hannah.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [Jordan River](../names/jordanriver.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [Samuel](../names/samuel.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 02:26-27
* 1 Samuel 01:9-10
* Joshua 18:1-2
* Judges 18:30-31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7886, H7887

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Shiloh

### Shimei

#### Facts:

Shimei was the name of several men in the Old Testament. The descendants of Shimei were called Shemeites.

* Shimei son of Gera was a Benjamite who cursed King David and threw stones at him as he was fleeing Jerusalem to escape being killed by his son Absalom.
* There were also several Levite priests in the Old Testament who were named Shimei.

(See also: [Absalom](../names/absalom.md), [Benjamin](../names/benjamin.md), [Levite](../names/levite.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:17
* 1 Kings 01:08
* 2 Samuel 16:13
* Zechariah 12:12-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8096, H8097

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Shimei, Shimeites, Shimei's

### Shinar

#### Facts:

Shinar was the name of a plain or region in southern Mesopotamia.

* Shinar later became known as "Chaldea" and then, "Babylonia."
* Ancient peoples living in the city of Babel in the Plain of Shinar built a tall tower to try to make themselves great.
* Generations later, the Jewish patriarch Abraham lived in the city of Ur in this region, which by that time was called "Chaldea."

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Babel](../names/babel.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Chaldea](../names/chaldeans.md), [Mesopotamia](../names/mesopotamia.md), [patriarchs](../other/patriarchs.md), [Ur](../names/ur.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 10:8-10
* Genesis 14:01
* Genesis 14:7-9
* Isaiah 11:10-11
* Zechariah 05:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8152

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Shinar

### Sidon

#### Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

* The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
* The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
* In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md), [Phoenicia](../names/phonecia.md), [the sea](../names/mediterranean.md), [Tyre](../names/tyre.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 12:20
* Acts 27:3-6
* Genesis 10:15-18
* Genesis 10:19
* Mark 03:7-8
* Matthew 11:22
* Matthew 15:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6721, H6722, G4605, G4606

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sidon, Sidonians

### Silas

#### Facts:

Silas was a leader among the believers in Jerusalem. He was also known as Silvanus.

* The elders of the church in Jerusalem appointed Silas to go with Paul and Barnabas to take a letter to the city of Antioch.
* Silas later traveled with Paul to other cities to teach people about Jesus.
* Paul and Silas were put in jail in the city of Philippi. They sang praises to God while they were there and God released them from the jail. The jailer became a Christian as a result of their testimony.

(See also: [Antioch](../names/antioch.md), [Barnabas](../names/barnabas.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Philippi](../names/philippi.md), [prison](../other/prison.md), [testimony](../kt/testimony.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 05:12
* 1 Thessalonians 01:1
* 2 Thessalonians 01:01
* Acts 15:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4609, G4610

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Silas, Silvanus

### Simeon

#### Facts:

In the Bible, there were several men named Simeon.

* In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob (Israel) was named Simeon. His mother was Leah. His descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel. They were the Simeonites.
* The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah.
* When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [dedicate](../other/dedicate.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 29:33
* Genesis 34:25
* Genesis 42:35-36
* Genesis 43:21-23
* Luke 02:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8095, H8099, G4826

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Simeon, Simeon's, Simeonites

### Simon the Zealot

#### Facts:

Simon the Zealot was one of Jesus' twelve disciples.

* Simon is mentioned three times in the listing of Jesus' disciples, but little else is known about him.
* Simon was one of the Eleven who met to pray together in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up into heaven.
* The term "zealot" may mean that Simon was a member of "the Zealots," a Jewish religious party that was very zealous in upholding the Law of Moses while strongly opposing the Roman government.
* Or, "zealot" may simply mean "the zealous one," referring to Simon's religious zeal.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 03:17-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2208, G2581, G4613

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Simon the Zealot, Simon ... Zealot

### Sinai

#### Facts:

Mount Sinai is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula. It was also known as "Mount Horeb."

* Mount Sinai is part of a large, rocky desert.
* The Israelites came to Mount Sinai as they were traveling from Egypt to the Promised Land.
* God gave Moses the Ten Commandments on Mount Sinai.

(See also: [desert](../other/desert.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Horeb](../names/horeb.md), [Promised Land](../kt/promisedland.md), [Ten Commandments](../other/tencommandments.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:29-30
* Exodus 16:1-3
* Galatians 04:24
* Leviticus 27:34
* Numbers 01:17-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5514, G3735, G4614

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sinai, Mount Sinai

### Sodom

#### Facts:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

* The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
* The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
* The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Gomorrah](../names/gomorrah.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 10:19
* Genesis 13:12
* Matthew 10:15
* Matthew 11:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5467, G4670

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sodom

### Solomon

#### Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

* When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
* Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
* Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
* Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(See also: [Bathsheba](../names/bathsheba.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:47-50
* Luke 12:27
* Matthew 01:7-8
* Matthew 06:29
* Matthew 12:42

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8010, G4672

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Solomon, Solomon's, King Solomon, King Solomon's

### Son of God

#### Related Ideas:

the Son

#### Facts:

The term "Son of God" refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as "the Son."

* Unlike anyone else, God the Father, the Son of God, and the Holy Spirit are all one God.
* God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all fully and equally God.
* The Son of God has the same character as God the Father.

Because Jesus is God's Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* For the term "Son of God," it is best to translate "Son" with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
* Make sure the word used to translate "son" fits with the word used to translate "father" and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
* Using a capital letter to begin "Son" may help show that this is talking about God.
* The phrase "the Son" is a shortened form of "the Son of God," especially when it occurs in the same context as "the Father."

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [God](../kt/god.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [son](../kt/son.md), [sons of God](../kt/sonsofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:10
* Acts 09:20
* Colossians 01:17
* Galatians 02:20
* Hebrews 04:14
* John 03:18
* Luke 10:22
* Matthew 11:27
* Revelation 02:18
* Romans 08:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Son of God, the Son

### Son of Man

#### Related Ideas:

mankind, son of man

#### Definition:

The title "Son of Man" was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying "I" or "me."

* In the Bible, "son of man" could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean "human being."
* Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as "son of man." For example he said, "You, son of man, must prophesy."
* The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a "son of man" coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
* Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
* These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When Jesus uses the term "Son of Man" it could be translated as "the One who became a human being" or "the Man from heaven."
* Some translators occasionally include "I" or "me" with this title (as in "I, the Son of Man") to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
* Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
* When used to refer to a person, "son of man" could also be translated as "you, a human being" or "you, man" or "human being" or "man."

(See also: [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [son](../kt/son.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:56
* Daniel 07:14
* Ezekiel 43:6-8
* John 03:12-13
* Luke 06:05
* Mark 02:10
* Matthew 13:37
* Psalms 080:17-18
* Revelation 14:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H120, H606, H1121, H1247, G444, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Son of Man, mankind, son of man

### Stephen

#### Facts:

Stephen is most remembered as the first Christian martyr, that is, the first person to be killed because of his faith in Jesus. The facts about his life and death are recorded in the book of Acts.

* Stephen was appointed by the early Church in Jerusalem to serve the Christians as a deacon by providing food for widows and other Christians in need.
* Certain Jews falsely accused Stephen of speaking against God and against the laws of Moses.
* Stephen boldly spoke the truth about Jesus the Messiah, beginning with the history of God's dealings with the people of Israel.
* The Jewish leaders were furious and executed Stephen by stoning him to death outside the city.
* His execution was witnessed by Saul of Tarsus, who later became the apostle Paul.
* Stephen is also well-known for his last words before he died, "Lord, please do not hold this sin against them," which showed the love he had for others.

(See also: [appoint](../kt/appoint.md), [deacon](../kt/deacon.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [stone](../kt/stone.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:05
* Acts 06:09
* Acts 06:10-11
* Acts 06:12
* Acts 07:59
* Acts 11:19
* Acts 22:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4736

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Stephen, Stephen's

### Sukkoth

#### Facts:

Sukkoth was the name of two Old Testament cities. The word "sukkoth" (some English versions say "succoth" or "Succoth") means "shelters."

* The first city called Sukkoth was located on the east side of the Jordan River.
* Jacob stayed at Sukkoth with his family and flocks, building shelters for them there.
* Hundreds of years later, Gideon and his exhausted men stopped at Sukkoth as they were chasing the Midanites, but the people there refused to give them any food.
* The second Sukkoth was located on the northern border of Egypt and was a place where the Israelites stopped after they crossed the Red Sea as they were escaping from slavery in Egypt.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 07:46
* Exodus 12:37-40
* Joshua 13:27-28
* Judges 08:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5523, H5524

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sukkoth

### Syria

#### Facts:

Syria is a country located northeast of Israel. During the time of the New Testament, it was a province under the rule of the Roman Empire.

* In the Old Testament time period, the Syrians were strong military enemies of the Israelites.
* Naaman was a commander of the Syrian army who was cured of leprosy by the prophet Elisha.
* Many inhabitants of Syria are descendants of Aram, who was descended from Noah's son Shem.
* Damascus, the capital city of Syria, was mentioned many times in the Bible.
* Saul went to the city of Damascus with plans to persecute Christians there, but Jesus stopped him.

(See also: [Aram](../names/aram.md), [commander](../other/commander.md), [Damascus](../names/damascus.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [Elisha](../names/elisha.md), [leprosy](../other/leprosy.md), [Naaman](../names/naaman.md), [persecute](../other/persecute.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:23
* Acts 15:41
* Acts 20:03
* Galatians 01:21-24
* Matthew 04:23-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H758, G4947, G4948

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Syria, Syrian

### Tamar

#### Facts:

Tamar was the name of several women in the Old Testament. It was also the name of several cities or other places in the Old Testament.

* Tamar was the daughter-in-law of Judah. She gave birth to Perez who was an ancestor of Jesus Christ.
* One of King David's daughters was named Tamar; she was the sister of Absalom. Her half-brother Amnon raped her and left her desolate.
* Absalom also had a daughter named Tamar.
* A city called "Hazezon Tamar" was the same as the city of Engedi on the western shore of the Salt Sea.
* There was also a place called "Baal Tamar," and general references to a place called "Tamar" which may have been different from the cities.

(See also: [Absalom](../names/absalom.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [Amnon](../names/amnon.md), [David](../names/david.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:04
* 2 Samuel 13:02
* 2 Samuel 14:25-27
* Genesis 38:6-7
* Genesis 38:24
* Matthew 01:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1193, H2688, H8559

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Tamar, Tamar's

### Tarshish

#### Facts:

Tarshish was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a city.

One of Japheth's grandsons was named Tarshish.

Tarshish was also the name of one of the wise men of King Ahashuerus.

The city of Tarshish was a very prosperous port city, whose ships carried valuable products to buy, sell, or trade.

This city was associated with Tyre and is thought to have been a Phoenician city that was somewhat distant from Israel, perhaps on the southern coast of Spain.

The phrase "ship of Tarshish" refers to a ship capable of sailing long distances across the sea. To "go to Tarshish" was to go anywhere far across the sea.

The Old Testament prophet Jonah boarded a ship bound for the city of Tarshish instead of obeying God's command to go preach to Nineveh.

The phrase "ship of Tarshish" can be translated "seaworthy ship" or "oceangoing ship." The phrase "go to Tarshish" can be translated "go across the sea" or "go far away."

(See also: [Esther](../names/esther.md), [Japheth](../names/japheth.md), [Jonah](../names/jonah.md), [Nineveh](../names/nineveh.md), [Phoenicia](../names/phonecia.md), [wise men](../other/wisemen.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 10:2-5
* Isaiah 02:16
* Jeremiah 10:09
* Jonah 01:03
* Psalms 048:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8659

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Tarshish

### Tarsus

#### Facts:

Tarsus was a prosperous city in the Roman province of Cilicia, in what is now south central Turkey.

* Tarsus was located along a major river and near the Mediterranean Sea, so it was part of an important trade route.
* At one time it was the capital of Cilicia.
* In the New Testament, Tarsus was best known as the hometown of Paul the apostle.

(See also: [Cilicia](../names/cilicia.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [province](../other/province.md), [the sea](../names/mediterranean.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:11
* Acts 09:30
* Acts 11:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5018, G5019

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Tarsus

### Ten Commandments

#### Definitions:

The "Ten Commandments" were commands that God gave to Moses on Mount Sinai while the Israelites were living in the desert on their way to the land of Canaan. God wrote these commands on two large slabs of stone.

* God gave the Israelites many commands to obey, but the Ten Commandments were special commands to help the Israelites love and worship God and love other people.
* These commandments were also part of God's covenant with his people. By obeying what God had commanded them to do, the people of Israel would show that they loved God and belonged to him.
* The stone slabs with the commandments written on them were kept in the Ark of the Covenant, which was located in the most holy place of the tabernacle and later, the temple.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [command](../kt/command.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [desert](../other/desert.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [Sinai](../names/sinai.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 04:13-14
* Deuteronomy 10:3-4
* Exodus 34:27-28
* Luke 18:18-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1697, H6235

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ten Commandments

### Terah

#### Facts:

Terah was a descendant of Noah's son Shem. He was the father of Abram, Nahor and Haran.

* Terah left his home in Ur in order to go to the land of Canaan with his son Abram, his nephew Lot, and Abram's wife Sarai.
* On the way to Canaan, Terah and his family lived for years in the city of Haran in Mesopotamia. Terah died in Haran at the age of 205.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Haran](../names/haran.md), [Lot](../names/lot.md), [Mesopotamia](../names/mesopotamia.md), [Nahor](../names/nahor.md), [Sarah](../names/sarah.md), [Shem](../names/shem.md), [Ur](../names/ur.md))

#### Bible References:

Genesis 11:31-32

* 1 Chronicles 01:24-27
* Luke 03:33-35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8646, G2291

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Terah, Terah's

### Thessalonica

#### Facts:

In New Testament times, Thessalonica was the capital city of Macedonia in the ancient Roman empire. The people living in that city were called the "Thessalonians."

* The city of Thessalonica was an important seaport and was also located along a major road that connected Rome to the eastern part of the Roman empire.
* Paul, along with Silas and Timothy, visited Thessalonica on his second missionary journey and as a result, a church was established there. Later, Paul also visited this city on his third missionary journey.
* Paul wrote two letters to the Christians in Thessalonica. These letters (1 Thessalonians and 2 Thessalonians) are included in the New Testament.

(See also: [Macedonia](../names/macedonia.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 01:1
* 2 Thessalonians 01:01
* 2 Timothy 04:9-10
* Acts 17:01
* Philippians 04:14-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2331, G2332

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Thessalonica, Thessalonian, Thessalonians

### Thomas

#### Facts:

Thomas was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his disciples and later, apostles. He was also known as "Didymus," which means "twin."

* Near the end of Jesus' life, he told his disciples that he was going away to be with the Father and would prepare a place for them to be with him. Thomas asked Jesus how they could know the way to get there when they didn't even know where he was going.
* After Jesus died and came back to life, Thomas said he would not believe that Jesus was really alive again unless he could see and feel the scars where Jesus had been wounded.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* John 11:15-16
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 03:17-19
* Matthew 10:2-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2381

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Thomas, Thomas'

### Timothy

#### Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

* Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
* The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
* Two books in the New Testament (I Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul that provide guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(See also: [appoint](../kt/appoint.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [church](../kt/church.md), [Greek](../names/greek.md), [minister](../kt/minister.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 03:02
* 1 Timothy 01:02
* Acts 16:03
* Colossians 01:01
* Philemon 01:01
* Philippians 01:01
* Philippians 02:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5095

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Timothy, Timothy's

### Tirzah

#### Facts:

Tirzah was an important Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites. It was also the name of a daughter of Gilead, a descendant of Manasseh.

* The city Tirzah was located in the region occupied by the tribe of Manasseh. It is thought that the city was about 10 miles north of the city of Shechem.
* Years later, Tirzah became a temporary capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel, during the reigns of four kings of Israel.
* Tirzah was also the name of one of Manasseh's granddaughters. They asked to be given a portion of the land since their father had died and he had no sons to inherit it as would normally be the custom.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [inherit](../kt/inherit.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [Manasseh](../names/manasseh.md), [Shechem](../names/shechem.md))

#### Bible References:

* Numbers 27:1
* Numbers 36:11
* Song of Solomon 06:4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8656

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Tirzah

### Titus

#### Facts:

Titus was a Gentile. He was trained by Paul to be a leader in the early churches.

* A letter written to Titus by Paul is one of the books of the New Testament.
* In this letter Paul instructed Titus to appoint elders for the churches on the island of Crete.
* In some of his other letters to Christians, Paul mentions Titus as someone who encouraged him and brought him joy.

(See also: [appoint](../kt/appoint.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [church](../kt/church.md), [circumcise](../kt/circumcise.md), [Crete](../names/crete.md), [elder](../other/elder.md), [encourage](../other/courage.md), [instruct](../other/instruct.md), [minister](../kt/minister.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:10
* Galatians 02:1-2
* Galatians 02:3-5
* Titus 01:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Titus, Titus'

### Troas

#### Facts:

The city of Troas was a seaport located on the northwest coast of the ancient Roman province of Asia.

* Paul visited Troas at least three times during his trips to different regions to preach the gospel.
* On one occasion in Troas, Paul preached long into the night and a young man named Eutychus fell asleep while he was listening. Because he had been sitting in an open window, Eutychus fell down a long way and died. Through God's power, Paul raised this young man back to life.
* When Paul was in Rome, he asked Timothy to bring him his scrolls and his cloak, which he had left behind in Troas.

(See also: [Asia](../names/asia.md), [preach](../other/preach.md), [province](../other/province.md), [raise](../other/raise.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [scroll](../other/scroll.md), [Timothy](../names/timothy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 02:13
* 2 Timothy 04:11-13
* Acts 16:08
* Acts 20:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5174

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Troas

### Tubal

#### Facts:

There were several men in the Old Testament who had the name "Tubal."

* One man named Tubal was one of the sons of Japheth.
* A man named "Tubal-Cain" was a son of Lamech and descendant of Cain.
* Tubal was also the name of a people group mentioned by the prophets Isaiah and Ezekiel.

(See also: [Cain](../names/cain.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [Ezekiel](../names/ezekiel.md), [Isaiah](../names/isaiah.md), [Japheth](../names/japheth.md), [Lamech](../names/lamech.md), [people group](../other/peoplegroup.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:05
* Ezekiel 27:12-13
* Genesis 10:2-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8422, H8423

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Tubal

### Tychicus

#### Facts:

Tychicus was one of Paul's fellow ministers of the gospel.

* Tychicus accompanied Paul on at least one of his missionary journeys to Asia.
* Paul described him as "beloved" and "faithful."
* Tychicus carried Paul's letters to Ephesus and Colosse.

(See also: [Asia](../names/asia.md), [beloved](../kt/beloved.md), [Colossae](../names/colossae.md), [Ephesus](../names/ephesus.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [minister](../kt/minister.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:11-13
* Colossians 04:09
* Titus 03:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5190

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Tychicus, Tychicus'

### Tyre

#### Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

* Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
* Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
* King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
* Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
* Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [cedar](../other/cedar.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [the sea](../names/mediterranean.md), [Phoenicia](../names/phonecia.md), [Sidon](../names/sidon.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 12:20
* Mark 03:7-8
* Matthew 11:22
* Matthew 15:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6865, H6876, G5183, G5184

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Tyre, Tyrians

### Ur

#### Facts:

Ur was an important city along the Euphrates River in the ancient region of Chaldea, which was part of Mesopotamia. This region was located in what is now the modern-day country of Iraq.

* Abraham was from the city of Ur and it was from there that God called him to leave to go to the land of Canaan.
* Haran, the brother of Abraham and father of Lot, died in Ur. This was probably a factor that influenced Lot to leave Ur with Abraham.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Chaldea](../names/chaldeans.md), [Euphrates River](../names/euphrates.md), [Haran](../names/haran.md), [Lot](../names/lot.md), [Mesopotamia](../names/mesopotamia.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 11:27-28
* Genesis 11:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H218

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ur

### Uriah

#### Facts:

Uriah was a righteous man and one of King David's best soldiers. He is often referred to as "Uriah the Hittite."

* Uriah had a very beautiful wife named Bathsheba.
* David committed adultery with Uriah's wife, and she became pregnant with David's child.
* To cover up this sin, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle. Then David married Bathsheba.
* Another man named Uriah was a priest during the time of King Ahaz.

(See also: [Ahaz](../names/ahaz.md), [Bathsheba](../names/bathsheba.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Hittite](../names/hittite.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 15:05
* 2 Samuel 11:03
* 2 Samuel 11:26-27
* Nehemiah 03:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H223, G3774

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Uriah, Uriah's

### Uzziah

#### Facts:

Uzziah became king of Judah at the age of 16 and reigned 52 years, which was an unusually long reign. Uzziah was also known as "Azariah."

* King Uzziah was well-known for his organized and skilled military. He had towers built to protect the city and had specially-designed weapons of war mounted on them to hurl arrows and large stones.
* As long as Uzziah served the Lord, he prospered. Toward the end of his reign, however, he became proud and he disobeyed the Lord by burning incense in the temple, which only the priest was permitted to do.
* Because of this sin, Uzziah became sick with leprosy and had to live separately from other people until the end of his reign.

(See also: [Azariah](../names/azariah.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [king](../other/king.md), [leprosy](../other/leprosy.md), [reign](../other/reign.md), [watchtower](../other/watchtower.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 14:21
* Amos 01:01
* Hosea 01:01
* Isaiah 06:1-2
* Matthew 01:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5818

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Uzziah, Uzziah's

### Vashti

#### Facts:

In the Old Testament book of Esther, Vashti was the wife of Xerxes, king of Persia.

* King Xerxes sent Queen Vashti away when she refused to obey his order to come to his dinner party and show off her beauty to his drunken guests.
* As a result, a search went out for a new queen and eventually Esther was chosen to be the king's new wife.

(See also: [Xerxes](../names/ahasuerus.md), [Esther](../names/esther.md), [Persia](../names/persia.md))

#### Bible References:

* Esther 01:9-11
* Esther 02:1-2
* Esther 02:17-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2060

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Vashti, Vashti's

### Xerxes

#### Related Words:

Ahasuerus

#### Facts:

Xerxes was a king who ruled over the ancient kingdom of Persia for twenty years.

* This was during the time the exiled Jews were living in Babylonia, which had come under Persian rule.
* Another name for this king may have been Ahasuerus, and this is the name used in many translations.
* After sending away his queen in a fit of anger, King Xerxes later chose a Jewish woman named Esther to be his new wife and queen.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Esther](../names/esther.md), [Ethiopia](../names/ethiopia.md), [exile](../other/exile.md), [Persia](../names/persia.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 09:01
* Esther 10:1-2
* Ezra 04:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H325

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ahasuerus, Ahasuerus', Xerxes

### Yahweh

#### Related Ideas:

Yah

#### Facts:

The term "Yahweh" is God's personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

* The name "Yahweh" comes from the word that means to "be" or to "exist."
* The name "Yah" is short for "Yahweh."
* Possible meanings of "Yahweh" include, "he is" or "I am" or "the one who causes to be."
* This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
* Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term "LORD" or "the LORD" to represent "Yahweh." This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh's name and started saying "Lord" every time the term "Yahweh" appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write "LORD" with all capital letters to show respect for God's personal name and to distinguish it from "Lord" which is a different Hebrew word.
* The ULB and UDB texts always translate this term as, "Yahweh," as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
* The term "Yahweh" does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for "Lord" is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.
* In the Old Testament, God sometimes referred to himself as "I, Yahweh" and sometimes he referred to himself simply as "Yahweh." When he referred to himself simply as "Yahweh," the ULB and UDB add the pronoun "I" or "me" to show the reader that God was speaking about himself.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* "Yahweh" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "I am" or "living one" or "the one who is" or "he who is alive."
* This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how "Yahweh" is spelled.
* Some church denominations prefer not to use the term "Yahweh" and instead use the traditional rendering, "LORD." An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title "Lord." Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish "LORD" as a name (Yahweh) from "Lord" as a title.
* It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
* When Yahweh referred to himself as Yahweh, you can make it clear that Yahweh was speaking by introducing the quote with something like, "This is what Yahweh says."

(See also: [God](../kt/god.md), [lord](../kt/lord.md), [Lord](../kt/lord.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [reveal](../kt/reveal.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 21:20
* 1 Samuel 16:07
* Daniel 09:03
* Ezekiel 17:24
* Genesis 02:04
* Genesis 04:3-5
* Genesis 28:13
* Hosea 11:12
* Isaiah 10:04
* Isaiah 38:08
* Job 12:10
* Joshua 01:09
* Lamentations 01:05
* Leviticus 25:35
* Malachi 03:04
* Micah 02:05
* Micah 06:05
* Numbers 08:11
* Psalm 124:03
* Ruth 01:21
* Zechariah 14:5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Yah, Yahweh, Yahweh's

### Yahweh of hosts

#### Related Ideas:

God of hosts, Lord of hosts, Lord of multitudes

#### Definition:

The terms "Yahweh of hosts" and "God of hosts" are titles that express God's authority over the thousands of angels who obey him.

* The term "host" or "hosts" is a word that refers to a large number of something, such as an army of people or the massive number of stars. It can also refer to all the many spirit beings, including evil spirits. The context makes it clear what is being referred to.
* Phrases similar to "host of the heavens" refer to all the stars, planets and other heavenly bodies.
* In the New Testament, the phrase, "Lord of hosts" means the same as "Yahweh of hosts" but it cannot be translated that way since the Hebrew word "Yahweh" is not used in the New Testament.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "Yahweh of hosts" could include, "Yahweh, who rules all the angels" or "Yahweh, the ruler over armies of angels" or "Yahweh, the ruler of all creation."
* The phrase "of hosts" in the terms "God of hosts" and "Lord of hosts" would be translated the same way as in the phrase "Yahweh of hosts" above.
* Certain churches do not accept the literal term "Yahweh" and prefer to use the capitalized word, "LORD" instead, following the tradition of many Bible versions. For these churches, a translation of the term "LORD of hosts" would be used in the Old Testament for "Yahweh of hosts."

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [authority](../kt/authority.md), [God](../kt/god.md), [lord](../kt/lord.md), [Lord](../kt/lord.md), [Lord Yahweh](../kt/lordyahweh.md) [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Zechariah 13:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3068, H6635, G2962, G4519

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God of hosts, Lord of hosts, Lord of multitudes, Yahweh of hosts, the Lord of hosts

### Zacchaeus

#### Facts:

Zacchaeus was a tax collector from Jericho who climbed a tree in order to be able to see Jesus who was surrounded by a large crowd of people.

* Zacchaeus was completely changed when he believed in Jesus.
* He repented of his sin of cheating people and promised to give half his possessions to the poor.
* He also promised that he would pay people back four times the amount that he had overcharged them for their taxes.

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [promise](../kt/promise.md), [repent](../kt/repent.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [tax](../other/tax.md), [tax collector](../other/tax.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 19:02
* Luke 19:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2195

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Zacchaeus, Zacchaeus'

### Zadok

#### Facts:

Zadok was the name of an important high priest in Israel during the reign of King David.

* When Absalom rebelled against King David, Zadok supported David and helped bring the ark of the covenant back into Jerusalem.
* Years later, he also took part in the ceremony to anoint David's son Solomon as king.
* Two different men by the name of Zadok helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem during Nehemiah's time.
* Zadok was also the name of King Jotham's grandfather.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Jotham](../names/jotham.md), [Nehemiah](../names/nehemiah.md), [reign](../other/reign.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 24:1-3
* 1 Kings 01:26-27
* 2 Samuel 15:24-26
* Matthew 01:12-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6659, G4524

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Zadok, Zadok's

### Zebedee

#### Facts:

Zebedee was a fisherman from Galilee who is known because of his sons, James and John, who were Jesus' disciples. They are often identified in the New Testament as the "sons of Zebedee."

* Zebedee's sons were also fishermen and worked with him to catch fish.
* James and John quit their fishing work with their father Zebedee and left to go follow Jesus.

(See also: [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [fishermen](../other/fisherman.md), [James (son of Zebedee)](../names/jamessonofzebedee.md), [John (the apostle)](../names/johntheapostle.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 21:1-3
* Luke 05:8-11
* Mark 01:19-20
* Matthew 04:21-22
* Matthew 20:20
* Matthew 26:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2199

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Zebedee, Zebedee's

### Zebulun

#### Facts:

Zebulun was the last son born to Jacob and Leah and is the name of one of the twelve tribes of Israel. His descendants were called Zebulunites.

* The Israelite tribe of Zebulun was given the land directly west of the Salt Sea.
* Sometimes the name "Zebulun" is also used to refer to the land where this Israelite tribe lived.

(See also: [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Leah](../names/leah.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 01:1-5
* Genesis 30:20
* Isaiah 09:01
* Judges 04:10
* Matthew 04:13
* Matthew 04:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2074, H2075, G2194

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Zebulun, Zebulunite, Zebulunites, Zebulun's

### Zechariah (New Testament)

#### Facts:

In the New Testament, Zechariah was a Jewish priest who became the father of John the Baptist.

* Zechariah loved God and obeyed him.
* For many years Zechariah and his wife, Elizabeth, prayed earnestly to have a child, but did not have one. Then when they were very old, God answered their prayers and gave them a son.
* Zechariah prophesied that his son John would be the prophet who would announce and prepare the way for the Messiah.

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [Elizabeth](../names/elizabeth.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 01:5-7
* Luke 01:21-23
* Luke 01:39-41
* Luke 03:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2197

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Zechariah

### Zechariah (Old Testament)

#### Facts:

Zechariah was a prophet who prophesied during the reign of King Darius I of Persia. The Old Testament book of Zechariah contains his prophecies, which urged the returning exiles to rebuild the temple.

* The prophet Zechariah lived during the same time period as Ezra, Nehemiah, Zerrubbabel and Haggai. He was also mentioned by Jesus as the last of the prophets who were murdered during Old Testament times.
* Another man named Zechariah was a gatekeeper at the temple during the time of David.
* One of King Jehoshaphat's sons who was named Zechariah was murdered by his brother Jehoram.
* Zechariah was the name of a priest who was stoned by the people of Israel when he rebuked them for their idol worship.
* King Zechariah was the son of Jeroboam and he reigned over Israel for only six months before being murdered.

(See also: [Darius](../names/darius.md), [Ezra](../names/ezra.md), [Jehoshaphat](../names/jehoshaphat.md), [Jeroboam](../names/jeroboam.md), [Nehemiah](../names/nehemiah.md), [Zerubbabel](../names/zerubbabel.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezra 05:1-2
* Matthew 23:34-36
* Zechariah 01:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2148

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Zechariah, Zechariah's

### Zedekiah

#### Facts:

Zedekiah, son of Josiah, was the last king of Judah (597-587 B.C.). There are also several other men named Zedekiah in the Old Testament.

* King Nebuchadnezzar made Zedekiah king of Judah after capturing King Jehoiachin and taking him away to Babylon. Zedekiah later rebelled and as a result Nebuchadnezzar captured him and destroyed all of Jerusalem.
* Zedekiah, son of Kenaanah, was a false prophet during the time of King Ahab of Israel.
* A man named Zedekiah was one of those who signed an agreement to the Lord during the time of Nehemiah.

(See also: [Ahab](../names/ahab.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Ezekiel](../names/ezekiel.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [Jehoiachin](../names/jehoiachin.md), [Jeremiah](../names/jeremiah.md), [Josiah](../names/josiah.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Nebuchadnezzar](../names/nebuchadnezzar.md), [Nehemiah](../names/nehemiah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 03:15-16
* Jeremiah 37:1-2
* Jeremiah 39:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6667

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Zedekiah, Zedekiah's

### Zephaniah

#### Facts:

Zephaniah, son of Cushi, was a prophet who lived in Jerusalem and prophesied during the reign of King Josiah. He lived during the same time period as Jeremiah.

* He rebuked the people of Judah for worshipping false gods. His prophecies are written in the book of Zephaniah in the Old Testament.
* There were several other men in the Old Testament named Zephaniah, most of whom were priests.

(See also: [Jeremiah](../names/jeremiah.md), [Josiah](../names/josiah.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 25:18
* Jeremiah 52:24-25
* Zechariah 06:9-11
* Zephaniah 01:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6846

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Zephaniah, Zephaniah's

### Zerubbabel

#### Facts:

Zerubbabel was the name of two Israelite men in the Old Testament.

* One of these was a descendant of Jehoiakim and Zedekiah.
* A different Zerubbabel, son of Shealtiel, was the head of the tribe of Judah during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah, when Cyrus king of Persia released the Israelites from their captivity in Babylon.
* Zerubbabel and the high priest Joshua were among those who helped rebuild the temple and altar of God.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [captive](../other/captive.md), [Cyrus](../names/cyrus.md), [Ezra](../names/ezra.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [Jehoiakim](../names/jehoiakim.md), [Joshua](../names/joshua.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [Nehemiah](../names/nehemiah.md), [Persia](../names/persia.md), [Zedekiah](../names/zedekiah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 03:19-21
* Ezra 02:1-2
* Ezra 03:8-9
* Luke 03:27-29
* Matthew 01:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2216, H2217, G2216

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Zerubbabel, Zerubbabel's

### Zion

#### Related Ideas:

Mount Zion

#### Definition:

Originally, the term "Zion" or "Mount Zion" referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

* Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, "Zion" and "Mount Zion" became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem.
* David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the "City of David." This is different from David's hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
* The term "Zion" is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God's spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [Bethlehem](../names/bethlehem.md), [Jebusites](../names/jebusites.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:05
* Amos 01:02
* Jeremiah 51:35
* Psalm 076:1-3
* Romans 11:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6726, G4622

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mount Zion, Zion

### Zoar

#### Facts:

Zoar was a small city where Lot fled when God destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah.

* It was formerly known as "Bela" but was renamed "Zoar" when Lot asked God to spare this "small" city.
* Zoar is thought to have been located in the plain of the Jordan River or at the southern end of the Dead Sea.

(See also: [Lot](../names/lot.md), [Sodom](../names/sodom.md), [Gomorrah](../names/gomorrah.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 34:1-3
* Genesis 13:10-11
* Genesis 14:1-2
* Genesis 19:22
* Genesis 19:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6820

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Zoar

### abomination

#### Related Ideas:

abominable, abominably, disgusting, foul

#### Definition:

The term "abomination" is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

* The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an "abomination." This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn't want to associate with them or be near them.
* Some of the things that the Bible calls "an abomination to Yahweh" include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
* In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an "abomination of desolation" that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "abomination" could also be translated by "something God hates" or "something disgusting" or "disgusting practice" or "very evil action."
* Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase "is an abomination to" could include "is greatly hated by" or "is disgusting to" or "is totally unacceptable to" or "causes deep disgust."
* The phrase "abomination of desolation" could be translated as "defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed" or "disgusting thing that causes great sorrow."

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [desecrate](../other/desecrate.md), [desolate](../other/desolate.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezra 09:1-2
* Genesis 46:34
* Isaiah 01:13
* Matthew 24:15
* Proverbs 26:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, H8581, G946

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

abominable, abomination, abominations, committed ... abominably, disgusting practices, disgusting thing, disgusting things, foul, foul thing

### abyss

#### Related Ideas:

bottomless pit

#### Definition:

The term "abyss" refers to a very large, deep hole or chasm that has no bottom.

* In the Bible, "the abyss" is a place of punishment.
* For example, when Jesus commanded evil spirits to come out of a man, they begged him not to send them to the abyss.
* The word "abyss" could also be translated as "bottomless pit" or "deep chasm."
* This term should be translated differently from "hades," "sheol," or "hell."

(See Also: [Hades](../kt/hades.md), [hell](../kt/hell.md), [punish](../other/punish.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 08:30-31
* Romans 10:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G12, G5421

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

abyss, bottomless pit

### acacia

#### Definition:

The term "acacia" is the name of a common shrub or tree growing in the land of Canaan in ancient times; it is still plentiful in that region today.

* The orange-brown wood of the acacia tree is very hard and durable, making it a useful material for building things.
* This wood is highly resistant to decay because it is so very dense that it keeps out water, and it has natural preservatives that keep insects from destroying it.
* In the Bible, acacia wood was used to build the tabernacle and the ark of the covenant.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 10:3-4
* Exodus 25:3-7
* Exodus 38:6-7
* Isaiah 41:19-20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7848

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acacia

### accuse

#### Related Ideas:

accusation, accuser

#### Definition:

The terms "accuse" and "accusation" refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an "accuser."

* A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
* In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called "the accuser."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 19:40
* Hosea 04:04
* Jeremiah 02:9-11
* Luke 06:6-8
* Romans 08:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2778, H3198, H6818, G1458, G2649, G2723, G2724

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

accusation, accusations, accuse, accused, accuser, accusers, accuses, accusing

### acknowledge

#### Related Ideas:

admit

#### Definitions:

The term "acknowledge" means to give proper recognition to something or someone.

* To acknowledge God also involves acting in a way that shows that what he says is true.
* People who acknowledge God will show it by obeying him, which brings glory to his name.
* To acknowledge something means to believe that it is true, with actions and words that confirm that.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In the context of acknowledging that something is true, "acknowledge" could be translated as "admit" or "declare" or "confess to be true" or "believe."
* When referring to acknowledging a person, this term could be translated as "accept" or "recognize the value of" or "tell others that (the person) is faithful."
* In the context of acknowledging God, this could be translated as "believe and obey God" or "declare who God is" or "tell other people about how great God is" or "confess that what God says and does is true."

(See also: [obey](../other/obey.md), [glory](../kt/glory.md), [save](../kt/save.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 11:38-39
* Jeremiah 09:4-6
* Job 34:26-28
* Leviticus 22:32
* Psalm 029:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3045, H3046, H5046, H5234, H6942, G1492, G1921, G3140, G3670

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acknowledge, acknowledged, acknowledges, admit, admitted

### acquit

#### Related Ideas:

admit someone was right

#### Definition:

The term "acquit" means to formally declare someone to be not guilty of an unlawful or immoral behavior he was accused of.

* This term is sometimes used in the Bible to talk about forgiving sinners.
* Often the context is about wrongly acquitting people who are wicked and rebel against God.
* This could be translated as "declare innocent" or "judge to be not guilty."

(See also: [forgive](../kt/forgive.md), [guilt](../kt/guilt.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 25:1-2
* Exodus 21:28
* Exodus 23:07
* Isaiah 05:23
* Job 10:12-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5352, H5355, H6403, H6663

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acquit, acquits, acquitted, admit that ... right, declare ... not guilty

### administration

#### Related Ideas:

administer, administrator

#### Definitions:

The terms "administration" and "administrator" refer to managing or governing of people of a country to help it function in an orderly way.

* Daniel and three other Jewish young men were appointed to be administrators, or government officials, over certain parts of Babylon.
* In the New Testament, administration is one of the gifts of the Holy Spirit.
* A person who has the spiritual gift of administration is able to lead and govern people as well as supervise the maintenance of buildings and other property.
* The word "administration" can also refer to the work done by an administrator.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, some ways to translate "administrator" could include "governor" or "organizer" or "manager" or "ruler" or "government official."
* The term "administration" could be translated as "governing" or "management" or "leadership." or "organization."
* Expressions such as "in charge of" or "taking care of" or "keeping order" could possibly be part of the translation of these terms.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [gift](../kt/gift.md), [governor](../other/governor.md), [Hananiah](../names/hananiah.md), [Mishael](../names/mishael.md), [Azariah](../names/azariah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:14
* Daniel 06:1-3
* Esther 09:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5532, H5608, H5632, H5673, H6213, H7860, G1247, G2941, G3622

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

administered, administering, administration, administrator, administrators

### admonish

#### Related Ideas:

reprove, scold, strictly warn, warn

#### Definition:

The term "admonish" means to firmly warn or advise someone.

* Usually "admonish" means to teach someone the correct way to do something or to advise someone not to do something.
* In the body of Christ, believers are taught to admonish each other to avoid sin and to live holy lives.
* The word "admonish" could be translated as "encourage not to sin" or "urge someone to not sin."
* To "scold" is to angrily tell someone that what he is doing is wrong.
* To "reprove" is to scold someone, usually but not always gently.

#### Bible References:

* Nehemiah 09:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2094, H3198, H4148, H5715, H5749, G1651, G1690, G3559, G3560, G3867, G5537

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

aware, reprove, reproved, reproves, scolded, strictly warned, warn, warned, warning, warnings

### adopt

#### Related Ideas:

adoption

#### Definition:

The terms "adopt" and "adoption" refer to the process of someone legally becoming the child of people who are not his biological parents.

* The Bible uses "adoption" and "adopt" in a figurative way to describe how God causes people to be part of his family, making them his spiritual sons and daughters.
* As adopted children, God makes believers to be co-heirs with Jesus Christ, giving them all of the privileges of sons and daughters of God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could be translated with a term that the language of translation uses to describe this special parent-child relationship. Make sure it is understood that this has a figurative or spiritual meaning.
* The phrase "experience adoption as sons" could be translated as "be adopted by God as his children" or "become God's (spiritual) children."
* To "wait for the adoption of sons" could be translated as "look forward to becoming God's children" or "wait expectantly for God to receive as children."
* The phrase "adopt them" could be translated as "receive them as his own children" or "make them his own (spiritual) children."

(See also: [heir](../other/heir.md), [inherit](../kt/inherit.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ephesians 01:5
* Galatians 04:3-5
* Romans 08:14-15
* Romans 08:23
* Romans 09:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5206

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

adopt, adopted, adoption

### adultery

#### Related Ideas:

adulterer, adulteress, adulterous, immoral woman

#### Definition:

The term "adultery" refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person's spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term "adulterous" describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

* The term "adulterer" refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
* Sometimes the term "adulteress" is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
* Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
* God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.
* The term "adulterous" is often used in a figurative sense to describe the people of Israel as being unfaithful to God, especially when they worshiped false gods.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If the target language does not have one word that means "adultery," this term could be translated with a phrase such as "having sexual relations with someone else's wife" or "being intimate with another person's spouse."
* Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as "sleeping with someone else's spouse" or "being unfaithful to one's wife."
* When "adulterous" is used in a figurative sense, it is best to translate it literally in order to communicate God's view of his disobedient people as being compared to an unfaithful spouse. If this does not communicate accurately in the target language, the figurative use of "adulterous" could be translated as "unfaithful" or "immoral" or "like an unfaithful spouse."

(See also: [commit](../other/commit.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [sexual immorality](../other/fornication.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 20:14
* Hosea 04:1-2
* Luke 16:18
* Matthew 05:28
* Matthew 12:39
* Revelation 02:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2114, H5003, H5004, H5237, G3428, G3429, G3430, G3431, G3432

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

adulterer, adulterers, adulteress, adulteresses, adulteries, adulterous, adultery, immoral woman

### adversary

#### Related Ideas:

enemy, hostile, hostility, opponent, oppose, opposition

#### Definition:

An "adversary" is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

* Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
* When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
* In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
* Adversary may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.
* Someone who is "hostile" wants to fight other people. Such a person has "hostile intent" or acts with "hostility."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 05:14
* Isaiah 09:11
* Job 06:23
* Lamentations 04:12
* Luke 12:59
* Matthew 13:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H340, H341, H6146, H6862, H6887, H6965, H7379, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G485, G498, G2189, G2190, G5227

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

adversaries, adversary, enemies, enemies', enemy, enemy's, hostile, hostilities, hostility, opponent, opponents, oppose, opposed, opposes, opposition

### afflict

#### Related Ideas:

affliction, difficulty

#### Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

* God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
* God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
* To "be afflicted with" means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To afflict someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
* In certain contexts "afflict" could be translated as "happen to" or "come to" or "bring suffering."
* A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
* When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
* Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
* The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: [leprosy](../other/leprosy.md), [plague](../other/plague.md), [suffer](../other/suffer.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Thessalonians 01:06
* Amos 05:12
* Colossians 01:24
* Exodus 22:22-24
* Genesis 12:17-20
* Genesis 15:12-13
* Genesis 29:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H5221, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G1453, G2346, G2347, G2852, G3804, G4912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions, difficulties

### age

#### Related Ideas:

aged, from ancient times, old age

#### Definition:

The term "age" refers to the length of time a person has lived. The term "aged" describes a person who is very old. The term "age" is also used to refer generally to a time period.

* Jesus refers to "this age" as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
* There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.
* Other words used to express an extended period of time include "era" and "season."
* The phrase "ancient times" refers to times long ago.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "age" could also be translated as "era" or "number of years old" or "time period" or "time."
* The phrase "at a very old age" could be translated as "when he was very old" or "when he had lived a very long time."
* The phrase "this present evil age" means "during this time right now when people are very evil."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 29:28
* 1 Corinthians 02:07
* Hebrews 06:05
* Job 05:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5769, H7872, G165, G166, G1074

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

age, aged, ages, from ancient times, old age

### alarm

#### Related Ideas:

sound an alarm

#### Definitions:

An alarm is something that warns people about something that could harm them. To "be alarmed" is to be very worried and frightened about something dangerous or threatening.

* King Jehoshapat was alarmed when he heard that the Moabites were planning to attack the kingdom of Judah.
* Jesus told his disciples not to be alarmed when they hear about disasters happening in the last days.
* The expression "sound an alarm" means to give a warning. In ancient times, a person could sound an alarm by making a noise.

#### Translation Suggestions

* To "alarm someone" means to "cause someone to worry" or to "worry someone."
* To "be alarmed" could be translated as "be worried" or "be frightened" or "be very concerned."
* The expression "sound an alarm" could be translated by "publicly warn" or "announce that danger is coming" or "blow a trumpet to warn about danger."

(See also: [Jehoshaphat](../names/jehoshaphat.md), [Moab](../names/moab.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 11:44-45
* Jeremiah 04:19-20
* Numbers 10:9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2648, H7321, H8643

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alarm, alarms, sound ... alarm

### alms

#### Related Ideas:

merciful deeds for the poor

#### Definition:

The term "alms" refers to money, food, or other things that are given to help poor people.

* Often the giving of alms was seen by people as something that their religion required them to do in order to be righteous.
* Jesus said that giving alms should not be done publicly for the purpose of getting other people to notice.
* This term could be translated as "money" or "gifts to poor people" or "help for the poor."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 03:1-3
* Matthew 06:01
* Matthew 06:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1654

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alms, merciful deeds ... for the poor

### altar

#### Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

* During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
* Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
* Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](../other/altarofincense.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [grain offering](../other/grainoffering.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 08:20
* Genesis 22:09
* James 02:21
* Luke 11:49-51
* Matthew 05:23
* Matthew 23:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

altar, altars

### altar of incense

#### Related Ideas:

incense altar

#### Definitions:

The altar of incense was a piece of furniture on which a priest would burn incense as an offering to God. It was also called the golden altar.

* The altar of incense was made of wood, and its top and sides were covered with gold. It was about a half meter long, a half meter wide, and one meter tall.
* At first it was kept in the tabernacle. Then it was kept in the temple.
* Every morning and evening a priest would burn incense on it.
* This can also be translated as "altar for burning incense" or "golden altar" or "incense burner" or "incense table."

(See also: [incense](../other/incense.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 01:11-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4196, H4729, H6999, H7004, G2368, G2379

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

altar of incense, altars for incense, incense altar, incense altars

### amazed

#### Related Ideas:

amazement, appalled, astonished, astounded, incomprehensible, marvel, marvelous, perplexed, remarkable, surprised, wonder, wonderful

#### Definition:

Some of these terms mean to be very surprised because of something very unusual that happened. Many of these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened. Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.

* The words "amazed," "astonished," and "astounded" describe someone who is very surprised because of something very unusual that happened.
* The word "appalled" describes someone who is amazed or horrified by something that is bad or evil.
* The word "perplexed" describes someone who is to be amazed and troubled, not knowing what to think or how to act.
* People "marvel" and "wonder" when they are surprised by something very unusual.
* "Amazement" and "wonder" are what people feel when they are amazed.

Some of these terms describe things that are very unusual and surprise people.

* The words "amazing", "astonishing," "marvelous," "remarkable," and "wonderful" describe things that are very unusual and surprise people.
* The word "appalling" describes something that is very bad and causes people to be amazed or horrified.
* The word "incomprehensible" describes something that is so great that people cannot ever understand it.
* A "wonder" is an extraordinary and surprising thing that happens.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean "struck with amazement" or "standing outside of (oneself)." These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
* Other ways to translate these words could be "extremely surprised" or "very shocked."

(See also: [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [sign](../kt/sign.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:9-11
* Acts 09:20-22
* Galatians 01:06
* Mark 02:10-12
* Matthew 07:28
* Matthew 15:29-31
* Matthew 19:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H226, H852, H926, H943, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8047, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G639, G1411, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G4023, G4592, G5059

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

amazed, amazement, amazing events, amazing things, appalled, appalling, astonish, astonished, astonishing, astounded, incomprehensible, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, marvelous things, perplexed, remarkable, surprised, wonder, wonderful, wondering, wonders

### ambassador

#### Related Ideas:

envoy, representative

#### Definition:

An ambassador is a person who is chosen to officially represent his country in relating to foreign nations. The word is also used in a figurative sense and is sometimes translated more generally as "representative."

* An ambassador or representative gives people messages from the person or government that sent him.
* The more general term "representative" refers to someone who has been given the authority to act and speak on behalf of the person he is representing.
* The apostle Paul taught that Christians are Christ's "ambassadors" or "representatives" since they represent Christ in this world and teach others his message.
* Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "official representative" or "appointed messenger" or "chosen representative" or "God's appointed representative."
* A "delegation of ambassadors" could be translated as "some official messengers" or "group of appointed representatives" or "official party of people to speak for all people."
* An "envoy" is anyone whom another person person sends to represent him.

(See also: [messenger](../other/messenger.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ephesians 06:20
* Luke 14:31-33
* Luke 19:13-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3887, H4136, H4397, H6735, G4243

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ambassador, ambassadors, envoy, representative, representatives

### amen

#### Related Ideas:

let it be so

#### Definition:

The term "amen" is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as "truly."

* When used at the end of a prayer, "amen" communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
* In his teaching, Jesus used "amen" to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by "and I say to you" to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
* When Jesus uses "amen" this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as "verily" or "truly."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
* When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, "amen" could be translated as "let it be so" or "may this happen" or "that is true."
* When Jesus says, "truly I tell you," this could also be translated as "Yes, I tell you sincerely" or "That is true, and I also tell you."
* The phrase "truly, truly I tell you" could be translated as "I tell you this very sincerely" or "I tell you this very earnestly" or "what I am telling you is true."

(See also: [fulfill](../kt/fulfill.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 27:15
* John 05:19
* Jude 01:24-25
* Matthew 26:33-35
* Philemon 01:23-25
* Revelation 22:20-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H543, G281

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

amen, let it be so

### angel

#### Related Ideas:

archangel

#### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

* The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
* The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
* In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
* Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
* Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
* Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
* A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
* The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
* Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
* The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: [chief](../other/chief.md), [head](../other/head.md), [messenger](../other/messenger.md), [Michael](../names/michael.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md), [servant](../other/servant.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 24:16
* Acts 10:3-6
* Acts 12:23
* Colossians 02:18-19
* Genesis 48:16
* Luke 02:13
* Mark 08:38
* Matthew 13:50
* Revelation 01:20
* Zechariah 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H4397, G32, G743, G2465

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

angel, angels, archangel

### anger

#### Related Ideas:

angry, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

#### Definition:

To "be angry" or to "have anger" means to be very displeased, irritated, and upset about something or against someone.

* When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
* God's anger (also called "wrath") expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
* The phrase "provoke to anger" means "cause to be angry."
* A "quick-tempered" person becomes angry quickly and easily.
* To be "indignant" is to grieve to the point of anger or to be angry because someone has been arrogant.

(See also: [wrath](../kt/wrath.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ephesians 04:26
* Exodus 32:11
* Isaiah 57:16-17
* John 06:52-53
* Mark 10:14
* Matthew 26:08
* Psalms 018:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H599, H639, H1149, H1984, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2740, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, H7852, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G3950, G4360, G5520

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

anger, anger burned, angered, angry, burning anger, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

### anguish

#### Related Ideas:

anxious, pain

#### Definition:

The term "anguish" refers to severe pain or distress.

* Anguish can be physical or emotional pain or distress.
* Often people who are in extreme anguish will show it in their face and behaviors.
* For example, a person in severe pain or anguish might grit his teeth or cry out.
* The term "anguish" could also be translated as "emotional distress" or "deep sorrow" or "severe pain."

#### Bible References:

* Jeremiah 06:24
* Jeremiah 19:09
* Job 15:24
* Luke 16:24
* Psalms 116:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2342, H2470, H2479, H3510, H3708, H4164, H4689, H4691, H5100, H6695, H6862, H6869, H7267, H7581, G928, G3600, G4928

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

anguish, inflicts pain, pain, severe pain

### anoint

#### Related Ideas:

perfume, sons of fresh olive oil

#### Definition:

The term "anoint" means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

* In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
* Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
* In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
* The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
* After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
* The titles "Messiah" (Hebrew) and "Christ" (Greek) mean "the Anointed (One)."
* Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "anoint" could be translated as "pour oil on" or "put oil on" or "consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on."
* To "be anointed" could be translated as "be consecrated with oil." or "be appointed" or "be consecrated."
* In some contexts the term "anoint" could be translated as "appoint."
* A phrase like "the anointed priest," could be translated as "the priest who was consecrated with oil" or "the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil."

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [consecrate](../kt/consecrate.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [King of the Jews](../kt/kingofthejews.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md) )

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:20
* 1 John 02:27
* 1 Samuel 16:2-3
* Acts 04:27-28
* Amos 06:5-6
* Exodus 29:5-7
* James 05:13-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1101, H1878, H3323, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, G218, G1472, G3462, G3464, G5545, G5548

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

anoint, anointed, anointing, perfume, sons of fresh olive oil

### antichrist

#### Definition:

The term "antichrist" refers to a person or teaching that is against Jesus Christ and his work. There are many antichrists in the world.

* The apostle John wrote that a person is the antichrist if he deceives people by saying that Jesus is not the Messiah or if he denies that Jesus is both God and human.
* The Bible also teaches that there is a general spirit of antichrist in the world which opposes Jesus' work.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means "Christ-opposer" or "enemy of Christ" or "person who is against Christ."
* The phrase "spirit of the antichrist" could also be translated as "spirit that is against Christ" or "(someone) teaching lies about Christ" or "attitude of believing lies about Christ" or "spirit that teaches lies about Christ."
* Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [reveal](../kt/reveal.md), [tribulation](../other/tribulation.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:18
* 1 John 04:03
* 2 John 01:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G500

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

antichrist, antichrists

### apostle

#### Related Ideas:

apostleship

#### Definition:

The "apostles" were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term "apostleship" refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

* The word "apostle" means "someone who is sent out for a special purpose." The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
* Jesus' twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
* By God's power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The word "apostle" can also be translated with a word or phrase that means "someone who is sent out" or "sent-out one" or "person who is called to go out and preach God's message to people."
* It is important to translate the terms "apostle" and "disciple" in different ways.
* Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [James (son of Zebedee)](../names/jamessonofzebedee.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Jude 01:17-19
* Luke 09:12-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

apostle, apostles, apostles', apostleship

### appoint

#### Related Ideas:

appointment, direct, predetermine, put in place, reserve, select, set in place, set over, set up, set under

#### Definition:

The terms "appoint" and "appointed" refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

* To "be appointed" can also refer to being "chosen" to receive something, as in "appointed to eternal life." That people were "appointed to eternal life" means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
* The phrase "appointed time" refers to God's "chosen time" or "planned time" for something to happen.
* The word "appoint" may also mean to "command" or "assign" someone to do something.
* To "predetermine" something is to decide beforehand that it will happen and make sure that it happens.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "appoint" could include "choose" or "assign" or "formally choose" or "designate."
* The term "appointed" could be translated as "assigned" or "planned" or "specifically chose."
* The phrase "be appointed" could also be translated as "be chosen."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 08:11
* Acts 03:20
* Acts 06:02
* Acts 13:48
* Genesis 41:33-34
* Numbers 03:9-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H977, H2163, H2706, H2708, H3198, H3245, H3259, H4150, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5258, H5414, H5975, H6485, H6680, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7761, H7896, G322, G606, G2525, G2749, G2820, G3724, G4296, G4384, G4400, G4929, G5021, G5083, G5087

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appoint, appointed, appointed by lot, appointment, appoints, area ... reserved, directed, predetermined, put ... in place, reserved, selected, selects, set ... in place, set ... over, set ... up, set under

### archer

#### Definition:

The term "archer" refers to a man who is skilled at using a bow and arrow as a weapon.

* In the Bible, an archer is usually a soldier who uses a bow and arrow to fight in an army.
* Archers were an important part of the Assyrian military force.
* Some languages might have a term for this, such as "bow-man."

(See also: [Assyria](../names/assyria.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 31:1-3
* 2 Chronicles 35:23-24
* Genesis 21:20
* Isaiah 21:16-17
* Job 16:13
* Proverbs 26:9-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1167, H1869, H2671, H3384, H7199, H7228

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

archer, archers

### ark

#### Related Ideas:

chest

#### Definition:

The term "ark" literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

* In the English Bible, the word "ark" is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
* Ways to translate this term could include "very large boat" or "barge" or "cargo ship" or "large, box-shaped boat."
* The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as "basket."
* In the phrase "ark of the covenant," a different Hebrew word is used for "ark." This could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
* When choosing a term to translate "ark," it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [basket](../other/basket.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 03:20
* Exodus 16:33-36
* Exodus 30:06
* Genesis 08:4-5
* Luke 17:27
* Matthew 24:37-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H727, H8392, G2787

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ark, chest

### ark of the covenant

#### Related Ideas:

ark of Yahweh, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of the covenant of Yahweh

#### Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

* The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
* The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
* The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
* God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
* During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
* Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: [ark](../kt/ark.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [atonement](../kt/atonement.md), [holy place](../kt/holyplace.md), [testimony](../kt/testimony.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 06:15
* Exodus 25:10-11
* Hebrews 09:05
* Judges 20:27
* Numbers 07:89
* Revelation 11:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H727, H1285, H3068, H5715

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ark of Yahweh, ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of the covenant of Yahweh

### armor

#### Related Ideas:

armory, body armor, weapon

#### Definition:

The term "armor" refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

* Parts of a soldier's armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
* Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
* The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
* This could be translated with a term that means "soldier gear" or "protective battle clothing" or "protective covering" or "weapons."

(See also: [faith](../kt/faith.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [peace](../other/peace.md), [save](../kt/save.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 31:9-10
* 2 Samuel 20:8
* Ephesians 06:11
* Jeremiah 51:3-4
* Luke 11:22
* Nehemiah 04:15-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, H8302, G3696, G3833

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

armor, armory, body armor, weapon, weapons

### arrogant

#### Related Ideas:

arrogance, arrogantly, pomp

#### Definition:

The term "arrogant" means proud, usually in an obvious, outward way.

* An arrogant person will often boast about himself.
* A person who is arrogant usually thinks that other people are not as important or talented as he is.
* People who do not honor God and who are in rebellion against him are arrogant because they do not acknowledge how great God is.
* To act "arrogantly" or "in arrogance" is to act as an arrogant person.
* "Pomp" is arrogant, vain glory, a magnificent show.

(See also: [acknowledge](../other/acknowledge.md), [boast](../kt/boast.md), [proud](../other/proud.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:18
* 2 Peter 02:18
* Ezekiel 16:49
* Proverbs 16:05
* Psalm 056:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1346, H1347, H2086, H2087, H2102, H2103, H3093, H5678, H6075, H6277, H7292, G212, G5244, G5450

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

arrogance, arrogant, arrogant speech, arrogantly, pomp

### ash

#### Related Ideas:

powder

#### Definitions:

The term "ash" or "ashes" refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned. It is sometimes used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or useless.

* In the Bible sometimes the word "dust" is used when speaking about ashes. It can also refer to the fine, loose dirt that can form on dry ground.
* An "ash heap" is a pile of ashes.
* In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving.
* When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or sprinkle the ashes on the head.
* Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
* Striving for something worthless, is said to be like "feeding on ashes."
* When translating "ashes," use the word in the project language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.
* Note that an "ash tree" is a completely different term.

(See also: [fire](../other/fire.md), [sackcloth](../other/sackcloth.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 20:10
* Jeremiah 06:26
* Psalms 102:09
* Psalms 113:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H80, H665, H6083, H6368, H7834, G2868, G4700, G5077, G5522

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ash, ashes, powder

### asleep

#### Related Ideas:

sleep, sleeper

#### Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

* To "sleep" or "be asleep" can be a metaphor meaning to "be dead."
* The expression "fall asleep" means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
* To "sleep with one’s fathers" means to die, as one’s ancestors have, or to be dead, as one's ancestors are.
* To "lie down" with others who have died means to die, as they have died, or to be dead, as they are dead.
* The word "lie" often appears in connection with the idea of sleep. This "lie" refers to lying down on a bed or other sleeping place, not to saying things that are untrue.

The phrases "lie with" and "sleep with," when referring to what a man and a woman do together, is a euphemism for them having sexual relations.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To "fall asleep" could be translated as to "suddenly become asleep" or to "start sleeping" or to "die," depending on its meaning.
* Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus had "fallen asleep" they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as "he died."
* Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions "sleep" and "asleep" do not make sense.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:27-29
* 1 Thessalonians 04:14
* Acts 07:60
* Daniel 12:02
* Psalms 044:23
* Romans 13:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G879, G1852, G1853, G2518, G2837, G5258

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

asleep, fallen asleep, fell asleep, sleep, lay down, lies down, sleeper, sleeping, sleeps, slept

### assembly

#### Related Ideas:

assemble together, bring together, call together, come together, community, congregation, crowd, gather, gathering, group, meet, meeting

#### Definition:

The term "assembly" usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

* An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
* In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a "sacred assembly" in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
* Sometimes the term "assembly" referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
* A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an "assembly." This could be translated as "army."
* In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the "Sanhedrin" or the "Council."

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, "assembly" could also be translated as "special gathering" or "congregation" or "council" or "army" or "large group."
* When the term "assembly" refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as "community" or "people of Israel."
* The phrase, "all the assembly" could be translated as "all the people" or "the whole group of Israelites" or "everyone."

(See also: [council](../other/council.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:14
* Acts 07:38
* Ezra 10:12-13
* Hebrews 12:22-24
* Leviticus 04:20-21
* Nehemiah 08:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, H7125, G1218, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

assemble, assembled, assembled together, assemblies, assembling, assembly, bring ... together, brought ... together, called ... together, came together, come together, comes together, community, community's, congregation, crowd, gather, gather ... together, gathered, gathered ... together, gathering, gathers, group, joyful assembly, meet, meeting, meetings, met

### assign

#### Related Ideas:

assignment, portion, reassign

#### Definitions:

The term "assign" or "assigned" refers to appointing someone to do a specific task or designating something to be provided to one or more people.

* The prophet Samuel foretold that King Saul would "assign" the best young men of Israel to serve in the military.
* Moses "assigned" to each of the twelve tribes of Israel a portion of the land of Canaan for them to live on.
* Under the Old Testament law, certain tribes of Israel were assigned to serve as priests, artists, singers and builders.
* Depending on the context, "assign" could be translated as "give" or "appoint" or "choose for the task of."
* The term "assigned" could be translated as "appointed" or "given the task."

(See also: [appoint](../kt/appoint.md), [Samuel](../names/samuel.md), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:48
* Daniel 12:13
* Jeremiah 43:11
* Joshua 18:02
* Numbers 04:27-28
* Psalms 078:55

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1486, H2505, H2506, H2706, H3335, H4487, H4864, H4888, H4941, H5157, H5307, H5344, H5414, H5596, H5975, H6485, H7760, G3307

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

assign, assigned, assigned portion, assigning, assignment, assignments, given ... portion, place assigned, portion, portions, reassign

### astray

#### Related Ideas:

draw away, make a mistake, mislead, mistaken, wander

#### Definition:

The terms "stray" and "go astray" mean to disobey God's will. People who are "led astray" have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

* The word "astray" gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
* Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have "strayed." God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and "gone astray."
* To "draw away" someone or "mislead" someone is to lead him astray.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The phrase "go astray" could be translated as "go away from God" or "take a wrong path away from God's will" or "stop obeying God" or "live in a way that goes away from God."
* To "lead someone astray" could be translated as "cause someone to disobey God" or "influence someone to stop obeying God" or "cause someone to follow you down a wrong path."

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:07
* 2 Timothy 03:13
* Exodus 23:4-5
* Ezekiel 48:10-12
* Matthew 18:13
* Matthew 24:05
* Psalms 058:03
* Psalms 119:110

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5074, H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G1294, G4105, G5351

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

astray, drawn away, go astray, goes astray, gone astray, lead ... astray, leads ... astray, led ... astray, made ... mistake, mislead, misleading, misleads, misled, mistaken, stray, strayed, straying, strays, wander, went astray

### atonement

#### Related Ideas:

atone

#### Definition:

The terms "atone" and "atonement" refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people's sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

* In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
* As recorded in the New Testament, Christ's death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
* When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "atone" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "pay for" or "provide payment for" or "cause someone's sins to be forgiven" or "make amends for a crime."
* Ways to translate "atonement" could include "payment" or "sacrifice to pay for sin" or "providing the means of forgiveness."
* Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: [atonement lid](../kt/atonementlid.md), [forgive](../kt/forgive.md), [propitiation](../kt/propitiation.md), [reconcile](../kt/reconcile.md), [redeem](../kt/redeem.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 43:25-27
* Ezekiel 45:18-20
* Leviticus 04:20
* Numbers 05:08
* Numbers 28:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3722, H3725

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

atone, atoned, atonement, atones

### atonement lid

#### Definition:

The "atonement lid" was a slab of gold that was used to cover the top of the ark of the covenant. In many English translations, it is also referred to as an "atonement cover."

* The atonement lid was about 115 centimeters in length and 70 centimeters in width.
* Above the atonement lid were two gold cherubim with their wings touching.
* Yahweh said that he would meet with the Israelites above the atonement lid, under the outstretched wings of the cherubim. Only the high priest was permitted to meet with Yahweh in this way, as the representative of the people.
* Sometimes this atonement lid has been referred to as a "mercy seat" because it communicates God's mercy in coming down to redeem sinful human beings.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate this term could include "ark covering where God promises to redeem" or "place where God atones" or "lid of ark where God forgives and restores."
* Can also mean "place of propitiation."
* Compare this term with how you translated "atonement," "propitiation," and "redemption."

(See also: [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [atonement](../kt/atonement.md), [cherubim](../other/cherubim.md), [propitiation](../kt/propitiation.md), [redeem](../kt/redeem.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 25:17
* Exodus 30:06
* Exodus 40:17-20
* Leviticus 16:1-2
* Numbers 07:89

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3727, G2435

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

atonement lid

### authority

#### Related Ideas:

authority to judge, place in charge, put in charge, right

#### Definition:

The term "authority" refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

* Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
* The word "authorities" can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
* The word "authorities" can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
* Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
* Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "authority" can also be translated as "control" or "right" or "qualifications."
* Sometimes "authority" is used with the meaning of "power."
* When "authorities" is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as "leaders" or "rulers" or "powers."
* The phrase "by his own authority" could also be translated as, "with his own right to lead" or "based on his own qualifications."
* The expression, "under authority" could be translated as, "responsible to obey" or "having to obey others' commands."

(See also: [citizen](../other/citizen.md), [command](../kt/command.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 02:10
* Esther 09:29
* Genesis 41:35
* Jonah 03:6-7
* Luke 12:05
* Luke 20:1-2
* Mark 01:22
* Matthew 08:09
* Matthew 28:19
* Titus 03:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2940, H4475, H4910, H4915, H6486, H6666, H6680, H7980, H7990, H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2525, G2715, G2917, G2963, G5247

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

authorities, authority, authority to judge, places ... in charge, put ... in charge, puts ... in charge, right, was ... in charge, were ... in charge

### avenge

#### Related Ideas:

avenger, revenge, see justice done, vengeance, vengefully

#### Definition:

To "avenge" or "take revenge" or "execute vengeance" is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is "vengeance."

* Usually "avenge" implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong.
* When referring to people, the expression "take revenge" or "get revenge" usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
* When God "takes vengeance" or "executes vengeance," he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The expression to "avenge" could also be translated as to "right a wrong" or to "get justice for."
* When referring to human beings, to "take revenge" could be translated as "pay back" or "hurt in order to punish" or "get back at."
* Depending on the context, "vengeance" could be translated as "punishment" or "punishment of sin" or "payment for wrongs done." If a word meaning "retaliation" is used, this would apply to human beings only.
* When God says, "take my vengeance," this could be translated by "punish them for wrongs done against me" or "cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me."
* When referring to God's vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](../other/punish.md), [just](../kt/justice.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 24:12-13
* Ezekiel 25:15
* Isaiah 47:3-5
* Leviticus 19:17-18
* Psalms 018:47
* Romans 12:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1350, H3467, H5352, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G1556, G1557, G1558, G3709

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

avenge, avenged, avenger, avenges, avenging, have revenge, revenge, see ... justice ... done, vengeance, vengefully

### awe

#### Related Ideas:

awesome

#### Definition:

The term "awe" refers to the sense of amazement and deep respect that comes from seeing something great, powerful, and magnificent.

* The term "awesome" describes someone or something that inspires a feeling of awe.
* The visions of the glory of God seen by the prophet Ezekiel were "awesome" or "awe-inspiring."
* Typical human responses showing awe of God's presence include: fear, bowing or kneeling down, covering the face, and trembling.

(See also: [fear](../kt/fear.md), [glory](../kt/glory.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 17:21
* Genesis 28:16-17
* Hebrews 12:28
* Psalm 022:23
* Psalms 147:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H366, H1481, H2865, H3372, H6206, H6342, H7227, G2124

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

awe, awesome, awesome deeds

### ax

#### Definition:

An ax is tool used for cutting or chopping trees or wood.

* An ax usually has a long wooden handle with a large metal blade attached to the end.
* If your culture has a tool that is similar to an ax, the name of that tool could be used to translate "ax."
* Other ways to translate this term could include "tree-cutting tool" or "wooden tool with blade" or "long-handled wood-chopping tool."
* In one Old Testament event, the blade of an ax fell into a river, so it is best if the tool that is described has a blade that can come loose from the wooden handle.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 06:7-8
* 2 Kings 06:05
* Judges 09:48-49
* Luke 03:9
* Matthew 03:10
* Psalm 035:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1631, H2719, H7134, G513

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ax, axes

### banquet

#### Definition:

A banquet is large, formal meal that usually includes several food courses.

* In ancient times, kings often served banquet meals to entertain political leaders and other important guests.
* This could also be translated as, "elaborate meal" or "important feast" or "multi-course meal."

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 05:10
* Isaiah 05:11-12
* Jeremiah 16:08
* Luke 05:29-32
* Song of Solomon 02:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4960, H4961, H8354, G1173, G1403

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

banquet

### baptize

#### Related Ideas:

baptism

#### Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms "baptize" and "baptism" usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

* Besides water baptism, the Bible talks about being "baptized with the Holy Spirit" and "baptized with fire."
* The term "baptism" is also used in the Bible to refer to going through great suffering.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
* Depending on the context, the term "baptize" could be translated as "purify," "pour out on," "plunge (or dip) into," "wash," or "spiritually cleanse." For example, "baptize you with water" could be translated as, "plunge you into water."
* The term "baptism" could be translated as "purification," "a pouring out," "a dipping," "a cleansing," or "a spiritual washing."
* When it refers to suffering, "baptism" could also be translated as "a time of terrible suffering" or "a cleansing through severe suffering."
* Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [repent](../kt/repent.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:38
* Acts 08:36
* Acts 09:18
* Acts 10:48
* Luke 03:16
* Matthew 03:14
* Matthew 28:18-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G907

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

baptism, baptize, baptized, baptizing

### barley

#### Definition:

The term "barley" refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

* The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
* Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
* When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
* Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
* If barley is not known, this could be translated as "grain called barley" or "barley grain."

(See also: [grain](../other/grain.md), [thresh](../other/thresh.md), [wheat](../other/wheat.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
* Job 31:40
* Judges 07:14
* Numbers 05:15
* Revelation 06:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8184, G2915, G2916

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

barley

### barren

#### Related Ideas:

dried, faded, salt land, withered

#### Definition:

To be "barren" means to not be fertile or fruitful.

* Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
* A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When "barren" is used to refer to land, it could be translated as "not fertile" or "unfruitful" or "without plants."
* When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as "childless" or "not able to bear children" or "unable to conceive a child."
* "Salt land" is barren because nothing can grow in salty soil.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 02:5
* Galatians 04:27
* Genesis 11:30
* Job 03:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H535, H1565, H2717, H3001, H4420, H5034, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7921, G692, G4723

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

barren, dried, dry, fade, fades, fading, salt land, wither, withered, withers

### basket

#### Related Ideas:

basketful, cage

#### Definition:

The term "basket" refers to a container made of woven material.

* In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
* A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
* When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
* The word translated as "basket" in that story is the same word that is translated as "ark" referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be "floating container."
* A "cage" is a container in which people keep animals.

(See also: [ark](../kt/ark.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Nile River](../names/nileriver.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 11:33
* Acts 09:25
* Amos 08:01
* John 06:13-15
* Judges 06:19-20
* Matthew 14:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H8392, G2894, G3426, G4553, G4711

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

basket, basketfuls, baskets, cage

### bear

#### Related Ideas:

bearer, bear with, birth, carry, childbirth, support, sustain, tolerate

#### Definitions:

The term "bear" literally means "carry" something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

* When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means "give birth to" a child.
* To "bear a burden" means to "experience difficult things." These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
* To "bear with" someone means to be patient with them and their faults.
* A common expression in the Bible is "bear fruit," which means "produce fruit" or "have fruit."
* The expression "bear witness" means "testify" or "report what one has seen or experienced."
* The statement that "a son will not bear the iniquity of his father" means that he "will not be held responsible for" or "will not be punished for" his father's sins.
* In general, this term could be translated as "carry" or "be responsible for" or "produce" or "have" or "endure," depending on the context.

(See also: [burden](../other/burden.md), [Elisha](../names/elisha.md), [endure](../other/endure.md), [fruit](../other/fruit.md), [iniquity](../kt/iniquity.md), [report](../other/report.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [strength](../other/strength.md), [testimony](../kt/testimony.md), [testimony](../kt/testimony.md))

#### Bible References:

* Lamentations 03:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2032, H2232, H3201, H3205, H3211, H4138, H4853, H5375, H5445, H5449, H5582, H6030, H6403, H6509, H6779, H7617, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear, bearer, bearing, bearing with, bears, birth, bore, born, borne, carried, carry, carrying, childbirth, gave birth, give birth, given birth, gives birth, has ... borne, have ... borne, support, supported, supports, sustain, sustains, tolerate

### bear

#### Definition:

A bear is a large, four-legged furry animal with dark brown or black hair, with sharp teeth and claws. Bears were common in Israel during Bible times.

* These animals live in forests and mountain areas; they eat fish, insects, and plants.
* In the Old Testament, the bear is used as a symbol of strength.
* While tending sheep, the shepherd David fought a bear and defeated it.
* Two bears came out of the forest and attacked a group of youths who had mocked the prophet Elisha.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [Elisha](../names/elisha.md))

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1677, G715

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear, bears

### beast

#### Related Ideas:

animal

#### Definitions:

In the Bible, the term "beast" is often just another way of saying "animal."

* A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
* A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term "livestock" is used to refer to this kind of animal.
* The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God.
* Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
* Ways to translate this could include "creature" or "created thing" or "animal" or "wild animal," depending on the context.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [livestock](../other/livestock.md), [nation](../other/nation.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [reveal](../kt/reveal.md), [Beelzebul](../names/beelzebul.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:32
* 1 Samuel 17:44
* 2 Chronicles 25:18
* Jeremiah 16:1-4
* Leviticus 07:21
* Psalms 049:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H338, H929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H4806, G2226, G2341, G2342, G2934, G4968, G5074

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

animal, animal's, animals, beast, beast's, beasts

### beg

#### Related Ideas:

ask, beggar, needy

#### Definition:

The term "beg" means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

* Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don't know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
* A "beggar" is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
* Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, "plead" or "urgently ask" or "demand money" or "regularly ask for money."

(See also: [plead](../other/plead.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 16:20
* Mark 06:56
* Matthew 14:36
* Psalm 045:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H34, H577, H1245, H6035, H7592, G154, G1189, G1871, G2065, G3726, G3870, G4319, G4434

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ask, asking, asks, beg, beggar, begged, begging, needy

### believe

#### Related Ideas:

be persuaded, belief, believer, have faith, persuade, persuasive

#### Definition:

The terms "believe" and "believe in" are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

* believe
* To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
* To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.
* To persuade someone is to get that person to believe that something is true.
* believe in
* To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
* When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
* The phrase "have faith in" usually has the same meaning as "believe in."
* To "believe in Jesus" means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

In the Bible, the term "believer" refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

* The term "believer" literally means "person who believes."
* The term "Christian" eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

The term "unbelief" refers to not believing something or someone.

* In the Bible, "unbelief" refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
* A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an "unbeliever."

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "believe" and "believe in":

* To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right."
* To "believe in" could be translated as "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."

Translating "believer":

* Some translations may prefer to say "believer in Jesus" or "believer in Christ."
* This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means "person who trusts in Jesus" or "someone who knows Jesus and lives for him."
* Other ways to translate "believer" could be "follower of Jesus" or "person who knows and obeys Jesus."
* The term "believer" is a general term for any believer in Christ, while "disciple" and "apostle" were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.

Translating "unbelief" and "unbeliever":

* Other ways to translate "unbelief" could include "lack of faith" or "not believing."
* The term "unbeliever" could be translated as "person who does not believe in Jesus" or "someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [Christian](../kt/christian.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [faith](../kt/faith.md), [trust](../kt/trust.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 15:06
* Genesis 45:26
* Job 09:16-18
* Habakkuk 01:5-7
* Mark 06:4-6
* Mark 01:14-15
* Luke 09:41
* John 01:12
* Acts 06:05
* Acts 09:42
* Acts 28:23-24
* Romans 03:03
* 1 Corinthians 06:01
* 1 Corinthians 09:05
* 2 Corinthians 06:15
* Hebrews 03:12
* 1 John 03:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H539, H3948, H6601, G544, G569, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

am persuaded, belief, believe, believed, believer, believers, believes, believing, has faith, persuade, persuaded, persuading, persuasiveness, were persuaded

### beloved

#### Related Ideas:

dear, lovely, treasured

#### Definition:

The term "beloved" is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

* The term "beloved" literally means "loved (one)" or "(who is) loved."
* God refers to Jesus as his "beloved Son."
* In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as "beloved."
* Something or someone who is "lovely" attracts the love and good desires of others.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could also be translated as "loved" or "loved one" or "well-loved," or "very dear."
* In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as "my dear friend" or "my close friend." In English it is natural to say "my dear friend, Paul" or "Paul, who is my dear friend." Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
* Note that the word "beloved" comes from the word for God's love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](../kt/love.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:14
* 1 John 03:02
* 1 John 04:07
* Mark 01:11
* Mark 12:06
* Revelation 20:09
* Romans 16:08
* Song of Solomon 01:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G26, G27, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

beloved, dear, lovely, treasured

### betray

#### Related Ideas:

betrayal, betrayer, give over, hand over, traitor, treacherous, treacherously, treachery, turn over

#### Definition:

The term "betray" means to act in a way that deceives a person and allows other people to harm that person. A "betrayer" is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

* Judas was "the betrayer" because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
* The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus' unjust death.
* "Betrayal" and "treachery" are two words for what happens when one person betrays another.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "betray" could be translated as "deceive and cause harm to" or "turn over to the enemy" or "treat treacherously."
* The term "betrayer" could be translated as "person who betrays" or "double dealer" or "traitor."

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](../names/judasiscariot.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:52
* John 06:64
* John 13:22
* Matthew 10:04
* Matthew 26:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H898, H4042, H4603, H4604, H4820, H5462, H7411, G1560, G3860, G4273, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

betray, betrayal, betrayed, betrayer, betrayers, betraying, betrays, give ... over, given ... over, hand ... over, handed ... over, traitor, traitors, treacherous, treacherously, treachery, turn ... over

### bind

#### Related Ideas:

bond, bound, chain, fetter, put in bonds, put on, restrain, tie, wrap

#### Definition:

The term "bind" means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a "bond." The term "bound" is the past tense of this term.

* To be "bound" means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
* In a figurative sense, a person can be "bound" to a vow, which means he is "required to fulfill" what he promised to do.
* The term "bonds" refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
* In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
* The term "bind" can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
* A dead person would be "bound" with cloth in preparation for burial.
* The term "bond" is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
* A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
* For example, a husband and wife are "bound" or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.
* The term "bind" can also refer to forbidding an activity.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "bind" could also be translated as "tie" or "tie up" or "wrap (around)."
* Figuratively, it could be translated as to "restrain" or to "prevent" or to "keep from (something)."
* A special use of "bind" in Matthew 16 and 18 means "forbid" or "not permit."
* The term "bonds" could be translated as "chains" or "ropes" or "shackles."
* Figuratively the term "bond" could be translated as "knot" or "connection" or "close relationship."
* The phrase "bond of peace" means "being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other" or "the tying together that peace brings."
* To "bind up" could be translated as "wrap around" or "put a bandage on."
* To "bind" oneself with a vow could be translated as "promise to fulfill a vow" or "commit to fulfill a vow."
* Depending on the context, the term "bound" could also be translated as "tied" or "tied up" or "chained" or "obligated (to fulfill)" or "required to do."

(See also: [fulfill](../kt/fulfill.md), [peace](../other/peace.md), [prison](../other/prison.md), [servant](../other/servant.md), [vow](../kt/vow.md))

#### Bible References:

* Leviticus 08:07
* Matthew 16:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H247, H481, H612, H615, H631, H632, H640, H2296, H3729, H4147, H5178, H6029, H6123, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7576, H8244, G254, G1195, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1249, G1402, G2611, G3784, G4019, G4029, G4886, G4887

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bind, binding, bond, bonds, bound, chain, chained, chains, fetters, is bound, put ... in bonds, puts on, restrain, tie, tie up, tied, tied up, tying, wrapped

### birthright

#### Definition:

The term "birthright" in the Bible refers to the honor, family name, and physical wealth that was normally given to the firstborn son in a family.

* The birthright of the firstborn son included a double portion of the father's inheritance.
* A king's firstborn son was normally given the birthright to rule after his father died.
* Esau sold his birthright to his younger brother Jacob. Because of this, Jacob inherited the blessing of the firstborn instead of Esau.
* The birthright also included the honor of having the family descendants traced through the firstborn son's line.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Possible ways to translate "birthright" could include, "rights and wealth of the firstborn son" or "family honor" or "privilege and inheritance of the firstborn."

(See also: [firstborn](../other/firstborn.md), [inherit](../kt/inherit.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:01
* Genesis 25:34
* Genesis 43:33
* Hebrews 12:14-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1062, G4415

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

birthright

### blameless

#### Related Ideas:

blamelessly, faultless, without blame

#### Definition:

The term "blameless" literally means "without blame." It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

* Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
* A person who has a reputation for being "blameless" behaves in a way that honors God.
* According to one verse, a person who is blameless is "one who fears God and turns away from evil."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This could also be translated as "with no fault to his character" or "completely obedient to God" or "avoiding sin" or "keeping away from evil."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:10
* 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
* 2 Peter 03:14
* Colossians 01:22
* Genesis 17:1-2
* Philippians 02:15
* Philippians 03:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1368, H2135, H2136, H8535, H8549, G273, G274, G298, G299, G410, G423, G677

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

blameless, blamelessly, faultless, without blame

### blasphemy

#### Related Ideas:

blaspheme, blasphemer, blasphemous, insult, revile, taunt

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "blasphemy" refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To "blaspheme" or "insult" or "revile" someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

* Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
* It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
* Some English versions translate this term as "slander" when it refers to blaspheming people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To "blaspheme" can be translated as to "say evil things against" or to "dishonor God" or to "slander."
* Ways to translate "blasphemy" could include "speaking wrongly about others" or "slander" or "spreading false rumors."

(See also: [dishonor](../other/dishonor.md), [slander](../other/slander.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 01:12-14
* Acts 06:11
* Acts 26:9-11
* James 02:5-7
* John 10:32-33
* Luke 12:10
* Mark 14:64
* Matthew 12:31
* Matthew 26:65
* Psalms 074:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1421, H1442, H2778, H3639, H5006, H5007, H5344, G987, G988, G989, G3059, G3680, G5196

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

blaspheme, blasphemed, blasphemer, blasphemers, blasphemes, blasphemies, blaspheming, blasphemous, blasphemy, insult, insulted, insulting, insults, revile, reviled, reviling

### blemish

#### Related Ideas:

defect, unblemished

#### Definitions:

The term "blemish" refers to a physical defect or imperfection on an animal or person. It can also refer to spiritual imperfections and faults in people.

* For certain sacrifices, God instructed the Israelites to offer an animal with no blemishes or defects.
* This is a picture of how Jesus Christ was the perfect sacrifice, without any sin.
* Believers in Christ have been cleansed from their sin by his blood and are considered to be without blemish.
* Ways to translate this term could include "defect" or "imperfection" or "sin," depending on the context.
* Something that is "unblemished" does not have any blemishes or defects.

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [clean](../kt/clean.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:19
* 2 Peter 02:13
* Deuteronomy 15:19-21
* Numbers 06:13-15
* Song of Solomon 04:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3971, H8400, H8549, G299, G3470

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

blemish, blemishes, defect, unblemished

### bless

#### Related Ideas:

happier, happy

#### Definition:

To "bless" someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

* Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
* In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
* When people "bless" God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
* The term "bless" is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To "bless" could also be translated as to "provide abundantly for" or to "be very kind and favorable toward."
* "God has brought great blessing to" could be translated as "God has given many good things to" or "God has provided abundantly for" or "God has caused many good things to happen to".
* "He is blessed" could be translated as "he will greatly benefit" or "he will experience good things" or "God will cause him to flourish."
* "Blessed is the person who" could be translated as "How good it is for the person who."
* Expressions like "blessed be the Lord" could be translated as "May the Lord be praised" or "Praise the Lord" or "I praise the Lord."
* In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as "thanked God for the food" or "praised God for giving them food" or "consecrated the food by praising God for it."

(See also: [praise](../other/praise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 10:16
* Acts 13:34
* Ephesians 01:03
* Genesis 14:20
* Isaiah 44:03
* James 01:25
* Luke 06:20
* Matthew 26:26
* Nehemiah 09:05
* Romans 04:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H833, H835, H8055, H1288, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G3741

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bless, blessed, blesses, blessing, blessings, happier, happy

### blood

#### Related Ideas:

bleeding

#### Definition:

The term "blood" refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person's skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person's entire body.

* Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
* When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal's life to pay for people's sins.
* Through his death on the cross, Jesus' blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
* The expression "flesh and blood" refers to human beings.
* The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to people who are biologically related.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
* The expression "flesh and blood" could be translated as "people" or "human beings."
* Depending on the context, the expression "my own flesh and blood" could be translated as "my own family" or "my own relatives" or "my own people."
* If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate "flesh and blood."

(See also: [flesh](../kt/flesh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 Samuel 14:32
* Acts 02:20
* Acts 05:28
* Colossians 01:20
* Galatians 01:16
* Genesis 04:11
* Psalms 016:4
* Psalms 105:28-30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bleeding, blood

### bloodshed

#### Related Ideas:

bloodguilt

#### Definition:

The term "bloodshed" refers to the death of human beings due to murder, war, or some other violent act.

* This term literally means "shedding of blood," which refers to when blood comes out of a person's body from an open wound.
* The term "bloodshed" is often used to refer to widespread killing of people.
* It is also used as a general reference to the sin of murder.
* "Bloodguilt" is guilt for bloodshed.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* "The bloodshed" could be translated as "the killing of people" or "the many people who were killed."
* "Through bloodshed" could also be translated as, "by killing people."
* "Innocent bloodshed" could be translated as "killing innocent people."
* "Bloodshed follows bloodshed" could be translated as "they keep killing people" or "the killing of people goes on and on" or "they have killed many people and continue to do that" or "people keep killing other people."
* Another figurative use, "bloodshed will pursue you," could be translated as "your people will continue to experience bloodshed" or "your people will keep being killed" or "your people will continue to be at war with other nations and people will keep dying."

(See also: [blood](../kt/blood.md) [slaughter](../other/slaughter.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 22:6-8
* Genesis 09:5-7
* Hebrews 09:21-22
* Isaiah 26:21
* Matthew 23:29-31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1818

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bloodguilt, bloodshed

### blot out

#### Related Ideas:

wipe out, wipe away

#### Definition:

The terms "blot out" and "wipe out" are expressions that mean to completely remove or destroy something or someone.

* These expressions can be used in a positive sense, as when God "blots out" sins by forgiving them and choosing not to remember them.
* It is also often used in a negative sense, as when God "blots out" or "wipes out" a people group, destroying them because of their sin.
* The Bible talks about a person's name being "blotted out" or "wiped out" of God's Book of Life, which means that the person will not receive eternal life.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, these expressions could be translated as "get rid of" or "remove" or "completely destroy" or "completely remove."
* When referring to blotting someone's name out of the Book of Life, this could be translated as "removed from" or "erased."

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 29:20
* Exodus 32:30-32
* Genesis 07:23
* Psalm 051:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4229, H8045, G1813

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

blot out, blots out, blotted out, wipe ... out, wipe away, wiped out, wipes out

### boast

#### Related Ideas:

boastful

#### Definition:

The term "boast" means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

* Someone who is "boastful" talks about himself in a proud way.
* God rebuked the Israelites for "boasting in" their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
* The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
* God urged the Israelites to instead "boast" or be proud about the fact that they know him.
* The apostle Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "boast" could include "brag" or "talk proudly" or "be proud."
* The term "boastful" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "full of prideful talk" or "prideful" or "talking proudly about oneself."
* In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as "take pride in" or "exalt in" or "be very glad about" or "give thanks to God about."
* Some languages have two words for "pride": one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in one's work, family, or country.

#### Translation Suggestions:

(See also: [proud](../other/proud.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 20:11
* 2 Timothy 03:1-4
* James 03:14
* James 04:15-17
* Psalms 044:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1984, H3235, H6286, G212, G213, G1461, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3166

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

boast, boasted, boastful, boasting, boasts, reason for boasting

### body

#### Related Ideas:

bodily, body of Christ, carcass, corpse

#### Definition:

The term "body" literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

* Often the term "body" refers to a dead person. Sometimes this is referred to as a "dead body" or a "corpse." The dead body of an animal is called a "carcass."
* When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, "This (bread) is my body," he was referring to his physical body that would be "broken" (killed) to pay for their sins.
* In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the "body of Christ." Just as a physical body has many parts, the "body of Christ" has many individual members. Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
* Jesus is also referred to as the "head" (leader) of the "body" of his believers. Just as a person's head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his "body."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
* When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say "spiritual body of Christ."
* When Jesus says, "This is my body," it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
* Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as "corpse" for a person or "carcass" for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](../other/head.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:12
* 1 Corinthians 05:05
* Ephesians 04:04
* Judges 14:08
* Numbers 06:6-8
* Psalm 031:09
* Romans 12:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H990, H1320, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5315, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4561, G4954, G4983

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bodies, bodily, body, carcass, carcasses, corpse, corpses

### bold

#### Related Ideas:

boldly, boldness, emboldened

#### Definition:

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

* A "bold" person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as "courageous" or "fearless."
* In the New Testament, the disciples continued to "boldly" preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as "confidently" or "with strong courage" or "courageously."
* The "boldness" of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ's redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. "Boldness" could also be translated as "confident courage."

(See also: [confidence](../other/confidence.md), [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [redeem](../kt/redeem.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:28
* 1 Thessalonians 02:1-2
* 2 Corinthians 03:12-13
* Acts 04:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H982, H5797, G662, G2292, G3618, G3954, G3955, G5111, G5112

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bold, boldly, boldness, emboldened

### born again

#### Related Ideas:

born from God, born from him, new birth

#### Definition:

The term "born again" was first used by Jesus to describe what it means for God to change a person from being dead spiritually to being alive spiritually. The terms "born of God" and "born of the Spirit" also refer to a person being given new spiritual life.

* All humans are born spiritually dead and are given a "new birth" when they accept Jesus Christ as their Savior.
* At the moment of the spiritual new birth, God's Holy Spirit begins to live in the new believer and empowers him to produce good spiritual fruit in his life.
* It is God's work to cause a person to be born again and become his child.
* Jesus uses the metaphor of being born again to speak of the time when he returns and rules over the earth.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "born again" could include "born anew" or "born spiritually."
* It is best to translate this term literally and use the normal word in the language that would be used for being born.
* The term "new birth" might be translated as "spiritual birth."
* The phrase "born of God" could be translated as "caused by God to have new life like a newborn baby" or "given new life by God."
* In the same way, "born of the Spirit" could be translated as "given new life by the Holy Spirit" or "empowered by the Holy Spirit to become God's child" or "caused by the Spirit to have new life like a newborn baby."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [save](../kt/save.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:09
* 1 Peter 01:03
* 1 Peter 01:23
* John 03:04
* John 03:07
* Titus 03:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G313, G509, G1080, G3824

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

born again, born from God, born from him, born of God, new birth

### bow

#### Related Ideas:

bend, bend the knee, bow down, fall down before, kneel

#### Note

For the weapon called a bow, [click here](./bowweapon.md).

#### Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To "bow down" means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

* Other expressions include "bow the knee" (meaning to kneel) and "bow the head" (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
* Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is "bowed down" has been brought to a low position of humility.
* Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
* Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
* In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
* The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "bend forward" or "bend the head" or "kneel."
* The term "bow down" could be translated as "kneel down" or "prostrate oneself."
* Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](../kt/humble.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 05:18
* Exodus 20:05
* Genesis 24:26
* Genesis 44:14
* Isaiah 44:19
* Luke 24:05
* Matthew 02:11
* Revelation 03:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H86, H1288, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098, G4352, G4364

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

are bent, bend, bend the knee, bow, bow down, bowed, bowed ... down, bowed ... down ... before, bowing, bowing down, bows, bows down, fall down, fell, fell down, has ... bent, have ... bent, kneel, kneeling, knelt, will bend

### bow and arrow

#### Note

For the verb bow, [click here](./bow.md).

#### Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

* The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
* An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
* Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
* The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 21:16
* Habakkuk 03:9-10
* Job 29:20-22
* Lamentations 02:04
* Psalms 058:6-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1121, H2671, H7189, H7198, G5115

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

a bow, arrow, arrows, bow and arrow, bows, bows and arrows, the bow

### bread

#### Related Ideas:

food, loaf of bread

#### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

* When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
* Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
* Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called "unleavened bread" and was used for the Jews' passover meal.
* Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general.
* The term "bread of the presence" referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
* The figurative term "bread from heaven" referred to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
* Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."
* When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
* Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."

(See also: [Passover](../kt/passover.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [unleavened bread](../kt/unleavenedbread.md), [yeast](../other/yeast.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:46
* Acts 27:35
* Exodus 16:15
* Luke 09:13
* Mark 06:38
* Matthew 04:04
* Matthew 11:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bread, food, loaf of ... bread, loaves, loaves of ... bread

### breastplate

#### Related Ideas:

breastpiece

#### Definition:

The term "breastplate" refers to a piece of armor covering the front of the chest to protect a soldier during battle. The term "breastpiece" refers to a special piece of clothing that the Israelite high priest wore over the front part of his chest.

* A "breastplate" used by a soldier could be made of wood, metal, or animal skin. It was made to prevent arrows, spears, or swords from piercing the chest of the soldier.
* The "breastpiece" worn by the Israelite high priest was made of cloth and had valuable gems attached to it. The priest wore this when he was performing his duties of service to God in the temple.
* Other ways to translate the term "breastplate" could include "metal protective chest covering" or "armor piece protecting the chest."
* The term "breastpiece" could be translated with a word that means "priestly clothing covering the chest" or "priestly garment piece" or "front piece of priest's clothing."

(See also: [armor](../other/armor.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [pierce](../other/pierce.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [warrior](../other/warrior.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:08
* Exodus 39:14-16
* Isaiah 59:17
* Revelation 09:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2833 , H8302, G2382

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

breastpiece, breastplate, breastplates

### breath

#### Related Ideas:

breathe

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "breathe" and "breath" are often used figuratively to refer to giving life or having life.

* The Bible teaches that God "breathed into" Adam the breath of life. It was at that point that Adam became a living soul.
* When Jesus breathed on the disciples and told them to "receive the Spirit," he was probably literally breathing out air onto them to symbolize the Holy Spirit coming to them.
* Sometimes the terms "breathing" and "breathing out" are used to refer to speaking.
* The figurative expression "breath of God" or "breath of Yahweh" often refers to God's wrath being poured out on rebellious or godless nations. It communicates his power.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The expression "breathed his last" is a figurative way of saying "he died." It could also be translated as "he took his last breath" or "he stopped breathing and died" or "he breathed in air one last time."
* Describing the Scriptures as "God-breathed" means that God spoke or inspired the words of the Scriptures which human authors then wrote down. It is probably best, if possible, to translate "God-breathed" somewhat literally since it is difficult to communicate the exact meaning of this.
* If a literal translation of "God-breathed" is not acceptable, other ways to translate this could include "inspired by God" or "authored by God" or "spoken by God." It could also be said that "God breathed out the words of Scripture."
* The expressions "put breath in" or "breathe life into" or "gives breath to" could be translated as "cause to breathe" or "make alive again" or "enable them to live and breathe" or "give life to."
* If possible, it is best to translate "breath of God" with the literal word that is used for "breath" in the language. If God cannot be said to have "breath," this could be translated as "God's power" or "God's speech."
* The expression "catch my breath" or "get my breath" could be translated as "relax in order to breathe more slowly" or "stop running in order to breathe normally."
* The expression "is only a breath" means "lasts a very short time."
* Similarly the expression "man is a single breath" means "people live a very short time" or "the lives of human beings are very short, like a single breath" or "compared to God, the life of a person seems as short as the time it takes to breathe in one breath of air."

(See also: [Adam](../names/adam.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md), [life](../kt/life.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 17:17
* Ecclesiastes 08:08
* Job 04:09
* Revelation 11:11
* Revelation 13:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3307, H5301, H5396, H5397, H7307, G1720, G4157

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

breath, breathe, breathed, breathes, breathing

### bribe

#### Related Ideas:

bribery, payoff

#### Definition:

To "bribe" means to give someone something of value, such as money, to influence that person to do something dishonest.

* The soldiers who guarded Jesus' empty tomb were bribed with money to lie about what happened.
* Sometimes a government official will be bribed to overlook a crime or to vote a certain way.
* The Bible forbids giving or taking bribes.
* The term, "bribe" could be translated as, "dishonest payment" or "payment for lying" or "price for breaking the rules."
* To "bribe" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, to "pay to influence (someone)" or to "pay to have a dishonest favor done" or to "pay for a favor."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 08:1-3
* Ecclesiastes 07:7
* Isaiah 01:23
* Micah 03:9-11
* Proverbs 15:27-28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3724, H4979, H7809, H7810, H7936, H7966, H8021, H8641, G5260

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bribe, bribed, bribery, bribes, payoffs

### bride

#### Related Ideas:

bridal

#### Definition:

A bride is the woman in a wedding ceremony who is getting married to her husband, the bridegroom.

* The term "bride" is used as a metaphor for believers in Jesus, the Church.
* Jesus is metaphorically called the "bridegroom" for the Church.

(See also: [bridegroom](../other/bridegroom.md), [church](../kt/church.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 22:16
* Isaiah 62:5
* Joel 02:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3618, G3565

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bridal, bride, brides

### bridegroom

#### Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

* In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
* In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the "Bridegroom" who will someday come for his "Bride," the Church.
* Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: [bride](../other/bride.md))

#### Bible References:

* Isaiah 62:5
* Joel 02:15-16
* John 03:30
* Luke 05:35
* Mark 02:19
* Mark 02:20
* Matthew 09:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2860, G3566

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bridegroom, bridegrooms

### bronze

#### Definition:

The term "bronze" refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

* Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
* In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers' armor, among other things.
* Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
* Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
* Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called "casting."

(See also: [armor](../other/armor.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 07:16
* 1 Samuel 17:37-38
* Daniel 02:44-45
* Exodus 25:3-7
* Revelation 01:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bronze

### brother

#### Related Ideas:

brotherhood

#### Definition:

The term "brother" usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

* In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
* In the New Testament, the apostles often used "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
* A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
* In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
* In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
* If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
* Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
* Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [sister](../other/sister.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:26
* Genesis 29:10
* Leviticus 19:17
* Nehemiah 03:01
* Philippians 04:21
* Revelation 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2993, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brother, brother's, brotherhood, brothers, brothers'

### burden

#### Related Ideas:

burdensome, heavy, load

#### Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term "burden" also has several figurative meanings:

* A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be "bearing" or "carrying" a "heavy burden."
* A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
* A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
* The guilt of a person's sin is a burden to him.
* The "burden of the Lord" is a figurative way of referring to a "message from God," usually an important or unpleasant one, that a prophet must deliver to God's people.
* The term "burden" can be translated by "responsibility" or "duty" or "heavy load" or "message," depending on the context.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
* Galatians 06:1-2
* Galatians 06:03
* Genesis 49:15
* Matthew 11:30
* Matthew 23:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H4931, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, H6231, G4, G916, G922, G1912, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burden, burdened, burdens, burdensome, heavy, load, loaded, loaded up, loads

### burnt offering

#### Related Ideas:

offering by fire

#### Definition:

A "burnt offering" was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an "offering by fire."

* Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
* Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
* God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](../kt/altar.md), [atonement](../kt/atonement.md), [ox](../other/cow.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 40:5-7
* Genesis 08:20
* Genesis 22:1-3
* Leviticus 03:05
* Mark 12:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, G3646

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire, offering made by fire

### bury

#### Related Ideas:

burial

#### Definition:

The term "bury" usually refers to putting a dead body into a hole or other burial place. The term "burial" is the act of burying something or can be used to describe a place used to bury something.

* Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
* Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
* In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
* The terms "burial place" or "burial room" or "burial chamber" or "burial cave" are all ways to refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
* Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
* The phrase "buried his face" usually means "covered his face with his hands."
* Sometimes the word "hide" can mean "bury" as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also:[Jericho](../names/jericho.md), [tomb](../other/tomb.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 09:9-10
* Genesis 35:4-5
* Jeremiah 25:33
* Luke 16:22
* Matthew 27:07
* Psalm 079:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burial, buried, buries, bury, burying

### call

#### Related Ideas:

appeal to, invite, summon

#### Definition:

The terms "call to" and "call out" mean to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. To "call" someone means to summon that person. There are also some other meanings.

* To "call out" to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
* Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
* God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
* When God "calls" people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
* This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, "His name is called John," means, "He is named John" or "His name is John."
* To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
* A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God has specifically chosen that person.
* To appeal to someone is to ask someone to do something.
* To invite someone is to ask them to do something that they might like to do.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
* The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
* When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as, "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
* "You must call his name" can also be translated as, "you must name him."
* "His name is called" could also be translated as, "his name is" or "he is named."
* To "call out" could be translated as, "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
* The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
* To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
* To "call on" an official is to tell him to do what he is supposed to do as part of his job.
* To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
* The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as, "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."
* When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as, "I know you and have chosen you."

(See also: [pray](../kt/pray.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:24
* 1 Thessalonians 04:07
* 2 Timothy 01:09
* Ephesians 04:01
* Galatians 01:15
* Matthew 02:15
* Philippians 03:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2199, H3259, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G1528, G1793, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G3870, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appeal to, appealed to, appealing to, call, called, called on, called out, calling, calling out, calls, calls out, invite, invited, summon, summoned, summoning

### camel

#### Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back.

* In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
* The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
* Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
* Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](../other/burden.md), [clean](../kt/clean.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:21
* 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
* Exodus 09:1-4
* Mark 10:25
* Matthew 03:04
* Matthew 19:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1581, G2574

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

camel, camel's, camels, camels'

### captive

#### Related Ideas:

captivate, captivity, captor, capture, catch

#### Definition:

The terms "captive" and "captivity" refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

* The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
* Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
* Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
* The expression to "take captive" is another way of talking about capturing someone.
* The expression, "carry you away captive" could also be translated as, "force you to live as captives" or "take you away to another country as prisoners."
* In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to "take captive" every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
* He also talks about how a person can be "taken captive" by sin, which means he is "controlled by" sin.
* A "captor" is a person who captures another person or takes him captive.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, to be "held captive" could also be translated by, "not allowed to be free" or "kept in prison" or "forced to live in a foreign country."
* The expression, "led captive" or "taken captive" could be translated as, "captured" or "imprisoned" or "forced to go to a foreign land."
* The term "captives" could also be translated as, "people who were captured" or "enslaved people."
* Depending on the context, "captivity" could also be translated as, "imprisonment" or "exile" or "forced stay in a foreign country."

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [exile](../other/exile.md), [prison](../other/prison.md), [seize](../other/seize.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 10:05
* Isaiah 20:04
* Jeremiah 43:03
* Luke 04:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H270, H631, H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H3920, H3947, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221, G4084

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

captivate, captivated, captive, captives, captivity, captor, captors, capture, captured, captures, carried away captive, catch, caught, held captive, taken ... captive

### cast out

#### Related Ideas:

banish, cast off, compel to go, drive out, force out, outcast, put outside, throw out

#### Definition:

To "cast out" or "drive out" someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

* The term "cast" means the same thing as "throw." To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
* In a figurative sense, "cast out" or "cast away" someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.
* To "banish" someone is to force them to stay far away.
* An "outcast" is someone whom other people have rejected and forced him to go live somewhere else.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, "force out" or "send away" or "get rid of."
* To "cast out demons" could be translated as "cause the demons to leave" or "drive the evil spirits out" or "expel the demons" or "command the demon to come out."

(See also: [demon](../kt/demon.md), [demon-possessed](../kt/demonpossessed.md), [lots](../other/lots.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:17-19
* Mark 03:13-16
* Mark 09:29
* Matthew 07:21-23
* Matthew 09:32-34
* Matthew 12:24
* Matthew 17:19-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H5080, H7843, H7971, H7993, G1544

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

banish, banished, cast ... off, cast ... out, casting out, compelled ... to go, drive, drive ... away, drive ... out, driven, driven ... away, driven ... out, drives ... away, drives ... out, driving ... out, drove ... out, force ... out, forced ... out, forcing ... out, outcast, outcasts, put ... outside, threw ... out, throw ... out, throwing out, thrown, thrown out

### caught up

#### Related Ideas:

catch up with

#### Definition:

The term "caught up" often refers to God taking a person up to heaven in a sudden, miraculous way.

* The phrase "caught up with" refers to coming up to someone after hurrying to reach him. A term with a similar meaning is "overtake."
* The apostle Paul talked about being "caught up" to the third heaven. This could also be translated as "taken up."
* Paul said that when Christ comes back, Christians will be "caught up" together to meet him in the air.
* The figurative expression, "my sins have caught up with me" could be translated as, "I am receiving the consequences of my sin" or "because of my sin I am suffering" or "my sin is causing me trouble."

(see: [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [overtake](../other/overtake.md), [suffer](../other/suffer.md), [trouble](../other/trouble.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 12:1-2
* Acts 08:39-40

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1692, G726

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

catch up with, caught up, caught up with

### cedar

#### Related Ideas:

cedarwood

#### Definition:

The term "cedar" refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

* The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
* Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
* It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: [fir](../other/fir.md), [pure](../kt/purify.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
* 1 Kings 07:1-2
* Isaiah 02:13
* Zechariah 11:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H730

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cedar, cedars, cedarwood

### census

#### Related Ideas:

register

#### Definition:

The term "census" refers to a formal counting of the number of people in a nation or empire.

* The Old Testament records different times when God ordered that the men of Israel be counted, such as when the Israelites first left Egypt and then again just before they entered Canaan.
* Often the purpose of a census was in order to know how many people should be paying taxes.
* For example, one time in Exodus the Israelite men were counted so that each one would pay a half shekel for taking care of the temple.
* When Jesus was a baby, the Roman government did a census to count all the people who lived throughout their empire, to require them to pay taxes.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Possible ways to translate this term could include, "name counting" or "list of names" or "enrollment."
* The phrase "take a census" could be translated as "register people's names" or "enroll people" or "write down people's names."

(See also: [nation](../other/nation.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:37
* Exodus 30:12
* Exodus 38:26
* Luke 02:03
* Numbers 04:1-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1538, H3789, H4662, H5674, H6485, H7218, G582, G583

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

census, register, registered

### centurion

#### Definition:

A centurion was a Roman army officer who had a group of 100 soldiers under his command.

* This could also be translated with a term that means, "leader of a hundred men" or "army leader" or "officer in charge of a hundred."
* One Roman centurion came to Jesus to request healing for his servant.
* The centurion in charge of Jesus' crucifixion was amazed when he witnessed how Jesus died.
* God sent a centurion to Peter so that Peter could explain to him the good news about Jesus.

(See also: [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 10:01
* Acts 27:01
* Acts 27:42-44
* Luke 07:04
* Luke 23:47
* Mark 15:39
* Matthew 08:07
* Matthew 27:54

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1543, G2760

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

centurion, centurions

### chaff

#### Related Ideas:

straw

#### Definition:

Chaff is a dry protective covering of a grain seed. The chaff is not good for food, so people separate it from the seed and throw it away.

* Often, the chaff is separated from the seed by throwing the heads of grain up into the air. The wind blows the chaff away and the seed falls on the ground. This process is called "winnowing."
* In the Bible, this term is also used figuratively to refer to evil people and evil, worthless things.
* "Straw" is the stalk of the grain left after the the seed has been taken away.

(See also: [grain](../other/grain.md), [wheat](../other/wheat.md), [winnow](../other/winnow.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 02:35
* Job 21:18
* Luke 03:17
* Matthew 03:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2842, H4671, H5784, H8401, G892

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chaff, straw

### chariot

#### Related Ideas:

charioteer

#### Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

* People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
* In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
* The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.
* A "charioteer" was a person who drove a chariot.

(See also: [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 09:22
* 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
* Acts 08:29
* Acts 08:38
* Daniel 11:40-41
* Exodus 14:25
* Genesis 41:43

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G716, G4480

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chariot, charioteer, charioteers, chariots

### cherubim

#### Related Ideas:

cherub

#### Definition:

The term "cherub," and its plural form "cherubim," refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. Cherubim have wings and can fly. Ezekiel also called them “living creatures” and described them as having four faces: the faces of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.

* The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
* After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
* God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
* He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
* Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "cherubim" could be translated as "creatures with wings" or "guardians with wings" or "winged spiritual guardians" or "holy, winged guardians."
* A "cherub" should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, "creature with wings" or "winged spiritual guardian," for example.
* Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of "angel."
* Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 13:06
* 1 Kings 06:23-26
* 2 Samuel 22:11
* Exodus 25:15-18
* Ezekiel 01:05-14
* Ezekiel 09:03
* Ezekiel 10:15
* Genesis 03:22-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3742, G5502

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cherub, cherubim

### chief

#### Related Ideas:

finest, first of all, important, prominent

#### Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

* Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," "chief tax collector" and "chief ruler."
* It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
* When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: [chief priests](../other/chiefpriests.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [tax collector](../other/tax.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 01:11-13
* Ezekiel 26:15-16
* Luke 19:02
* Psalm 004:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H117, H441, H3629, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G3175, G4410, G4413, G5506

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chief, chiefs, finest, first of all, important, most important, prominent

### chief priests

#### Definition:

The chief priests were important Jewish religious leaders during the time that Jesus lived on earth.

* The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
* They were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
* The chief priests were some of Jesus' main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "chief priests" could also be translated as "head priests" or "leading priests" or "ruling priests."
* Make sure this term is translated differently from the term "high priest."

(See also: [chief](../other/chief.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:13-16
* Acts 22:30
* Acts 26:12-14
* Luke 20:01
* Mark 08:31
* Matthew 16:21
* Matthew 26:3-5
* Matthew 26:59
* Matthew 27:41-42

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7218, G749

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chief priests

### children

#### Related Ideas:

child, childhood, childless

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "child" is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant.

* The word "childhood" refers to the time that a person is a child.
* The word "childless" describes a person who has no children.
* The word "children" is the plural form of "child."

The words "child" and "children" also have several figurative uses.

* In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
* Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
* The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
* children of the light
* children of obedience
* children of the devil
* This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, "children of God" refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
* Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
* If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
* When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
* When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
* The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [promise](../kt/promise.md), [son](../kt/son.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [beloved](../kt/beloved.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:28
* 3 John 01:04
* Galatians 04:19
* Genesis 45:11
* Joshua 08:34-35
* Nehemiah 05:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G4690, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5207, G5388

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

child, childhood, childless, children

### chronicles

#### Definition:

The term "chronicle" refers to a written record of events over a period of time.

* Two Old Testament books are called "First Book of the Chronicles" and "Second Book of the Chronicles."
* The books called "Chronicles" record part of the history of the Israelite people, beginning with a list of people in every generation since Adam.
* The "First Book of the Chronicles" records the end of King Saul's life and the events of King David's reign.
* The "Second Book of the Chronicles" records the reigns of King Solomon and several other kings, including the building of the temple and the separation of the northern kingdom of Israel from the southern kingdom of Judah.
* The end of 2 Chronicles describes the beginning of the Babylonian exile.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [David](../names/david.md), [exile](../other/exile.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 27:24
* 2 Chronicles 33:19
* Esther 10:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1697

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chronicles

### church

#### Definition:

In the New Testament, the term "church" refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God's word preached. The term "the Church" often refers to all Christians.

* This term literally refers to a "called out" assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
* When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter ("Church") to distinguish it from the local church.
* Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone's home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the "church at Ephesus."
* In the Bible, "church" does not refer to a building.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "church" could be translated as a "gathering together" or "assembly" or "congregation" or "ones who meet together."
* The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
* Make sure that the translation of "church" does not just refer to a building.
* The term used to translate "assembly" in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
* Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation.

(See also: [assembly](../other/assembly.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [Christian](../kt/christian.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:12
* 1 Thessalonians 02:14
* 1 Timothy 03:05
* Acts 09:31
* Acts 14:23
* Acts 15:41
* Colossians 04:15
* Ephesians 05:23
* Matthew 16:18
* Philippians 04:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1577

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

church, churches

### circumcise

#### Related Ideas:

circumcision, uncircumcision

#### Definition:

The term "circumcise" means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

* God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God's covenant with them.
* God also commanded Abraham's descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
* The phrase, "circumcision of the heart" refers figuratively to the "cutting away" or removal of sin from a person.
* In a spiritual sense, "the circumcised" refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
* The term "uncircumcised" refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms "uncircumcised" and "uncircumcision" refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the "uncircumcised," he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.

The Bible refers to people who have an "uncircumcised heart" or who are "uncircumcised in heart." This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God's people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.

If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, "uncircumcised" could be translated as "not circumcised."

The expression "the uncircumcision" could be translated as "people who are not circumcised" or "people who do not belong to God," depending on the context.

Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include "not God's people" or "rebellious like those who don't belong to God" or "people who have no sign of belonging to God."

The expression "uncircumcised in heart" could be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to believe." However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
* Other ways to translate this term would be, "cut around" or "cut in a circle" or "cut off the foreskin."
* In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
* Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of "male."

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 17:11
* Genesis 17:14
* Exodus 12:48
* Leviticus 26:41
* Joshua 05:03
* Judges 15:18
* 2 Samuel 01:20
* Jeremiah 09:26
* Ezekiel 32:25
* Acts 10:44-45
* Acts 11:03
* Acts 15:01
* Acts 11:03
* Romans 02:27
* Galatians 05:03
* Ephesians 02:11
* Philippians 03:03
* Colossians 02:11
* Colossians 02:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

### citizen

#### Related Ideas:

citizenship

#### Definition:

A citizen is someone who lives in a specific city, country, or kingdom. It especially refers to someone who is recognized officially as being a legal resident of that place.

* Depending on the context, this could also be translated as "inhabitant" or "official resident."
* A citizen could live in a region that is part of a larger kingdom or empire that is governed by a king, emperor, or other ruler. For example, Paul was a citizen of the Roman Empire, which consisted of many different provinces; Paul lived in one of those provinces.
* In a figurative sense, believers in Jesus are called "citizens" of heaven in the sense that they will live there someday. Like a citizen of a country, Christians belong to God's kingdom.

( See: [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [province](../other/province.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 21:39-40
* Isaiah 03:03
* Luke 15:15
* Luke 19:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6440, G4175, G4177, G4847

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

citizen, citizens, citizenship

### city of David

#### Facts:

The term "city of David" can refer to the city of Jerusalem, part of Jerusalem, or Bethlehem.

* Jerusalem is where David lived while he ruled Israel.
* Bethlehem is where David was born.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [Bethlehem](../names/bethlehem.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:1-2
* 2 Samuel 05:6-7
* Isaiah 22:8-9
* Luke 02:04
* Nehemiah 03:14-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1732, H5892, G1138, G4172

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

city of David

### clan

#### Related Ideas:

ancestral clan

#### Definition:

The term "clan" refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

* In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
* Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
* Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses' father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
* Clan could be translated as "family group" or "extended family" or "relatives."

(See also: [family](../other/family.md), [Jethro](../names/jethro.md), [tribe](../other/tribe.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:33-35
* Genesis 10:2-5
* Genesis 36:15-16
* Genesis 36:29-30
* Genesis 36:40
* Joshua 15:20
* Numbers 03:38-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1, H441, H504, H1004, H4940

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ancestral clan, ancestral clans, clan, clans

### clean

#### Related Ideas:

cleanness, cleanse, unclean, uncleanness, wash

#### Definition:

The term "clean" literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, words like "clean" and "washed" are often used figuratively to mean, "pure," "holy," "free from sin," or "innocent".

* "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
* In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
* A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
* Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

* God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
* People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
* If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
* Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
* This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
* In another figurative sense, "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "clean":

* This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
* Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
* "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
* Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.

Translating "unclean""

* The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
* When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
* The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [defile](../other/defile.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 07:02
* Genesis 07:08
* Deuteronomy 12:15
* Psalms 051:07
* Proverbs 20:30
* Ezekiel 24:13
* Matthew 23:27
* Luke 05:13
* Acts 08:07
* Acts 10:27-29
* Colossians 03:05
* 1 Thessalonians 04:07
* James 04:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H1351, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6663, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514, G2839, G2840

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clean, cleaned, cleanness, cleans, cleanse, cleansed, cleanses, cleansing, purge, unclean, uncleanness, wash, washed, washes, washing

### clothed

#### Related Ideas:

cloth, clothe, cover, dressed, garment, put on, unclothed, wardrobe, wear

#### Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, "clothed with" means to be endowed or equipped with something. To "clothe" oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

* In the same way that clothing is outside your body and is visible to all, when you are "clothed" with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To "clothe yourself with kindness" means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
* To be "clothed with power from on high" means to have power given to you.
* This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as "clothed with shame" or "clothed with terror."
* All of the clothes a person wears is called his "wardrobe."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, "clothe yourselves with." Another way to translate this could be "put on" if this refers to putting on clothes.
* If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate "clothed with" could be "showing" or "manifesting" or "filled with" or "having the quality of."
* The term "clothe yourself with" could also be translated as "cover yourself with" or "behave in a way that shows."

#### Bible References:

* Luke 24:49

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H155, H899, H2290, H3680, H3736, H3801, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4254, H4374, H5526, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5409, G5509

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cloth, clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, cover, covered, coverings, coverings for their loins, covers, dressed, garment, garments, put ... on, putting ... on, unclothed, wardrobe, wear, wearing, worn

### comfort

#### Related Ideas:

comforter, console, consolation

#### Definition:

The terms "comfort" and "comforter" refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

* A person who comforts someone is called a "comforter."
* In the Old Testament, the term "comfort" is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
* In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
* The expression "comforter of Israel" referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
* Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the "Comforter" who helps believers in Jesus.
* To "appease" someone is to do something that causes that person to no longer be angry about the wrong that someone else has done to him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "comfort" could also be translated as, "ease the pain of" or "help (someone) overcome grief" or "encourage" or "console."
* A phrase such as "our comfort" could be translated as "our encouragement" or "our consoling of (someone)" or "our help in times of grieving."
* The term "comforter" could be translated as "person who comforts" or "someone who helps ease pain" or "person who encourages."
* When the Holy Spirit is called "the Comforter" this could also be translated as "the Encourager" or "the Helper" or "the One who helps and guides."
* The phrase "comforter of Israel" could be translated as, "the Messiah, who comforts Israel."
* An expression like, "they have no comforter" could also be translated as, "No one has comforted them" or "There is no one to encourage or help them."

(See also: [encourage](../other/courage.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
* 2 Corinthians 01:04
* 2 Samuel 10:1-3
* Acts 20:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G3870, G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

comfort, comforted, comforter, comforters, comforting, comforts, consolation, consolations, consoling, uncomforted

### command

#### Related Ideas:

commandment, forbid, order, requirement, solemn command

#### Definition:

The term to "command" means to order someone to do something. A "command" or "commandment" is what the person was ordered to do.

* Although these terms have basically the same meaning, "commandment" often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
* A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
* To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.
* To "forbid" is to command that someone not do something.

#### Translation Suggestions

* It is best to translate this term differently from the term "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
* Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
* Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](../other/decree.md), [statute](../other/statute.md), [law](../other/law.md), [Ten Commandments](../other/tencommandments.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 01:06
* Matthew 01:24
* Matthew 22:38
* Matthew 28:20
* Numbers 01:17-19
* Romans 07:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3245, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4687, H4931, H5713, H5749, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3143, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4487, G5506

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

command, commanded, commanding, commandment, commandments, commands, forbid, forbidden, forbidding, give ... solemn command, given ... solemn commands, given an order, given orders, order, ordered, orders, requirement, solemn commands

### commander

#### Related Ideas:

captain, leader, military officer, one who leads

#### Definition:

The term "commander" refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

* A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
* This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
* Other ways to translate "commander" could include, "leader" or "captain" or "officer."
* The term to "command" an army could be translated as to "lead" or to "be in charge of."

(See also: [command](../kt/command.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md), [centurion](../kt/centurion.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
* 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
* Daniel 02:14
* Mark 06:21-22
* Proverbs 06:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H1368, H2710, H2951, H1169, G4755, H5057, H5257, H6260, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7860, H7990, H8269, G758, G2233, G4291, G5506

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

captain, captains, commander, commanders, leader, leaders, leading, military officers, one who leads

### commit

#### Related Ideas:

commitment

#### Definition:

The terms "commit" and "commitment" refer to making a decision or promising to do something.

* A person who promises to do something is also described as being "committed" to doing it.
* To "commit" to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has "committed" (or "given") to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
* To "commit" something to someone is to give that thing completely to that person.
* To "commit" someone to another person is to put someone either in the care of or under the guard of that other person.
* The terms "commit" and "committed" also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as "commit a sin" or "commit adultery" or "commit murder."
* The expression "committed to him the task" could also be translated as "gave him the task" or "entrusted to him the task" or "assigned the task to him."
* The term "commitment" could be translated by, "task that was given" or "promise that was made," depending on the context.

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [promise](../kt/promise.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 28:07
* 1 Peter 02:21-23
* Jeremiah 02:12-13
* Matthew 13:41
* Psalm 058:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4203

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

commit, commitment, commits, committed, committing

### companion

#### Related Ideas:

associate, company, fellow worker, friend, partner, private advisor

#### Definitions:

The term "companion" refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage. The term "fellow worker" refers to someone who works with another person.

* Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
* Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, "friend" or "fellow traveler" or "supporting-person who goes with" or "person who works with."
* The word "company" refers to a person's companions.
* The word "associates" refers to companions who are involved in official activities.

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 37:16
* Hebrews 01:09
* Proverbs 02:17
* Psalms 038:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H157, H251, H441, H2269, H2270, H2273, H2278, H3674, H3675, H4828, H5712, H6116, H6951, H7474, H7453, H7462, H7464, G2844, G3353, G3657, G4898, G4904

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

associates, companion, companions, company, fellow worker, fellow workers, friend, friends, keeps company with, partner, partners, private advisor

### compassion

#### Related Ideas:

compassionate, deal gently with, pity, sympathy

#### Definition:

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

* The word "compassion" usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
* The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
* In Paul's letter to the Colossians, he tells them to "clothe themselves with compassion." He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.
* To have "sympathy" for someone is to understand how that person feels and to want to help him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The literal meaning of "compassion" is "bowels of mercy." This is an expression that means "mercy" or "pity." Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
* Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "a deep caring for" or "helpful mercy."
* The term "compassionate" could also be translated as, "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 01:8-10
* Hosea 13:14
* James 05:9-11
* Jonah 04:1-3
* Mark 01:41
* Romans 09:14-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2550, H2580, H2603, H5150, H5162, H5164, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

compassion, compassionate, compassions, deal gently with, pitied, pity, sympathy

### conceive

#### Related Ideas:

conception

#### Definition:

The terms "conceive" and "conception" usually refer to becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

* The phrase "conceive a child" could be translated as, "become pregnant" or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
* The related term "conception" could be translated as, "beginning of a pregnancy" or "moment of becoming pregnant."
* These terms can also refer to creating something or thinking of something, such as an idea, a plan, or a task. Ways to translate this could include, "think of" or "plan" or "create," depending on the context.
* Sometimes this term can be used figuratively as in, "when sin is conceived" which means "when sin is first thought of" or "at the very start of a sin" or "when a sin first begins."

(See also: [create](../other/creation.md), [womb](../other/womb.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 21:1-4
* Hosea 02:4-5
* Job 15:35
* Luke 01:24-25
* Luke 02:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G1080, G2602, G2845, G4815

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

conceive, conceived, conceives, conception

### concubine

#### Definition:

A concubine is a woman who is a secondary wife for a man who already has a wife. Usually a concubine is not legally married to the man.

* In the Old Testament, concubines were often female slaves.
* A concubine could be acquired by purchase, through military conquest, or in payment of a debt.
* For a king, having many concubines was a sign of power.
* The New Testament teaches that the practice of having a concubine is against God's will.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 03:07
* Genesis 22:24
* Genesis 25:5-6
* Genesis 35:21-22
* Genesis 36:12
* Judges 19:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3904, H6370

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

concubine, concubines

### condemn

#### Related Ideas:

condemnation, denounce, sentence, sentence of condemnation, sentenced to death

#### Definition:

The terms "condemn" and "condemnation" refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

* Often the word "condemn" includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
* Sometimes "condemn" means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
* To "denounce" someone is to say that he is guilty of great evil.
* The term "condemnation" refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone. The word "judgment" means the same as "condemnation."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "harshly judge" or "criticize falsely."
* The phrase "condemn him" could be translated as,"judge that he is guilty" or "state that he must be punished for his sin."
* The term "condemnation" could be translated as, "harsh judging" or "declaring to be guilty" or "punishment of guilt."

(See also: [judge](../kt/judge.md), [punish](../other/punish.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:20
* Job 09:29
* John 05:24
* Luke 06:37
* Matthew 12:07
* Proverbs 17:15-16
* Psalms 034:22
* Romans 05:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H816, H6600, H7561, H8199, H8381, G843, G1349, H1882, G1935, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

condemn, condemnation, condemned, condemning, condemns, denounce, sentence, sentence of condemnation, sentenced to death

### confess

#### Related Ideas:

confession, profess

#### Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A "confession" is a statement or admission that something is true.

* The term "confess" can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
* The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
* James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
* The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
* Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "confess" could include, "admit" or "testify" or "declare" or "acknowledge" or "affirm."
* Different ways to translate "confession" could be, "declaration" or "testimony" or "statement about what we believe" or "admitting sin."

(See also: [faith](../kt/faith.md), [testimony](../kt/testimony.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:8-10
* 2 John 01:7-8
* James 05:16
* Leviticus 05:5-6
* Matthew 03:4-6
* Nehemiah 01:6-7
* Philippians 02:9-11
* Psalms 038:17-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

confess, confessed, confesses, confessing, confession, profess

### confidence

#### Related Ideas:

assure, carefree, confident, convinced, fully assured, without fear

#### Definition:

The term "confidence" refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

* In the Bible, the term "hope" often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULB often translates this as "confidence" or "confidence for the future" or "future confidence" especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
* Often the term "confidence" refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
* The phrase, "have confidence in God" means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
* Being "confident" means believing in God's promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "confident" could be translated as "assured" or "very sure."
* The phrase "be confident" could also be translated as "trust completely" or "be completely sure about" or "know for certain."
* The term "confidently" could also be translated as "boldly" or "with certainty."
* Depending on the context, ways to translate "confidence" could include, "complete assurance" or "sure expectation" or "certainty."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [bold](../other/bold.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [hope](../kt/hope.md), [trust](../kt/trust.md))

#### Bible References:

{{topic>confidence&nocomments}}

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H982, H983, H986, H3689, H3690, H4009, H7961, G2292, G3954, G3982, G4006, G4135, G5287

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

assure, carefree, confidence, confident, confidently, convinced, fully assured, source of ... confidence, without fear

### confirm

#### Related Ideas:

carry out, cause someone to believe firmly, confirmation, guarantee

#### Definition:

The terms "confirm" and "confirmation" refer to stating or assuring that something is true or sure or trustworthy.

* In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will "confirm" his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
* When a king is "confirmed" it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
* To confirm what someone wrote means to say that what was written is true.
* The "confirmation" of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
* To give an oath "as confirmation" means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
* Ways to translate "confirm" could include, "state as true" or "prove to be trustworthy" or "agree with" or "assure" or "promise," depending on the context.
* To "carry out" a promise is to do what one has promised to do.

(See also: [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [oath](../other/oath.md), [trust](../kt/trust.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
* 2 Corinthians 01:21
* 2 Kings 23:3
* Hebrews 06:16-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G950, G951, G3315, G4741, G4972

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

carry out, cause ... to believe firmly, confirm, confirmation, confirmed, confirms, guaranteed

### conscience

#### Definition:

The conscience is the part of a person's thinking through which God makes him aware that he is doing something sinful.

* God gave people a conscience to help them know the difference between what is right and what is wrong.
* A person who obeys God is said to have a "pure" or "clear" or "clean" conscience.
* If a person has a "clear conscience" it means that he is not hiding any sin.
* If someone ignores their conscience and no longer feels guilty when he sins, this means his conscience is no longer sensitive to what is wrong. The Bible calls this a "seared" conscience, one that is "branded" as if with a hot iron. Such a conscience is also called "insensitive" and "polluted."
* Possible ways to translate this term could include, "inner moral guide" or "moral thinking."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 01:19
* 1 Timothy 03:09
* 2 Corinthians 05:11
* 2 Timothy 01:03
* Romans 09:01
* Titus 01:15-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4893

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

conscience, consciences

### consecrate

#### Related Ideas:

consecrated portion, consecration

#### Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

* The meaning of this term is similar to "sanctify" or to "make holy," but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
* Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
* People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
* Sometimes the word "consecrate" has a meaning that is similar to "purify," especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God's service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "consecrate" could include, "set apart for God's service" or "purify for service to God."
* Also consider how the terms "holy" and "sanctify" are translated.

(See also: [holy](../kt/holy.md), [pure](../kt/purify.md), [sanctify](../kt/sanctify.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 04:3-5
* 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
* Ezekiel 44:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3027, H4390, H4394, H4888, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

consecrate, consecrated, consecrated portion, consecrates, consecration

### consume

#### Related Ideas:

swallow

#### Definition:

The term "consume" literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

* In the Bible, the word "consume" often refers to destroying things or people.
* A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
* God is described as a "consuming fire," which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
* To consume food means to eat or drink something.
* The phrase, "consume the land" could be translated as "destroy the land."

#### Translation Suggestions

* In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as "destroy."
* When fire is referred to, "consume" could be translated as "burn up."
* The burning bush that Moses saw "was not consumed" which could be translated as, "did not get burned up" or "did not burn up."
* When referring to eating, "consume" could be translated as "eat" or "devour."
* If someone's strength is "consumed," it means his strength is "used up" or "gone."
* The expression, "God is a consuming fire" could be translated as, "God is like a fire that burns things up" or "God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire."

(See also: [devour](../other/devour.md), [wrath](../kt/wrath.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:38-40
* Deuteronomy 07:16
* Jeremiah 03:23-25
* Job 07:09
* Numbers 11:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H398, H1086, H1104, H1105, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H5595, H7462, H8046, H8552, G355, G2068, G2618, G2654, G2666, G2719, G5315

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

consume, consumed, consumes, consuming, swallow, swallowed, swallows

### contempt

#### Related Ideas:

contemptible, have no standing, insolence, not worth listening to

#### Definitions:

The term "contempt" refers to a deep disrespect and dishonor that is shown toward something or someone. Something that is greatly dishonorable is called "contemptible."

* A person or behavior that shows open disrespect for God is also called "contemptible" and could be translated as "greatly disrespectful" or "completely dishonorable" or "deserving scorn."
* To "hold in contempt" means to regard someone as having less value or to judge someone as less worthy than oneself.
* The following expressions have a similar meaning: "have contempt for" or "show contempt for" or "be in contempt of" or "treat with contempt." These all mean to "strongly disrespect" or "strongly dishonor" something or someone by what is said and done.
* When King David sinned by committing adultery and murder, God said that David had "shown contempt for" God. It means he had greatly disrespected and dishonored God by doing that.

(See also: [dishonor](../other/dishonor.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 12:1-2
* Proverbs 15:5-6
* Psalms 031:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H936, H937, H959, H963, H1860, H2195, H2781, H7043, H7589, H5006, G1848

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

contempt, contemptible, have no standing, insolence, not worth listening to, showed ... contempt

### cornerstone

#### Definition:

The term "cornerstone" refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

* All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
* It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
* In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its "cornerstone."
* In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "cornerstone" could also be translated as "main building stone" or "foundation stone."
* Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building's foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
* Another way to translate this would be, "a foundation stone used for the corner of a building."
* It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means "large stone" (such as "boulder") but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:11
* Ephesians 02:20
* Matthew 21:42
* Psalms 118:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H68, H6438, H7218, G204, G1137, G2776, G3037

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cornerstone, cornerstones

### corrupt

#### Related Ideas:

corruption, depraved, flawed, incorruptibility, incorruptible

#### Definition:

The terms "corrupt" and "corruption" refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

* The term "corrupt" literally means to be "bent" or "broken" morally.
* A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
* To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term to "corrupt" could be translated as to "influence to do evil" or to "cause to be immoral."
* A corrupt person could be described as a person "who has become immoral" or "who practices evil."
* This term could also be translated as "bad" or "immoral" or "evil."
* The term "corruption" could be translated as "the practice of evil" or "evil" or "immorality."
* Something that cannot be corrupted is "incorruptible" and is characterized as having "incorruptibility."

(See also: [evil](../kt/evil.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 20:42-44
* Galatians 06:6-8
* Genesis 06:12
* Matthew 12:33-35
* Psalm 014:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2254, H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G861, G1311, G2704, G3392, G3394, G5351, G5356

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

corrupt, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly, corrupts, depraved, flawed, incorruptibility, incorruptible

### corrupt witness

#### Related Ideas:

false report, false testimony, false witness, testify falsely

#### Definition:

The terms "false witness" and "corrupt witness" refer to a person who says untrue things about a person or an event, usually in a formal setting such as a court.

* A "false testimony" or "false report" is the actual lie that is told.
* To "bear false witness" means to lie or give a false report about something.
* The Bible gives several accounts in which false witnesses were hired to lie about someone in order to have that person punished or killed.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To "bear false witness" or "give a false testimony" could be translated as "testify falsely" or "give a false report about someone" or "speak falsely against someone" or "lie."
* When "false witness" refers to a person, it could be translated as "person who lies" or "one who testifies falsely" or "someone who says things that are not true."

(See also: [testimony](../kt/testimony.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 19:19
* Exodus 20:16
* Matthew 15:18-20
* Matthew 19:18-19
* Proverbs 14:5-6
* Psalms 027:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5707, H6030, H7650, H8267, G1965, G3144, G5571, G5575, G5576, G5577

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness, false witnesses, testify falsely

### council

#### Definition:

A council is a group of people who meet to discuss, give advice, and make decisions about important matters.

* A council is usually organized in an official and somewhat permanent way for a specific purpose, such as making decisions about legal matters.
* The "Jewish Council" in Jerusalem, also known as the "Sanhedrin," had 70 members, which included Jewish leaders such as chief priests, elders, scribes, Pharisees, and Sadducees who met regularly to decide matters of Jewish law. It was this council of religious leaders who put Jesus on trial and decided that he should be killed.
* There were also smaller Jewish councils in other cities.
* The apostle Paul was brought before a Roman council when he was arrested for teaching the gospel.
* Depending on the context, the word "council" could also be translated as "legal assembly" or "political assembly."
* To be "in council" means to be in a special meeting to decide something.
* Note that this is a different word than "counsel," which means, "advice."

(See also: [assembly](../other/assembly.md), [counsel](../other/counselor.md), [Pharisee](../kt/pharisee.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [Sadducee](../kt/sadducee.md), [scribe](../kt/scribe.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:57-58
* Acts 24:20
* John 03:02
* Luke 22:68
* Mark 13:09
* Matthew 05:22
* Matthew 26:59

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4186, H5475, G1010, G4824, G4892

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

council, councils

### counsel

#### Related Ideas:

advice, advise, advisor, consultation, consult, counselor

#### Definition:

The terms "counsel" and "advice" have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide about what to do in a certain situation. A wise "counselor" or "advisor" is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

* Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
* Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
* To "consult" someone is to ask him for counsel or advice.
* Note that "counsel" is a different word from "council," which refers to a group of people.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, "advice" or "counsel" could also be translated as "help in deciding" or "warnings" or "exhortations" or "guidance."
* The action, to "counsel" could be translated as to "advise" or to "make suggestions" or to "exhort."

(See also: [exhort](../kt/exhort.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [wise](../kt/wise.md))

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H2803, H3245, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6485, H6963, H6098, H7194, H7592, H8458, G1011, G1012, G1106, G3540, G3622, G4286, G4823, G4824, G4825

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

advice, advise, advised, advisor, advisors, consult, consultation, consultations, consulted, counsel, counselor, counselors, counsels, guidance

### courage

#### Related Ideas:

brave, courageous, discourage, discouragement, encourage, encouragement

#### Definitions:

The term "courage" refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

* The term, "courageous" describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
* A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
* The expression "take courage" means, "don't be afraid" or "be assured that things will turn out well."
* When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be "strong and courageous."
* The term "courageous" could also be translated as "brave" or "unafraid" or "bold."
* Depending on the context, to "have courage" could also be translated as, "be emotionally strong" or "be confident" or "stand firm."
* To "speak with courage" could be translated as, "speak boldly" or "speak without being afraid" or "speak confidently."

The terms "encourage" and encouragement" refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

* A similar term is "exhort," which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
* The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term "discourage" refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "encourage" could include "urge" or "comfort" or "say kind things" or "help and support."
* The phrase "give words of encouragement" means "say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered."

(See also: [confidence](../other/confidence.md), [exhort](../kt/exhort.md), [fear](../kt/fear.md), [strength](../other/strength.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 01:37-38
* 2 Kings 18:19-21
* 1 Chronicles 17:25
* Matthew 09:20-22
* 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
* 2 Corinthians 07:13
* Acts 05:12-13
* Acts 16:40
* Hebrews 03:12-13
* Hebrews 13:5-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, H2865, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brave, bravest, courage, courageous, dare, dared, discourage, discouraged, discouragement, discouraging, encourage, encouraged, encouragement, encouraging, take courage

### court

#### Related Ideas:

courtyard

#### Definition:

The terms "courtyard" and "court" refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term "court" also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

* The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
* The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
* These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
* The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
* The phrase "king's court" can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
* The expression, "courts of Yahweh" is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh's dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "courtyard" could be translated as "enclosed space" or "walled-in land" or "temple grounds" or "temple enclosure."
* Sometimes the term "temple" may need to be translated as "temple courtyards" or "temple complex" so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
* The expression, "courts of Yahweh" could be translated as, "place where Yahweh lives" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped."
* The term used for a king's court could also be used to refer to Yahweh's court.

(See also: [Gentile](../kt/gentile.md), [judge](../other/judgeposition.md), [king](../other/king.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 20:4-5
* Exodus 27:09
* Jeremiah 19:14-15
* Luke 22:55
* Matthew 26:69-70
* Numbers 03:26
* Psalms 065:4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G833, G4259

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

court, courts, courtyard, courtyards

### covenant

#### Related Ideas:

agreed, contract, new covenant, will

#### Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

* This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
* When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
* Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements or contracts, and treaties between countries.
* Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
* In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
* In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

* God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
* This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
* The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
* God writes the new covenant on the hearts of those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
* The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."

Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."

Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."

The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [promise](../kt/promise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 09:12
* Genesis 17:07
* Genesis 31:44
* Exodus 34:10-11
* Joshua 24:24-26
* 2 Samuel 23:5
* 2 Kings 18:11-12
* Mark 14:24
* Luke 01:73
* Luke 22:20
* Acts 07:08
* 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
* 2 Corinthians 03:06
* Galatians 03:17-18
* Hebrews 12:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1285, H1697, H2319, H2374, G1242, G4934

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

agreed, contract, covenant, covenants, new covenant, will

### covenant faithfulness

#### Related Ideas:

covenant loyalty, loving kindness, steadfast love, unfailing love

#### Definition:

This term is used to describe God's commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to his people.

* God made promises to the Israelites in formal agreements called "covenants."
* The "covenant faithfulness" or "covenant loyalty" of Yahweh refers to the fact that he keeps his promises to his people.
* God's faithfulness to keep his covenant promises is an expression of his grace toward his people.
* The term "loyalty" is another word that refers to being committed and dependable, to do and say what has been promised, and what will benefit someone else.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The way this term is translated will also depend on how the terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
* Other ways to translate this term could include, "faithful love" or "loyal, committed love" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [grace](../kt/grace.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [people of God](../kt/peopleofgod.md), [promise](../kt/promise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezra 03:11
* Numbers 14:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2617

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, steadfast love, unfailing love

### cow

#### Related Ideas:

bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen

#### Definition:

The terms "cow," "bull," "heifer," "ox," and "cattle" all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

* The female of this kind of animal is called a "cow," the male is a "bull," and their offspring is a "calf."
* In the Bible, cattle were among the "clean" animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A "heifer" is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An "ox" is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is "oxen." Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

* Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
* Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to "be under a yoke" became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
* A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [yoke](../other/yoke.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 15:9-11
* Exodus 24:5-6
* Numbers 19:1-2
* Deuteronomy 21:3-4
* 1 Samuel 01:24-25
* 1 Samuel 15:03
* 1 Samuel 16:2-3
* 1 Kings 01:09
* 2 Chronicles 11:15
* 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
* Matthew 22:4
* Luke 13:15
* Luke 14:05
* Hebrews 09:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G5022

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bull, bull's, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, cow, cows, fattened calves, heifer, heifer's, ox, oxen

### create

#### Related Ideas:

creation, creator, workmanship

#### Definition:

The term "create" means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a "creation." God is called the "Creator" because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

* When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
* When human beings "create" something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
* Sometimes "create" is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
* The term "creation" can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word "creation" refers more specifically to just the people in the world.
* "Workmanship" is anything that a person makes.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world "out of nothing" to make sure this meaning is clear.
* The phrase, "since the creation of the world" means, "since the time when God created the world."
* A similar phrase, "at the beginning of creation" could be translated as, "when God created the world at the beginning of time," or "when the world was first created."
* To preach the good news to "all creation" means to preach the good news to "all people everywhere on earth."
* The phrase "Let all creation rejoice" means "Let everything that God created rejoice."
* Depending on the context, "create" could be translated as "make" or "cause to be" or "make out of nothing."
* The term "the Creator" could be translated as "the One who created everything" or "God, who made the whole world."
* Phrases like "your Creator" could be translated as "God, who created you."

(See also: [God](../kt/god.md), [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [world](../kt/world.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
* 1 Peter 04:17-19
* Colossians 01:15
* Galatians 06:15
* Genesis 01:01
* Genesis 14:19-20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1254, H3335, H4639, H6213, H7069, G2041, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2938, G2939, G5480

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

create, created, created thing, creates, creation, creator, thing that has been created, workmanship

### creature

#### Definition:

The term "creature" refers to all the living beings that God created, both humans and animals.

* The prophet Ezekiel described seeing "living creatures" in his vision of the glory of God. He did not know what they were, so he gave them this very general label.
* Note that the term "creation" has a different meaning since it includes everything God created, both living and nonliving things (such as land, water, and stars). The term "creature" only includes living things.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, "creature" could be translated as, "being" or "living being" or "created being."
* The plural, "creatures" could be translated as "all living things" or "people and animals" or "animals" or "human beings."

(See also: [create](../other/creation.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 04:10-12
* Ezekiel 01:09
* Joshua 10:28
* Leviticus 11:46-47
* Revelation 19:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1320, H1321, H1870, H2119, H2416, H4639, H5315, H5971, H8318, H8577, G2226, G2938

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

creature, creatures

### crime

#### Related Ideas:

criminal

#### Definition:

The term "crime" usually refers to a sin that involves breaking the law of a country or state. The term "criminal" refers to someone who has committed a crime.

* Types of crimes include such things as killing a person or stealing someone's property.
* A criminal is usually captured and kept in some form of captivity such as a prison.
* In Bible times, some criminals became fugitives, wandering from place to place to escape people who wanted to harm them out of revenge for their crime.

(See also: [thief](../other/thief.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 02:09
* Hosea 06:8-9
* Job 31:26-28
* Luke 23:32
* Matthew 27:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2154, H2400, H4639, H5771, H7563, H7564, G2556, G2557, G4467

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

crime, crimes, criminal, criminals

### cross

#### Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

* During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
* Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
* Note that this is a completely different word from the verb "cross" that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
* Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as "execution post" or "tree of death."
* Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [crucify](../kt/crucify.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 01:17
* Colossians 02:15
* Galatians 06:12
* John 19:18
* Luke 09:23
* Luke 23:26
* Matthew 10:38
* Philippians 02:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4716

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cross

### crown

#### Related Ideas:

crest, garland, wreath

#### Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to "crown" means to put a crown on someone's head; figuratively it means to "honor."

* Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
* A crown is a symbol of a king's power and wealth.
* By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus' head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
* If a person is "crowned," this means that a crown was put on his head.
* In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
* A "crest" is a crown or a piece of metal or expensive wood with a design on it or something else that people recognize as a symbol of the king or another official. A person whom the official wants to honor will wear the "crest" or put it on the animal that he rides or that pulls his chariot.
* A "garland" and "a wreath" are a crown or necklace made of flowers or leaves.

Sometimes "crown" is used figuratively.

* The figurative use of to "crown" means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
* Pauls calls fellow believers his "joy and crown." In this expression, "crown" is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When used figuratively, "crown" could be translated as "prize" or "honor" or "reward."
* The figurative use of to "crown" could be translated as to "honor" or to "decorate."
* The expression, "he was crowned with glory and honor" could be translated as, "glory and honor were bestowed on him" or "he was given glory and honor" or "he was endowed with glory and honor."

(See also: [glory](../kt/glory.md), [king](../other/king.md), [olive](../other/olive.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 19:03
* Lamentations 05:16
* Matthew 27:29
* Philippians 04:01
* Psalms 021:03
* Revelation 03:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3803, H3804, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

crest, crown, crowned, crowns, garland, wreath

### crucify

#### Related Ideas:

nail him to a cross

#### Definition:

The term "crucify" means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

* The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
* The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
* The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "crucify" could be translated as, "kill on a cross" or "execute by nailing to a cross."

(See also: [cross](../kt/cross.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:23
* Galatians 02:20-21
* Luke 23:20-22
* Luke 23:34
* Matthew 20:17-19
* Matthew 27:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G388, G4362, G4717, G4957

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

crucified, crucify, nailing ... to a cross

### cry

#### Related Ideas:

outcry, raised his voice, scream, shout, speak out, speak loudly

#### Definition:

The terms "cry" or "cry out" often mean to say something loudly and urgently. Someone can "cry out" in pain or in distress or in anger.

* The phrase "cry out" also means to shout or call out, often with the intent to ask for help.
* This term could also be translated as "exclaim loudly" or "urgently ask for help," depending on the context.
* An expression such as, "I cry out to you" could be translated as, "I call to you for help" or "I urgently ask you for help."

(See also: [call](../kt/call.md), [plead](../other/plead.md))

#### Bible References:

* Job 27:09
* Mark 05:5-6
* Mark 06:48-50
* Psalm 022:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8643, H8663, G310, G349, G400, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cried, cried for help, cried out, cries, cries of distress, cries out, cry, cry ... for help, cry aloud, cry of distress, cry out, crying, crying out, outcries, outcry, raised ... voice, scream, screams, shout, shout out loud, shouted, shouting, shouting out, shouts, speak out, spoke loudly

### cupbearer

#### Definition:

In Old Testament times, a "cupbearer" was a king's servant who was given the task of bringing the king his cup of wine, usually tasting the wine first to make sure it had not been poisoned.

* The literal meaning of this term is "cup bringer" or "someone who brings the cup."
* A cupbearer was known for being very trustworthy and loyal to his king.
* Because of his trusted position, a cupbearer would often have influence in the decisions the ruler made.
* Nehemiah was the cupbearer for King Artaxerxes of Persia during the time when some of the Israelites were in captivity in Babylon.

(See also: [Artaxerxes](../names/artaxerxes.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [captive](../other/captive.md), [Persia](../names/persia.md), [Pharaoh](../names/pharaoh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 10:3-5
* Nehemiah 01:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8248

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cupbearer, cupbearers

### curse

#### Related Ideas:

accursed, speak evil

#### Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

* A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
* To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
* It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
* In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
* The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
* The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
* The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
* "Cursed be the day I was born" could also be translated as, "I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born."
* However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](../kt/bless.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 14:24-26
* 2 Peter 02:12-14
* Galatians 03:10
* Galatians 03:14
* Genesis 03:14
* Genesis 03:17
* James 03:10
* Numbers 22:06
* Psalms 109:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2194, H2778, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

accursed, curse, cursed, curses, cursing, speaks evil

### curtain

#### Related Ideas:

covering, screen

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "curtain" refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

* The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
* Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of "linen" which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
* In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.
* The "screens" were curtains hung at the entrance to the courtyard of the tabernacle, at the entrance to the tabernacle, and in front of the ark of the covenant.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
* Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "curtain covering" or "covering" or "piece of thick cloth" or "animal skin covering" or "hanging piece of cloth."

(See also: [holy place](../kt/holyplace.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 10:20
* Leviticus 04:17
* Luke 23:45
* Matthew 27:51
* Numbers 04:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G2665

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

covering, curtain, curtains, screen, screening

### cut off

#### Related Ideas:

chop down, cut down, cut in two, pluck out, shear, tear off

#### Definition:

The expression "cut off" literally means to use a sharp instrument to remove a part of something. This can refer to, for example, removing a limb from a tree or an arm or leg from a person, or to chopping a tree completely down.

The expression "cut off" is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

The metaphor "cut off" refers to people or God separating a person from his nation or community either by driving him away or by killing him.

To "shear" is to cut the hair off of an animal.

To "pluck" is to separate a part of something from the rest by pulling it off or out.

* In the Old Testament, disobeying God's commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God's people and from his presence.
* God also said he would "cut off" or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.

#### Picture of Cut Off From People:

<a href="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/c/Cutofffrompeople.png"><img src="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/c/Cutofffrompeople.png" ></a>

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The expression "be cut off" could be translated as "be banished" or "be sent away" or "be separated from" or "be killed" or "be destroyed."
* Depending on the context, to "cut off" could be translated as, to "destroy" or to "send away" or to "separate from" or to "destroy."
* In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as "were stopped" or "were caused to stop flowing" or "were divided."

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 17:14
* Judges 21:06
* Proverbs 23:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1497, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581, G1807

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chop ... down, chopped ... down, cut ... down, cut ... off, cut ... out of, cut in two, cut off, cuts ... off, cutting ... off, eliminate, pluck ... out, shear, sheared, tear ... off

### cypress

#### Definition:

The term "cypress" refers to a kind of fir tree that was plentiful in the regions where people lived in Bible times, especially countries bordering the Mediterranean Sea.

* Cyprus and Lebanon are two places that are specifically mentioned in the Bible as having many cypress trees.
* The wood that Noah used to build the ark may have been cypress.
* Because cypress wood is sturdy and long-lasting, it was used by ancient peoples for building boats and other structures.

(See also: [ark](../kt/ark.md), [Cyprus](../names/cyprus.md), [fir](../other/fir.md), [Lebanon](../names/lebanon.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 11:19-21
* Genesis 06:14
* Hosea 14:08
* Isaiah 44:14
* Isaiah 60:13
* Zechariah 11:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1265, H8645

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cypress

### darkness

#### Related Ideas:

dark, darken, gloom

#### Definition:

The terms "darkness" and "gloom" literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of these terms:

* As a metaphor, "darkness" means "impurity" or "evil" or "spiritual blindness."
* It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
* The expression "dominion of darkness" refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
* The term "darkness" can also be used as a metaphor for death.
* People who do not know God are said to be "living in darkness," which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
* God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
* The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as "outer darkness."
* The term "gloom" can be used as a metaphor for sadness.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
* For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, "darkness of night" (as opposed to "light of day") or "not seeing anything, like at night" or "evil, like a dark place".

(See also: [corrupt](../other/corrupt.md), [dominion](../kt/dominion.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [light](../other/light.md), [redeem](../kt/redeem.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:06
* 1 John 02:08
* 1 Thessalonians 05:05
* 2 Samuel 22:12
* Colossians 01:13
* Isaiah 05:30
* Jeremiah 13:16
* Joshua 24:7
* Matthew 08:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, H6751, H6937, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4654, G4655, G4656

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dark, darken, darkened, darker, darkness, gloom, thick darkness, turned dark

### daughter of Zion

#### Definition:

"Daughter of Zion" is a figurative way of referring to the people of Israel. It is usually used in prophecies.

* In the Old Testament, "Zion" is often used as another name for the city of Jerusalem.
* Both "Zion" and "Jerusalem" are also used to refer to Israel.
* The term "Daughter" is a term of endearment or affection. It is a metaphor for the patience and care that God has for his people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate this could include "my daughter Israel, from Zion" or "people from Zion, who are like a daughter to me" or "Zion, my dear people Israel."
* It is best to keep the term "Zion" in this expression since it is used many times in the Bible. A note could be included in the translation to explain its figurative meaning and prophetic use.
* It is also better to keep the term "Daughter" in the translation of this expression, as long as it is understood correctly.

(See also: [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Zion](../kt/zion.md))

#### Bible References:

* Jeremiah 06:02
* John 12:15
* Matthew 21:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6726

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

daughter of Zion

### day

#### Related Ideas:

daily, daytime, morning, today

#### Definition:

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

* For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
* Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
* Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
* Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: [judgment day](../kt/judgmentday.md), [last day](../kt/lastday.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 20:06
* Daniel 10:04
* Ezra 06:15
* Ezra 06:19
* Matthew 09:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3117, H3118, H3119, H6242, G2250, G4594

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

daily, day, day's, days, days', daytime, morning, today

### day of the Lord

#### Related Ideas:

day of Christ Jesus, day of Jesus Christ, day of Yahweh, day of Yahweh's wrath

#### Description:

The Old Testament term "day of Yahweh" is used to refer to one or more specific times when God would punish people for their sin.

* The New Testament term "day of the Lord" usually refers to the day or time when the Lord Jesus will come back to judge people at the end of time.
* This final, future time of judgment and resurrection is also sometimes referred to as the "last day." This time will begin when the Lord Jesus comes back to judge sinners and will permanently establish his rule.
* The word "day" in these phrases may sometimes refer to a literal day or it may refer to a "time" or "occasion" that is longer than a day.
* Sometimes the punishment is referred to as a "pouring out of God's wrath" upon those who do not believe.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate "day of Yahweh" could include "time of Yahweh" or "time when Yahweh will punish his enemies" or "time of Yahweh's wrath."
* Other ways to translate "day of the Lord" could include "time of the Lord's judgment" or "time when the Lord Jesus will return to judge people."

(See also: [day](../other/biblicaltimeday.md), [judgment day](../kt/judgmentday.md), [Lord](../kt/lord.md), [resurrection](../kt/resurrection.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:05
* 1 Thessalonians 05:02
* 2 Peter 03:10
* 2 Thessalonians 02:02
* Acts 02:20-21
* Philippians 01:9-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3068, H3117, G2250, G2962

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

day of Christ Jesus, day of Jesus Christ, day of Yahweh, day of Yahweh's wrath, day of our Lord Jesus, day of our Lord Jesus Christ, day of the Lord

### deacon

#### Definition:

A deacon is a person who serves in the local church, helping fellow believers with practical needs, such as food or money.

* The word "deacon" is taken directly from a Greek word meaning "servant" or "minister."
* From the time of the early Christians, being a deacon has been a well-defined role and ministry in the Church body.
* For example, in the New Testament, deacons would make sure that whatever money or food that the believers shared would be distributed fairly to the widows among them.
* The term "deacon" could also be translated as "church minister" or "church worker" or "church servant," or some other phrase that shows that the person has been formally appointed to do specific tasks that benefit the local Christian community.

(See also: [minister](../kt/minister.md), [servant](../other/servant.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 03:10
* 1 Timothy 03:13
* Philippians 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1249

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deacon, deacons

### death

#### Related Ideas:

breathed their last, dead, deadly, deadness, deathly, die, lethal, mortal, stop breathing

#### Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

#### 1. Physical death

* To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
* A person's spirit leaves his body when he dies.
* When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
* The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.
* The words "deadly" and "lethal" describe something that causes someone to die.
* Something that is "mortal" can die; it does not live forever.

#### 2. Spiritual death

* Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
* Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
* Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To translate the words "die," death," and dead," it is usually best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death. This is true both when “death” refers to physical death and when it refers to spiritual death.
* In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
* The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died."
* The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [faith](../kt/faith.md), [life](../kt/life.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:21
* 1 Thessalonians 4:17
* Acts 10:42
* Acts 14:19
* Colossians 2:15
* Colossians 2:20
* Genesis 2:15-17
* Genesis 34:27
* Matthew 16:28
* Romans 5:10
* Romans 5:12
* Romans 6:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H7819, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

about to die, breathed ... last, causes ... death, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deathly, deaths, die, die with, died, dies, dying, fatal, lethal, mortal, stop breathing, stops breathing

### deceive

#### Related Ideas:

lie, deal falsely, deceit, deception, deceptive, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, flatter, illusion, trick

#### Definition:

The word "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true.

* The words "deceit" and "deception" can refer to an act or habit of deceiving others or to a message that is not truthful.
* A "deceiver" is someone who causes others to believe something that is not true. For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
* The words “deceitful” and “deceptive” can describe people who deceive others or to messages or actions that are meant to deceive others.
* To “entice” someone is to deceive him into thinking that he will enjoy doing something evil.
* To “defraud” someone is to use deceit to get from him something that he would not give if he knew the truth.
* To “flatter” someone is to praise him falsely so that he will do what the speaker wants him to do.
* To “lie” to someone or to tell a “lie” is not the same as to lie down to go to sleep.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, “deceive” could be translated as "lie to," "mislead," "trick," or "fool."
* "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
* Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
* The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 1:8
* 1 Timothy 2:14
* 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
* Genesis 3:12-13
* Genesis 31:26-28
* Leviticus 19:11-12
* Matthew 27:64
* Micah 6:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H898, H2048, H2505, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4604, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7723, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G2296, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423, G5571

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

a lie, deal falsely, deceit, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deceive, deceived, deceiver, deceivers, deceives, deceiving, deception, deceptive, defraud, defrauded, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, falsely, flatter, flattering, flatters, flattery, illusions, liar, liars, lies, trick

### declare

#### Related Ideas:

announce, declaration, proclaim, proclamation, pronounce

#### Definition:

The terms "declare" and "declaration" refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. To "proclaim" means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

* A "declaration" not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
* For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by "the declaration of Yahweh" or "this is what Yahweh declares." This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.
* Often in the Bible, "proclaim" means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
* In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
* The term "proclaim" can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "declare" could be translated as "proclaim" or "publicly state" or "strongly say" or "emphatically state."
* The term "declaration" could be translated as "statement" or "proclamation."
* The term "proclaim" could be translated as "announce" or "openly preach" or "publicly declare."
* The term "proclamation" could be translated as "announcement" or "public preaching."
* The phrase "this is Yahweh's declaration" could be translated as "this is what Yahweh declares" or "this is what Yahweh says."

(See also: [preach](../other/preach.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 16:24
* 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
* 1 Samuel 24:17-18
* Amos 02:16
* Ezekiel 05:11-12
* Matthew 07:21-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H262, H816, H874, H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H6963, H7121, H7150, H7440, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G591, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1861, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3004, G3140, G3142, G3670, G3724, G3870, G3955, G4135, G4296, G5335

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

announce, announced, announces, declaration, declarations, declare, declared, declares, declaring, proclaim, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclaims, proclamation, proclamations, pronounces

### decree

#### Related Ideas:

prohibition

#### Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

* God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
* Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
* An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
* To decree something, or to "issue a decree," means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as to "order" or to "command" or to "formally require" or to "publicly make a law."
* Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."
* A "prohibition" is a decree that tells people that they cannot do something they would otherwise do.

(See also: [command](../kt/command.md), [declare](../other/declare.md), [law](../other/law.md), [proclaim](../other/preach.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
* 1 Kings 08:57-58
* Acts 17:5-7
* Daniel 02:13
* Esther 01:22
* Luke 02:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3983, H4055, H4406, H4687, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6600, H6680, H7010, H7761, H8421, G1378, G3724

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

decree, decreed, decrees, prohibition

### dedicate

#### Related Ideas:

dedication, devote

#### Definition:

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

* David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
* Often the word "dedication" refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
* The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
* Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem's repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
* The term "dedicate" could also be translated as "specially assign a special purpose" or "commit something to be used for a specific use" or "commit someone to do a special task."
* To "devote" something to Yahweh often means to completely destroy it, usually by burning it.

(See also: [commit](../other/commit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 15:11-12
* 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
* 1 Kings 07:51
* 1 Timothy 04:05
* 2 Chronicles 02:4-5
* John 17:18-19
* Luke 02:22-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2596, H2597, H2598, H2763, H2764, H4394, H5144, H6942, H6944, G1456, G5021

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dedicate, dedicated, dedicates, dedication, dedication offering, devote, devote ... to destruction, devoted, devoted ... to destruction

### deer

#### Related Ideas:

doe, fawn, gazelle, hind, roebuck, stag

#### Definition:

A deer is a large, graceful, four-legged animal that lives in forests or on mountains. The male animal has large horns or antlers on its head.

* The terms "doe" and "hind" refer to a female deer, and "fawn" is the term for a baby deer.
* The term "buck" refers to a male deer.
* A "roebuck" is the male of the specific variety called "roedeer."
* Deer have strong, thin legs that help them jump high and run fast.
* Their feet have split hooves which help them walk or climb easily on most any terrain.
* A gazelle is like a deer and known for running fast.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 22:34
* Genesis 49:21
* Job 39:02
* Psalms 018:33
* Song of Solomon 02:7

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H354, H355, H365, H3180, H3280, H6643, H6646

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deer, deer's, doe, does, fawns, gazelle, gazelles, hinds, roebuck, roebucks, stag

### defile

#### Related Ideas:

pollute, pollution, stain

#### Definition:

The terms "defile" and "be defiled" refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

* God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as "unclean" and "unholy."
* Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
* God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
* There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
* A "stain" is a dirty mark that is hard to clean.
* In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "defile" can also be translated as "cause to be unclean" or "cause to be unrighteous" or "cause to be ritually unacceptable."
* To "be defiled" could be translated as "become unclean" or "be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)" or "become ritually unacceptable."

(See also: [clean](../kt/clean.md), [clean](../kt/clean.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 23:08
* Exodus 20:24-26
* Genesis 34:27
* Genesis 49:04
* Isaiah 43:27-28
* Leviticus 11:43-45
* Mark 07:14-16
* Matthew 15:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435, G4695

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

are defiled, be defiled, defile, defiled, defiles, defiling, polluted, pollutes, pollution, stain, stained, was defiled, were defiled

### delight

#### Related Ideas:

delicacy, delicious, delightful, please, pleasant, pleasure

#### Definition:

A "delight" is something that pleases someone greatly or causes much joy.

* To "delight in" something means to "take joy in" or "be happy about" it.
* When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
* If a persons delight is in something it means that he enjoys it very much.
* The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
* The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
* The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
* The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
* An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."
* The word "delicacies" refers to delicious foods that are very expensive or prepared only on special occasions.
* Food that is "delicious" tastes very good.

#### Bible References:

* Proverbs 08:30
* Psalm 001:02
* Psalms 119:69-70
* Song of Solomon 01:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H2895, H2896, H3190, H3955, H4261, H4574, H5276, H5278, H5730, H5965, H6026, H6027, H6148, H7306, H7381, H7522, H8055, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597, G2106, G2107

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

am pleased, delicacies, delicacy, delicious, delight, delighted, delightful, delights, good pleasure, is pleased, pleasant, pleasantness, pleased, pleases, pleasing, pleasure, take ... pleasure, takes ... pleasure, took ... pleasure, very pleased, well pleased

### deliver

#### Related Ideas:

defend, deliverance, deliverer, escape, relieve, rescue, rescuer

#### Definition:

To "deliver" someone means to rescue that person. The term "deliverer" refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term "deliverance" refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

* In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
* These deliverers were also called "judges" and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
* God is also called a "deliverer." Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
* The term "deliver over to" or "deliver up to" has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term "deliver" can be translated as "rescue" or "liberate" or "save."
* When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, "deliver over" can be translated as "betray to" or "hand over" or "give over."
* The word "deliverer" can also be translated as "rescuer" or "liberator."
* When the term "deliverer" refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as "governor" or "judge" or "leader."

(See also: [judge](../kt/judge.md), [save](../kt/save.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 01:10
* Acts 07:35
* Galatians 01:04
* Judges 10:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4498, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5437, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7378, H7611, H7725, H7804, H8199, H8668, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1659, G1807, G1929, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be rescued, defend, defended, deliver, deliverance, delivered, delivered ... over, deliverer, deliverers, delivering, delivers, escape, escaped, permit ... to escape, relieve, rescue, rescued, rescuer, rescues

### demon

#### Related Ideas:

demonic

#### Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

* God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these "fallen angels."
* Sometimes these demons are called "unclean spirits." The term "unclean" means "impure" or "evil" or "unholy."
* Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
* Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "demon" could also be translated as "evil spirit."
* The term "unclean spirit" could also be translated as "impure spirit" or "corrupt spirit" or "evil spirit."
* Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
* Also consider how the term "demon" is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [demon-possessed](../kt/demonpossessed.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [angel](../kt/angel.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [clean](../kt/clean.md))

#### Bible References:

* James 02:19
* James 03:15
* Luke 04:36
* Mark 03:22
* Matthew 04:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7307, H7451, H7700, G169, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G4190, G4151

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

demon, demonic, demons

### demon-possessed

#### Related Ideas:

possessed by a demon

#### Definition:

A person who is demon-possessed has a demon or evil spirit that controls what he does and thinks.

* Often a demon-possessed person will hurt himself or other people because the demon causes him to do that.
* Jesus healed demon-possessed people by commanding the demons to come out of them. This is often called "casting out" demons.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate this term could include "demon-controlled" or "controlled by an evil spirit" or "having an evil spirit living inside."

(See also: [demon](../kt/demon.md))

#### Bible References:

* Mark 01:32
* Matthew 04:24
* Matthew 08:16
* Matthew 08:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1139

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

demon-possessed, possessed by a demon, possessed by demons

### descendant

#### Related Ideas:

descend, posterity

#### Definition:

A "descendant" is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

* For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
* A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
* The phrase "descended from" is another way of saying "a descendant of" as in "Abraham was descended from Noah." This could also be translated as "from the family line of."
* A person's "posterity" is all of his descendants.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 09:4-5
* Acts 13:23
* Deuteronomy 02:20-22
* Genesis 10:1
* Genesis 28:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H319, H1004, H1121, H1247, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6631, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G3624, G4690

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clans descended, descend, descendant, descendants, descended, posterity

### desecrate

#### Definition:

The term "desecrate" means to damage or contaminate a sacred place or object in such a way that it is unacceptable for use in worship.

* Often desecrating something involves showing great disrespect for it.
* For example, pagan kings desecrated special dishes from God's temple by using them for parties at their palace.
* Bones from dead people were used by enemies to desecrate the altar in God's temple.
* This term could be translated as "cause to be unholy" or "dishonor by making impure" or "disrespectfully profane" or "cause to be impure."

(See also: [altar](../kt/altar.md), [defile](../other/defile.md), [dishonor](../other/dishonor.md), [profane](../other/profane.md), [pure](../kt/purify.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 24:4-6
* Isaiah 30:22
* Psalms 074:7-8
* Psalms 089:39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2490, H2610, H2930, G953

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

desecrate, desecrated, desecrating

### desert

#### Related Ideas:

remote place, solitary place, wilderness

#### Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

* A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
* Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
* "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
* This word can also be translated as "deserted place," "remote place," "solitary place," or "uninhabited place."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 13:16-18
* Acts 21:38
* Exodus 04:27-28
* Genesis 37:21-22
* John 03:14
* Luke 01:80
* Luke 09:12-14
* Mark 01:03
* Matthew 04:01
* Matthew 11:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

desert, deserts, remote places, solitary place, wilderness, wildernesses

### desolate

#### Related Ideas:

alone, deserted, desolation, desolations, isolated, left alone, left without, lonely

#### Definition:

The terms "desolate" and "desolation" refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

* When referring to a person, the term "desolate" describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
* A widow is desolate because she has no man to provide for her and therefore often lacks food, shelter, and clothing.
* The term "desolation" is the state or condition of being desolated.
* If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
* A "desolate region" refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
* A "desolate land" or "wilderness" was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
* If a city is "made desolate" it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes "empty" and "ruined." This is similar to the meaning of "devastate" or "devastated," but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
* Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "ruined" or "destroyed" or "laid waste" or "lonely and outcast" or "deserted."
* A person who is "lonely" is alone. He has no friends or family or other people with whom he can enjoy being.
* The term "deserted" describes a place that everyone has left.

(See also: [desert](../other/desert.md), [devastate](../other/devastated.md), [ruin](../other/ruin.md), [waste](../other/waste.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 22:19
* Acts 01:20
* Daniel 09:17-19
* Lamentations 03:11
* Luke 11:17
* Matthew 12:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H816, H910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5221, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7604, H7673, H7701, H7722, H7909, H7921, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G2047, G2048, G2049, G2050, G3443

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alone, deserted, deserted place, deserted places, desolate, desolation, desolations, isolated, left ... alone, left ... without, lonely, made ... desolate, making ... desolate, uninhabited

### destroy

#### Related Ideas:

break down, bring ... to nothing, destruction, remove, cut to pieces, demolish, destroyer, destructive, downfall, overthrow, pass away, put an end to, shatter, spoil, throw down, waste away

#### Definition:

To destroy something is to completely make an end to it, so that it no longer exists.

* The term "destroyer" literally means "person who destroys."
* This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
* When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
* In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.
* The word "overthrown" is a metaphor that speaks of a ruler or a great city as if it were a person sitting or standing on a high place whom another person has pushed off of the high place and who is now lying helpless.

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [firstborn](../other/firstborn.md), [Passover](../kt/passover.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 12:23
* Hebrews 11:28
* Jeremiah 06:26
* Judges 16:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1760, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H2865, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H3832, H4191, H4229, H4288, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5486, H5487, H5493, H5595, H5642, H5674, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7112, H7701, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8213, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G684, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2704, G3089, G3639, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

an end is put to, be destroyed, break ... down, breaking ... down, breaks ... down, bring ... to nothing, broke to pieces, broken, broken to pieces, brought ... down, brought ... to nothing, complete destruction, completely destroy, completely destroyed, crashing sound, cut ... to pieces, cut into pieces, cuts ... into pieces, demolish, destroy, destroy ... completely, destroyed, destroyer, destroyers, destroying, destroys, destruction, destructive, downfall, overthrew, overthrown, pass away, put an end to, shatter, shattered, shattering, spoil, throw down, throws ... down, thrown down, wasting away

### detest

#### Related Ideas:

abhor, abhorrent, abhorrence, be disgusted with, detestable, disgusting, hate

#### Definitions:

The term "detestable" describes something that should be disliked and rejected. To "detest" something means to strongly dislike it.

* Often the Bible talks about detesting evil. This means to hate evil and reject it.
* God used the word "detestable" to describe the evil practices of those who worshiped false gods.
* The Israelites were commanded to "detest" the sinful, immoral acts that some of the neighboring people groups practiced.
* God called all wrong sexual acts "detestable."
* Divination, sorcery, and child sacrifice were all "detestable" to God.
* The term "detest" could be translated as "strongly reject" or "hate" or "regard as very evil."
* The term "detestable" could also be translated as "horribly evil" or "disgusting" or "deserving rejection."
* When applied to the righteous being "detestable to" the wicked, this could be translated as "considered very undesirable to" or "distasteful to" or "rejected by."
* God told the Israelites to "detest" certain kinds of animals that God had declared to be "unclean" and not suitable for food. This could also be translated as "strongly dislike" or "reject" or "regard as unacceptable."
* To "abhor" is to strongly detest, and the adjective for something that people should abhor is "abhorrent."

(See also: [divination](../other/divination.md), [clean](../kt/clean.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 43:32
* Jeremiah 07:30
* Leviticus 11:10
* Luke 16:15
* Revelation 17:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1602, H1860, H3988, H6675, H6973, H8130, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, H8581, G946, G947, G948, G4767

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

abhor, abhorred, abhorrence, abhorrent, abhorrently, abhors, be disgusted with, detest, detestable, detestable idol, detestable idols, detestable thing, detestable things, detested, disgusted, disgusting, hate, hated, hates

### devastated

#### Related Ideas:

devastate, devastation

#### Definition:

The term "devastated" or "devastation" refers to having one's property or land ruined or destroyed. It also often includes destroying or capturing the people living on that land.

* This refers to a very severe and complete destruction.
* For example, the city of Sodom was devastated by God as punishment for the sins of the people living there.
* The term "devastation" can also include causing great emotional grief resulting from the punishment or destruction.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "devastate" could be translated as "completely destroy" or "completely ruin."
* Depending on the context, "devastation" could be translated as "complete destruction" or "total ruin" or "overwhelming grief" or "disaster."

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 08:24-25
* Jeremiah 04:13
* Numbers 21:30
* Zephaniah 01:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1110, H1238, H2721, H1826, H3615, H3772, H4875, H7701, H7703, H7722, H7843, H8074, H8077

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

devastate, devastated, devastates, devastating, devastation, devastations

### devour

#### Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

* Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
* Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
* This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 05:08
* Amos 01:10
* Exodus 24:17
* Ezekiel 16:20
* Luke 15:30
* Matthew 23:13-15
* Psalms 021:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

devour, devoured, devouring, devours

### discern

#### Related Ideas:

discernment, discretion, distinguish

#### Definition:

The term "discern" means to be able to understand something, especially being able to know whether something is right or wrong.

* The term "discernment" refers to understanding and deciding wisely about a certain matter.
* It means to have wisdom and good judgment.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "discern" could also be translated as "understand" or "know the difference between" or "distinguish good and evil" or "judge rightly about" or "perceive right from wrong."
* "Discernment" could be translated as "understanding" or "ability to distinguish good and evil."
* "Discretion" is a form of good judgment, the ability to know what is best to do.

(See also: [judge](../kt/judge.md), [wise](../kt/wise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 03:7-9
* Genesis 41:33-34
* Proverbs 01:05
* Psalms 019:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H995, H998, H2940, H5234, H8085, G350, G1252, G1253, G2924, G3539

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

discern, discerned, discerning, discernment, discretion, distinguish, distinguishing

### disciple

#### Definition:

The term "disciple" refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher's character and teaching.

* The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his "disciples."
* John the Baptist also had disciples.
* During Jesus' ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
* Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his "apostles."
* Jesus' twelve apostles continued to be known as his "disciples" or "the twelve."
* Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus' disciples, too.
* Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "disciple" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "follower" or "student" or "pupil" or "learner."
* Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
* The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of "apostle."

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:1
* Acts 09:26-27
* Acts 11:26
* Acts 14:22
* John 13:23
* Luke 06:40
* Matthew 11:03
* Matthew 26:33-35
* Matthew 27:64

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3928, G3100, G3101, G3102

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

disciple, disciples

### discipline

#### Related Ideas:

idle, confront, disorderly, self-discipline, train

#### Definition:

The term "discipline" refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

* Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
* Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
* Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God's will.
* Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one's own life.
* To "confront" someone is to try to force him to stop doing what he is doing, either by speaking strongly to him or by physically preventing him from continuing.
* To be "disorderly" is to reject discipline and correction, either by being idle or by doing harmful things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "discipline" could be translated as "train and instruct" or "morally guide" or "punish for wrongdoing."
* The noun "discipline" could be translated as "moral training" or "punishment" or "moral correction" or "moral guidance and instruction."

#### Bible References:

* Ephesians 06:4
* Hebrews 12:05
* Proverbs 19:18
* Proverbs 23:13-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3198, H3256, H3925, H4148, H7378, H8433, G812, G1651, G3809, G3810, G3811, G4995

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

are ... idle, confronted, discipline, disciplined, disciplines, disorderly, no discipline, self-discipline, trained, training, trains, untrained, were ... idle

### disgrace

#### Related Ideas:

disgraceful, vile

#### Definitions:

The term "disgrace" refers to a loss of honor and respect.

* When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
* The term "disgraceful" is used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it.
* Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame.
* For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
* Ways to translate "disgrace" could include "shame" or "dishonor."
* Ways to translate "disgraceful" could include "shameful" or dishonoring."

(See also: [dishonor](../other/dishonor.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md), [shame](../other/shame.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 03:07
* Genesis 34:07
* Hebrews 11:26
* Lamentations 02:1-2
* Psalms 022:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H954, H1984, H2490, H2617, H2659, H2781, H2865, H3637, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6031, H7036, G149, G150, G819, G3680, G3856

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

disgrace, disgraced, disgraceful, disgraceful thing, disgraces, vile

### dishonor

#### Related Ideas:

dishonorable, lightly esteemed

#### Definition:

The term "dishonor" means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

* The term "dishonorable" describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
* Sometimes "dishonorable" is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
* Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
* The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
* The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
* This could be translated as to "not honor" or to "treat with no respect."
* The noun "dishonor" could be translated as "disrespect" or "loss of honor."
* Depending on the context, "dishonorable" could also be translated as "not honorable" or "shameful" or "not worthwhile" or "not valuable."
* A person who is "lightly esteemed" is dishonored by people who refuse to give him the honor he deserves.

(See also: [disgrace](../other/disgrace.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:10
* 1 Samuel 20:34
* 2 Corinthians 06:8-10
* Ezekiel 22:07
* John 08:48
* Leviticus 18:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1540, H2490, H2781, H3637, H3639, H5006, H5034, H6173, H7034, H7036, H7043, G818, G819, G820, G2617

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dishonor, dishonorable, dishonored, dishonors, lightly esteemed

### disobey

#### Related Ideas:

disobedient

#### Definition:

The term "disobey" means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being "disobedient."

* A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
* To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
* The term "disobedient" is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
* The term "disobedience" means "the act of not obeying" or "behavior that is against what God wants."
* A "disobedient people" could be translated by "people who keep on disobeying" or "people who do not do what God commands."

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [obey](../other/obey.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 13:21
* Acts 26:19
* Colossians 03:07
* Luke 01:17
* Luke 06:49
* Psalms 089:30-32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

disobedience, disobedient, disobey, disobeyed, disobeying, disobeys

### disperse

#### Related Ideas:

dispersion, distribute, go apart, scatter

#### Definition:

The terms "disperse" and "dispersion" refer to the scattering of people or things into many different directions.

* In the Old Testament, God talks about "dispersing" people, causing them to have to separate and live in different places apart from each other. He did this to punish them for their sin. Perhaps being dispersed would help them repent and start worshiping God again.
* The term "dispersion" is used in the New Testament to refer to Christians who had to leave their homes and move to many different locations to escape persecution.
* The phrase "the dispersion" could be translated as "believers in many different places" or "the people who moved away to live in different nations."
* The term "disperse" could be translated as "send away into many different places" or "scatter abroad" or "cause to move away to live in different countries."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [persecute](../other/persecute.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:01
* Ezekiel 12:15
* Ezekiel 30:23
* Psalms 018:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2219, H2505, H5080, H5310, H6327, H6340, H6504, H8600, G1287, G1290, G4650

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

disperse, dispersed, dispersion, distributed, go apart, scatter, scattered, scatters

### divination

#### Related Ideas:

divine, diviner, enchantment, interpret omens, soothsayer, spells

#### Definition:

The terms "divination" and "soothsaying" refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a "diviner" or "soothsayer."

* In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
* God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
* Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
* A person who "interprets omens" seeks supernatural knowledge from such things as tea leaves and animal organs and the weather.
* An "enchantment" or "spell" is a set of words that people believe have magic power.
* In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [magic](../other/magic.md), [sorcery](../other/sorcery.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 06:1-2
* Acts 16:16
* Ezekiel 12:24-25
* Genesis 44:05
* Jeremiah 27:9-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1870, H3049, H4738, H5172, H6049, H7080, H7081, G4436

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

divination, divinations, divine, diviner, diviners, divining, enchantments, interpret omens, interprets omens, practice ... divination, soothsayer, soothsaying, spells

### divine

#### Related Ideas:

deity, divine nature

#### Definition:

The term "divine" refers to anything pertaining to God.

* Some ways this term is used include "divine authority," "divine judgment," "divine nature," "divine power," and "divine glory."
* In one passage in the Bible, the term "divine" is used to describe something about a false deity.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate the term "divine" could include "God's" or "from God" or "pertaining to God" or "characterized by God."
* For example, "divine authority" could be translated as "God's authority" or "authority that comes from God."
* The phrase "divine glory" could be translated as "God's glory" or "the glory that God has" or "glory that comes from God."
* Some translations may prefer to use a different word when describing something that pertains to a false god.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [glory](../kt/glory.md), [God](../kt/god.md), [judge](../kt/judge.md), [power](../kt/power.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 10:3-4
* 2 Peter 01:04
* Romans 01:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2303, G2304, G2305, G2316

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deity, divine, divine nature

### divorce

#### Definition:

A divorce is the legal act of ending a marriage. The term to "divorce" means to formally and legally separate from one's spouse in order to end the marriage.

* The literal meaning of the term to "divorce" is to "send away" or to "formally separate from." Other languages may have similar expressions to refer to divorce.
* A "certificate of divorce" could be translated as a "paper stating that the marriage has ended."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 08:8-11
* Leviticus 21:7-9
* Luke 16:18
* Mark 10:04
* Matthew 05:32
* Matthew 19:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1644, H3748, H5493, H7971, G630, G647, G863

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

divorce, divorces

### doctrine

#### Related Ideas:

beliefs, learning

#### Definition:

The word "doctrine" literally means "teaching." It usually refers to religious teaching.

* In the context of Christian teachings, "doctrine" refers to all teachings about God—Father, Son and Holy Spirit–including all his character qualities and everything he has done.
* It also refers to everything God teaches Christians about how to live holy lives that bring glory to him.
* The word "doctrine" is sometimes also used to refer to false or worldly religious teachings that come from human beings. The context makes the meaning clear.
* This term could also be translated as "teaching."

(See also: [teach](../other/teach.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 01:03
* 2 Timothy 03:16-17
* Mark 07:6-7
* Matthew 15:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3948, G1319, G2085

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

beliefs, doctrine, doctrines, learning

### dominion

#### Related Ideas:

control, dominate, subjugate

#### Definition:

The term "dominion" refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

* Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
* Satan's dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ's death on the cross.
* At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "authority" or "power" or "control."
* The phrase "have dominion over" could be translated as "rule over" or "manage."

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [power](../kt/power.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 05:10-11
* Colossians 01:13
* Jude 01:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4474, H4475, H4910, G4912, H4915, H7287, H7985, G1849, G2634, G2904, G2963

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

control, controls, dominate, dominion, dominions, subjugate

### donkey

#### Related Ideas:

mule

#### Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

* A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
* Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
* Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
* In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
* Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 01:32-34
* 1 Samuel 09:04
* 2 Kings 04:21-22
* Deuteronomy 05:12-14
* Luke 13:15
* Matthew 21:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

donkey, donkey's, donkeys, mule, mules, wild donkey

### doom

#### Definition:

The term "doom" refers to a judgment of condemnation with no possibility of appeal or escape.

* As the nation of Israel was being taken captive into Babylon, the prophet Ezekiel said, "doom has come upon them."
* Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "disaster" or "punishment" or "hopeless ruin."

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 07:5-7
* Ezekiel 30:09
* Isaiah 06:05
* Psalms 092:6-7

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1820, H3117, H6256, H8045

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

doom

### doorpost

#### Definition:

The "doorpost" is a vertical beam on either side of a door, which supports the top of the door frame.

* Just before God helped the Israelites escape from Egypt, he instructed them to kill a lamb and put its blood on their doorposts.
* In the Old Testament, a slave who desired to serve his master the rest of his life would place his ear on the doorpost of his master's house to have a nail hammered through his ear into the doorpost.
* This could also be translated as "wooden post on either side of a door" or "sides of a wooden doorframe" or "wood beams on the sides of a doorway."

(See also: [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Passover](../kt/passover.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 06:31-32
* Deuteronomy 11:20
* Exodus 12:07
* Isaiah 57:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H352, H4201

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

doorpost, doorposts

### dove

#### Related Ideas:

pigeon

#### Definition:

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

* Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
* Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
* A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
* Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
* If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as "a small grayish brown bird called a dove" or "a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)".
* If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.

(See also: [olive](../other/olive.md), [innocent](../kt/innocent.md), [pure](../kt/purify.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 08:09
* Luke 02:22-24
* Mark 01:10
* Matthew 03:16
* Matthew 21:12-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1469, H1686, H3123, H8449, G4058

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dove, dove's, doves, pigeon, pigeons

### dream

#### Related Ideas:

dreamer

#### Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

* Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
* Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
* In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
* A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: [vision](../other/vision.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:16-17
* Daniel 01:17-18
* Daniel 02:01
* Genesis 37:06
* Genesis 40:4-5
* Matthew 02:13
* Matthew 02:19-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G1797, G1798, G3677

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dream, dreamed, dreamer, dreamers, dreaming, dreams

### drink offering

#### Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

* Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
* Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Another way to translate this term could be "offering of grape wine."
* When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: [burnt offering](../other/burntoffering.md), [grain offering](../other/grainoffering.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 25:29
* Ezekiel 45:16-17
* Genesis 35:14
* Jeremiah 07:16-18
* Numbers 05:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

drink offering, drink offerings

### drunk

#### Related Ideas:

intoxicated, drink much, drunkard, drunkenness

#### Definitions:

The term "drunk" means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

* A "drunkard" is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an "alcoholic."
* The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God's Holy Spirit.
* The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
* Other ways to translate "drunk" could include "inebriated" or "intoxicated" or "having too much alcohol" or "filled with fermented drink."

(See also: [wine](../other/wine.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
* 1 Samuel 25:36
* Jeremiah 13:13
* Luke 07:34
* Luke 21:34
* Proverbs 23:19-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5433, H5435, H7301, H7686, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be ... intoxicated, became drunk, become drunk, drank freely, drink much, drunk, drunkard, drunkards, drunkenness, get drunk

### dung

#### Related Ideas:

manure

#### Definition:

The term "dung" refers to human or animal solid waste, and is also called feces or excrement. When used as fertilizer for enriching the soil, it is called "manure."

* These terms can also be used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or not important.
* Dried animal dung is often used for fuel.
* The expression "like dung on the ground" could be translated as "be scattered like worthless dung over the land."
* The "Dung Gate" in the South Wall of Jerusalem was probably the gate where garbage and trash were taken out of the city.

(See also: [gate](../other/gate.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 14:10
* 2 Kings 06:25
* Isaiah 25:10
* Jeremiah 08:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H830, H1557, H1561, H1686, H1828, H6569, H6675, G2874

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dung, manure

### eagle

#### Related Ideas:

vulture

#### Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens. A vulture is a large powerful bird that eats dead animals that it finds.

* The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
* Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
* In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See also: [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [free](../other/free.md), [Nebuchadnezzar](../names/nebuchadnezzar.md), [power](../kt/power.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 01:23
* Daniel 07:04
* Jeremiah 04:13-15
* Leviticus 11:13-16
* Revelation 04:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5403, H5404, G105

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

eagle, eagle's, eagles, eagles', vultures

### earth

#### Related Ideas:

clay, dust, earthen, earthly, ground, land, soil

#### Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

* "Earth" can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
* This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth.
* The expressions "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth" are examples of figurative uses of this term.
* The term "earthly" usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.
* The term "earthen" describes something that is made of clay

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
* Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil" or "clay."
* When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
* Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [world](../kt/world.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 01:38-40
* 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
* Daniel 04:35
* Luke 12:51
* Matthew 06:10
* Matthew 11:25
* Zechariah 06:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H80, H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2868, G2886, G3625, G5517, G5522

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clay, dust, earth, earth's, earthen, earthly, ground, land, lands, soil

### elder

#### Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

* The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
* In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
* In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
* In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
* Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
* This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
* 1 Timothy 03:1-3
* 1 Timothy 04:14
* Acts 05:19-21
* Acts 14:23
* Mark 11:28
* Matthew 21:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

elder, elders

### elect

#### Related Ideas:

Chosen One, choice, choose, election

#### Definition:

The term "the elect" literally means "chosen ones" or "chosen people" and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. "Chosen One" or "Chosen One of God" is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

* The term "choose" means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
* To be "chosen" means to be "selected" or "appointed" to be or do something.
* God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called "the chosen (ones) or "the elect."
* The term "chosen one" is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God's chosen people.
* The phrase "the elect" is an older term that literally means "the chosen ones" or "the chosen people." This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
* In older English Bible versions, the term "elect" is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for "chosen one(s)." More modern versions use "elect" only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as "chosen ones."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate "elect" with a word or phrase that means "chosen ones" or "chosen people." This could also be translated as "people whom God chose" or "the ones God appointed to be his people."
* The phrase "who were chosen" could also be translated as "who were appointed" or "who were selected" or "whom God chose."
* "I chose you" could be translated as "I appointed you" or "I selected you."
* In reference to Jesus, "Chosen One" could also be translated as "God's chosen One" or "God's specially appointed Messiah" or "the One God appointed (to save people)."

(See also: [appoint](../kt/appoint.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 John 01:01
* Colossians 03:12
* Ephesians 01:3-4
* Isaiah 65:22-23
* Luke 18:07
* Matthew 24:19-22
* Romans 08:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H972, H977, H1262, H1305, H3045, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G3724, G4400, G4401, G4899, G5500

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Chosen One, choice, choose, chooses, chose, chosen, chosen one, chosen ones, chosen people, elect, election

### endure

#### Related Ideas:

endurance, patient endurance, put up with, resist, stand

#### Definition:

The term "endure" means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

* It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
* The term "endurance" can mean "patience" or "bearing up under a trial" or "persevering when being persecuted."
* The encouragement to Christians to "endure to the end" is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
* To "endure suffering" can also mean to "experience suffering."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate the term "endure" could include "persevere" or "keep believing" or "continue to do what God wants you to do" or "stand firm."
* In some contexts, to "endure" could be translated as to "experience" or to "go through."
* With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term "endure" could also be tranlsated as "last" or "continue." The phrase "will not endure" could be translated as "will not last" or "will not continue to survive."
* Ways to translate "endurance" could include "perseverance" or "continuing to believe" or "remaining faithful."

(See also: [persevere](../other/perseverance.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 02:11-13
* James 01:03
* James 01:12
* Luke 21:19
* Matthew 13:21
* Revelation 01:09
* Romans 05:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, H6965, G430, G907, G1526, G2005, G2076, G2594, G3306, G4722, G5278, G5281, G5297, G5342

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

endurance, endure, endured, endures, enduring, patient endurance, put up with, resist, stand

### enslave

#### Related Ideas:

bondage, bring into slavery, slave, slavery

#### Definition:

To "enslave" someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be "enslaved" or "in bondage" means to be under the control of something or someone.

* A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants.
* To "enslave" also means to take away a person's freedom.
* Another word for "bondage" is "slavery."
* In a figurative way, human beings are "enslaved" to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power.
* When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "enslave" could be translated as "cause to not be free" or "force to serve others" or "put under the control of others."
* The phrase "enslaved to" or "in bondage to" could be translated as "forced to be a slave of" or "forced to serve" or "under the control of."

(See also: [free](../other/free.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [servant](../other/servant.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:03
* Galatians 04:24-25
* Genesis 15:13
* Jeremiah 30:8-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H519, H4522, H5647, H5650, H5659, H8198, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G3814

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

being slaves, bondage, bring ... into slavery, enslave, enslaved, enslaves, female slave, female slaves, male slaves, slave, slave girl, slave girls, slaved, slavery, slaves

### envy

#### Related Ideas:

covet, covetousness, envious, greed

#### Definition:

The term "envy" refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person's admirable qualities.

* Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person's success, good fortune, or possessions.
* To "covet" means to have a strong desire to have someone else's property, or even someone else's spouse. Often a person who covets something is willing to sin to get it.
* "Greed" is a strong, selfish desire to have something. Often a person who is greedy wants more of what he already has.

(See also: [jealous](../kt/jealous.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
* 1 Peter 02:01
* Exodus 20:17
* Mark 07:20-23
* Proverbs 03:31-32
* Romans 01:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H183, H2530, H7065, H7068, H7342, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

covet, coveted, coveting, covetousness, envied, envious, envy, envying, greed, greedy

### ephod

#### Definition:

An ephod was an apron-like garment worn by the Israelite priests. It had two parts, front and back, that were joined together at the shoulders and tied around the waist with a cloth belt.

* One kind of ephod was made of plain linen and was worn by the ordinary priests.
* The ephod worn by the high priest was specially embroidered with gold, blue, purple, and red yarn.
* The breastpiece of the high priest was attached to the front of the ephod. Behind the breastpiece were stored the Urim and Thummim, which were stones used for asking God what his will was in certain matters.
* The judge Gideon foolishly made an ephod out of gold and it became something that the Israelites worshiped as an idol.

(See also: [priest](../kt/priest.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 02:18-19
* Exodus 28:4-5
* Hosea 03:04
* Judges 08:27
* Leviticus 08:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H641, H642, H646

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ephod

### eternity

#### Related Ideas:

ages long ago, eternal, ever, everlasting, for all time, forever, forevermore

#### Definition:

The terms "everlasting" and "eternal" have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

* The term "eternity" refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
* After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
* The terms "eternal life" and "everlasting life" are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
* The phrase "forever and ever" has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

The term "forever" refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean "a very long time."

* The term "forever and ever" emphasizes that something will always happen or exist.
* The phrase "forever and ever" is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
* God said that David's throne would last "forever." This is referred to the fact that David's descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Other ways to translate "eternal" or "everlasting" could include"unending" or "never stopping" or "always continuing."

The terms "eternal life" and "everlasting life" could also be translated as "life that never ends" or "life that continues without stopping" or "the raising up of our bodies to live forever."

Depending on the context, different ways to translate "eternity" could include "existing outside of time" or "unending life" or "life in heaven."

Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

"Forever" could also be translated by "always" or "never ending."

The phrase "will last forever" could also be translated as "always exist" or "will never stop" or "will always continue."

The emphatic phrase "forever and ever" could also be translated as "for always and always" or "not ever ending" or "which never, ever ends."

David's throne lasting forever could be translated as "David's descendant will reign forever" or "a descendant of David will always be reigning."

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [reign](../other/reign.md), [life](../kt/life.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 17:08
* Genesis 48:04
* Exodus 15:17
* 2 Samuel 03:28-30
* 1 Kings 02:32-33
* Job 04:20-21
* Psalms 021:04
* Isaiah 09:6-7
* Isaiah 40:27-28
* Daniel 07:18
* Luke 18:18
* Acts 13:46
* Romans 05:21
* Hebrews 06:19-20
* Hebrews 10:11-14
* 1 John 01:02
* 1 John 05:12
* Revelation 01:4-6
* Revelation 22:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1755, H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ages long ago, eternal, eternity, ever, everlasting, for all time, forever, forevermore, never

### eunuch

#### Definition:

Usually the term "eunuch" refers to a man who has been castrated. The term later became a general term to refer to any government official, even those without the deformity.

* Jesus said that some eunuchs were born that way, perhaps because of damaged sex organs or because of not being able to function sexually. Others chose to live like eunuchs in a celibate lifestyle.
* In ancient times, eunuchs were often kings' servants who were set as guards over the women's quarters.
* Some eunuchs were important government officials, such as the Ethiopian eunuch who met the apostle Philip in the desert.

(See also: [Philip](../names/philip.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:27
* Acts 08:36
* Acts 08:39
* Isaiah 39:7-8
* Jeremiah 34:17-19
* Matthew 19:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5631, G2134, G2135

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

eunuch, eunuchs

### evangelist

#### Definition:

An "evangelist" is a person who tells other people the good news about Jesus Christ.

* The literal meaning of "evangelist" is "someone who preaches the good news."
* Jesus sent his apostles out to spread the good news about how to be part of God's kingdom through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice for sin.
* All Christians are exhorted to share this good news.
* Some Christians are given a special spiritual gift to effectively tell the gospel to others. These people are said to have the gift of evangelism and are called "evangelists."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "evangelist" could be translated as "someone who preaches the good news" or "teacher of the good news" or "person who proclaims the good news (about Jesus)" or "good news proclaimer."

(See also: [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [gift](../kt/gift.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:05
* Ephesians 04:11-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2099

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

evangelist, evangelists

### evil

#### Related Ideas:

deal violently, displeasing, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly

#### Definition:

The terms "evil" and "wicked" both refer to anything that is opposed to God's holy character and will.

* While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
* The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
* The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
* Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
* Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [good](../kt/good.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 24:11
* 1 Timothy 06:10
* 3 John 01:10
* Genesis 02:17
* Genesis 06:5-6
* Job 01:01
* Job 08:20
* Judges 09:57
* Luke 06:22-23
* Matthew 07:11-12
* Proverbs 03:07
* Psalms 022:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H1100, H1431, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2554, H2555, H5765, H2162, H2248, H2254, H3238, H3399, H3415, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5771, H5807, H5999, H6090, H6184, H6293, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, H7701, H8133, G92, G93, G94, G932, G983, G984, G987, G988, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G4550, G5337

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deal violently, deal worse, displeasing, do ... evil, do ... violence, done ... violence, evil, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, evils, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violated, violates, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly, wretches

### evildoer

#### Related Ideas:

do harm, do evil, harmed, work out evil

#### Definition:

The term "evildoer" is a general reference to people who do sinful and wicked things.

* It can also be a general word for people who do not obey God.
* This term could be translated using the word for "evil" or "wicked," with the word for "doing" or "making" or "causing" something.

(See also: [evil](../kt/evil.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 02:13-17
* Isaiah 09:16-17
* Luke 13:25-27
* Malachi 03:13-15
* Matthew 07:21-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H3637, H6213, H6466, H7451, H7489, G93, G458, G2038, G2040, G2554, G2555

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

did ... harm, do ... harm, doing evil, doing harm, evildoer, evildoers, harmed, work out evil

### exalt

#### Related Ideas:

exaltation, high position, leadership position, lifted up

#### Definition:

To exalt is to lift up. Often exalt means to praise or honor someone or something. It can also mean to put someone in an honored position of leadership.

* In the Bible, the term "exalt" is most often used for honoring God.
* When a person exalts himself, it means he thinks about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "exalt" could include "highly praise" or "honor greatly" or "extol" or "speak highly of."
* In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means "put in a higher position" or "give more honor to" or "talk about proudly."
* "Do not exalt yourself" could also be translated as "Do not think of yourself too highly" or "Do not brag about yourself."
* "Those that exalt themselves" could also be translated as "Those who think proudly about themselves" or "Those who boast about themselves."

(See also: [praise](../other/praise.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md), [glory](../kt/glory.md), [boast](../kt/boast.md), [proud](../other/proud.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 05:5-7
* 2 Samuel 22:47
* Acts 05:31
* Philippians 02:9-11
* Psalms 018:46

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1361, H1362, H1364, H4791, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

exalt, exaltation, exalted, exalting, exalts, high position, leadership positions, lifted up, lofty

### exhort

#### Related Ideas:

exhortation, urge

#### Definition:

The term "exhort" means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called "exhortation."

* The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God's will.
* The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "exhort" could also be translated as "strongly urge" or "persuade" or "advise."
* Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
* In most contexts, the term "exhort" should be translated differently than "encourage," which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
* Usually this term will also be translated differently from "admonish," which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
* 1 Thessalonians 02:12
* 1 Timothy 05:02
* Luke 03:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5927, H6484, G3867, G3870, G3874

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

exhort, exhortation, exhortations, exhorted, exhorting, urge, urged

### exile

#### Definition:

The term "exile" refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

* People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
* A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
* The "Babylonian exile" (or "the exile") is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
* The phrase "the exiles" refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term to "exile" could also be translated as to "send away" or to "force out" or to "banish."
* The term "the exile" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the sent away time" or "the time of banishment" or "the time of forced absence" or "banishment."
* Ways to translate "the exiles" could include "the exiled people" or "the people who were banished" or "the people exiled to Babylon."

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 24:14
* Daniel 02:25-26
* Ezekiel 01:1-3
* Isaiah 20:04
* Jeremiah 29:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H7617, H7622, G3927

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

exile, exiled, exiles

### face

#### Related Ideas:

before, facedown, facial, presence, surface

#### Definition:

The word "face" literally refers to the front part of a person's head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

* The expression "your face" is often a figurative way of saying "you." Similarly, the expression "my face" often means "I" or "me."
* In a physical sense, to "face" someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
* To "face each other" means to "look directly at each other."
* Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
* When Jesus "steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem," it means that he very firmly decided to go.
* To "set one's face against" people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
* The expression "face of the land" refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a "famine covering the face of the earth" refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
* The figurative expression "do not hide your face from your people" means "do not reject your people" or "do not desert your people" or "do not stop taking care of your people."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
* The term to "face" could be translated as to "turn toward" or to "look at directly" or to "look at the face of."
* The expression "face to face" could be translated as "up close" or "right in front of" or "in the presence of."
* Depending on the context, the expression "before his face" could be translated as "ahead of him" or "in front of him" or "before him" or "in his presence."
* The expression "set his face toward" could be translated as "began traveling toward" or "firmly made up his mind to go to."
* The expression "hide his face from" could be translated as "turn away from" or "stop helping or protecting" or "reject."
* To "set his face against" a city or people could be translated as "look at with anger and condemn" or "refuse to accept" or "decide to reject" or "condemn and reject" or "pass judgment on."
* The expression "say it to their face" could be translated as "say it to them directly" or "say it to them in their presence" or "say it to them in person."
* The expression "on the face of the land" could also be translated as "throughout the land" or "over the whole earth" or "living throughout the earth."

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 05:04
* Genesis 33:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H600, H639, H2122, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

before, face, faced, facedown, faces, facial, facing, presence, surface

### faith

#### Definition:

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

* To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
* To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
* True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
* Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression "the truths of the faith."
* In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
* For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe."
* The expression "keep the faith" could be translated by "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
* The sentence "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."
* The expression "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:07
* Acts 06:7
* Galatians 02:20-21
* James 02:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

faith

### faithful

#### Related Ideas:

faithfully, faithfulness, reliable

#### Definition:

To be "faithful" to God means to consistently live according to God's teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him.The state or condition of being faithful is "faithfulness."

* A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
* A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
* Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term "unfaithful" describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is "unfaithfulness."

* The people of Israel were called "unfaithful" when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
* In marriage, someone who commits adultery is "unfaithful" to his or her spouse.
* God used the term "unfaithfulness" to describe Israel's disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "faithful" and "faithfulness"

* In many contexts, "faithful" can be translated as "loyal" or "dedicated" or "dependable."
* In other contexts, "faithful" can be translated by a word or phrase that means "continuing to believe" or "persevering in believing and obeying God."
* Ways that "faithfulness" could be translated could include "persevering in believing" or "loyalty" or "trustworthiness" or "believing and obeying God."

Translating "unfaithful" and "unfaithfulness"

* Depending on the context, "unfaithful" could be translated as "not faithful" or "unbelieving" or "not obedient" or "not loyal."
* The phrase "the unfaithful" could be translated as "people who are not faithful (to God)" or "unfaithful people" or "those who disobey God" or "people who rebel against God."
* The term "unfaithfulness" could be translated as "disobedience" or "disloyalty" or "not believing or obeying."
* In some languages, the term "unfaithful" is related to the word for "unbelief."

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [faith](../kt/faith.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 24:49
* Leviticus 26:40
* Numbers 12:07
* Joshua 02:14
* Judges 02:16-17
* 1 Samuel 02:9
* Psalm 012:1
* Proverbs 11:12-13
* Isaiah 01:26
* Jeremiah 09:7-9
* Hosea 05:07
* Luke 12:46
* Luke 16:10
* Colossians 01:07
* 1 Thessalonians 05:24
* 3 John 01:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H2181, H2616, H2623, H4603, H4820, G569, G4102, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

faithful, faithful one, faithful people, faithfully, faithfulness, reliable, show ... self ... faithful

### faithless

#### Related Ideas:

faithless deeds, faithlessly, faithlessness, unbelief, unbeliever, unfaithful, unfaithfully, unfaithfulness

#### Definition:

The term "faithless" means to not have faith or to not believe.

* This word is used to describe people who do not believe in God. Their lack of belief is seen by the immoral way they act.
* The prophet Jeremiah accused Israel of being faithless and disobedient to God.
* They worshiped idols and followed other ungodly customs of people groups who did not worship or obey God.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, the term "faithless" could be translated as "unfaithful" or "unbelieving" or "disobedient to God" or "not believing."
* The term "faithlessness" could be translated as "unbelief" or "unfaithfulness" or "rebellion against God."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 43:6-8
* Ezra 09:1-2
* Jeremiah 02:19
* Proverbs 02:22
* Revelation 21:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H898, H4603, H4604, H5472, G570, G569, G571, G802

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be unfaithful, faithless, faithless deeds, faithlessly, faithlessness, those who do not believe, unbelief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelieving, unfaithful, unfaithfully, unfaithfulness

### false prophet

#### Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

* The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
* False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
* This term could also be translated as "person who falsely claims to be God's spokesman" or "someone who falsely claims to speak God's words."
* The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: [fulfill](../kt/fulfill.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:1-3
* 2 Peter 02:01
* Acts 13:6-8
* Luke 06:26
* Matthew 07:16
* Matthew 24:23-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5578

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

false prophet, false prophets

### family

#### Related Ideas:

family line, genealogical record

#### Definition:

The term "family" refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

* The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
* Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
* Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
* Some languages may have a broader word such as "clan" or "household" that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
* The term "family" is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God's family because they believe in Jesus.
* A "genealogy" is a record of a person's family that tells who his ancestors were.

(See also: [clan](../other/clan.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [house](../other/house.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:1-2
* 1 Samuel 18:18
* Exodus 01:21
* Joshua 02:12-13
* Luke 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H3188, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, H8435, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

families, family, family line, genealogical record, genealogical records, genealogies, genealogy, recorded in ... genealogies, recorded in ... genealogy

### famine

#### Related Ideas:

famished, hunger

#### Definition:

The term "famine" refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain. The term "famished" means extremely hungry.

* Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
* Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
* In the Bible, God often caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
* In Amos 8:11 the term "famine" is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for "famine" in your language, or with a phrase such as "extreme lack" or "severe deprivation."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
* Acts 07:11
* Genesis 12:10
* Genesis 45:06
* Jeremiah 11:21-23
* Luke 04:25
* Matthew 24:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042, G3521

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

famine, famines, famished, hunger

### fast

#### Definition:

The term to "fast" means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

* Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
* Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
* Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
* The verb to "fast" can also be translated as to "refrain from eating" or to "not eat."
* The noun "fast" could be translated as "time of not eating" or "time of abstaining from food."

(See also: [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 21:8-10
* 2 Chronicles 20:03
* Acts 13:1-3
* Jonah 03:4-5
* Luke 05:34
* Mark 02:19
* Matthew 06:18
* Matthew 09:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fast, fasted, fasting, fastings, fasts

### father

#### Related Ideas:

ancestor, ancestral, beget, fatherless, forefather, grandfather, orphan

#### Definition:

When used literally, the term "father" refers to a person's male parent.

* A "grandfather" is someone's father's father or someone's mother's father.
* A "forefather" is one of a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather.
* An "ancestral household" is a social unit of those people who are descended from one ancestor.
* A person who is "fatherless" does not have a father.
* An "orphan" is a person who has no parents. In Bible times widows were often not able to care for their children, so a child with a mother but no father could also be thought of as an orphan.
* To "beget" someone is to become that person's father.

There are also several figurative uses of the term "father."

* The term "fathers" often refers to a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather.
* The term "father" can refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
* The apostle Paul called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

#### Translation Suggestions

* When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
* "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
* When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
* Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader."
* When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
* The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [son](../kt/son.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:02
* Acts 07:32
* Acts 07:45
* Acts 22:03
* Genesis 31:30
* Genesis 31:42
* Genesis 31:53
* Hebrews 07:4-6
* John 04:12
* Joshua 24:3-4
* Malachi 03:07
* Mark 10:7-9
* Matthew 01:07
* Matthew 03:09
* Matthew 10:21
* Matthew 18:14
* Romans 04:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H539, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ancestor, ancestor's, ancestors, ancestors', ancestral, beget, begot, father, father's, fathered, fathering, fatherless, fathers, fathers', forefather, forefathers, grandfather, orphan, orphans

### favor

#### Related Ideas:

favorable, favoritism, privilege, request for favor, show favor

#### Definition:

To "favor" is to prefer. When someone favors a person, he regards that person positively and does more to benefit that person than he does to benefit others.

* The term "favoritism" means the attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoratism is considered unfair.
* Jesus grew up "in favor with" God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
* The expression "find favor" with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
* When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person's request and grants it.
* A "favor" can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate the term "favor" could include, "blessing" or "benefit" or "credit."
* The "favorable year of Yahweh" could be translated as "the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing."
* The term "favoritism" could be translated as "partiality" or "being prejudiced" or "unjust treatment." This word is related to the word "favorite," which means "the one who is preferred or loved best."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 02:25-26
* 2 Chronicles 19:07
* 2 Corinthians 01:11
* Acts 24:27
* Genesis 41:16
* Genesis 47:25
* Genesis 50:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2604, H2617, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7522, H7965, H8467, G1184, G3685, G3982, G4380, G4382, G5485, G5486

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

favor, favorable, favored, favoritism, favors, privilege, request for favor, seek ... favor, seeking the favor, show favor, shown favor, sought ... favor

### fear

#### Related Ideas:

afraid, alarmed, anxiety, coward, dismay, dread, fainthearted, fearful, fearlessly, fearsome, frighten, timid, unafraid

#### Definition:

The terms "fear" and "afraid" refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

* The term "fear" can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
* The phrase "fear of Yahweh," as well as related terms "fear of God" and "fear of the Lord," refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
* The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.
* "Anxiety" is fear about the future, what is going to happen.
* To be "alarmed" is to be surprised and afraid because something bad has suddenly happened.
* "Dread" is great fear.
* Someone who is "timid" is afraid to act because something bad might happen as a result.
* Someone who is "unafraid" is not afraid.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, to "fear" can be translated as to "be afraid" or to "deeply respect" or to "revere" or to "be in awe of."
* The term "afraid" could be translated as "terrified" or "scared" or "fearful."
* The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" could be translated as "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."
* The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
* Note that the phrase "fear of Yahweh" does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase "fear of the Lord" or "fear of the Lord God" is used instead.

(See also: [marvel](../other/amazed.md), [awe](../other/awe.md), [Lord](../kt/lord.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:18
* Acts 02:43
* Acts 19:15-17
* Genesis 50:21
* Isaiah 11:3-5
* Job 06:14
* Jonah 01:09
* Luke 12:05
* Matthew 10:28
* Proverbs 10:24-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H367, H926, H928, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7390, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1568, G1630, G1719, G2125, G5398, G5399, G5401

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

afraid, alarmed, anxiety, cowards, dismay, dismayed, dread, dreaded, fainthearted, fear, feared, fearful, fearful thing, fearlessly, fears, fearsome, frighten, frightened, timid, unafraid

### feast

#### Related Ideas:

dinner

#### Definition:

The term "feast" refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action to "feast" means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

* Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
* The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called "feasts."
* In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
* In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
* A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
* The term to "feast" could also be translated as to "eat lavishly" or to "celebrate by eating lots of food" or to "eat a special, large meal."
* Depending on the context, "feast" could be translated as "celebrating together with a large meal" or "a meal with a lot of food" or "a celebration meal."

(See also: [festival](../other/festival.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:12-14
* Genesis 26:30
* Genesis 29:22
* Genesis 40:20
* Jude 01:12-13
* Luke 02:43
* Luke 14:7-9
* Matthew 22:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dinner, feast, feasting, feasts

### fellowship

#### Related Ideas:

alliance, associate with, association, allied with, contribution, participants with, partnership, share, united

#### Definition:

In general, the term "fellowship" refers to friendly interactions between members of a group of people who share similar interests and experiences.

* In the Bible, the term "fellowship" usually refers to the unity of believers in Christ.
* Christian fellowship is a shared relationship that believers have with one another through their relationship with Christ and the Holy Spirit.
* The early Christians expressed their fellowship through listening to the teaching of God's Word and praying together, through the sharing of their belongings, and through eating meals together.
* Christians also have fellowship with God through their faith in Jesus and his sacrificial death on the cross which removed the barrier between God and people.
* An "alliance" is a kind of fellowship between governments in which the governments agree to work together, usually to fight common enemies.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "fellowship" could include "a sharing together" or "relationship" or "companionship" or "Christian community."

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:03
* Acts 02:40-42
* Philippians 01:3-6
* Philippians 02:01
* Philippians 03:10
* Psalms 055:12-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2266, H2270, H4541, H6148, H8641, G2842, G2844, G3352, G3353, G4790

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alliance, alliances, associate with, association, be allied with, be participants with, contribution, contributions, fellowship, participant, participants, partnership, share, sharers, shares, sharing, united

### fellowship offering

#### Definitions:

In the Old Testament, the "fellowship offering" was a kind of sacrifice that was offered for different reasons, such as to give thanks to God or to fulfill a vow.

* This offering required the sacrifice of an animal that could be male or female. This was different from the burnt offering, which required a male animal.
* After giving a portion of the sacrifice to God, the person who brought the fellowship offering shared the meat with the priests and other Israelites.
* There was a meal associated with this offering which included unleavened bread.
* This is sometimes called the "peace offering."

(See also: [burnt offering](../other/burntoffering.md), [fulfill](../kt/fulfill.md), [grain offering](../other/grainoffering.md), [guilt offering](../other/guiltoffering.md), [peace offering](../other/peaceoffering.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [unleavened bread](../kt/unleavenedbread.md), [vow](../kt/vow.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 21:25-27
* 2 Chronicles 29:35
* Exodus 24:5-6
* Leviticus 03:3-5
* Numbers 06:13-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8002

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fellowship offering, fellowship offerings

### festival

#### Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

The word for "festival" in the Old Testament literally means "appointed time."

The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.

In some English translations, the word "feast" is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.

There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:

Passover

Festival of Unleavened Bread

Firstfruits

Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)

Festival of Trumpets

Day of Atonement

Festival of Shelters

The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

A person who "celebrates" acts as if he were at a festival.

(See also: [feast](../other/feast.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 23:31
* 2 Chronicles 08:13
* Exodus 05:01
* John 04:45
* Luke 22:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, H8057, G1456, G1858, G1859

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

festival, festivals

### fig

#### Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

* Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
* Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
* Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
* In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
* The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
* Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

#### Bible References:

* Habakkuk 03:17
* James 03:12
* Luke 13:07
* Mark 11:14
* Matthew 07:17
* Matthew 21:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1061, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fig, figs

### filled with the Holy Spirit

#### Related Ideas:

full of the Holy Spirit

#### Definition:

The term "filled with the Holy Spirit" is a figurative expression that, when used to describe a person means the Holy Spirit is empowering that person to do God's will.

* The expression "filled with" is an expression that often means "controlled by."
* People are "filled with the Holy Spirit" when they follow the Holy Spirit's leading and completely rely on him to help them do what God wants.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could be translated as "empowered by the Holy Spirit" or "controlled by the Holy Spirit." But it should not sound as though the Holy Spirit is forcing the person to do something.
* A sentence such as "he was filled with the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "he was living fully by the Spirit's power" or "he was completely guided by the Holy Spirit" or "the Holy Spirit was guiding him completely."
* This term is similar in meaning to the expression "live by the Spirit," but "filled with the Holy Spirit" emphasizes the completeness with which a person allows the Holy Spirit to have control or influence over his life. So these two expressions should be translated differently, if possible.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:31
* Acts 05:17
* Acts 06:8-9
* Luke 01:15
* Luke 01:39-41
* Luke 04:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4390, H4392, H7646, H8003, G40, G4130, G4137, G4151

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

filled ... with the Holy Spirit, full ... of the Holy Spirit, full ... of the Spirit

### fir

#### Definition:

A fir tree is a kind of tree that stays green all year and has cones that contain seeds.

* Fir trees are also referred to as "evergreen" trees.
* In ancient times, the wood of fir trees was used for making musical instruments and for building structures such as boats, houses, and the temple.
* Some examples of fir trees mentioned in the Bible are pine, cedar, cypress, and juniper.

(See also: [cedar](../other/cedar.md), [cypress](../other/cypress.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 27:4-5
* Isaiah 37:24-25
* Isaiah 41:19-20
* Isaiah 44:14
* Isaiah 60:12-13
* Psalms 104:16-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H766, H1265, H1266

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fir, firs

### fire

#### Related Ideas:

blazing, fiery, firebrands, inflame, kindle

#### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

* A fire that is "blazing" is very hot and has large flames.
* A "fire brand" is a piece of burning wood.
* To "set on fire" or "set fire to" something is to make it start burning with fire.
* To "inflame" something is to make it start burning.
* To "kindle" a fire is to start that fire burning.
* The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.

The word "fire" and ideas related to fire are also used figuratively.

* The term "fire" can refer to judgment or purification.
* The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified."
* Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.

(See also: [pure](../kt/purify.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 16:18-20
* 2 Kings 01:10
* 2 Thessalonians 01:08
* Acts 07:29-30
* John 15:06
* Luke 03:16
* Matthew 03:12
* Nehemiah 01:3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H1814, H2734, H2740, H3341, H3857, H4168, H5135, H6315, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G2618, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

blazing, fiery, fire, firebrands, fires, flaming, kindle, kindled, kindles, set fire to, set ... on fire, sets ... on fire

### firstborn

#### Related Ideas:

first issue

#### Definition:

The term "firstborn" refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

* In the Bible, "firstborn" usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
* In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
* Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
* This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God's firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
* Jesus, the Son of God is called God's firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.
* The phrase "first issue of the womb" is another way of saying "firstborn."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When "firstborn" occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as "firstborn male" or "firstborn son," since that is what is implied.
* Other ways to translate this term could include "the son who was born first" or "the eldest son" or "the number one son."
* When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the son who has authority over everything" or "the Son who is first in honor."
* Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](../kt/inherit.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [son](../kt/son.md))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 01:15
* Genesis 04:3-5
* Genesis 29:26-27
* Genesis 43:33
* Luke 02:6-7
* Revelation 01:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, H6363, G4416, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

first ... issue, firstborn

### firstfruit

#### Definition:

The term "firstfruits" refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

* The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
* This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
* Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the "firstfruits" of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
* Believers in Jesus are also called the "firstfruits" of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The literal use of this term could be translated as "first portion (of crops)" or "first part of the harvest."
* If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: [firstborn](../other/firstborn.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
* 2 Thessalonians 02:13
* Exodus 23:16-17
* James 01:18
* Jeremiah 02:03
* Psalms 105:36

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

firstfruit, firstfruits

### fishermen

#### Related Ideas:

fish, fisher

#### Definition:

Fishermen are men who catch fish from the water as a means of earning money. In the New Testament, the fishermen used large nets to catch fish. The term "fishers" is another name for fishermen.

* Peter and other apostles worked as fishermen before being called by Jesus.
* Since the land of Israel was near water, the Bible has many references to fish and fishermen.
* This term could be translated with a phrase such as "men who catch fish" or "men who earn money by catching fish."
* The word "fish" can also be a verb that means "to catch fish."

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 47:9-10
* Isaiah 19:08
* Luke 05:1-3
* Matthew 04:19
* Matthew 13:47

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1728, H1770, H1771, H2271, G231

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fish, fishermen, fishers

### flesh

#### Related Ideas:

fleshly, human, living creatures, meat, physical

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "flesh" literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

* The Bible also uses the term "flesh" in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
* In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to talk about something that is associated with being human. For example, to decide something according to the flesh means to decide something according to human standards.
* In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
* The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
* The expression "flesh and blood" can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
* The expression "one flesh" refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In the context of an animal's body, "flesh" could be translated as "body" or "skin" or "meat."
* When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as "living beings" or "everything that is alive."
* When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as "people" or "human beings" or "everyone who lives."
* The expression "flesh and blood" could also be translated as "relatives" or "family" or "kinfolk" or "family clan." There may be contexts where it could be translated as "ancestors" or "descendants."
* Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to "flesh and blood."
* The expression "become one flesh" could be translated as "unite sexually" or "become as one body" or "become like one person in body and spirit." The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. . It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who "become one flesh" literally become one person.

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:16
* 2 John 01:07
* Ephesians 06:12
* Galatians 01:16
* Genesis 02:24
* John 01:14
* Matthew 16:17
* Romans 08:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H120, H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4561

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

flesh, fleshly, human, humans, living creatures, meat, physical

### flock

#### Related Ideas:

herd

#### Definition:

In the Bible, "flock" refers to a group of sheep or goats and "herd" refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

* Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
* For example, in English the term "herd" can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
* The term "flock" in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
* Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
* For verses that refer to "flocks and herds" it may be better to add "of sheep" or "of cattle" for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](../other/goat.md), [ox](../other/cow.md), [pig](../other/pig.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), )

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 10:28-29
* 2 Chronicles 17:11
* Deuteronomy 14:22-23
* Luke 02:8-9
* Matthew 08:30
* Matthew 26:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H504, H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7473, H7716, H7462, H7794, G34, G4167, G4168

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

flock, flocking, flocks, herd, herds

### flute

#### Related Ideas:

pipe, wind instrument

#### Definition:

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

* Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
* A pipe without any reeds was often called a "flute."
* A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
* Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: [flock](../other/flock.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 14:07
* 1 Kings 01:38-40
* Daniel 03:3-5
* Luke 07:31-32
* Matthew 09:23
* Matthew 11:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4953, H5748, H2485, H2490, G832, G834, G836

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

flute, flutes, pipe, pipes, wind instruments

### fool

#### Related Ideas:

folly, foolish, foolishly, foolishness, insane, insanity, out of his mind, senseless, stupid, thoughtless, unwise

#### Definition:

The term "fool" refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term "foolish" describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

* In the Bible, the term "fool" usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
* In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
* The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
* The term "folly" refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God's will. Often "folly" also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.
* A person who is "insane" or suffering from "insanity" is unable to know truth from error, right from wrong, or good from evil and often acts without knowing what he is doing.
* Something that is hollow has nothing on its inside.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "fool" could be translated as "foolish person" or "unwise person" or "senseless person" or "ungodly person."
* Ways to translate "foolish" could include "lacking understanding" or "unwise" or "senseless."

(See also: [wise](../kt/wise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ecclesiastes 01:17
* Ephesians 05:15
* Galatians 03:03
* Genesis 31:28
* Matthew 07:26
* Matthew 25:08
* Proverbs 13:16
* Psalms 049:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H191, H196, H200, H1197, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G2757, G3150, G3154, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912, G3913

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

act of disgraceful folly, acted ... foolishly, disgraceful folly, folly, fool, foolish, foolishness, fools, insane, insanity, out of ... mind, senseless, spoken ... foolishly, stupid, thoughtless, unwise

### footstool

#### Definition:

The term "footstool" refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

* People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a "footstool" was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
* When God says "I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet" he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God's will.
* To "worship at God's footstool" means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
* David refers to the temple as God's "footstool." This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:49
* Isaiah 66:1
* Luke 20:43
* Matthew 05:35
* Matthew 22:44
* Psalm 110:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1916, H3534, H7272, G4228, G5286

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

footstool

### foreigner

#### Related Ideas:

alien, barbarian, foreign, sojourn, sojourner, stranger, tenant

#### Definition:

The term "foreigner" refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an "alien."

* In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
* A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
* For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a "foreigner" there because she was not originally from Israel.
* The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were "foreigners" to God's covenant.
* Sometimes "foreigner" is translated as "stranger," but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.
* A "sojourner" is a person who is living in one country that is not his but waiting for the chance to move to his own country.
* A "barbarian" is a person from another country who does not speak the local language or obey the local customs and so the natives do not like or respect him.
* A "strangers" are persons who do not know each other.
* To be "alienated" is to no longer be living in loving relationship with another. For example, a husband and wife who are no longer living together but are not divorced are "alienated" or "estranged."
* A "tenant" is a person who rents his dwelling place.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 02:17
* Acts 07:29-30
* Deuteronomy 01:15-16
* Genesis 15:12-13
* Genesis 17:27
* Luke 17:18
* Matthew 17:24-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H312, H628, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G246, G526, G915, G3581, G3927, G3941

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alien, alienated, alienates, barbarian, foreign, foreigner, foreigners, live as a foreigner, living as foreigners, sojourn, sojourned, sojourner, sojourners, sojourning, stranger, strangers, tenant, tenants

### foreknow

#### Related Ideas:

foreknowledge

#### Definition:

The verb "foreknow" means to know something before it happens.

* God is not limited by time. He knows everything that happens in the past, present, and future.
* This word is often used in the context of God knowing already who will be saved through receiving Jesus as Savior.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "foreknew" could also be translated as, "knew before" or "knew ahead of time" or "knew beforehand" or "already knew."
* The term "foreknowledge" could be translated as, "knowing before" or "knowing ahead of time" or "already knowing" or "knowing in advance."

(See also: [know](../other/know.md), [predestine](../kt/predestine.md))

#### Bible References:

* Romans 08:29
* Romans 11:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4267, G4268

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

foreknew, foreknowledge, foreknown

### forgive

#### Related Ideas:

forgiven, forgiveness, pardon

#### Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

* Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
* This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
* When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
* Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

* This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
* In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
* Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
* The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
* If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: [guilt](../kt/guilt.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 50:17
* Numbers 14:17-19
* Deuteronomy 29:20-21
* Joshua 24:19-20
* 2 Kings 05:17-19
* Psalms 025:11
* Psalms 025:17-19
* Isaiah 55:6-7
* Isaiah 40:02
* Luke 05:21
* Acts 08:22
* Ephesians 04:31-32
* Colossians 03:12-14
* 1 John 02:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, G859, G863, G2433, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

forgave, forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, forgives, pardon, pardoned

### forsaken

#### Related Ideas:

abandon, give up, leave, walk away from

<!-- (We have removed all forms of "forsake" from the ULB as of 4/16/2020. -->

#### Definition:

The term "forsake" means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been "forsaken" has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

* When people "forsake" God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
* When God "forsakes" people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
* This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God's teachings.
* The term "forsaken" can be used in the past tense, as in "he has forsaken you" or as in referring to someone who has "been forsaken."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate this term could include "abandon" or "neglect" or "give up" or "go away from" or "leave behind," depending on the context.
* To "forsake" God's law could be translated "disobey God's law." This could also be translated as "abandon" or "give up on" or "stop obeying" his teachings or his laws.
* The phrase "be forsaken" can be translated as "be abandoned" or "be deserted."
* It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 06:11-13
* Daniel 11:29-30
* Genesis 24:27
* Joshua 24:16-18
* Matthew 27:45-47
* Proverbs 27:9-10
* Psalms 071:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H488, H2308, H5203, H5800, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

abandon, abandoned, forsake, give up, has left, have left, leave, left, walk away from

### found

#### Related Ideas:

establish, foundation, founder

#### Definition:

The verb "found" means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase "founded on" means supported by or based on. A "foundation" is the base of support on which something is built or created.

* The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
* The term "foundation" can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
* In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
* A "foundation stone" was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.
* To "establish" something is for a person to start or make or create something that he wants to endure for a long time.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The phrase "before the foundation of the world" could be translated as "before the creation of the world" or "before the time when the world first existed" or "before everything was first created."
* The term "founded on" could be translated as "securely built on" or "firmly based on."
* Depending on the context, "foundation" could be translated as "strong base" or "solid support" or "beginning" or "creation."

(See also: [cornerstone](../kt/cornerstone.md), [create](../other/creation.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 06:37-38
* 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
* Ezekiel 13:13-14
* Luke 14:29
* Matthew 13:35
* Matthew 25:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H134, H553, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H3559, H3772, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H5975, H7760, H8356, G747, G950, G1457, G2310, G2311, G2602

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

established, establishes, found, foundation, foundations, founded, founder, founds, lay ... foundation, lay ... foundations

### fountain

#### Related Ideas:

spring

#### Definition:

The terms "fountain" and "spring" usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

* In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
* "Fountain" and "spring" are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:17
* Genesis 07:11
* Genesis 08:02
* Genesis 24:13
* Genesis 24:42
* James 03:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H953, H1530, H1543, H3222, H4002, H4161, H4456, H4599, H4726, H5033, H5869, H5927, H6524, H6779, H8444, H8666, G242, G4077

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fountain, fountains, spring, springing, springs

### frankincense

#### Definition:

Frankincense is a fragrant spice made from tree resin. It is used to make perfumes and incense.

* In Bible times, frankincense was an important spice used to prepare dead bodies for burial.
* This spice is also valuable for its healing and calming qualities.
* When learned men came from an eastern country to visit baby Jesus in Bethlehem, frankincense was one of the three gifts they brought him.

(See also: [Bethlehem](../names/bethlehem.md), [learned men](../other/learnedmen.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:28-29
* Exodus 30:34-36
* Matthew 02:11-12
* Numbers 05:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3828, G3030

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

frankincense

### free

#### Related Ideas:

freedom, freeman, liberty, volunteer, without cost, without paying for it

#### Definition:

The terms "free" or "freedom" refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for "freedom" is "liberty."

* The expression to "set someone free" or to "free someone" means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
* In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
* Having "liberty" or "freedom" can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.
* To "volunteer" is to freely and willingly agree to do something.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "free" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "not bound" or "not enslaved" or "not in slavery" or "not in bondage."
* The term "freedom" or "liberty" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the state of being free" or "the condition of not being a slave" or "not being bound."
* The expression to "set free" could be translated as to "cause to be free" or to "rescue from slavery" or to "release from bondage."
* A person who has been "set free" has been "released" or "taken out of" bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](../kt/bond.md), [enslave](../other/enslave.md), [servant](../other/servant.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:26
* Galatians 05:01
* Isaiah 61:1
* Leviticus 25:10
* Romans 06:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6340, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G3089, G3955, G4506, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

free, freed, freedom, freeing, freely, freely gave, freeman, frees, liberty, set ... free, volunteer, volunteered, without cost, without paying for it

### freewill offering

#### Related Ideas

offer freewill gifts

#### Definition:

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

* If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
* The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
* When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
* The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: [burnt offering](../other/burntoffering.md), [Ezra](../names/ezra.md), [feast](../other/feast.md), [grain offering](../other/grainoffering.md), [guilt offering](../other/guiltoffering.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [sin offering](../other/sinoffering.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 29:06
* 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
* Deuteronomy 12:17
* Exodus 36:2-4
* Leviticus 07:15-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5068, H5071

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

freewill offering, freewill offerings, offered freewill gifts

### fruit

#### Related Ideas:

bear fruit, crop, fruitful, produce, productive land, unfruitful

#### Definition:

The term "fruit" literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten.

* A "fruitful" plant is one that has a lot of good fruit.
* The expression "fruit of the land" refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
* The term "crop" can refer to what people have planted for for food.
* The term "crop" can refer to the food that is harvested at one time.

Sometimes the term "fruit" and ideas related to it are used figuratively.

* In general, the expression "fruit of" refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the "fruit of wisdom" refers to the good things that come from being wise.
* The expression "fruit of the womb" refers to "what the womb produces"—that is, children.
* The Bible often uses "fruit" to refer to a person's actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person's words and actions reveal what his character is like.
* The expression "fruit of the Spirit" refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
* The term "fruitful" can be used figuratively to mean "prosperous." This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term using the general word for "fruit" that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural "fruits" whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
* Depending on the context, the term "fruitful" could be translated as "producing much spiritual fruit" or "having many children" or "prosperous."
* The expression "fruit of the land" could also be translated as "food that the land produces" or "food crops that are growing in that region."
* When God created animals and people, he commanded them to "be fruitful and multiply," which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as "have many offspring" or "have many children and descendants" or "have many children so that you will have many descendants."
* The expression "fruit of the womb" could be translated as "what the womb produces" or "children a women gives birth to" or just "children." When Elizabeth says to Mary "blessed is the fruit of your womb," she means "blessed is the child you will give birth to." The project language may also have a different expression for this.
* Another expression "fruit of the vine," could be translated as "vine fruit" or "grapes."
* Depending on the context, the expression "will be more fruitful" could also be translated as "will produce more fruit" or "will have more children" or "will be prosperous."
* The apostle Paul's expression "fruitful labor" could be translated as "work that brings very good results" or "efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus."
* The "fruit of the Spirit" could also be translated as "works that the Holy Spirit produces" or "words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone."

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [grain](../other/grain.md), [grape](../other/grape.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [vine](../other/vine.md), [womb](../other/womb.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 05:23
* Genesis 01:11
* Luke 08:15
* Matthew 03:08
* Matthew 07:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3018, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6499, H6509, H6529, H6631, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear fruit, crop, crops, fruit, fruitful, fruits, produce, productive land, unfruitful

### fulfill

#### Related Ideas:

carry out, fill to the limit, finish, fulfillment, in full, make something full

#### Definition:

The term "fulfill" means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

* When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
* If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
* To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "fulfill" could be translated as "accomplish" or "complete" or "cause to happen" or "obey" or "perform."
* The phrase "has been fulfilled" could also be translated as "has come true" or "has happened" or "has taken place."
* Ways to translate "fulfill," as in "fulfill your ministry," could include "complete" or "perform" or "practice" or "serve other people as God has called you to do."

(See also: [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [minister](../kt/minister.md), [call](../kt/call.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 02:27
* Acts 03:17-18
* Leviticus 22:17-19
* Luke 04:21
* Matthew 01:22-23
* Matthew 05:17
* Psalms 116:12-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1214, H4390, H5487, H7999, G378, G4135, G4137, G4138, G5048, G5055

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

carried out, fill up ... to the limit, finishing, fulfill, fulfilled, fulfillment, fulfills, in full, make ... full

### furnace

#### Related Ideas:

kiln, oven

#### Definitions:

A furnace was a very large oven used for heating objects to a high temperature.

* In ancient times, most furnaces were used for melting metals to make objects such as cooking pots, jewelry, weapons, and idols.
* Furnaces were also used in the making of clay pottery.
* Sometimes a furnace is referred to figuratively to explain that something is very hot.
* An "oven" is like a small furnace, and it is used for cooking food.
* A "kiln" is also a small furnace used to heat things other than food.

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [image](../other/image.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:51
* Genesis 19:28
* Proverbs 17:03
* Psalms 021:09
* Revelation 09:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H861, H3536, H3564, H5948, H8574, G2575

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

furnace, furnaces, kiln, oven, ovens

### gate

#### Related Ideas:

doorkeeper, entrance, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

#### Definition:

A "gate" is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city.

* A "gate bar" is a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.
* A "gatekeeper" was a person who was responsible to control who could go through the gateway.
* A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
* To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
* A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
* The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:24
* Acts 10:18
* Deuteronomy 21:18-19
* Genesis 19:01
* Genesis 24:60
* Matthew 07:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4259, G4439, G4440, G2377

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

entrance, gate, gate bars, gateposts, gates, gateway, gateways

### generation

#### Definition:

The term "generation" refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

* A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
* Parents and their children are from two different generations.
* In the Bible, the term "generation" is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The phrase "this generation" or "people of this generation" could be translated as "the people living now" or "you people."
* "This wicked generation" could also be translated as "these wicked people living now."
* The expression "from generation to generation" or "from one generation to the next" could be translated as "people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren" or "people in every time period" or "people in this time period and future time periods" or "all people and their descendants."
* "A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh" could also be translated as "Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him."

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:19-21
* Exodus 03:13-15
* Genesis 15:16
* Genesis 17:07
* Mark 08:12
* Matthew 11:16
* Matthew 23:34-36
* Matthew 24:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

generation, generations

### giant

#### Definition:

The word "giant" usually refers to a person who is extremely tall and strong.

* Goliath, a Philistine soldier who fought David, was called a giant because he was a very tall, large, and strong man.
* The Israelite spies who explored the land of Canaan said that the people living there were like giants.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Goliath](../names/goliath.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 06:4
* Numbers 13:32-33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1368, H5303

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

giant, giants

### gift

#### Related Ideas:

give, gracious gift

#### Definition:

The term "gift" refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

* Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called "gifts."
* In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
* The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
* In the New Testament, the term "gifts" is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The general term for "gift" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "something that is given."
* In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term "gift from the Spirit" could be translated as "spiritual ability" or "special ability from the Holy Spirit" or "special spiritual skill that God gave."

(See also: [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 12:01
* 2 Samuel 11:08
* Acts 08:20
* Acts 10:04
* Acts 11:17
* Acts 24:17
* James 01:17
* John 04:9-10
* Matthew 05:23
* Matthew 08:4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5379, H7810, H7964, H8641, G331, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5485, G5486

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gift, gifts, give, gracious gift

### gird

#### Definition:

The term "gird" means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to wrapping a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

* The phrase "gird up the loins" refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
* This phrase can also mean "get ready to work" or to be prepared to do something difficult.
* The phrase "gird the sword" means to tuck the sword into one's belt in order to carry it.

#### Picture of Girding a sword:

<a href="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/g/Girdsword.png"><img src="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/g/Girdsword.png" ></a>

#### Translation Suggestions

* The expression "gird up the loins" could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated as "prepare yourself for action" or "get yourself ready."
* The term "girded with" could be translated as "encircled by" or wrapped with" or "belted with."

(See also: [loins](../other/loins.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:13
* Job 38:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H640, H247, H2290, H2296, H5401, H8151, G328, G1241, G2224, G4024

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gird, girded, girding, girds

### glean

#### Related Ideas:

pick up

#### Definition:

The term "glean" means to go through a field or orchard and pick up whatever grain or fruit the harvesters have left behind.

* God told the Israelites to let the widows, poor people, and foreigners glean the leftover grain in order to provide food for themselves.
* Sometimes the owner of the field would allow the gleaners to go directly behind the harvesters to glean, which enabled them to glean much more of the grain.
* A clear example of how this worked is in the story of Ruth, who was generously allowed to glean among the harvesters in the fields of her relative Boaz.
* Other ways to translate "glean" can be "pick up" or "gather" or "collect."

(See also: [Boaz](../names/boaz.md), [grain](../other/grain.md), [harvest](../other/harvest.md), [Ruth](../names/ruth.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 24:21-22
* Isaiah 17:4-5
* Job 24:06
* Ruth 02:02
* Ruth 02:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3950, H3951, H5953, H5955

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

glean, gleaned, gleanings, gleans, picked up

### glory

#### Related Ideas:

beautiful, beauty, glorify, glorious, take pride

#### Definition:

In general, the term "glory" means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be "glorious."

* Sometimes "glory" refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
* For example, the expression "glory of the shepherds" refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
* Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
* The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

The term "glorify" means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means to "give glory to."

* People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
* They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
* When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
* God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son's perfection, splendor, and greatness.
* Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "brightness" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."

The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."

The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."

The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."

"Glorify" could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."

The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."

The term "be glorified" could also be translated as, "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: [exalt](../kt/exalt.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [praise](../other/praise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 24:17
* Numbers 14:9-10
* Isaiah 35:02
* Luke 18:43
* Luke 02:09
* John 12:28
* Acts 03:13-14
* Acts 07:1-3
* Romans 08:17
* 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
* Philippians 02:14-16
* Philippians 04:19
* Colossians 03:1-4
* 1 Thessalonians 02:05
* James 02:1-4
* 1 Peter 04:15-16
* Revelation 15:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H1342, H1926, H1927, H1935, H1984, H2896, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H5278, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8231, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2570, G2744, G4888

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

beautiful, beauty, glories, glorified, glorifies, glorify, glorifying, glorious, glory, take pride

### goat

#### Related Ideas:

goatskins, kid, scapegoat, young goat

#### Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a "kid."

Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.

Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:

Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.

The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.

Sheep usually like to stay with their flocks, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herds.

In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.

Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.

In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.

The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: [flock](../other/flock.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [wine](../other/wine.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 12:3-4
* Genesis 30:32
* Genesis 31:10
* Genesis 37:31
* Leviticus 03:12-14
* Matthew 25:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H689, H1423, H1429, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G122, G2055, G2056, G5131

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

goat, goats, goats', goatskins, kid, kids, scapegoat, young goat

### god

#### Related Ideas:

disgusting figure, false god, goat idols, goddess, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

#### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

* These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
* People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
* In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
* Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
* Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
* Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

* People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
* These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
* Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
* Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
* An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
* The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.
* The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
* In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
* Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
* Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](../kt/god.md), [Asherah](../names/asherim.md), [Baal](../names/baal.md), [Molech](../names/molech.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md), [image](../other/image.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 35:02
* Exodus 32:01
* Psalms 031:06
* Psalms 081:8-10
* Isaiah 44:20
* Acts 07:41
* Acts 07:43
* Acts 15:20
* Acts 19:27
* Romans 02:22
* Galatians 04:8-9
* Galatians 05:19-21
* Colossians 03:05
* 1 Thessalonians 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1140, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

disgusting figure, disgusting figures, false god, goat idols, god, goddess, gods, idol, idol's, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry, idols, idols'

### godly

#### Related Ideas:

godless, godless actions, godlessness, godliness, ungodliness, ungodly

#### Definition:

The term "godly" is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. "Godliness" is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

* A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
* The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms "ungodly" and "godless" describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called "ungodliness" or "godlessness."

* The meanings of these words are very similar. However, "godless" and "godlessness" may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
* God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

#### Translation Suggestions:

The phrase "the godly" could be translated as "godly people" or "people who obey God."

The adjective "godly" could be translated as "obedient to God" or "righteous" or "pleasing to God."

The phrase "in a godly manner" could be translated as "in a way that obeys God" or "with actions and words that please God."

Ways to translate "godliness" could include "acting in a way that pleases God" or "obeying God" or "living in a righteous manner."

Depending on the context, the term "ungodly" could be translated as "displeasing to God" or "immoral" or "disobeying God."

The terms "godless" and "godlessness" literally mean that the people are "without God" or "having no thought of God" or "acting in a way that does not acknowledge God."

Other ways to translate "ungodliness" or "godlessness" could be "wickedness" or "evil" or "rebellion against God".

(See also [evil](../kt/evil.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md))

#### Bible References:

* Job 27:10
* Proverbs 11:09
* Acts 03:12
* 1 Timothy 01:9-11
* 1 Timothy 04:07
* 2 Timothy 03:12
* Hebrews 12:14-17
* Hebrews 11:7
* 1 Peter 04:18
* Jude 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H120, H2611, H2612, H5760, H7563, G763, G764, G765, G2124, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2317

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

godless, godless actions, godlessness, godliness, godly, godly life, ungodliness, ungodly

### gold

#### Related Ideas:

golden, goldsmith, purest gold

#### Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

* In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
* These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
* In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
* Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
* When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term "golden" or "gold-covered" or "gold-overlaid" could also be used.
* Sometimes an object is described as "gold-colored," which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.
* A "goldsmith" is a person who takes gold and makes it into useful things like jewelry.

(See also: [altar](../kt/altar.md), [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [silver](../other/silver.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:07
* 1 Timothy 02:8-10
* 2 Chronicles 01:15
* Acts 03:06
* Daniel 02:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6337, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gold, golden, goldsmith, goldsmiths, purest gold

### good

#### Related Ideas:

best, better, fair, good things, goodness, improved, prefer, proper, well

#### Definition:

The word "good" has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

* In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
* Something that is "good" could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
* Land that is "good" could be called "fertile" or "productive."
* A "good" crop could be a "plentiful" crop.
* A person can be "good" at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, "a good farmer."
* In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."
* The term "goodness" usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
* The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.
* Actions that are "proper" are those that are good and right for the situation in which they are done.
* "Goods" are good things, valuable possessions.
* To "prefer" something is to think it is better than other things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
* "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
* The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone.
* To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
* Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: [evil](../kt/evil.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [profit](../other/profit.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 05:22-24
* Genesis 01:12
* Genesis 02:09
* Genesis 02:17
* James 03:13
* Romans 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H155, H410, H1580, H1926, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3787, H3966, H4399, H5232, H6743, H7225, H7368, H7399, H7999, H8231, H8232, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1342, G1380, G1832, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2140, G2163, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2986, G3140, G4147, G4632, G4851, G5224, G5358, G5543, G5544, G5623

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

best, better, do ... good, fair, good, good things, goodness, goods, improved, made ... better, prefer, proper, seemed good, well

### good news

#### Related Ideas:

gospel

#### Definition:

The term "gospel" literally means "good news" and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

* In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God's salvation for people through Jesus' sacrifice on the cross.
* In most English Bibles, "good news" is usually translated as "gospel" and is also used in phrases such as, the "gospel of Jesus Christ," the "gospel of God" and the "gospel of the kingdom."
* The writers of the New Testament use a verb based on this noun to talk about telling or proclaiming good news or preaching the gospel.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Different ways to translate this term could include, "good message" or "good announcement" or "God's message of salvation" or "the good things God teaches about Jesus."
* Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, "good news of" could include, "good news about" or "good message about" or "good message from" or "the good things God tells us about" or "what God says about how he saves people."

(See also: [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [save](../kt/save.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 01:05
* Acts 08:25
* Colossians 01:23
* Galatians 01:06
* Luke 08:1-3
* Mark 01:14
* Philippians 02:22
* Romans 01:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1319, G2097, G2098, G4283

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

announce good news, announced the good news, announcing ... the good news, being told good news, bring ... good news, brings ... good news, brought ... good news, good news, gospel, gospel's, had ... good news proclaimed, preach the gospel, preached the gospel beforehand, preaching ... the gospel, proclaim ... gospel, proclaimed the good news, proclaimed the gospel, proclaiming ... good news, proclaiming the gospel, telling ... good news, were told the good news

### gossip

#### Related Ideas:

gossiper

#### Definition:

The term "gossip" refers to talking to people about someone else's personal affairs, usually in a negative and unproductive way. Often what is talked about has not been confirmed as true.

* The Bible says that spreading negative information about people is wrong. Gossip and slander are examples of this kind of negative speech.
* Gossip is harmful to the person being spoken about because it often hurts someone's relationships with other people.

(See also: [slander](../other/slander.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 05:13
* 2 Corinthians 12:20
* Leviticus 19:15-16
* Proverbs 16:28
* Romans 01:29-31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5372, G2636

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gossip, gossiper, gossips

### governor

#### Related Ideas:

deputy, govern government, high officials, proconsul

#### Definition:

A "governor" is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To "govern" means to guide, lead, or manage them.

* The term "proconsul" was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
* In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
* A "government" consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The word "governor" can also be translated as "ruler" or "overseer" or "regional leader" or "one who rules over a small territory."
* Depending on the context, the term "govern" could also be translated as, "rule over" or "lead" or "manage" or supervise."
* The term "governor" should be translated differently than the terms for "king" or "emperor", since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
* The term "proconsul" could also be translated as, "Roman governor" or "Roman provincial ruler."

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [king](../other/king.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [province](../other/province.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:9-10
* Acts 23:22
* Acts 26:30
* Mark 13:9-10
* Matthew 10:18
* Matthew 27:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H323, H324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5333, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G445, G446, G746, G1481, G2232, G2233, G2230, G4232

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deputy, govern, government, governments, governor, governors, high officials, proconsul, proconsuls, provincial governors

### grace

#### Related Ideas:

generous, gracious, graciously

#### Definition:

The word "grace" refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term "gracious" describes someone who shows grace to others.

* God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
* The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
* The expression to "find grace" is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways that "grace" could be translated include "divine kindness" or "God's favor" or "God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners" or "merciful kindness."
* The term "gracious" could be translated as "full of grace" or "kind" or "merciful" or "mercifully kind."
* The expression "he found grace in the eyes of God" could be translated as "he received mercy from God" or "God mercifully helped him" or "God showed his favor to him" or "God was pleased with him and helped him."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:33
* Acts 06:08
* Acts 14:04
* Colossians 04:06
* Colossians 04:18
* Genesis 43:28-29
* James 04:07
* John 01:16
* Philippians 04:21-23
* Revelation 22:20-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, G5485, G5543

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

act of grace, generous, grace, gracious, graciously, graciously given

### grain

#### Related Ideas:

grainfields, standing grain

#### Definition:

The term "grain" usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

* In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
* A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
* Note that some older Bible versions use the word "corn" to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, "corn" only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](../other/head.md), [wheat](../other/wheat.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 42:03
* Genesis 42:26-28
* Genesis 43:1-2
* Luke 06:02
* Mark 02:24
* Matthew 13:7-9
* Ruth 01:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G2848, G3450, G4621, G4719

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

grain, grainfields, grains, standing grain

### grain offering

#### Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

* The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
* Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
* Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](../other/burntoffering.md), [guilt offering](../other/guiltoffering.md) , [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [sin offering](../other/sinoffering.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
* Exodus 29:41-42
* Judges 13:19
* Leviticus 02:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4503, H8641

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

grain offering, grain offerings

### grape

#### Related Ideas:

raisin

#### Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

* There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
* Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
* People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
* Grapes were a very important food during Bible times, and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
* "Raisins" are dried grapes. People often dried grapes in order to keep them from rotting.
* Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God's kingdom.

(See also: [vine](../other/vine.md), [vineyard](../other/vineyard.md), [wine](../other/wine.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 23:24
* Hosea 09:10
* Job 15:33
* Luke 06:43-44
* Matthew 07:15-17
* Matthew 21:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G288, G4718

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

grape, grapes, raisin, raisins

### groan

#### Related Ideas:

sigh

#### Definition:

The term to "groan" refers to the uttering of a deep, low sound that is caused by physical or emotional distress. It could also be the sound someone makes without any words.

* A person can groan because of feeling grief.
* Groaning can be caused by feeling a terrible, oppressive burden.
* Other ways to translate "groan" could include, "give a low cry of pain" or "grieve deeply."
* As a noun, this could be translated as, "a low cry of distress" or "a deep murmur of pain."

(See also: [cry](../other/cry.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 05:02
* Hebrews 13:17
* Job 23:02
* Psalms 032:3-4
* Psalms 102:5-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H584, H585, H602, H603, H1901, H1993, H5008, H5009, H5098, H5594, H7581, G4726, G4727, G4959

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

groan, groaned, groaning, groanings, groans, sigh, sighed, sighed deeply, sighing

### guilt

#### Related Ideas:

guilty, accountable, reason for a penalty

#### Definition:

The term "guilt" refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

* To "be guilty" means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
* The opposite of "guilty" is "innocent."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Some languages might translate "guilt" as "the weight of sin" or "the counting of sins."
* Ways to translate to "be guilty" could include a word or phrase that means, to "be at fault" or "having done something morally wrong" or "having committed a sin."

(See also: [innocent](../kt/innocent.md), [iniquity](../kt/iniquity.md), [punish](../other/punish.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 28:36-38
* Isaiah 06:07
* James 02:10-11
* John 19:04
* Jonah 01:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6140, H816, H817, H818, H819, H2398, H5352, H5355, H5771, H7561, H7563, G338, G1777, G5267

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cause ... to become guilty, find guilty, guilt, guilty, held accountable, reason for ... penalty

### guilt offering

#### Definition:

A guilt offering was an offering or sacrifice that God required an Israelite to make if he had accidentally did something wrong such as disrespect God or damage another person's property.

* This offering involved the sacrifice of an animal and the payment of a fine, with silver or gold money.
* In addition, the person at fault was responsible to pay for any damage that was done.

(See also: [burnt offering](../other/burntoffering.md), [grain offering](../other/grainoffering.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [sin offering](../other/sinoffering.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 06:03
* 2 Kings 12:16
* Leviticus 05:5-6
* Numbers 06:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H817

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

guilt offering, guilt offerings

### hail

#### Related Ideas:

hailstones, hailstorm

#### Definitions:

This term usually refers to lumps of frozen water that fall from the sky. Although spelled the same way in English, a different word, "hail" is used in greeting someone and can mean, "hello" or "greetings to you."

* Hail that comes down from the sky is in the form of balls or chunks of ice called "hailstones."
* Usually hailstones are small (only a few centimeters wide), but sometimes there are hailstones that are as big as 20 centimeters wide and that weigh over a kilogram.
* The book of Revelation in the New Testament describes enormous hailstones weighing 50 kilograms that God will cause to fall on earth when he judges people for their wickedness in the end times.
* The word "hail" that is a formal greeting in older English literally means "rejoice" and could be translated as "Greetings!" or "Hello!"

#### Bible References:

* Matthew 27:29
* Matthew 28:8-10
* Psalms 078:48
* Psalms 148:08
* Revelation 08:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H68, H417, H1258, H1259, G5463, G5464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hail, hails, hailstones, hailstorm

### hand

#### Related Ideas:

handbreadth, handful, lay a hand on

#### Definition:

There are several figurative ways that "hand" is used in the Bible:

To "hand" something to someone means to put something into that person's hands.

The term "hand" is often used in reference to God's power and action, such as when God says "Has not my hand made all these things?"

Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.

Some other figurative uses of "hand" include:

To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."

To "save from the hand of" means to stop someone from harming someone else.

The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."

The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, "by the hand of the Lord" means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.

Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.

The term "laying on of hands" refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service or to pray for healing.

When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

#### Translation Suggestions

* These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
* The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
* When "hand" refers to the person, such as in "the hand of God did this," it could be translated as "God did this."
* An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
* To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
* The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
* In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: "on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority."

(See also: [adversary](../other/adversary.md), [bless](../kt/bless.md), [captive](../other/captive.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md), [power](../kt/power.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:25
* Acts 08:17
* Acts 11:21
* Genesis 09:05
* Genesis 14:20
* John 03:35
* Mark 07:32
* Matthew 06:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G710, G1188, G2176, G2902, G4084, G5495, G5496, G5497, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8042, H8168

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

by the hand of, fist, from the hand of, hand, handbreadth, handed, handful, handfuls, handing, hands, lay a hand on, lays his hand on

### hang

#### Definition:

The term "hang" means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

* Death by hanging typically is done by tying a rope that is tied around a person's neck and sustending him from an elevated object, like a tree limb. Judas killed himself by hanging.
* Although Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross, there was nothing around his neck: the soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
* To hang someone always refers to the way of killing someone by hanging them with a rope around their neck.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 17:23
* Acts 10:39
* Galatians 03:13
* Genesis 40:22
* Matthew 27:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hang, hanged, hanging, hangings, hangs, hung

### hard

#### Related Ideas:

hardly, hardness, hardship

#### Definition:

The term "hard" has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

* An object that is "hard" is solid and firm. It is not easily broken, bent, dented, or pierced.
* Work that is "hard" is difficult to do.
* When a person works "hard", he does that work diligently and with a lot of effort to do it well.
* A person who "hardly" does something either does not do it completely or does it rarely.
* A person who goes through "hardship" is suffering or does not have what he needs.

The term "hard" can be used figuratively

* A person who has a "hard heart" is stubborn. He continues to disobey God and will not repent.
* A person whose heart is hardened has become stubbornly disobedient.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The terms "hardness" or "hardness of heart" or "hard heart" could be translated as "stubbornness" or "persistent rebellion" or "rebellious attitude" or "stubborn disobedience" or "stubbornly not repenting."
* The term "hardened" could also be translated as "stubbornly unrepentant" or "refusing to obey."
* "Do not harden your heart" could be translated as "do not refuse to repent" or "do not stubbornly keep disobeying."
* Other ways to translate "hard-hearted" could include "stubbornly disobedient" or "continuing to disobey" or "refusing to repent" or "always rebelling."
* In expressions such as "work hard" or "try hard," the term "hard" could be translated as "with perseverance" or "diligently."
* The expression "press hard against" could also be translated as "shove with force" or "push strongly against."
* To "oppress people with hard labor" could be translated as "force people to work so hard that they suffer" or "cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work."
* A different kind of "hard labor" is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [heart](../kt/heart.md), [labor pains](../other/laborpains.md), [stiff-necked](../other/stiffnecked.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 11:23
* Deuteronomy 15:07
* Exodus 14:04
* Hebrews 04:07
* John 12:40
* Matthew 19:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4164, H4165, H4522, H4751, H4784, H4843, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H7185, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8513, H8631, G917, G1421, G1422, G1423, G2205, G2478, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hard, harden, hardened, hardening, hardens, harder, hardest, hardly, hardness, hardship, hardships

### harp

#### elated Ideas:

harpist, lyre

#### Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

* In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
* Players of harps and lyres would hold them in the hands and play them by strumming or plucking while walking.
* In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
* David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
* He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.
* A lyre looks like a small harp, having strings strung across an open frame.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [fir](../other/fir.md), [psalm](../kt/psalm.md), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md))

#### Picture of a Harp:

<a href="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/h/Harp2.png"><img src="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/h/Harp2.png" ></a>

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
* Amos 05:23-24
* Daniel 03:05
* Psalm 033:1-3
* Revelation 05:8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3658, H5035, H7030, G2788, G2789, G2790

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

harp, harpist, harpists, harps, lyre, lyres

### harvest

#### Related Ideas:

harvester

#### Definition:

The term "harvest" refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

* The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
* The Israelites held a "Festival of Harvest" or "Festival of Ingathering" to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
* In a figurative sense, the word "harvest" can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person's spiritual growth.
* The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
* The event of harvesting could be translated as, "time of gathering in" or "crop gathering time" or "fruit picking time."
* The verb to "harvest" could be translated as, to "gather in" or to "pick up" or to "collect."

(See also: [firstfruits](../other/firstfruit.md), [festival](../other/festival.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
* 2 Samuel 21:7-9
* Galatians 06:9-10
* Isaiah 17:11
* James 05:7-8
* Leviticus 19:09
* Matthew 09:38
* Ruth 01:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2758, H7105, H7114, G270, G1081, G2326, G4863

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

harvest, harvested, harvester, harvesters, harvesting, harvests

### haughty

#### Related Ideas:

haughtiness

#### Definition:

The term "haughty" means to be prideful or arrogant. Someone who is "haughty" thinks too highly of himself.

* Often this term describes a proud person who persists in sinning against God.
* Usually a person who is haughty boasts about himself.
* A haughty person is foolish, not wise.
* This term could also be translated as "proud" or "arrogant" or "self-centered."
* The figurative expression "haughty eyes" could also be translated as "proud way of looking" or "looking at others as less important" or "proud person who looks down on others."

(See also: [boast](../kt/boast.md), [proud](../other/proud.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 03:1-4
* Isaiah 02:17
* Proverbs 16:18
* Proverbs 21:24
* Psalm 131:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H3093, H7312

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

haughtiness, haughty

### head

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the word "head" is used with several figurative meanings.

* Often this term is used to refer to a ruler or to someone who has authority over people, as in "you have made me the head over nations."
* Jesus is called the "head of the church." Just as a person's head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his "body," the Church.
* The New Testament teaches that a husband is the "head" or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
* The term "head" can also represent the whole person, as in "this gray head," referring to an elderly person, or as in "the head of Joseph," which refers to Joseph.
* The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means" he will never cut or shave his hair."
* The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
* The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
* The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the "head of the street."

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "ruler" or "the one who leads and directs" or "the one who is responsible for."
* The expression "head of" can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person's name. For example, "the head of Joseph" could simply be translated as "Joseph."
* The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "beginning" or "source" or "ruler" or "leader" or "top."

(See also: [grain](../other/grain.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
* 1 Kings 08:1-2
* 1 Samuel 09:22
* Colossians 02:10
* Colossians 02:19
* Numbers 01:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H441, H1538, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

head, heads

### heal

#### Related Ideas:

cure, healer, health, healthy, make fresh, make well, recover, unhealthy

#### Definition:

The terms "heal" and "cure" both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

* A person who is "healed" or "cured" has been "made well" or "made healthy."
* Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
* However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
* For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
* The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.
* A person who is "healthy" has no disease. It may be that he has been healed or that he has simply not been ill for a long time.
* Health can be a metaphor for anything that is good or trustworthy. "Healthy teaching" is teaching that people can depend on to be true and helpful and morally good.

(See also: [miracle](../kt/miracle.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:16
* Acts 08:06
* Luke 05:13
* Luke 06:19
* Luke 08:43
* Matthew 04:23-25
* Matthew 09:35
* Matthew 13:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2492, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G3647, G4982, G5198, G5199

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cure, cured, heal, healed, healer, healers, healing, healings, heals, health, healthy, made ... fresh, made ... well, make ... fresh, recovered, unhealthy

### heart

#### Related Ideas:

kidneys

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

* To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
* The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
* The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
* The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.
* The kidneys are also used as a synecdoche for the physical inner organs and as a metonym for a person's innermost thoughts and emotions.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
* Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
* If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires" or "inner self".
* Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
* The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
* The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
* Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: [hard](../other/hard.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:17
* 1 Thessalonians 02:04
* 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
* Acts 08:22
* Acts 15:09
* Luke 08:15
* Mark 02:06
* Matthew 05:08
* Matthew 22:37

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H7307, H7356, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heart, hearts, kidneys

### heaven

#### Related Ideas:

heavenly, in midair, overhead, sky

#### Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

* The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
* The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
* In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
* When "heaven" is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the "kingdom of heaven" he is referring to the kingdom of God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When "heaven" is used figuratively, it could be translated as "God."
* For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
* The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as, "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
* The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:22-24
* 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
* 1 Thessalonians 04:17
* Deuteronomy 09:01
* Ephesians 06:9
* Genesis 01:01
* Genesis 07:11
* John 03:12
* John 03:27
* Matthew 05:18
* Matthew 05:46-48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heaven, heavenly, heavens, in midair, overhead, skies, sky

### heir

#### Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

* In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
* The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
* As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
* The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: [firstborn](../other/firstborn.md), [inherit](../kt/inherit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:1-2
* Galatians 04:07
* Genesis 15:01
* Genesis 21:10-11
* Luke 20:14
* Mark 12:07
* Matthew 21:38-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heir, heirs

### hell

#### Related Ideas:

delivered to Tartarus, hell, lake of fire

#### Definition:

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus' sacrifice. It is also referred to as the "lake of fire."

* Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
* Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.
* People who do not believe in Jesus' sacrifice for their sin and do not trust in him to save them will be punished forever in hell.
* "Tartarus" is a name for hell borrowed from Greek religion to refer to the place where evil spirits are punished.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
* Some languages cannot use "lake" in the phrase "lake of fire" because it refers to water.
* The term "hell" could be translated as "place of suffering" or "final place of darkness and pain."
* The term "lake of fire" could also be translated as, "sea of fire" or "huge fire (of suffering)" or "field of fire."

(See also: [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [death](../other/death.md), [Hades](../kt/hades.md), [abyss](../other/abyss.md))

#### Bible References:

* James 03:06
* Luke 12:05
* Mark 09:42-44
* Matthew 05:21-22
* Matthew 05:29
* Matthew 10:28-31
* Matthew 23:33
* Matthew 25:41-43
* Revelation 20:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G86, G1067, G3041, G4442, G5020, G5394

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

delivered ... to Tartarus, hell, lake of fire

### high place

#### Related Ideas:

#### Definition:

The term "high places" refers to the altars and shrines that were used for worshiping idols. They were usually built on higher ground, such as on a hill or mountainside.

* Many of the kings of Israel sinned against God by building altars to false gods on these high places. This led the people to become deeply involved in worshiping idols.
* It often happened that when a God-fearing king started ruling in Israel or Judah, often he would remove the high places or altars in order to stop the worship of these idols.
* However, some of these good kings were careless and did not remove the high places, which resulted in the entire nation of Israel would continue to worship idols.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate this term could include "elevated places for idol worship" or "hilltop idol shrines" or "idol altar mounds."
* Make sure it is clear that this term refers to the idol altars, not just to the high place where those altars were located.

(See also: [altar](../kt/altar.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 09:12-13
* 2 Kings 16:04
* Amos 04:13
* Deuteronomy 33:29
* Ezekiel 06:1-3
* Habakkuk 03:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1116, H1181, H1354, H4791, H7311, H7413

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

high place, high places

### high priest

#### Related Ideas:

high priesthood

#### Definition:

The term "high priest" refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all the other Israelite priests.

* The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the temple to offer a special sacrifice once a year.
* The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
* When Jesus was being arrested, Caiaphas was the official high priest. Caiphas' father-in-law Annas is also mentioned sometimes because he was a former high priest who probably still had power and authority over the people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* "High priest" could be translated as "supreme priest" or "highest ranking priest."
* Make sure this term is translated differently from the term "chief priest."

(See also: [Annas](../names/annas.md), [Caiaphas](../names/caiaphas.md), [chief priests](../other/chiefpriests.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:27
* Acts 07:01
* Acts 09:01
* Exodus 30:10
* Hebrews 06:19-20
* Leviticus 16:32
* Luke 03:02
* Mark 02:25-26
* Matthew 26:3-5
* Matthew 26:51-54

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

high priest, high priesthood, high priests

### holy

#### Related Ideas:

holiness, sacred, unholy

#### Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

* Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
* A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
* An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
* People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
* In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
* God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.
* Believers in Jesus are holy people, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.
* When people of any religion, true or false, consider something "sacred," they consider it holy according to their religion.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

* This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
* A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

* In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
* "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
* The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.
* The phrase "sacred gifts" refers to things that someone has set apart for God and then given to God at the temple.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."

To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."

Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."

In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [consecrate](../kt/consecrate.md), [sanctify](../kt/sanctify.md), [set apart](../kt/setapart.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 28:22
* 2 Kings 03:02
* Lamentations 04:01
* Ezekiel 20:18-20
* Matthew 07:6
* Mark 08:38
* Acts 07:33
* Acts 11:08
* Romans 01:02
* 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
* Colossians 01:22
* 1 Thessalonians 03:13
* 1 Thessalonians 04:07
* 2 Timothy 03:15
* 1 Timothy 05:10
* 2 Corinthians 09:12-15
* Revelation 16:06
* Revelation 20:9-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G2150, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

holier, holiest, holiness, holy, holy duties, honored as holy, makes ... holy, sacred, sacred gifts, sacred places, unholy

### holy city

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "holy city" refers to the city of Jerusalem.

* This term is used to refer to the ancient city of Jerusalem as well as the new, heavenly Jerusalem where God will live and reign among his people.
* This term can be translated by combining the terms for "holy" and "city" that have been used in the rest of the translation.

(See also: [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md))

#### Bible References:

* Matthew 04:5-6
* Matthew 27:51-53
* Revelation 21:1-2
* Revelation 21:9-10
* Revelation 22:18-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5892, H6944, G40, G4172

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

holy cities, holy city

### holy place

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "the holy place" and "the most holy place" refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

* The "holy place" was the first room, and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special "bread of the presence" on it.
* The "most holy place" was the second, innermost room, and it contained the ark of the covenant.
* A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
* The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
* Sometimes "holy place" refers to both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It could also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "holy place" could also be translated as "room set apart for God" or "special room for meeting God" or "place reserved for God."
* The term "most holy place" could be translated as "room that is the most set apart for God" or "most special room for meeting God."
* Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression "a holy place" could include "a consecrated place" or "a place that God has set apart" or "a place in the temple complex, which is holy" or "a courtyard of God's holy temple."

(See also: [altar of incense](../other/altarofincense.md), [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [bread](../other/bread.md), [consecrate](../kt/consecrate.md), [courtyard](../other/courtyard.md), [curtain](../other/curtain.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [set apart](../kt/setapart.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 06:16-18
* Acts 06:12-15
* Exodus 26:33
* Exodus 31:10-11
* Ezekiel 41:01
* Ezra 09:8-9
* Hebrews 09:1-2
* Leviticus 16:18
* Matthew 24:15-18
* Revelation 15:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1964, H4720, H4725, H5116, H6918, H6944, G39, G40, G3485, G5117

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

holy place

### honey

#### Related Ideas:

honeycomb

#### Definition:

"Honey" is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

* Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
* Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
* Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
* This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey."
* Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [Jonathan](../names/jonathan.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md), [Samson](../names/samson.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 14:1-3
* Deuteronomy 06:3
* Exodus 13:3-5
* Joshua 05:06
* Proverbs 05:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G3192

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

honey, honeycomb

### honor

#### Related Ideas:

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honorable, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

#### Definition:

The terms "honor" and to "honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

* Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
* God instructs Christians to honor others.
* Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
* The terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
* Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.
* To "esteem" someone is to consider him worthy of great honor.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "honor" could include "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
* The term to "honor" could be translated as to "show special respect to" or to "cause to be praised" or to "show high regard for" or to "highly value."

(See also: [dishonor](../other/dishonor.md), [glory](../kt/glory.md), [glory](../kt/glory.md), [praise](../other/praise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 02:8
* Acts 19:17
* John 04:44
* John 12:26
* Mark 06:04
* Matthew 15:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5082, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1741, G1784, G2151, G2233, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honor, honorable, honored, honoring, honors, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

### hoof

#### Related Ideas:

tracks

#### Definitions:

These terms refer to the hard material covering the bottom of the feet of certain animals such as camels, cattle, deer, horses, donkeys, pigs, oxen, sheep, and goats.

* An animal's hooves protect its feet when walking.
* Some animals have hooves that are split into two parts and others do not.
* God told the Israelites that animals which had split hooves and chewed a cud were considered clean to eat. This included cattle, sheep, deer, and oxen.
* "Tracks" are the marks that animals' hooves make on the ground.

(See also: [camel](../other/camel.md), [cow, ox](../other/cow.md), [donkey](../other/donkey.md), [goat](../other/goat.md), [pig](../other/pig.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 14:06
* Ezekiel 26:9-11
* Leviticus 11:04
* Psalms 069:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6119, H6471, H6536, H6541, H7272

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hoof, hoofs, hooves, tracks

### hope

#### Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

* In the Bible, the term "hope" also has the meaning of "trust," as in "my hope is in the Lord." It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
* To have "no hope" means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In some contexts, the term to "hope" could also be translated as to "wish" or to "desire" or to "expect."
* The expression "nothing to hope for" could be translated as "nothing to trust in" or "no expectation of anything good"
* To "have no hope" could be translated as "have no expectation of anything good" or "have no security" or "be sure that nothing good will happen."
* The expression "have set your hopes on" could also be translated as "have put your confidence in" or "have been trusting in."
* The phrase "I find hope in your Word" could also be translated as "I am confident that your Word is true" or "Your Word helps me trust in you" or "When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed."
* Phrases such as "hope in" God could also be translated a, "trust in God" or "know for sure that God will do what he has promised" or "be certain that God is faithful."

(See also: [bless](../kt/bless.md), [confidence](../other/confidence.md), [good](../kt/good.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [trust](../kt/trust.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
* 1 Thessalonians 02:19
* Acts 24:14-16
* Acts 26:06
* Acts 27:20
* Colossians 01:05
* Job 11:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H982, H983, H986, H1891, H2976, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G1679, G1680, G2070, G4276

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hope, hoped, hopes, look to ... in hope, uselessly hope

### horn

#### Related Ideas:

ram's horn

#### Definitions:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

* The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a "ram's horn" or "shofar," which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
* The term "horn" was sometimes used to refer to a "flask" that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
* This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
* The term "horn" is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.
* God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called "horns," they were not actually animal horns.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [cow](../other/cow.md), [deer](../other/deer.md), [goat](../other/goat.md), [power](../kt/power.md) [royal](../other/royal.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [trumpet](../other/trumpet.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
* 1 Kings 01:39
* 2 Samuel 22:03
* Jeremiah 17:01
* Psalms 022:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's:H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G2768

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

horn, horned, horns, ram's horn, rams' horns

### horror

#### Related Ideas:

bristle, horrible, horribly, horrified, horrifying thing, object of horror, shock

#### Definition:

The term "horror" refers to a very intense feeling of fear or terror. The person who is feeling horror is said to be "horrified."

* Horror is more dramatic and intense than ordinary fear.
* Usually when someone is horrified they are also in shock or stunned.
* The word "bristle" means to have one's hair stand up because one is feeling horror or terror.
* The word "shocked" means that one is unable to think or act because something bad has happened.

(See also: [fear](../kt/fear.md), [terror](../other/terror.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 28:37
* Ezekiel 23:33
* Jeremiah 02:12-13
* Job 21:4-6
* Psalms 055:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1091, H1763, H2189, H4032, H4923, H5892, H6343, H6427, H7588, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8078, H8175, H8178, H8186

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bristle, bristled, horrible, horribly, horrified, horrifying, horrifying thing, horror, horrors, object of horror, objects of horror, shocked, source of horror

### horse

#### Related Ideas:

horseback, warhorse

#### Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

* Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
* Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
* In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
* Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](../other/chariot.md), , [donkey](../other/donkey.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:04
* 2 Kings 02:11
* Exodus 14:23-25
* Ezekiel 23:5-7
* Zechariah 06:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

horse, horseback, horses, horses', strong horses, warhorse, warhorses

### horseman

#### Definition:

In Bible times, the term "horsemen" referred to men who rode horses into battle.

* Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called "horsemen," though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
* The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not have many horsemen.
* This term could also be translated as "horse riders" or "men on horses."

(See also: [chariot](../other/chariot.md), [horse](../other/horse.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 01:05
* Daniel 11:40-41
* Exodus 14:23-25
* Genesis 50:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6571, H7395, G2460

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

horseman, horsemen

### hour

#### Definition:

In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term "hour" is also used in several figurative ways:

* When the text says that the "hour had come" for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen—the time that God had selected long ago.
* The phrase "that hour" is also used to mean "at that moment" or "right then."
* When the text talks about the "hour" being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When used figuratively, the term "hour" can be translated as "time" or "moment" or "appointed time."
* The phrase "in that very hour" or "the same hour" could be translated as "at that moment" or "at that time" or "immediately" or "right then."
* The expression "the hour was late" could be translated as "it was late in the day" or "it would soon be getting dark" or "it was late afternoon."
* Referring to Jesus, the expression "his hour had come" could be translated as, "the time had come for him" or "it was the appointed time for him."

(See also: [hour](../other/biblicaltimehour.md))

#### Bible References:

* Mark 14:35
* 1 Corinthians 15:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5610

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appointed time, hour, hours, moment, time, while

### hour (biblical time)

#### Definition:

The term "hour" is often used in the Bible to tell what time of day a certain event took place. It is also used figuratively to mean "moment," "a while" or "time".

* The Jews counted daylight hours starting at sunrise (around 6 a.m.). For example, "the ninth hour" meant "around three in the afternoon."
* Nighttime hours were counted starting at sunset (around 6 p.m.). For example, "the third hour of the night" meant "around nine in the evening" in our present-day system.
* Sometimes "hour" refers to a regular, scheduled time to do something, such as the "hour of prayer."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Since references to time in the Bible will not correspond exactly to the present-day time system, phrases such as "around nine" or "about six o'clock" could be used.
* Some translations might add phrases like "in the evening" or "in the morning" or "in the afternoon" to make it clear what time of day is being talked about.
* The phrase, "in that hour" could be translated as, "at that time" or "in that moment."

(See also: [hour](../other/hour.md))

#### Bible References:

* Matthew 20:03
* Luke 23:44
* John 04:51-52
* Acts 02:15
* Acts 10:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5610

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hour, hours

### house

#### Related Ideas:

home, residence

#### Definition:

The term "house" is often used figuratively in the Bible.

* Sometimes it means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
* Often "house" refers to a person's descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
* The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
* In Hebrews 3, "God's house" is used as a metaphor to refer to God's people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
* A "residence" is any place in which people live without plans to move to another place.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
* The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
* Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
* The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells."
* "House of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [house of God](../kt/houseofgod.md), [household](../other/household.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:42
* Acts 07:49
* Genesis 39:04
* Genesis 41:40
* Luke 08:39
* Matthew 10:06
* Matthew 15:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H1005, H4585, H5116, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

home, homes, house, house's, houses, residence

### house of David

#### Facts:

The expression "house of David" refers to the family or descendants of King David.

* This could also be translated as "descendants of David" or "family of David" or "King David's clan."
* Because Jesus was descended from David, he was part of the "house of David."
* Sometimes "house of David" or "household of David" refers to the people in David's family who were still living.
* Other times this term is more general and refers to all his descendants, including those who had already died.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [house](../other/house.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [king](../other/king.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 10:19
* 2 Samuel 03:06
* Luke 01:69-71
* Psalms 122:05
* Zechariah 12:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H1732, G1138, G3624

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

house of David

### house of God

#### Related Ideas:

house of Yahweh

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

* This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
* Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
* If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people.")
* The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](../kt/peopleofgod.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 03:14-15
* 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
* Ezra 05:13
* Genesis 28:17
* Judges 18:30-31
* Mark 02:26
* Matthew 12:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

house of ... God, house of Yahweh

### household

#### Related Ideas:

household members

#### Definition:

The term "household" refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

* Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
* Sometimes "household" can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](../other/house.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:10
* Galatians 06:10
* Genesis 07:01
* Genesis 34:19
* John 04:53
* Matthew 10:25
* Matthew 10:36
* Philippians 04:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624, G3626

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

household, household members, households, members of household

### humble

#### Related Ideas:

humbly, humility, lowliness of mind

#### Definition:

The term "humble" describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

* To be humble before God means to understand one's weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
* When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
* Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one's own needs.
* Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one's gifts and abilities.
* The phrase "be humble" could be translated as "don't be prideful."
* "Humble yourself before God" could be translated as "Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness."

(See also: [proud](../other/proud.md))

#### Bible References:

* James 01:21
* James 03:13
* James 04:10
* Luke 14:11
* Luke 18:14
* Matthew 18:04
* Matthew 23:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

humble, humbled, humbles, humbling, humbly, humility, lowliness of mind

### humiliate

#### Related Ideas:

abase, humiliation

#### Definitions:

The term "humiliate" means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced. This is usually done publicly. The act of shaming someone is called "humiliation."

* To "humiliate" could also be translated as to "shame" or to "cause to feel shame" or to "embarrass".
* Depending on the context, ways to translate "humiliation" could include "shame" or "degrading" or "disgrace."
* To "abase" something means to bring it down low.
* To "abase" someone means to humiliate him.
* When God humbles someone it means that he causes a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt a person.

(See also: [disgrace](../other/disgrace.md), [humble](../kt/humble.md), [shame](../other/shame.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 21:14
* Ezra 09:05
* Proverbs 25:7-8
* Psalms 006:8-10
* Psalms 123:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H937, H954, H1421, H2659, H2778, H2781, H3001, H3637, H3639, H6030, H6031, H6256, H7034, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8216, H8213, H8217, H8589, G2617, G5014

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

abase, abased, humiliate, humiliated, humiliation

### hypocrite

#### Related Ideas:

hypocrisy

#### Definition:

The term "hypocrite" refers to a person who does things to appear righteous, but who secretly is acting in evil ways. The term "hypocrisy" refers to the behavior that deceives people into thinking a person is righteous.

* Hypocrites want to be seen doing good things so that people will think that they are good people.
* Often a hypocrite will criticize other people for doing the same sinful things that they themselves do.
* Jesus called the Pharisees hypocrites because although they acted religiously like wearing certain clothes and eating certain foods, they were not kind or fair to people.
* A hypocrite points out faults in other people, but doesn't admit his own faults.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Some languages have an expression like "two-faced" that refers to a hypocrite or a hypocrite's actions.
* Other ways to translate "hypocrite" could include "fraud" or "pretender" or "arrogant, deceitful person."
* The term "hypocrisy" could be translated by, "deception" or "fake actions" or "pretending."

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 02:13
* Luke 06:41-42
* Luke 12:54-56
* Luke 13:15
* Mark 07:6-7
* Matthew 06:1-2
* Romans 12:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G505, G5272, G5273

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hypocrisy, hypocrite, hypocrites

### image

#### Related Ideas:

carved figure, cast metal figure, statue

#### Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term "image" is a shortened form of "carved image."

* A "carved image" or "carved figure" is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
* A "cast metal figure" is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
* These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
* The term "image" when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When referring to an idol, the term "image" could also be translated as "statue" or "engraved idol" or "carved religious object."
* It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as "carved image" or "cast metal figure," even in places where only the term "image" or "figure" is in the original text.

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [God](../kt/god.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [image of God](../kt/imageofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 14:9-10
* Acts 07:43
* Isaiah 21:8-9
* Matthew 22:21
* Romans 01:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H457, H1544, H1823, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G1504, G5179

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

carved figure, carved figures, carved image, carved images, cast metal figure, cast metal figures, cast metal images, castings, figure, figures, image, images, statue

### image of God

#### Definition:

The term "image" refers to something that looks like something else or that is like someone in character or essence. The phrase "image of God" is used in different ways, depending on the context.

* At the beginning of time, God created human beings "in his image," that is, "in his likeness." This means that people have certain characteristics that reflect the image of God, such as the ability to feel emotion, the ability to reason and communicate, and a spirit that lives eternally.
* The Bible teaches that Jesus, God's Son, is "the image of God," that is, he is God himself. Unlike human beings, Jesus was not created. From all eternity God the Son has had all the divine characteristics because he has had the same essence with God the Father.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When referring to Jesus, "image of God" could be translated as "exact likeness of God" or "same essence as God" or "same being as God."
* When referring to human beings, "God created them in his image" could be translated with a phrase that means "God created them to be like him" or "God created them with characteristics like his own."

(See also: [image](../other/image.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 04:3-4
* Colossians 03:9-11
* Genesis 01:26-27
* Genesis 09:06
* James 03:9-10
* Romans 08:28-30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6459, H6754, G1504, G2316

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

image of God

### imitate

#### Related Ideas:

imitator

#### Definition:

The terms "imitate" and "imitator" refers to copying someone else by acting exactly like that person does.

* Christians are taught to imitate Jesus Christ by obeying God and loving others, just as Jesus did.
* The apostle Paul told the early church to imitate him, just as he imitated Christ.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "imitate" could be translated as "do the same things as" or "follow his example."
* The expression "be imitators of God" could be translated as "be people who act like God does" or "be people who do the kinds of things God does."
* "You became imitators of us" could be translated as "You followed our example" or "You are doing the same kinds of godly things that you saw us do."

#### Bible References:

* 3 John 01:11
* Matthew 23:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6213, G3401, G3402

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

imitate, imitator, imitators

### in Christ

#### Related Ideas:

in Christ Jesus, in Jesus, in the Lord, in the Lord Jesus, into Christ

#### Definition:

The phrase "in Christ" and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

* Other related terms include "in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ."
* Possible meanings for the term "in Christ" could include "because you belong to Christ" or "through the relationship you have with Christ" or "based on your faith in Christ."
* These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
* Note: Sometimes the word "in" belongs with the verb. For example, "share in Christ" means to "share in" the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To "glory in" Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To "believe in" Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Depending on the context, different ways to translate "in Christ" and "in the Lord" (and related phrases) could include:

"who belong to Christ"

"because you believe in Christ"

"because Christ has saved us"

"in service to the Lord"

"relying on the Lord"

"because of what the Lord has done."

People who "believe in" Christ or who "have faith in" Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like "believe in" or "share in" or "trust in."

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [Lord](../kt/lord.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [faith](../kt/faith.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:05
* 2 Corinthians 02:17
* 2 Timothy 01:01
* Galatians 01:22
* Galatians 02:17
* Philemon 01:06
* Revelation 01:10
* Romans 09:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2962, G5547

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

in Christ, in Christ Jesus, in Jesus, in him, in the Lord, in the Lord Jesus, into Christ

### incense

#### Related Ideas:

censer, sweet aroma

#### Definition:

The term "incense" refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

* God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
* The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
* The "altar of incense" was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
* The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
* The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
* Other ways to translate "incense" could include "fragrant spices" or "good-smelling plants."
* A "censer" is a pan or small pot that holds burning incence.

(See also: [altar of incense](../other/altarofincense.md), [burnt offering](../other/burntoffering.md), [frankincense](../other/frankincense.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 03:1-3
* 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
* 2 Kings 14:04
* Exodus 25:3-7
* Luke 01:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3828, H4196, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G2368, G2369, G2370, G2379, G3031

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

censers, incense, incenses, sweet aroma

### inherit

#### Related Ideas:

heritage, inheritance,legacy

#### Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The "inheritance" is what is received.

A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.

A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.

The Bible also calls God's people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.

God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to "inherit the land." This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.

In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will "inherit salvation" and "inherit eternal life." It is also expressed as, "inherit the kingdom of God." This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.

There are other figurative meanings for these terms:

The Bible says that wise people will "inherit glory" and righteous people will "inherit good things."

To "inherit the promises" means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.

This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who "inherit the wind" or "inherit folly." This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
* Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
* Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
* When God's people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as "valued ones belonging to him."
* The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions" or "person chosen to receive (God's) spiritual possessions or blessings."
* The term "heritage" could be translated as "blessings from God" or "inherited blessings."

(See also: [heir](../other/heir.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Promised Land](../kt/promisedland.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:09
* 1 Peter 01:04
* 2 Samuel 21:03
* Acts 07:4-5
* Deuteronomy 20:16
* Galatians 05:21
* Genesis 15:07
* Hebrews 09:15
* Jeremiah 02:07
* Luke 15:11
* Matthew 19:29
* Psalm 079:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heritage, inherit, inheritance, inheritances, inherited, legacy

### iniquity

#### Definition:

The term "iniquity" is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term "sin," but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

* The word "iniquity" literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
* Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
* Other definitions of iniquity include "perversity" and "depravity," which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "iniquity" could be translated as "wickedness" or "perverse actions" or "harmful acts."
* Often, "iniquity" occurs in the same text as the word "sin" and "transgression" so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](../kt/sin.md), [transgress](../kt/transgression.md), [trespass](../kt/trespass.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 09:13
* Exodus 34:5-7
* Genesis 15:14-16
* Genesis 44:16
* Habakkuk 02:12
* Matthew 13:41
* Matthew 23:27-28
* Micah 03:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5999, H7451, H7562

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

commits iniquity, guilt of ... iniquity, iniquities, iniquity

### innocent

#### Related Ideas:

guiltless, innocence

#### Definition:

The term "innocent" means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

* A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
* Sometimes the term "innocent" is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking "innocent people."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In most contexts, the term "innocent" can be translated as "not guilty" or "not responsible" or "not to blame" for something.
* When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as "who have done nothing wrong" or "who are not involved in evil."
* The frequently occurring expression "innocent blood" could be translated as "people who did nothing wrong to deserve being killed."
* The expression "shed innocent blood" could be translated as "kill innocent people" or "kill people who did nothing wrong to deserve it."
* In the context of someone being killed, "innocent of the blood of" could be translated as "not guilty for the death of."
* When talking about people not hearing the good news about Jesus but not accepting it, "innocent of the blood of" could be translated as "not responsible for whether they remain spiritually dead or not" or "not responsible for whether they accept this message."
* When Judas said "I have betrayed innocent blood," he was saying "I have betrayed a man who did nothing wrong" or "I have caused the death of a man who was sinless."
* When Pilate said about Jesus "I am innocent of the blood of this innocent man," this could be translated as "I am not responsible for the killing of this man who has done nothing wrong to deserve it."

(See also: [guilt](../kt/guilt.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:04
* 1 Samuel 19:05
* Acts 20:26
* Exodus 23:07
* Jeremiah 22:17
* Job 09:23
* Romans 16:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6662, H6663, H8535, G53, G121, G172, G185, G338, G1342, G2513

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

declared innocent, guiltless, innocence, innocent

### inquire

#### Related Ideas:

ask for, consult for guidance, inquiriy, investigate, investigation

#### Definitions:

The term "inquire" means to ask someone for information. The expression "inquire of" is often used to refer to asking God for wisdom or help.

* The Old Testament records several instances where people inquired of God.
* Depending on the context, "inquire" could be translated as "ask" or "ask for information."
* The expression "inquire of Yahweh" could be translated as "ask Yahweh for guidance" or "ask Yahweh what to do."
* To "inquire after" something could be translated as "ask questions about" or "ask for information about."
* When Yahweh says "I will not be inquired of by you," this could be translated as "I will not allow you to ask me for information" or "you will not be permitted to seek help from me."
* The word "inquire" or "investigate" can also be used of a king or government official making a search through official written records.
* To investigate something can also be to study it in order to learn more about it.

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 19:18
* Ezekiel 20:1
* Ezekiel 20:30-32
* Ezra 07:14
* Job 10:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1239, H1240, H1245, H1875, H2713, G1830, G2045

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ask for, consult for guidance, inquire, inquired, inquires, inquiries, inquiring, investigate, investigated, investigating, investigation

### instruct

#### Related Ideas:

instruction, instructor

#### Definitions:

The terms "instruct" and "instruction" refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

* To "give instructions" means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
* When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
* Depending on the context, the term "instruct" could also be translated as "tell" or "direct" or "teach" or "give instructions to."
* The term "instructions" could be translated as "directions" or "explanations" or "what he has told you to do."
* When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as "commands" or "orders."

(See also: [command](../kt/command.md), [decree](../other/decree.md), [teach](../other/teach.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 14:04
* Genesis 26:05
* Hebrews 11:22
* Matthew 10:05
* Matthew 11:01
* Proverbs 01:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H631, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H3948, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G1256, G1291, G1299, G1319, G1321, G1378, G1781, G1785, G2012, G2727, G2753, G3559, G3560, G3807, G3810, G3811, G3852, G3853, G4264, G4367, G4822, G4929

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gave ... instructions, instruct, instructed, instructing, instruction, instructions, instructor, instructors, instructs

### integrity

#### Definition:

The term "integrity" refers to being honest, with strong moral principles and behavior is said to have integrity.

* Having integrity also means choosing to do what is honest and right even when nobody else is watching.
* Certain characters in the Bible, such as Joseph and Daniel, showed integrity when they refused to do evil and chose to obey God.
* The book of Proverbs says that it is better to be poor and have integrity than to be rich and corrupt or dishonest.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "integrity" could also be translated as "honesty" or "moral uprightness" or "behaving truthfully" or "acting in a trustworthy, honest manner."

(See also: [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [Joseph (OT)](../names/josephot.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 09:04
* Job 02:3
* Job 04:06
* Proverbs 10:8-9
* Psalm 026:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3476, H6664, H6666, H8535, H8537, H8537, H8538, H8549

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

integrity

### intercede

#### Related Ideas:

intercession, petition

#### Definition:

The terms "intercede" and "intercession" refer to making requests to someone on behalf of another person. In the Bible this usually refers to praying for other people.

* The expressions "make intercession for" and "intercede for" mean to make requests to God for the benefit of other people.
* The Bible teaches that the Holy Spirit intercedes for us, that is, he prays to God for us.
* A person intercedes for other people by making requests for them to someone in authority.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "intercede" could include "plead for" or "urge (someone) to do something (for someone else)."
* The noun "intercessions" could be translated as "appeals" or "requests" or "urgent prayers."
* The phrase "make intercession for" could be translated as "make requests for the benefit of" or "make an appeal on behalf of" or "ask God to help" or "appeal to God to bless (someone)."

(See also: [pray](../kt/pray.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 07:25-26
* Isaiah 53:12
* Jeremiah 29:6-7
* Romans 08:26-27
* Romans 08:33-34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6293, H6419, G1783, G1793, G5241

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

intercede, intercedes, interceding, intercession, petition, petitions

### interpret

#### Related Ideas:

interpretation, interpreter, translate

#### Definitions:

The terms "interpret" and "interpretation" refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something.

* Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
* In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
* The term "interpret" can refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as seeing what the sky looks like and figuring out whether or not it will rain or be windy.
* The terms "interpret" and "translate" can refer to explaining what is said in one language to people who speak another language.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate the term "interpret" include "figure out the meaning of" or "explain" or "give the meaning of."
* The term "interpretation" could also be translated as "explanation" or "meaning."

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [dream](../other/dream.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [vision](../other/vision.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 12:10
* Daniel 04:4-6
* Genesis 40:4-5
* Judges 07:15-16
* Luke 12:56

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7760, H7922, G1252, G1328, G1329, G1381, G1955, G2058, G3177, G4793

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

interpret, interpretation, interpretations, interpreted, interpreter, interpreting, interprets, translated

### is written

#### Definition:

The phrase "as it is written" or "what is written" occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

* Sometimes "as it is written" refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
* Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
* This could be translated "as it is written in the Law of Moses" or "as the prophets wrote long ago" or "what it says in God's laws that Moses wrote down long ago".
* Another option is to keep "It is written" and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](../kt/command.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 05:13-15
* Acts 13:29
* Exodus 32:15-16
* John 21:25
* Luke 03:4
* Mark 09:12
* Matthew 04:06
* Revelation 01:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H874, H3789, G1125

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

are ... written, had ... been written, has ... been written, have ... been written, is ... written, is it ... written, it is written, it was written, Moses ... wrote, was written, were ... written

### jealous

#### Related Ideas:

jealousy

#### Definition:

The terms "jealous" and "jealousy" refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

* These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
* When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God's strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
* God is also "jealous" for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
* Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word "envious."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "jealous" could include "strong protective desire" or "possessive desire."
* The term "jealousy" could be translated as "strong protective feeling" or "possessive feeling."
* When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
* In the context of people's wrong feelings of anger toward toward other people who are more successful, the terms "envious" and "envy" could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: [envy](../other/envy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 12:20
* Deuteronomy 05:09
* Exodus 20:05
* Ezekiel 36:05
* Joshua 24:19
* Nahum 01:2-3
* Romans 13:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G2205, G2206, G3863

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

jealous, jealousy

### joy

#### Related Ideas:

enjoy, enjoyment, glad, gladness, greet, joyful, joyfulness, jubilant, merry-hearted, rejoice, source of gladness

#### Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

* A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
* God is the one who gives true joy to people.
* Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
* Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.
* To "salute" is to greet a high-ranking government or military official.
* "Jubilant" is another word for "joyful."

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

* This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
* It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
* When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
* The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
* A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
* A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
* A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy."

#### Bible References:

* Nehemiah 08:10
* Psalm 048:02
* Isaiah 56:6-7
* Jeremiah 15:15-16
* Matthew 02:9-10
* Luke 15:07
* Luke 19:37-38
* John 03:29
* Acts 16:32-34
* Romans 05:1-2
* Romans 15:30-32
* Galatians 05:23
* Philippians 04:10-13
* 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
* 1 Thessalonians 05:16
* Philemon 01:4-7
* James 01:02
* 3 John 01:1-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1288, H1523, H1524, H1525, H2287, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2896, H2898, H3190, H4885, H5727, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H7965, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G782, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be glad, be merry, enjoy, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, enjoys, glad, gladness, greet, greeted, greeting, greetings, greets, joy, joyful, joyful shouting, joyfully, joyfulness, jubilant, make ... glad, makes ... glad, merry-hearted, rejoice, rejoiced, rejoiced greatly, rejoices, rejoices greatly, rejoicing, shout for joy, shout joyfully, shout of joy, shouts of joy, source of gladness, was merry

### judge

#### Related Ideas:

act of judging, consider, decide, decision, give justice, give judgment, judgment, judgment seat

#### Definition:

The terms "judge" and "judgment" often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

* The "judgment of God" often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
* God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
* The term "judge" can also mean "condemn." God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
* Another meaning is "arbitrate between" or "judge between," as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
* In some contexts, God's "judgments" are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
* "Judgment" can refer to the ability to make decisions. A person with "sound judgment" is wise, able to make good decisions, while a person who lacks "judgment" does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.
* The "judgment seat" is a place where a judge sits while he listens to testimonies and gives his decision.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate to "judge" could include to "decide" or to "condemn" or to "punish" or to "decree."
* The term "judgment" could be translated as "punishment" or "decision" or "opinion" or "verdict" or "decree" or "condemnation."
* In some contexts, the phrase "in the judgment" could also be translated as "on judgment day" or "during the time when God judges people."

(See also: [decree](../other/decree.md), [judge](../other/judgeposition.md), [judgment day](../kt/judgmentday.md), [just](../kt/justice.md), [law](../other/law.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:17
* 1 Kings 03:09
* Acts 10:42-43
* Isaiah 03:14
* James 02:04
* Luke 06:37
* Micah 03:9-11
* Psalm 054:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H2664, H2713, H2742, H2803, H2940, H3198, H4406, H4941, H6414, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H7081, H7378, H7379, H7663, H7760, H8196, H8199, H8201, G350, G968, G1097, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1380, G1492, G2233, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4997, G5272

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts of judgment, consider, considered, considering, decide, decided, decided on, decision, give justice, giving judgment, have decided, insightful decisions, judge, judged, judges, judging, judgment, judgment seat, judgments, renders judgment, will judge

### judge

#### Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

* In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
* After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called "judges" to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
* The term "judge" could also be called "decision-maker" or "leader" or "deliverer" or "governor," depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](../other/governor.md), [judge](../kt/judge.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:08
* Acts 07:27
* Luke 11:19
* Luke 12:14
* Luke 18:1-2
* Matthew 05:25
* Ruth 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H6414, H6416, H6419, H8199, G350, G1252, G1348, G2919, G2922, G2923

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

judge, judges, the judge, the judges, their judges, you judges

### judgment day

#### Related Ideas:

day of judgment

#### Definition:

The term"judgment day" refers to a future time when God will judge every person.

* God has made his Son, Jesus Christ, the judge of all people.
* On judgment day, Christ will judge people on the basis of his righteous character.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could also be translated as "judgment time" since it could refer to more than one day.
* Other ways to translate this term could include "the end time when God will judge all people."
* Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is the name of a special day or time: "Judgment Day" or "Judgment Time."

(See also: [judge](../kt/judge.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [hell](../kt/hell.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 10:12
* Luke 11:31
* Luke 11:32
* Matthew 10:14-15
* Matthew 12:36-37

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3117, H6486, G2250, G2920

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

day of judgment, judgment day, that day

### justice

#### Related Ideas:

honest, injustice, just, justification, justify, maintain someone's rights, vindicate, vindication

#### Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

* To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
* To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
* To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
* Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."
* To "vindicate" someone whom others have accused of wrongdoing is to show that he has actually done what is right.

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

* An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
* Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
* Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

* When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
* "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."

The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."

To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."

In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."

Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."

The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."

The term "unjustly" could be translated as, "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."

Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly."

Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."

The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."

The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."

The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: [forgive](../kt/forgive.md), [guilt](../kt/guilt.md), [judge](../kt/judge.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 44:16
* 1 Chronicles 18:14
* Isaiah 04:3-4
* Jeremiah 22:03
* Ezekiel 18:16-17
* Micah 03:8
* Matthew 05:43-45
* Matthew 11:19
* Matthew 23:23-24
* Luke 18:03
* Luke 18:08
* Luke 18:13-14
* Luke 21:20-22
* Luke 23:41
* Acts 13:38-39
* Acts 28:04
* Romans 04:1-3
* Galatians 03:6-9
* Galatians 03:11
* Galatians 05:3-4
* Titus 03:6-7
* Hebrews 06:10
* James 02:24
* Revelation 15:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H2555, H3476, H3477, H4941, H5766, H5767, H6415, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8199, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G95, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1556, G1557, G1738, G2118, G2920

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

desire for justice, dishonest, honest, injustice, injustices, just, justice, justification, justified, justifies, justify, justly, maintain ... rights, unjust, unjustly, vindicate, vindicated, vindication

### kin

#### Related Ideas:

kindred, kinfolk, kinsman, relative

#### Definition:

The term "kin" refers to a person's blood relatives, considered as a group. The word "kinsman" refers specifically to a male relative.

* "Kin" can only refer to a person's close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
* In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a "kinsman-redeemer."
* This term "kin" could also be translated as, "relative" or "family member."

#### Bible References:

* Romans 16:9-11
* Ruth 02:20
* Ruth 03:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H251, H1350, H1353, H1730, H4129, H4130, H4138, H4940, H7138, H7607, G1085, G4773

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kin, kindred, kinfolk, kinsfolk, kinsman, kinsmen, relative, relatives

### kind

#### Definition:

The terms "kind" and "kinds" refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

* In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
* Often there are many different variations or species within each "kind." For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same "kind," but they are different species.
* The main thing that distinguishes each "kind" as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same "kind." Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

#### Picture showing Kinds:

<a href="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/k/Kinds.png"><img src="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/k/Kinds.png" ></a>

#### Translation Suggestions

* Ways to translate this term could include "type" or "class" or "group" or "animal (plant) group" or "category."

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 01:21
* Genesis 01:24
* Mark 09:29
* Matthew 13:47

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2178, H4327, G1085

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kind, kinds

### king

#### Related Ideas:

kingly, kingship

#### Definition:

The term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

* A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
* When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
* In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
* Rarely the term "king" was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as "King Herod" in the New Testament.
* In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
* The "kingdom of God" refers to God's rule over his people.
* Jesus was called "king of the Jews," "king of Israel," and "king of kings."
* When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
* This term could also be translated as "supreme chief" or "absolute leader" or "sovereign ruler."
* The phrase "king of kings" could be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [Herod Antipas](../names/herodantipas.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 06:15-16
* 2 Kings 05:18
* 2 Samuel 05:03
* Acts 07:9-10
* Acts 13:22
* John 01:49-51
* Luke 01:05
* Luke 22:24-25
* Matthew 05:35
* Matthew 14:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936, G937

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

king, king's, kingly, kings, kingship, made ... king, set up ... king, set up kings

### kingdom

#### Related Ideas:

power to rule

#### Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

* A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
* The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
* God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
* The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
* In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
* One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
* The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
* Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [king](../other/king.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:12
* 2 Timothy 04:17-18
* Colossians 01:13-14
* John 18:36
* Mark 03:24
* Matthew 04:7-9
* Matthew 13:19
* Matthew 16:28
* Revelation 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kingdom, kingdoms, power to rule, kingship

### kingdom of God

#### Related Ideas:

kingdom of Christ and God, kingdom of heaven

#### Definition:

The terms "kingdom of God" and "kingdom of heaven" both refer to God's rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

* The Jews often used the term "heaven" to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly.
* In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God's kingdom as "the kingdom of heaven," probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
* The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
* The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God's kingdom forever.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "kingdom of God" can be translated as "God's rule (as king)" or "when God reigns as king" or "God's rule over everything."
* The term "kingdom of heaven" could also be translated as "God's rule from heaven as king" or "God in heaven reigning" or "heaven's reign" or "heaven ruling over everything." If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase "kingdom of God" could be translated instead.
* Some translators may prefer to capitalize "Heaven" to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as "kingdom of heaven (that is, 'kingdom of God')."
* A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of "heaven" in this expression.

(See also: [God](../kt/god.md), [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [king](../other/king.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [King of the Jews](../kt/kingofthejews.md), [reign](../other/reign.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Thessalonians 01:05
* Acts 08:12-13
* Acts 28:23
* Colossians 04:11
* John 03:03
* Luke 07:28
* Luke 10:09
* Luke 12:31-32
* Matthew 03:02
* Matthew 04:17
* Matthew 05:10
* Romans 14:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G932, G2316, G3772

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kingdom of Christ and God, kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

### kingdom of Israel

#### Related Words:

House of Israel

#### Facts:

What had been the northern part of the nation of Israel became the kingdom of Israel when the twelve tribes of Israel were divided into two kingdoms after Solomon died.

* The kingdom of Israel in the north had ten tribes, and the kingdom of Judah in the south had two tribes.
* The capital city of the kingdom of Israel was Samaria. It was about 50 km from Jerusalem, the capital city of the kingdom of Judah.
* The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.
* All the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil. They influenced the people to serve idols and false gods.
* God sent the Assyrians to attack the kingdom of Israel. Many Israelites were captured and taken away to live in Assyria.
* The Assyrians brought foreigners to live among the remaining people of the kingdom of Israel. These foreigners intermarried with the Israelites, and their descendants became the Samaritan people.

(See also: [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [Samaria](../names/samaria.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 35:18
* Jeremiah 05:11
* Jeremiah 09:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H3478, H4410, H4467, H4468

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kingdom of Israel, house of Israel

### kiss

#### Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

* Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
* A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
* The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
* Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:25-28
* Genesis 27:26-27
* Genesis 29:11
* Genesis 31:28
* Genesis 45:15
* Genesis 48:10
* Luke 22:48
* Mark 14:45
* Matthew 26:48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5390, H5401, G2705, G5368, G5370

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kiss, kissed, kisses, kissing

### know

#### Related Ideas:

knowledge, make known, unknowingly, unknown

#### Definition:

To "know" means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression "make known" is an expression that means to tell information.

* The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
* To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
* To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
* To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
* To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
* Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
* The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."
* If a person does something "unknowingly," he does it without knowing that he is doing it.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
* Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
* The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
* To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
* The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
* The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.
* To "train for" an activity is to learn now to do it well. To train for war is to learn by practice how to be a good fighter.

(See also: [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [reveal](../kt/reveal.md), [understand](../other/understand.md), [wise](../kt/wise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
* 1 Samuel 17:46
* 2 Corinthians 02:15
* 2 Peter 01:3-4
* Deuteronomy 04:39-40
* Genesis 19:05
* Luke 01:77

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H502, H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H2713, H2372, H3045, H3046, H3925, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1834, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G5319, G2589, G2657, G4267, G4894, G5318

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

knew, know, know ... beforehand, knowing, knowledge, known, knows, made ... known, made known, make ... known, makes known, unknowingly, unknown

### labor

#### Related Ideas:

fellow laborers, forced labor, hard labor, hard-working, laborer, occupation, strive, struggle, toil

#### Definition:

The term "labor" refers to doing physical work of any kind.

* In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
* A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
* In English, the word "labor" is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
* Ways to translate "labor" could include "work" or "hard work" or "difficult work" or to "work hard."
* "Toil" is hard, unpleasant work, and to "toil" is to do hard, unpleasant work.
* An "occupation" is the work or labor that a person does to obtain food, clothing, shelter, and the other things he needs to live.
* Sometimes "strive" and "struggle" mean to work very hard to do something.

(See also: [hard](../other/hard.md), [labor pains](../other/laborpains.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:09
* 1 Thessalonians 03:05
* Galatians 04:10-11
* James 05:04
* John 04:38
* Luke 10:02
* Matthew 10:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H8104, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G2872, G2873, G3449, G4866, G4904

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fellow laborers, forced labor, hard labor, hard-working, labor, labored, laborer, laborer's, laborers, laboring, labors, occupation, product of ... labor, products of ... labor, strive, strives, striving together, struggle, toil, toiled, toiling, toils

### labor pains

#### Related Ideas:

birth pains, in labor, suffering the pains of childbirth

#### Definition:

A woman who is "in labor" is experiencing the pains that lead up to the birth of her child. These are called "labor pains" or "birth pains."

* In his letter to the Galatians, the apostle Paul used this term figuratively to describe his own intense striving to help his fellow believers become more and more like Christ.
* The analogy of labor pains is also used in the Bible to describe how disasters in the last days will happen with increasing frequency and intensity.

(See also: [labor](../other/labor.md), [last day](../kt/lastday.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 04:19-20
* Galatians 04:19
* Isaiah 13:08
* Jeremiah 13:21
* Psalms 048:06
* Romans 08:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2342, H3018, H3205, H5999, H6001, H6887, G3449, G4944, G5604, G5605

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

birth pains, in labor, labor pains, labors in pain together, pains of childbirth

### lamb

#### Related Ideas:

Lamb of God

#### Definition:

The term "lamb" refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" because he was sacrificed to pay for people's sins.

* These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
* God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
* Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" who was sacrificed to pay for people's sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms "lamb" and "Lamb of God."
* "Lamb of God" could be translated as "God's (sacrificial) Lamb," or "Lamb sacrificed to God" or "(sacrificial) Lamb from God."
* If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as "a young sheep" with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
* Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See also: [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 12:03
* Ezra 08:35-36
* Isaiah 66:3
* Jeremiah 11:19
* John 01:29
* John 01:36
* Leviticus 14:21-23
* Leviticus 17:1-4
* Luke 10:03
* Revelation 15:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H6251, H7716, G721, G2316

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lamb, Lamb of God, lamb, lambs

### lament

#### Related Ideas:

dirge, lamentation

#### Definition:

The terms "lament" and "lamentation" refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

* Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
* A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term to "lament" could be translated as to "deeply mourn" or to "wail in grief" or to "be sorrowful."
* A "lamentation" (or a "lament") could be translated as "loud wailing and weeping" or "deep sorrow" or "sorrowful sobbing" or "mournful moaning."
* A "dirge" is a song that people sing at a funeral because they are sad that someone they love has died.

#### Bible References:

* Amos 08:9-10
* Ezekiel 32:1-2
* Jeremiah 22:18
* Job 27:15-17
* Lamentations 02:05
* Lamentations 02:08
* Micah 02:04
* Psalm 102:1-2
* Zechariah 11:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H56, H578, H592, H1058, H2201, H5091, H5092, H5594, H6969, H7015, G2354, G2870, G2875

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dirge, lament, lamentation, lamentations, lamented, lamenting, laments, sing dirges

### lamp

#### Related Ideas:

torch

#### Definition:

The term "lamp" generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

* An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
* For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
* An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
* In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.
* A torch is a light that is meant to be carried around outside. It might be a long piece of wood that burns at the top. It might also be a pole with an oil lamp or a cloth soaked in oil at the top.

(See also: [lampstand](../other/lampstand.md), [life](../kt/life.md), [light](../other/light.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 11:36
* Exodus 25:3-7
* Luke 08:16-18
* Matthew 05:15
* Matthew 06:22
* Matthew 25:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G2985, G3088

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lamp, lamps, torch, torches

### lampstand

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "lampstand" generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

* A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
* In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

#### Translation Suggestions

* This term could be also translated as "lamp pedestal" or "structure for holding a lamp" or "lamp holder."
* For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as "seven-lamp lampstand" or "gold pedestal with seven lamps."
* It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](../other/bronze.md), [gold](../other/gold.md), [lamp](../other/lamp.md), [light](../other/light.md), [silver](../other/silver.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 05:5-6
* Exodus 37:17
* Mark 04:21-23
* Matthew 05:15-16
* Revelation 01:12-13
* Revelation 01:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4501, G3087

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lampstand, lampstands

### last day

#### Related Ideas:

last times, latter days

#### Definition:

The term "last days" or "latter days" refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

* This time period will have an unknown duration.
* The "last days" are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "last days" can also be translated as "final days" or "end times."
* In some contexts, this could be translated as "end of the world" or "when this world ends."

(See also: [day of the Lord](../kt/dayofthelord.md), [judge](../kt/judge.md), [turn](../other/turn.md), [world](../kt/world.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 03:3-4
* Daniel 10:14-15
* Hebrews 01:02
* Isaiah 02:02
* James 05:03
* Jeremiah 23:19-20
* John 11:24-26
* Micah 04:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H319, H3117, G2078, G2250

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

last day, last days, last times, latter days

### law

#### Related Ideas:

lawbreaker, lawgiver, lawyer, principle

#### Definition:

A "law" is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A "principle" is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

* Often the term "law" refers to the "law of Moses." This is the commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
* God is the lawgiver, the one who made the laws and commanded people to obey them.
* A "lawyer" is a person who studies the law and understands it well.
* Both "law" and "principle" can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person's behavior.
* A person who "is principled" is a person who does what is good.

(See also: [law of Moses](../kt/lawofmoses.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 04:02
* Esther 03:8-9
* Exodus 12:12-14
* Genesis 26:05
* John 18:31
* Romans 07:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H5715, H7560, H7771, H8451, G1785, G3544, G3548, G3551, G3848, G4747

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

law, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawgiver, laws, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

### law of Moses

#### Related Ideas:

God's law, book of Moses, book of the law, expert in the law, law of God, law of Yahweh, law of the Lord, the law

#### Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:

the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites

all the laws given to Moses

the first five books of the Old Testament

the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).

all of God's instructions and will

The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

#### Translation Suggestions:

* These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
* The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
* Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
* Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
* The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."
* There were people in the Bible who were experts in the Law of Moses, they were called "lawyers."

(See also: [instruct](../other/instruct.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Ten Commandments](../other/tencommandments.md), [lawful](../other/lawful.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:06
* Daniel 09:13
* Exodus 28:42-43
* Ezra 07:25-26
* Galatians 02:15
* Luke 24:44
* Matthew 05:18
* Nehemiah 10:29
* Romans 03:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G976, G2316, G3544, G3551, G3565

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God's law, book of Moses, book of the law, expert in the law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of the Lord, the law, the law of God, your law

### lawful

#### Related Ideas:

lawfully, lawless, lawlessness, permitted, unlawful

#### Definition:

The term "lawful" refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is "unlawful," which simply means "not lawful."

* In the Bible, something was "lawful" if it was permitted by God's moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was "unlawful" was "not permitted" by those laws.
* To do something "lawfully" means to do it "properly" or "in the right way."
* Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God's laws about loving others.
* Depending on the context, ways to translate "lawful" could include "permitted" or "according to God's law" or "following our laws" or "proper" or "fitting."
* The phrase "Is it lawful?" could also be translated as "Do our laws allow?" or "Is that something our laws permit?"

The terms "unlawful" and "not lawful" are used to describe actions that break a law.

* In the New Testament, the term "unlawful" is not only used to refer to breaking God's laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
* Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something "unlawful" if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
* When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something "unlawful" because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
* When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was "unlawful" for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term "lawless" describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of "lawlessness," there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

* A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God's laws.
* The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a "man of lawlessness," or a "lawless one," who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term "unlawful" should be translated using a word or expression that means "not lawful" or "lawbreaking."
* Other ways to translate "unlawful" could be "not permitted" or "not according to God's law" or "not conforming to our laws."
* The expression "against the law" has the same meaning as "unlawful."
* The term "lawless" could also be translated as "rebellious" or "disobedient" or "law-defying".
* The term "lawlessness" could be translated as "not obeying any laws" or "rebellion (against God's laws)."
* The phrase "man of lawlessness" could be translated as "man who does not obey any laws" or "man who rebels against God's laws."
* It is important to keep the concept of "law" in this term, if possible.
* Note that the term "unlawful" has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: [law](../other/law.md), [law of Moses](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Sabbath](../kt/sabbath.md))

#### Bible References:

* Matthew 07:21-23
* Matthew 12:02
* Matthew 12:04
* Matthew 12:10
* Mark 03:04
* Luke 06:02
* Acts 02:23
* Acts 10:28
* Acts 22:25
* 2 Thessalonians 02:03
* Titus 02:14
* 1 John 03:4-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6530, G111, G113, G266, G458, G459, G1832, G3545

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lawful, lawfully, lawless, lawlessness, not lawful, permitted, unlawful

### learned men

#### Definition:

"Learned men" or "educated men" were men who were taught by a teacher and knew a lot about one or many topics.

* In Matthew's account of the birth of Christ, "learned men" brought gifts to Jesus in Bethlehem sometime after he was born there.
* These men traveled a long way from a country far to the east of Israel. It is not known exactly where they came from or who they were. But they were obviously scholars who studied the stars.
* They may have been descendants of the wise men who served the Babylonian kings in Daniel's time and who were trained in many things, including studying the stars and interpreting dreams.
* Traditionally people have said that there were three of these men because they brought three gifts to Jesus. However, the Bible does not say how many men there were.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Bethlehem](../names/bethlehem.md), [Daniel](../names/daniel.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 02:27
* Daniel 05:7
* Matthew 02:01
* Matthew 02:07
* Matthew 02:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3097

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

learned men

### leopard

#### Definitions:

A leopard is a large, cat-like, wild animal that is brown with black spots.

* A leopard is a kind of animal which catches other animals and eats them.
* In the Bible, the suddenness of disaster is compared to a leopard, which pounces suddenly on its prey.
* The prophet Daniel and the apostle John tell about visions in which they saw a beast that looked like a leopard.

(See also: [beast](../other/beast.md), [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [prey](../other/prey.md), [vision](../other/vision.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 07:06
* Hosea 13:07
* Revelation 13:1-2
* Song of Solomon 04:8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5245, H5246

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

leopard, leopards

### leper

#### Related Ideas:

leprosy, leprous

#### Definition:

The term "leprosy" is used in the Bible to refer to several different skin diseases. A "leper" is a person who has leprosy. The term "leprous" describes a person or body part that is infected with leprosy.

* Certain kinds of leprosy cause the skin to become discolored with white patches, as when Miriam and Naaman had leprosy.
* In modern times, leprosy often causes hands, feet, and other body parts to become damaged and deformed.
* According to the instructions that God gave to the Israelites, when a person had leprosy, he was considered "unclean" and had to stay away from other people so that they would not become infected with the disease.
* A leper would often call out "unclean" so that others would be warned not to come near him.
* Jesus healed many lepers, and also people who had other kinds of diseases.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "leprosy" in the Bible can be translated as "skin disease" or "dreaded skin disease."
* Ways to translate "leprous" could include "full of leprosy" or "infected with skin disease" or "covered with skin sores."

(See also: [Miriam](../names/miriam.md), [Naaman](../names/naaman.md), [clean](../kt/clean.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 05:13
* Luke 17:12
* Mark 01:40
* Mark 14:03
* Matthew 08:03
* Matthew 10:8-10
* Matthew 11:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6879, H6883, G3014, G3015

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous

### letter

#### Related Ideas:

epistle

#### Definition:

A letter is a written message sent to a person or group of persons who are usually a distance away from the writer. An epistle is a special type of letter, often written in a more formal style, for a special purpose, such as teaching.

* In New Testament times, epistles and other types of letters were written on parchment made from animal skins or on papyrus made from plant fibers.
* The New Testament epistles from Paul, John, James, Jude, and Peter were letters of instruction that they wrote to encourage, exhort, and teach the early Christians in various cities throughout the Roman Empire.
* Ways to translate this term could include "written message" or "written down words" or "writing."

(See also: [encourage](../other/courage.md), [exhort](../kt/exhort.md), [teach](../other/teach.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:27
* 2 Thessalonians 02:15
* Acts 09:1-2
* Acts 28:21-22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H104, H107, H3791, H4385, H5406, H5407, H5612, G1121, G1992

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

epistle, letter, letters

### life

#### Related Ideas:

alive, come to life, conduct, exist, fresh, life-giving, lifetime, live, revive, survive, survivor

#### Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by "physical life" and "spiritual life."

#### 1. Physical life

* Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam's body, and he became a living being.
* A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
* Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
* It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
* The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
* In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."
* To "revive" is for someone who is dead or almost dead to live again, or to take something or someone who is dead or almost dead and make him live again.
* A person who "survives" has almost died for some reason but is still alive.
* The same Hebrew words can be translated "fresh" water or "living" water.
* Things that are "lifeless" either have never been alive or were once alive but are now dead.
* The way a person "conducts" himself or his life is the way he lives his life, most importantly the morally good or bad things he does.

#### 2. Spiritual life

* A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
* This life is also called "eternal life" to indicate that it does not end.
* The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
* Depending on the context, the term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
* The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
* The expression "spared their lives' could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
* The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
* Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally." The word "life-giving" can be translated as "something that causes to live" or "something that gives life."

(See also: [death](../other/death.md), [everlasting](../kt/eternity.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 01:03
* Acts 10:42
* Genesis 02:07
* Genesis 07:22
* Hebrews 10:20
* Jeremiah 44:02
* John 01:04
* Judges 02:18
* Luke 12:23
* Matthew 07:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2416, H2417, H2418, H2421, H2425, H2465, H2673, H3351, H3824, H3885, H4241, H5315, H5397, H5564, H6106, H7611, H8141, H8300, G326, G386, G390, G895, G979, G980, G981, G982, G1127, G1236, G1514, G2198, G2222, G2225, G2227, G2450, G3118, G4176, G4684, G4748, G4763, G4800, G4806, G5171, G5225, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alive, come to life, conduct, conducted, existed, fresh, keep ... alive, life, life-giving, lifeless, lifetime, live, lived, lives, living, revive, revived, survive, survived, survivor, survivors

### light

#### Related Ideas:

bright, brightness, enlighten, shine

#### Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term "light" in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth.

* Jesus said, "I am the light of the world" to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
* Christians are commanded to "walk in the light," which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
* The apostle John stated that "God is light" and in him there is no darkness at all.
* Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
* Jesus said that he was "the light of the world" and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
* "Walking in the light" represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms "light" and "darkness" even when they are used figuratively.
* It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, "walk as children of light" could be translated as, "live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight."
* Make sure that the translation of "light" does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](../other/darkness.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 John 02:08
* 2 Corinthians 04:06
* Acts 26:18
* Isaiah 02:05
* John 01:05
* Matthew 05:16
* Matthew 06:23
* Nehemiah 09:12-13
* Revelation 18:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, G681, G796, G1391, G1645, G2985, G2986, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bright, brightness, enlighten, enlightened, light, lighting, lights, shining

### like

#### Related Ideas:

according to, alike, as, as if, compare, in the same way, just as, liken, likeness, likewise, resemble, similar, similarly, unlike

#### Definition:

The terms "like" and "likeness" refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

* To "compare" two things is to look at how they are the same or how they are different.
* The word "like" is also often used in a figurative expressions called a "simile" in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, "his clothes shined like the sun" and "the voice boomed like thunder."
* To "be like" or "sound like" or "look like" something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
* People were created in God's "likeness," that is, in his "image." It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are "like" or "similar to" qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
* To have "the likeness of" something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.
* The word "likewise" means "in the same way," referring to something that the speaker has just said.
* The word "unlike" means "not like."

#### Translation Suggestions

* In some contexts, the expression "the likeness of" could be translated as "what looked like" or "what appeared to be."
* The expression "in the likeness of his death" could be translated as "sharing in the experience of his death" or "as if experiencing his death with him."
* The expression "in the likeness of sinful flesh" could be translated as "being like a sinful human being" or to "be a human being." Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
* "In his own likeness" could also be translated as to "be like him" or "having many of the same qualities that he has."
* The expression "the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things" could be translated as "idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things."

(See also: [beast](../other/beast.md), [flesh](../kt/flesh.md), [image of God](../kt/imageofgod.md), [image](../other/image.md), [perish](../kt/perish.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 01:05
* Mark 08:24
* Matthew 17:02
* Matthew 18:03
* Psalms 073:05
* Revelation 01:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1819, H1823, H3644, H4915, H7737, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4793, G4833, G5108, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

according to, alike, as, as if, be ... like, become ... like, compare, in the same way, is ... like, just as, like, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, resemble, resembled, similar to, similarly, the same, the same way, unlike

### lion

#### Related Ideas:

lioness

#### Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

* Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
* Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
* Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
* When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
* Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.
* A "lioness" is a female lion.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [leopard](../other/leopard.md), [Samson](../names/samson.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
* 1 Kings 07:29
* Proverbs 19:12
* Psalms 017:12
* Revelation 05:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lion, lion's, lioness, lionesses, lions, lions'

### livestock

#### Definitions:

The term "livestock" refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

* Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
* In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
* Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
* This term could also be translated as "farm animals."

(See also: [cow, ox](../other/cow.md), [donkey](../other/donkey.md), [goat](../other/goat.md), [horse](../other/horse.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 03:15-17
* Genesis 30:29
* Joshua 01:14-15
* Nehemiah 09:36-37
* Numbers 03:41

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H929, H1165, H4399, H4735

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

livestock

### locust

#### Related Ideas:

grasshopper, locust swarms

#### Definitions:

The term "locust" refers to a type of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies with many others of its kind in a very destructive swarm that eats all vegetation.

* Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long distance way.
* In the Old Testament, swarming locusts were referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel's disobedience.
* God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
* The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(See also: [captive](../other/captive.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [plague](../other/plague.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:28
* Deuteronomy 28:38-39
* Exodus 10:3-4
* Mark 01:06
* Proverbs 30:27-28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H697, H1357, H1462, H1501, H2284, H3218, H5556, H6767, G200

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

grasshoppers, locust, locust swarms, locusts

### loins

#### Related Ideass:

side, thigh, waist

#### Definition:

The term "loins" refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

* The expression "gird up the loins" refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one's robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
* The term "loins" is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
* In the Bible, the term "loins" often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man's reproductive organs as the source of his descendants.
* The expression "will come from your loins" could also be translated as, "will be your offspring" or "will be born from your seed" or "God will cause to come from you."
* When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as "abdomen" or "hips" or "waist," depending on the context.

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [gird](../other/gird.md), [offspring](../other/offspring.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:13
* 2 Chronicles 06:09
* Deuteronomy 33:11
* Genesis 37:34
* Job 15:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G3751

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

loins, hips, side, thigh, thighs, waist

### lord

#### Related Ideas:

landowner, Lord, master, master of the house, mistress, owner, owner of a house, sir

#### Definition:

The term "lord" refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

* This word is sometimes translated as "master" when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
* Some English versions translate this as "sir" in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When "Lord" is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of "sir" or "master.")

* In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as "Lord God Almighty" or "Lord Yahweh" or "Yahweh our Lord."
* In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as "Lord Jesus" and "Lord Jesus Christ," which communicate that Jesus is God.
* The term "Lord" in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh" and the New Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."
* In the ULB and UDB, the title "Lord" is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean "Lord." It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "lord":

* The term "lord" can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
* When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master."
* If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.

Translating "Lord":

* When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English.
* In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
* When "Lord" refers to Jesus Christ (the Son of God), it should be translated with the same word that is used for "Lord" when it refers to God the Father. Or if it is translated with different words, both words should express the same degree of honor.
* Some languages translate "Lord" as "Master" or "Ruler" or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
* For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(See also: [God](../kt/god.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 39:02
* Joshua 03:9-11
* Psalms 086:15-17
* Jeremiah 27:04
* Lamentations 02:02
* Ezekiel 18:29
* Daniel 09:09
* Daniel 09:17-19
* Malachi 03:01
* Matthew 07:21-23
* Luke 01:30-33
* Luke 16:13
* Romans 06:23
* Ephesians 06:9
* Philippians 02:9-11
* Colossians 03:23
* Hebrews 12:14
* James 02:01
* 1 Peter 01:03
* Jude 01:05
* Revelation 15:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H1404, H4756, H5633, H7218, H7980, H8323, G1203, G2634, G2961, G2962, G3617

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lord, Lord's, landowner, lord, lord's, lords, master, master of the house, master's, masters, mistress, owner, owner of a house, sir, sirs

### lots

#### Related Ideas:

allotted, allotted portion, cast lots, chosen by lot, divide up by lot

#### Definition:

A "lot" is a marked object that is chosen from among other similar objects as a way of deciding something. "Casting lots" referred to tossing marked objects onto the ground or other surface.

* Often the lots were small marked stones or pieces of broken pottery.
* Some cultures "draw" or "pull out" lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
* The practice of casting lots was used by the Israelites to find out what God wanted them to do.
* As in the time of Zechariah and Elizabeth, it was also used to choose which priest would perform a specific duty in the temple at a specific time.
* The soldiers who crucified Jesus cast lots to decide who would get to keep Jesus' robe.
* The phrase "casting lots" can be translated as "tossing lots" or "drawing lots" or "rolling lots." Make sure the translation of "cast" does not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
* Depending on the context, the term "lot" could also be translated as "marked stone" or "pottery piece" or "stick" or "piece of straw."
* If a decision is made "by lot" this could be translated as, "by drawing (or throwing) lots."
* To allot things to people can mean to divide those things and to toss lots to decide who gets each portion.
* To allot something to someone can mean to assign it to him or give it to him. (See also: [Elizabeth](../names/elizabeth.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [Zechariah (OT)](../names/zechariahot.md), [Zechariah (NT)](../names/zechariahnt.md))

#### Bible References:

* Jonah 01:07
* Luke 01:8-10
* Luke 23:34
* Mark 15:22
* Matthew 27:35-37
* Psalms 022:18-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1486, G2819, G2975

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

allotted, allotted portion, cast lots, chosen by lot, divide up ... by lot, lot, lots

### love

#### Related Ideas:

brotherly love

#### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

* Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
* When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
* In the ULB, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

1. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

* This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
* The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

In the figurative expression "Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated," the term "loved" refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as "chosen." Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term "hated" is used figuratively here to mean "rejected" or "not chosen."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
* Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
* Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
* In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
* Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
* Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [death](../other/death.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [save](../kt/save.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 13:07
* 1 John 03:02
* 1 Thessalonians 04:10
* Galatians 05:23
* Genesis 29:18
* Isaiah 56:06
* Jeremiah 02:02
* John 03:16
* Matthew 10:37
* Nehemiah 09:32-34
* Philippians 01:09
* Song of Solomon 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H1730, H2245, H2532, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5383, G5388

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brotherly love, love, loved, loves, loving

### lover

#### Definition:

The term "lover" literally means "person who loves."

* Usually "lover" refers to people who are in a sexual relationship with each other.
* In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, the term "lover" is used in a positive way.
* In other parts of the Bible, it often refers to a person who is involved in a sexual relationship with someone he or she is not married to.
* This wrong sexual relationship is often used in the Bible to refer to Israel's disobedience to God in worshiping idols. So the term "lovers" is also used in a figurative way to refer to the idols that the people of Israel worshiped. In these contexts, this term could possibly be translated by "immoral partners" or "partners in adultery" or "idols."

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [love](../kt/love.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hosea 02:05
* Jeremiah 03:02
* Lamentations 01:02
* Luke 16:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H157, H158, H868, H5689, H7453, H8566

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lover, lovers

### lowly

#### Related Ideas:

bring down, low condition, low position, lowliest, lowliness

#### Definition:

The terms "lowly" and "lowliness" refer to being poor or having low status. Being lowly can also have the meaning of being humble.

* Jesus humbled himself to the lowly position of becoming a human being and serving others.
* Having a lowly attitude is the opposite of being proud.
* Ways to translate "lowly" could include "humble" or "of low status" or "unimportant."
* The word "lowliness" could also be translated as "humility" or "little importance."

(See also: [humble](../kt/humble.md), [proud](../other/proud.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 20:19
* Ezekiel 17:14
* Luke 01:48-49
* Romans 12:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6041, H6819, H7034, H8213, H8216, H8217, G5011, G5012, G5014

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bring ... down, bring ... low, brings ... down, brings ... low, brought low, low condition, low position, low positions, lowliest, lowliness, lowly, of low condition

### lust

#### Related Ideas:

crave, desire, lustful, lusting, passion, sensual, sensuality

#### Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually for something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

* In the Bible, "lust" usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one's own spouse.
* Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
* Depending on the context, "lust" could be translated as "wrong desire" or "strong desire" or "wrongful sexual desire" or "strong immoral desire" or to "strongly desire to sin."
* The phrase to "lust after" could be translated as to "wrongly desire" or to "think immorally about" or to "immorally desire."
* To "crave" is to desire strongly.
* "Sensuality" is the desire to satisfy sensual desires, to experience sensual pleasures, particularly sexual pleasure.

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:16
* 2 Timothy 02:22
* Galatians 05:16
* Galatians 05:19-21
* Genesis 39:7-9
* Matthew 05:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H183, H185, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H2532, H2656, H5178, H5315, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G766, G1014, G1937, G1939, G3713, G3715, G3806

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

crave, craves, desirable, desire, desired, desires, lust, lusted, lustful, lusting, lusts, passion, sensual, sensuality

### lute

#### Definition:

A lute is a small, stringed, musical instrument that the Israelites used when they worshiped God.

* A lute is very similar to a modern-day acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which strings are strung.
* In playing a lute, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while these and other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
* The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: [harp](../other/harp.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 10:11-12
* 1 Samuel 10:5-6
* 2 Chronicles 05:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5035, H5443

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lute, lutes

### magic

#### Related Ideas:

magical, magician, spiritist, those who talk with spirits

#### Definition:

The term "magic" refers to the practice of using supernatural power that does not come from God. A "magician" is someone who practices magic.

* In Egypt, when God did miraculous things through Moses, the Egyptian pharaoh's magicians were able to do some of the same things, but their power did not come from God.
* Magic often involves casting spells or repeating certain words in order to make something supernatural happen.
* God commands his people not to do any of these practices of magic or divination.
* A sorcerer is a type of magician, usually one who uses magic to do harm to others.
* A spiritist is a person who talks with spirits.

(See also: [divination](../other/divination.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Pharaoh](../names/pharaoh.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [sorcery](../other/sorcery.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 41:08
* Genesis 41:22-24
* Genesis 44:3-5
* Genesis 44:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H178, H2748, H2749, H3049, G3097

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

magic, magical, magician, magicians, spiritist, spiritists, those who talked with spirits, who talk with spirits, who talks with spirits

### magistrate

#### Definition:

A magistrate is an appointed official who acts as a judge and decides matters of law.

* In Bible times, a magistrate also settled disputes between people.
* Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "ruling judge" or "legal officer" or "city leader."

(See also: [judge](../other/judgeposition.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 16:20
* Acts 16:35
* Daniel 03:1-2
* Luke 12:58

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8200, H8614, G758, G4755

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

magistrate, magistrates

### majesty

#### Related Ideas:

great, greatness, magnificent, majestic

#### Definition:

The term "majesty" refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

* In the Bible, "majesty" frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
* "Your Majesty" is a way of addressing a king.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could be translated as "kingly greatness" or "royal splendor."
* "Your Majesty" could be translated as something like "your Highness" or "your Excellency" or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.
* To be "great" is to be more famous or powerful or good than most people. Great kings are more powerful than most other kings. Great people are good or famous or powerful, but they do not have to be kings.
* "Magnificent" deeds are deeds worthy of a king or a great person or divine being.

(See also: [king](../other/king.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 01:16-18
* Daniel 04:36
* Isaiah 02:10
* Jude 01:25
* Micah 05:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H1347, H1348, H1419, H1420, H1431, H1923, H1926, H1935, H4768, H7227, H7229, H7238, H7613, H7690, G3168, G3169, G3172, G3173

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

great, greater, greatest, greatness, magnificent, majestic, majesty

### man of God

#### Facts:

The expression "man of God" is a respectful way of referring to a prophet of Yahweh. It is also used to refer to an angel of Yahweh.

* When referring to a prophet, this could also be translated as "man who belongs to God" or "man whom God has chosen" or "man who serves God."
* When referring to an angel this could also be translated as "messenger of God" or "your angel" or "heavenly being from God who looks like a man."

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 23:12-14
* 1 Kings 12:22
* 1 Samuel 09:9-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H376, H430, G444, G2316

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

man of God

### manager

#### Related Ideas:

engage, manage, management, steward, stewardship

#### Definition:

The term "manager" or "steward" in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master's property and business dealings.

* A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
* The term "manager" is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.
* The terms "management" and "stewardship" refer to the work that a manager or steward does.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This could also be translated as "supervisor" or "household organizer" or "servant who manages" or "person who organizes."

(See also: [servant](../other/servant.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 03:4-5
* Genesis 39:04
* Genesis 43:16
* Isaiah 55:10-11
* Luke 08:03
* Luke 16:02
* Matthew 20:8-10
* Titus 01:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4453, H6485, G2012, G3616, G3621, G3622, G3623, G4291

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

engage, manage, management, manager, managers, steward, stewards, stewardship

### manna

#### Definition:

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

* Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
* The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
* On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they wouldn't have to gather it on their day of rest.
* The word "manna" means "what is it?"
* In the Bible, manna is also referred to as "bread from heaven" and "grain from heaven."

#### Translation Suggestions

* Other ways to translate this term could include "thin white flakes of food" or "food from heaven."
* Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [bread](../other/bread.md), [desert](../other/desert.md), [grain](../other/grain.md), [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [Sabbath](../kt/sabbath.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 08:3
* Exodus 16:27
* Hebrews 09:3-5
* John 06:30-31
* Joshua 05:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4478, G3131

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

manna

### mediator

#### Related Ideas:

intermediary, mediate

#### Definition:

A mediator is a person who helps two or more people to resolve their disagreements or conflicts with each other. He helps them to become reconciled.

* Because people have sinned, they are God's enemies who deserve his wrath and punishment. Because of sin, the relationship between God and his people is broken.
* Jesus is the mediator between God the Father and his people, restoring that broken relationship through his death as payment for their sin.
* An "intermediary" is a person who represents one person in a discussion or conflict with another person. This is different from a "mediator," who listens to both persons and tries to be neutral.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "mediator" could be "go-between person" or "reconciler" or "person who brings peace."
* Compare this term with how the term "priest" is translated. It is best if the term "mediator" is translated differently.

(See also: [priest](../kt/priest.md), [reconcile](../kt/reconcile.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 02:05
* Galatians 03:20
* Hebrews 08:06
* Hebrews 12:24
* Luke 12:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3887, H6419, G3312, G3316

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

intermediary, mediated, mediator

### meditate

#### Related Ideas:

meditation

#### Definition:

"The term meditate" means to spend time thinking about something carefully and deeply.

* This term is often used in the Bible to refer to thinking about God and his teachings.
* Psalm 1 says that the person who meditates on the law of the Lord "day and night" will be greatly blessed.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To "meditate on" could be translated as to "think about carefully and deeply" or to "consider thoughtfully" or to "think about often."
* The noun form is "meditation" and could be translated as "deep thoughts." A phrase like "meditation of my heart" could be translated as "what I think deeply about" or "what I often think about."

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 24:63
* Joshua 01:8-9
* Psalm 001:1-2
* Psalms 119:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1897, H1900, H1902, H7742, H7878, H7879, H7881

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

meditate, meditates, meditation, meditations

### meek

#### Related Ideas:

gentle, gentleness, meekness

#### Definition:

The term "meek" describes a person who is gentle, submissive, and willing to suffer injustice. Meekness is the ability to be gentle even when harshness or force might seem appropriate.

* Meekness is often associated with humility.
* This term could also be translated as "gentle" or "mild-mannered" or "sweet-tempered."
* The term "meekness" could be translated as "gentleness" or "humility."

(See also: [humble](../kt/humble.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 03:15-17
* 2 Corinthians 10:1-2
* 2 Timothy 02:25
* Matthew 05:05
* Matthew 11:29
* Psalms 037:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6035, H6037, G4235, G4236, G4239, G4240

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gentle, gentleness, meek, meekness

### melt

#### Related Ideas:

molten

#### Definitions:

The term "melt" refers to something becoming liquid when it is heated. Something that is melted is described as being "molten."

* Different kinds of metals are heated until they melt and can be poured into molds in order to make things such as weapons or idols. The expression "molten metal" refers to a metal that is melted.
* As a candle burns, its wax melts and drips. In ancient times, letters were often sealed by pouring a small amount of melted wax on the edges.

The term "melt" can also be used in figurative ways.

* A figurative use of "melt" means to become soft and weak, like melted wax.
* The expression "their hearts will melt" means that they will become very weak because of fear.
* Another figurative expression "they will melt away" means that they will be forced to go away or they will be shown to be weak and will go away in defeat.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The literal meaning of "melt" could be translated as "become liquid" or "liquefy" or "cause to become liquid."
* Ways to translate the figurative meanings of "melt" could include "become soft" or "become weak" or "be defeated."

(See also: [heart](../kt/heart.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [image](../other/image.md), [seal](../other/seal.md))

#### Bible References:

* Psalms 112:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2046, H3988, H4127, H4541, H4549, H5140, H5413, H8557, G3089, G5080

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

melt, melted, melting, melts, molten

### member

#### Definition:

The term "member" refers to one part of a complex body or group.

* The New Testament describes Christians as "members" of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
* Jesus Christ is the "head" of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
* Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called "members" of these groups.

(See also: [body](../kt/body.md), [Pharisee](../kt/pharisee.md), [council](../other/council.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:15
* 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
* Numbers 16:02
* Romans 12:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, G1010, G3196, G3609

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

member, members

### memorial offering

#### Related Ideas:

memorial

#### Definition:

The term "memorial" refers to an action or object that causes someone or something to be remembered.

* This word is also used as an adjective to describe something that is to remind them of something, as in a "memorial offering," a "memorial portion" of a sacrifice or "memorial stones."
* In the Old Testament memorial offerings were made so the Israelites would remember what God had done for them.
* God told the Israelite priests to wear special clothing that had memorial stones. These stones had the names of the twelve tribes of Israel engraved on them. These were perhaps to remind them of God's faithfulness to them.
* In the New Testament, God honored a man named Cornelius because of his charitable deeds for the poor. These deeds were said to be a "memorial" before God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This could also be translated as "lasting reminder."
* A "memorial stone" could be translated as a "stone to remind them (of something)."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 10:04
* Exodus 12:12-14
* Isaiah 66:3
* Joshua 04:6-7
* Leviticus 23:23-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2142, H2146, G3422

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

memorial, memorial offering

### mercy

#### Related Ideas:

kindness, merciful, spare

#### Definition:

The terms "mercy" and "merciful" refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

* The term "mercy" can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
* A powerful person such as a king is described as "merciful" when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
* To "be merciful" or "spare" someone who has done wrong to another means to forgive that person.
* An evil person who "spares" those who have done nothing wrong does not do the same wrong to them that he has done to others.
* We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
* God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "mercy" could be translated as "kindness" or "compassion" or "pity."
* The term "merciful" could be translated as "showing pity" or "being kind to" or "forgiving."
* To "show mercy to" or "have mercy on" could be translated as "treat kindly" or "be compassionate toward."

(See also: [compassion](../kt/compassion.md), [forgive](../kt/forgive.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:3-5
* 1 Timothy 01:13
* Daniel 09:17
* Exodus 34:06
* Genesis 19:16
* Hebrews 10:28-29
* James 02:13
* Luke 06:35-36
* Matthew 09:27
* Philippians 02:25-27
* Psalms 041:4-6
* Romans 12:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2550, H2551, H2603, H2604, H2617, H3722, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, H8467, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G4698, G5363, G5544

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kindness, mercies, merciful, mercy, spare, spared, spares, tender mercy

### messenger

#### Related Ideas:

courier, herald

#### Definitions:

The term "messenger" refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

* In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
* An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate "angel" as "messenger."
* John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah's coming and to prepare people to receive him.
* Jesus' apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.
* A "herald" or a "courier" is a messenger who carries messages from rulers to their subjects.

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 19:1-3
* 1 Samuel 06:21
* 2 Kings 01:1-2
* Luke 07:27
* Matthew 11:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H6735, H6737, G32, G652

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

couriers, herald, messenger, messengers

### mighty

#### Related Ideas:

Mighty One, mightily, mighty host, mighty men, mighty work

#### Definition:

The terms "mighty" and "might" refer to having great strength or power.

* Often the word "might" is another word for "strength." When talking about God, it can mean "power."
* The phrase "mighty men" often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David's band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called "mighty men."
* The phrase "the Might One" refers to God.
* The phrase "a mighty one" can refer to God or to a man.
* The phrase "mighty works" usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
* This term is related to the term "almighty," which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "mighty" could be translated as "powerful" or "amazing" or "very strong."
* The phrase "his might" could be translated as "his strength" or "his power."
* In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was "mighty in word and deed." This could be translated as "Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things" or "Moses spoke God's word powerfully and did many amazing things."
* Depending on the context, "mighty works" could be translated as "amazing things that God does" or "miracles" or "God doing things with power."
* The term "might" could also be translated as "power" or "great strength."
* Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in "It might rain."

(See also: [Almighty](../kt/almighty.md), [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [strength](../other/strength.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:22
* Genesis 06:4
* Mark 09:38-39
* Matthew 11:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H46, H47, H117, H202, H352, H386, H410, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mighty One, might, mightier, mightily, mighty, mighty host, mighty men, mighty one, mighty ones, mighty work, mighty works

### mind

#### Related Ideas:

expect, intention, likeminded, mindful, sober, think

#### Definition:

The term "mind" refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

* The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
* To "have the mind of Christ" means to think and act as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
* To "change his mind" means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.
* To "expect" something is to think that it will happen.
* To "think" can mean to use one's mind to form ideas.
* To "think" can also mean to have a belief or opinion about something.
* To "intend" or "have an intention" to do something is to decide or to plan to do that thing. That thing may be good or evil, and the person may or may not want to do it, but he plans to do it.
* A person who is "sober" is able to think clearly, especially in contrast to a person who has harmed his mind by drinking to much wine.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "mind" could also be translated as "thoughts" or "reasoning" or "thinking" or "understanding."
* The expression "keep in mind" could be translated as "remember" or "pay attention to this" or "be sure to know this."
* The expression "heart, soul, and mind" could also be translated as "what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about."
* The expression "call to mind" could be translated as "remember" or "think about."
* The expression "double-minded" could also be translated as "doubting" or "unable to decide" or "with conflicting thoughts."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [heart](../kt/heart.md), [soul](../kt/soul.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 10:27
* Mark 06:51-52
* Matthew 21:29
* Matthew 22:37
* James 04:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H226, H1079, G1380, H1843, H3629, H3820, H3824, H3825, H4093, H4150, H5162, H6419, H6725, H6734, H7217, H7725, G364, G1271, G1374, G1839, G2233, G2657, G3328, G3525, G3539, G3540, G3563, G4102, G4993, G5280, G5426, G5427, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

expect, expected, intention, likeminded, mind, minded, mindful, minds, sober, think, think carefully about, thinks, thought, thoughts

### minister

#### Related Ideas:

attend to someone's needs, care for, mission, offer as a priest, perform the service, provide for others' needs, tend

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "ministry" refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

* In the Old Testament, the priests would "minister" to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
* Their "ministry" also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
* The job of "ministering" to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
* It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In the context of ministering to people, to "minister" could also be translated as to "serve" or to "care for" or to "meet the needs of."
* When referring to ministering in the temple, the term "minister" could be translated as "serve God in the temple" or "offer sacrifices to God for the people."
* In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as "serve," "perform the service," or "work for God."
* The phrase "ministered to" could also be translated as "took care of" or "provided for" or "helped."

(See also: [serve](../other/servant.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 20:23-26
* Acts 06:04
* Acts 21:17-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2729, H6485, H7462, G1247, G1248, G1249, G2418, G2999, G3008, G3009, G5256

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

attend to ... needs, attending to ... needs, care for, carrying out, minister, ministers, ministries, ministry, mission, offer as a priest, perform ... service, performed ... service, provided for ... needs, tending, to minister

### miracle

#### Related Ideas:

miraculous

#### Definition:

A "miracle" is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

* Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
* Miracles are sometimes called "wonders" because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
* The term "wonder" can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God's power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
* Miracles can also be called "signs" because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
* Some miracles were God's acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
* Other wonders were God's acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah's time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
* Many of God's miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
* God's power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
* God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God's power.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Possible translations of "miracles" or "wonders" could include "impossible things that God does" or "powerful works of God" or "amazing acts of God."
* The frequent expression "signs and wonders" could be translated as "proofs and miracles" or "miraculous works that prove God's power" or "amazing miracles that show how great God is."
* Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](../kt/power.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [sign](../kt/sign.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
* Acts 04:17
* Acts 04:22
* Daniel 04:1-3
* Deuteronomy 13:01
* Exodus 03:19-22
* John 02:11
* Matthew 13:58

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4159, H6381, H6382, G1411, G1605, G4592, G5059

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

miracle, miracles, miraculous

### mock

#### Related Ideas:

defy, laughingstock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, taunt

#### Definition:

The terms "mock," ridicule," "scoff at," and "taunt" all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

* Mocking often involves imitating people's words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
* The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
* A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
* The term "scoff at" can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
* A "mocker" is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.
* A person who "defies" another mockingly challenges that other person to do something the mocker believes the other person cannot do.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 03:04
* Acts 02:12-13
* Galatians 06:6-8
* Genesis 39:13-15
* Luke 22:63-65
* Mark 10:34
* Matthew 09:23-24
* Matthew 20:19
* Matthew 27:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4426, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8437, H8591, H8595, G1592, G1701, G1702, G1703, G2301, G2606, G3456, G5512

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

defied, defy, laugh in mockery, laughingstock, mock, mocked, mocker, mockers, mockery, mocking, mocks, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at, scoffing, taunted, taunting song, taunts

### mold

#### Related Ideas:

cast, molder

#### Definition:

A mold is a hollowed-out piece of wood, metal, or clay that is used to form objects out of gold, silver, or other materials that can be softened and then shaped by the mold. To mold something means to form an object into a certain shape or likeness by using a mold or the hands to form a certain shape.

* Molds were used to make jewelry, dishes, and utensils for eating, among other things.
* In the Bible, molds are mentioned mainly in connection with molding statues to be used as idols.
* Metals have to be heated to a very high temperature so that they can be poured into the mold.

#### Translation Suggestions

* This term could also be translated as "form" or "shape" or "cast."

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [gold](../other/gold.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [silver](../other/silver.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 7:37
* Jeremiah 10:16
* Romans 9:20-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4541, H4165, G4110, G4111

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

mold, molded, molder, molding, molds

### month

#### Related Ideas:

monthly

#### Definition:

The term "month" refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

* In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about 29 days. In this system there are 12 or 13 months in a year. Despite the year being 12 or 13 months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
* The "new moon," or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
* All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
* The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into 12 months, with the length of each month ranging from 28 to 31 days.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 20:34
* Acts 18:9-11
* Hebrews 11:23
* Numbers 10:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2320, H3391, H3393, G3376

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

month, monthly, months

### mourn

#### Related Ideas:

funeral song, grief, grieve, howl, mourner, mournful, sorrow, sorrowful, tears, wail, weep, with tears

#### Definitions:

The terms "mourn" and "mourning" refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

* In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
* The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
* Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
* The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
* The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about "mourning" because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.
* A "howl" is the crying sound an animal makes. People who "howl" are hurt, sad, or angry.

(See also: [sackcloth](../other/sackcloth.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 15:34-35
* 2 Samuel 01:11
* Genesis 23:02
* Luke 07:31-32
* Matthew 11:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H56, H57, H60, H205, H421, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H2470, H3510, H3013, H3213, H3708, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6087, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23, G2354, G2355, G2799, G2805, G2875, G3076, G3077, G3602, G3996, G3997

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bitter, cause ... grief, funeral song, grief, grieve, grieved, grieving, howl, howls, mourn, mourned, mourner, mourners, mourners', mournful, mournfully, mourning, mourns, sorrow, sorrowful, sorrows, tears, wail, wailing, wailings, wails, weep, weeping, weeps bitterly, wept, with tears

### multiply

#### Related Ideas:

abound, abundance, abundant, even more, exceeding, grow in number, increase, make to grow, multiplication, multitudes, numerous

#### Definition:

The term "multiply" means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

* God told animals and human beings to "multiply" and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
* Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
* An "abundance" of something is a large quantity of something.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as "increase" or "cause to increase" or "greatly increase in number" or "become greater in number" or "become more numerous."
* The phrase "greatly multiply your pain" could also be translated as "cause your pain to become more severe" or "cause you to experience much more pain."

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 08:01
* Genesis 09:07
* Genesis 22:17
* Hosea 04:6-7

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H553, H1879, H2122, H2123, H3254, H3493, H3513, H3527, H5607, H6105, H6280, H6555, H7227, H7230, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G4052, G4129

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

abound, abounding, abundance, abundant, even more, exceeding, exceedingly, exceeds, grew ... numbers, grow ... numbers, increase, increased, increases, increasing, make ... grow, make ... many, makes ... grow, many, multiplication, multiplied, multiplies, multiply, multiplying, multitudes, numerous

### myrrh

#### Definition:

Myrrh is an oil or spice that is made from the resin of a myrrh tree that grows in Africa and Asia. It is related to frankincense.

* Myrrh was also used to make incense, perfume, and medicine, and to prepare dead bodies for burial.
* Myrrh was one of the gifts that the learned men gave to Jesus when he was born.
* Jesus was offered wine mixed with myrrh in order to ease the pain when he was crucified.

(See also: [frankincense](../other/frankincense.md), [learned men](../other/learnedmen.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 30:22-25
* Genesis 37:25-26
* John 11:1-2
* Mark 15:23
* Matthew 02:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3910, H4753, G3464, G4666, G4669

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

myrrh

### mystery

#### Related Ideas:

hidden meaning, hidden truth, secrets

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "mystery" refers to something unknown or difficult to understand that God is now explaining.

* The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
* One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
* This term could also be translated as "secret" or "hidden things" or "something unknown."

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [Gentile](../kt/gentile.md), [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 04:2-4
* Ephesians 06:19-20
* Luke 08:9-10
* Mark 04:10-12
* Matthew 13:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1219, H7328, G3466

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hidden meaning, hidden truth, hidden truths, mysteries, mystery, secrets

### name

#### Related Ideas:

fame, nameless, notorious, reputation

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the word "name" was used in several figurative ways.

* In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
* The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
* Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
* The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved."
* People who are "nameless" are unimportant, so few people know about them or care about them.
* A person who is "notorious" is one who has a reputation for evil or foolishness.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
* Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
* The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
* The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
* The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
* The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](../kt/call.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:12
* 2 Timothy 02:19
* Acts 04:07
* Acts 04:12
* Acts 09:27
* Genesis 12:02
* Genesis 35:10
* Matthew 18:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5344, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2028, G2564, G3140, G3141, G3686, G3687, G5122

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fame, name, name's, named, nameless, names, notorious, reputation

### nation

#### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

* A "nation" usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
* In the Bible, a "nation" could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
* Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
* Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
* The word translated as "nation" was also sometimes used to refer to "Gentiles" or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
* If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
* The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
* In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "nonJews."

(See also: [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Gentile](../kt/gentile.md), [Greek](../names/greek.md), [people group](../other/peoplegroup.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
* 2 Chronicles 15:06
* 2 Kings 17:11-12
* Acts 02:05
* Acts 13:19
* Acts 17:26
* Acts 26:04
* Daniel 03:04
* Genesis 10:2-5
* Genesis 27:29
* Genesis 35:11
* Genesis 49:10
* Luke 07:05
* Mark 13:7-8
* Matthew 21:43
* Romans 04:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H523, H524, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

nation, nations

### neighbor

#### Related Ideas:

neighborhood, neighboring

#### Definition:

The term "neighbor" usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

* A "neighbor" is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
* In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term "neighbor" figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
* If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means "person who lives nearby."
* A "neighborhood" is a community of people in a town or city who live near each other.
* "Neighboring" countries and regions are countries and regions that are nearby.

(See also: [adversary](../other/adversary.md), [parable](../kt/parable.md), [people group](../other/peoplegroup.md), [Samaria](../names/samaria.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:26-28
* Ephesians 04:25-27
* Galatians 05:14
* James 02:08
* John 09:8-9
* Luke 01:58
* Matthew 05:43
* Matthew 19:19
* Matthew 22:39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring, neighbors

### new moon

#### Definition:

The term "new moon" refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

* In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
* The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram's horn.
* The Bible also refers to this time as the "beginning of the month."

(See also: [month](../other/biblicaltimemonth.md), [earth](../other/earth.md), [festival](../other/festival.md), [horn](../other/horn.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 23:31
* 1 Samuel 20:05
* 2 Kings 04:23-24
* Ezekiel 45:16-17
* Isaiah 01:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2320, G3376, G3561

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

new moon, new moons

### noble

#### Related Ideas:

nobility, nobleman

#### Definition:

The term "noble" describes someone or something that is excellent or of high quality.

* A "nobleman" or a "noble" is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
* The "nobility" refers to the people who belong to a high political or social class.
* A man "of noble birth" is one who was born a nobleman.

Translation Suggestion

* The term "nobleman" could also be translated by, "king's official" or "government officer."

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
* Daniel 04:36
* Ecclesiastes 10:17
* Luke 19:12
* Psalm 016:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H193, H1419, H2715, H3358, H3513, H5081, H6440, H6579, H7261, H8282, H8269, G937, G2104

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

nobility, noble, nobleman, noblemen, nobles

### oak

#### Related Ideas:

terebinth

#### Definition:

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

* Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
* The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
* The trunks of certain oak trees could bemeasured up to 6 meters around.
* Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Many translations will find it important to use the term "oak tree" rather than just the word "oak."
* If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, "an oak" could be translated as "an oak, which is a large shade tree like…," then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
* See:

(See also: [holy](../kt/holy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:3-4
* Genesis 13:18
* Genesis 14:13-14
* Genesis 35:4-5
* Judges 06:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H352, H424, H427, H436, H437, H438

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oak, oaks, terebinths

### oath

#### Related Ideas:

swear, swear by

#### Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. A person who swears an oath commits himself to being faithful and truthful, and by doing so he is saying that God has the right to punish him if he breaks the oath.

* In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
* In the Bible, the term "swear" means to speak an oath.
* The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
* Sometimes these terms are used together, as in "swear an oath."
* Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
* Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
* God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
* A modern-day meaning of the word "swear" is "use foul language." This is not its meaning in the Bible.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
* To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
* Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
* To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
* Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelech](../names/abimelech.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [vow](../kt/vow.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 21:23
* Genesis 24:03
* Genesis 31:51-53
* Genesis 47:31
* Luke 01:73
* Mark 06:26
* Matthew 05:36
* Matthew 14:6-7
* Matthew 26:72

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G331, G332, G3660, G3726, G3727, G3728, G3784

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oath, oath-taking, oaths, swear, swear by, swearing, swears, swears by, swore, swore an oath, sworn

### obey

#### Related Ideas:

follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen, obedience, obedient

#### Definition:

The term "obey" means to do what is required or commanded. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. "Obedience" is the characteristic that an obedient person has.

* Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
* For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
* Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
* When someone in authority commands people not to do something, the people obey by not doing that.
* To "observe" a law or command is to obey it.
* Other words used to refer to obeying someone or something are: follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "obey" could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
* The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: [citizen](../other/citizen.md), [command](../kt/command.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [law](../other/law.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:32
* Acts 06:7
* Genesis 28:6-7
* James 01:25
* James 02:10
* Luke 06:47
* Matthew 07:26
* Matthew 19:20-22
* Matthew 28:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2388, H3349, H4928, H5341, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G2722, G2902, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5426, G5442

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

following, give ... ear, hear, heard, hold ... securely, hold to, keep, keeps, kept, listen, listened, listened to, obedience, obedient, obediently, obey, obeyed, obeying, obeys

### official

#### Related Ideas:

officer

#### Definition:

The terms "official" and "officer" refer to people who hold positions within a government or organization. Leaders within the government or organization give the official or officer certain authority and duties to perform as long as he remains in the position.

* A king often had many officials to serve him.
* When someone makes an "official visit," it means a person with authority is visiting a person or place as part of his job.
* An officer is a person who carries out the orders of an official or a judge and issues orders only to officers of lesser rank and to people subject to the government.

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 39:1
* Ester 01:03
* Jeremiah 01:18
* Matthew 09:18
* Acts 25:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5461, H5631, H6496, H7860, H8269, G758, G3175, G4173, G5257

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

officer, officers, official, officials

### offspring

#### Definition:

The term "offspring" is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

* Often in the Bible, "offspring" has the same meaning as "children" or "descendants."
* The term "seed" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [seed](../other/seed.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 17:29
* Exodus 13:11-13
* Genesis 24:07
* Isaiah 41:8-9
* Job 05:25
* Luke 03:7
* Matthew 12:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1121, H2233, H4138, H5209, H6363, H6529, H6631, G1081, G1085, G4690

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

offspring

### oil

#### Related Ideas:

ointment

#### Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

* Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
* In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
* Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](../other/olive.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 01:21
* Exodus 29:02
* Leviticus 05:11
* Leviticus 08:1-3
* Mark 06:12-13
* Matthew 25:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oil, oils, ointment, ointments

### olive

#### Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

* Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
* The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
* Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
* In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](../other/lamp.md), [the sea](../names/mediterranean.md), [Mount of Olives](../names/mountofolives.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
* Deuteronomy 06:10-12
* Exodus 23:10-11
* Genesis 08:11
* James 03:12
* Luke 16:06
* Psalms 052:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2132, H3323, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

olive, olives

### on high

#### Related Ideas:

in the highest

#### Definition:

The terms "on high" and "in the highest" are expressions that usually mean "in heaven."

* Another meaning for the expression "in the highest" could be "the most honored."
* This expression could also be used literally, as in the expression "in the highest tree, " which means "in the tallest tree."
* The expression "on high" could also refer to being high in the sky, such as a bird's nest that is on high. In that context it could be translated as "high in the sky" or "at the top of a tall tree."
* The word "high" could also indicate the elevated location or importance of a person or thing.
* The expression "from on high" could be translated as "from heaven."

(See also: [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md))

#### Bible References:

* Lamentations 01:13
* Psalms 069:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1361, H4791, H7682, G5308, G5310, G5311

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

in the highest, on high

### oppress

#### Related Ideas:

oppression, oppressive, oppressor, ruthless

#### Definition:

The terms "oppress" and "oppression" refer to treating people harshly. An "oppressor" is a person who oppresses people.

* The term "oppression" especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
* The term "oppressed" describes the people who are being harshly treated.
* Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.
* The term "ruthless" describes who show no pity or compassion to others. Oppressors are ruthless.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "oppress" could be translated as, "severely mistreat" or "cause to be heavily burdened" or "put under miserable bondage" or "rule harshly."
* Ways to translate "oppression" could include "heavy suppression and bondage" or "burdensome control."
* The phrase "the oppressed" could be translated as "oppressed people" or "people in terrible bondage" or "those who are treated harshly."
* The term "oppressor" could be translated as "person who oppresses" or "nation who controls and rules harshly" or "persecutor."

(See also: [bind](../kt/bond.md), [enslave](../other/enslave.md), [persecute](../other/persecute.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:17-19
* Deuteronomy 26:07
* Ecclesiastes 04:1
* Job 10:03
* Judges 02:18-19
* Nehemiah 05:14-15
* Psalms 119:134

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H2556, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6031, H6115, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, H8496, G2561, G2616, G2669

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oppress, oppressed, oppresses, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors, ruthless

### ordain

#### Related Ideas:

ordination

#### Definition:

To ordain means to formally appoint a person for a special task or role. It also means to formally make a rule or decree.

* The term "ordain" often refers to formally appointing somebody as a priest, minister, or rabbi.
* For example, God ordained Aaron and his descendants to be priests.
* It can also mean to institute or establish something, such as a religious feast or covenant.
* Depending on the context, to "ordain" could be translated as to "assign" or to "appoint" or to "command" or to "make a rule" or to "institute."

(See also: [command](../kt/command.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [decree](../other/decree.md), [law](../other/law.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 12:31-32
* 2 Samuel 17:13-14
* Exodus 28:40-41
* Numbers 03:03
* Psalms 111:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3245, H4390, H6186, H6213, H6680, H7760, H8239, G2525, G4270, G4282, H6822

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ordain, ordained, ordination

### ordinance

#### Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term "ordain."

* Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
* In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
* The term "ordinance" could be translated as "public decree" or "regulation" or "law," depending on the context.

(See also: [command](../kt/command.md), [decree](../other/decree.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [ordain](../other/ordain.md), [statute](../other/statute.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 04:13-14
* Exodus 27:20-21
* Leviticus 08:31-33
* Malachi 03:6-7

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1881, H2706, H2708, H4687, H4931, H4941, H5715, G1345, G1378

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ordinance, ordinances

### overseer

#### Related Ideas:

overseer, supervise, supervisor, visitation

#### Definition:

The term "overseer" refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people.

* In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
* In the New Testament, overseers were leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
* Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his "flock."
* The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
* In the New Testament, the terms "overseers," "elders," and "shepherds/pastors" are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.
* The word "supervisor" is another word for an overseer.
* The word "visitation" refers to an overseer coming to make sure that the workers over whom he has charge are working well.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Other ways to translate this term could be "caretaker" or "manager."
* When referring to a leader of a local group of God's people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "spiritual supervisor" or "someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers" or "person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church."

(See also: [church](../kt/church.md), [elder](../other/elder.md), [pastor](../kt/pastor.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
* 1 Timothy 03:02
* Acts 20:28
* Genesis 41:33-34
* Philippians 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3256, H6485, H6486, H6496, H7287, H7860, H8104, H8269, G1983, G1984, G1985

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oversee, overseeing, overseen, overseer, overseers, oversees, supervise, supervised, supervisor, supervisors, visitation

### overtake

#### Definition:

The terms "overtake" and "overtook" refer to gaining control over someone or something. It usually includes the idea of catching up to something after pursuing it.

* When military troops "overtake" an enemy, it means they defeat that enemy in battle.
* When a predator "overtakes" its prey, it means that it pursues and catches its prey.
* If a curse "overtakes" someone, it means that whatever was said in that curse happens to that person.
* If blessings "overtake" people, it means that those people experience those blessings.
* When used in a warning that darkness or punishment or terrors will "overtake" people because of their sin, it means that those people will experience these negative things if they don't repent.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "overtake" and "overcome" could be translated as "conquer" or "capture" or "defeat" or "catch up to" or "completely affect."
* The past action "overtook" can be translated as "caught up to" or "came alongside of" or "conquered" or "defeated" or "caused harm to."

(See also: [bless](../kt/bless.md), [curse](../kt/curse.md), [prey](../other/prey.md), [punish](../other/punish.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 25:4-5
* John 12:35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H579, H857, H935, H1692, H4672, H5066, H5381, G2638, G2983

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

overtake, overtaken, overtakes, overtook

### pagan

#### Definition:

In Bible times, the term "pagan" was used to describe people who worshiped false gods instead of Yahweh.

* Anything associated with these people, such as the altars where they worshiped, the religious rituals they performed, and their beliefs, were also called "pagan."
* Pagan belief systems often included the worship of false gods and the worship of nature.
* Some pagan religions included sexually immoral rituals or the killing of human beings as part of their worship.

(See also: [altar](../kt/altar.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 10:20-22
* 1 Corinthians 12:1-3
* 2 Kings 17:14-15
* 2 Kings 21:4-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1471, G1482, G1484

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pagan, pagans

### palace

#### Definition:

The term "palace" refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

* The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
* Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
* The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
* Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: [courtyard](../other/courtyard.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [king](../other/king.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
* 2 Samuel 11:2-3
* Daniel 05:5-6
* Matthew 26:3-5
* Psalms 045:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H759, H1002, H1004, H1055, H1406, H1964, H1965, G833, G933, G4232

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

palace, palaces

### palm

#### Related Ideas:

palm branch

#### Definition:

The term "palm" refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

* The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a "date." The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
* Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
* As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
* Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: [donkey](../other/donkey.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [peace](../other/peace.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 06:29-30
* Ezekiel 40:14-16
* John 12:12-13
* Numbers 33:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3712, H8558, H8560, H8561, G5404

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

palm, palm branch, palms

### parable

#### Related Ideas:

hard question, lesson, riddle

#### Definition:

The term "parable" usually refers to a short story or object lesson that is used to explain or teach a moral truth. It can also refer to a saying that is difficult to understand and about which the hearer will have to think carefully before he can understand what the speaker is teaching.

* Jesus used parables to teach his disciples. Although he also told parables to the crowds of people, he did not always explain the parable.
* Jesus used parables to reveal truth to his disciples and to hide the truth from people like the Pharisees who did not believe in him.
* The prophet Nathan told David a parable to show the king his terrible sin.
* The story of the Good Samaritan is an example of a parable that is a story. Jesus' comparison of old and new wineskins is an example of a parable that was an object lesson to help the disciples understand Jesus' teachings.
* A "riddle" is a type of "hard question." The one who asks a hard question does not know the correct answer, but he hopes the hearer can answer correctly. The one who asks a riddle does not want the hearer to be able to answer the question correctly.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The word "parable" can be translated as "illustration".

(See also: [Samaria](../names/samaria.md))

#### Bible References:

* Proverbs 01:06
* Luke 05:36
* Luke 06:39
* Luke 08:04
* Luke 08:9-10
* Mark 04:01
* Matthew 13:03
* Matthew 13:10
* Matthew 13:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1819, H2420, H4426, H4912, G3850, G3942

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hard questions, lesson, parable, parables, riddle, riddles

### partial

#### Related Ideas:

partiality

#### Definition:

The terms "be partial" and "show partiality" refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

* This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
* Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are richer or more popular than other people.
* God instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
* In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
* The book of James teaches that it is wrong to treat rich people better than poor people.

(See also: [favor](../kt/favor.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 01:17
* Malachi 02:09
* Mark 12:13-15
* Matthew 22:16
* Romans 02:10-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5234, H5375, H6440, G991, G2983, G4299, G4381, G4382, G4383

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be partial, partial, partiality, show partiality

### pastor

#### Definition:

The term "pastor" is literally the same word as "shepherd." It is used as a title for someone who is the spiritual leader for a group of believers.

* In English Bible versions, "pastor" only occurs one time, in the book of Ephesians. It is the same word as is translated as "shepherd" elsewhere.
* In some languages, the word for "pastor" is the same as the word for "shepherd."
* It is also the same word as is used to refer to Jesus as the "good Shepherd."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term with the word for "shepherd" in the project language.
* Other ways to translate this term could include "spiritual shepherd" or "shepherding Christian leader."

(See also: [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ephesians 04:11-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4166

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pastor, pastors

### patient

#### Related Ideas:

impatient, patience

#### Definition:

The terms "patient" and "patience" refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

* When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
* The Bible teaches God's people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
* Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.
* The term "impatient" means not patient.

(See also: [endure](../other/endure.md), [forgive](../kt/forgive.md), [persevere](../other/perseverance.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 03:20
* 2 Peter 03:8-9
* Hebrews 06:11-12
* Matthew 18:28-29
* Psalms 037:7
* Revelation 02:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H750, H753, H2342, H3803, H3811, H6960, H7114, G420, G463, G3114, G3115, G3116, G5278, G5281

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

impatient, patience, patient, patiently

### patriarch

#### Definition:

The term "patriarch" in the Bible refers to someone who was a founding ancestor of the Jewish people, particularly Abraham, Isaac, or Jacob.

* It also can refer to the twelve sons of Jacob who became the 12 patriarchs of the 12 tribes of Israel.
* The term "patriarch" has a similar meaning to "forefather," but more specifically refers to the most well-known male ancestral leaders of a people group.

(See also: [ancestor, father, forefather](../other/father.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:29-31
* Acts 07:6-8
* Acts 07:09
* Ezra 03:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1, H7218, G3962, G3966

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

patriarch, patriarchs

### peace

#### Related Ideas:

peaceable, peaceful, peacemaker, quiet

#### Definition:

The term "peace" refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is "peaceful" feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

* "Peace" can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have "peaceful relations."
* To "make peace" with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
* A "peacemaker" is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
* To be "at peace" with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
* A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having "peace with God."
* The greeting "grace and peace" was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
* The term "peace" can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.
* A person who is "peaceable" acts in a way that enables him to live in peace with other people. He acts "peaceably."
* To "quiet" someone is to get them to be at peace. To quiet a quarrel is to get the people to stop quarreling and be at peace with each other.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
* Acts 07:26
* Colossians 01:18-20
* Colossians 03:15
* Galatians 05:23
* Luke 07:50
* Luke 12:51
* Mark 04:39
* Matthew 05:09
* Matthew 10:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, H8535, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

peace, peaceable, peaceably, peaceful, peacefully, peacemakers, quiet, quiets

### peace offering

#### Definitions:

A "peace offering" was one of several sacrificial offerings that God commanded the Israelites to make. It is sometimes called the "thanksgiving offering" or "fellowship offering."

* This offering involved sacrificing an animal that had no defects, sprinkling the animal's blood on the altar, and burning the animal's fat, as well as the rest of the animal separately.
* Added to this sacrifice was an offering of both unleavened and leavened bread, which was burned on top of the burnt offering.
* The priest and offerer of the sacrifice were permitted to share in eating the food that was offered.
* This offering symbolizes the fellowship of God with his people.

(See also: [burnt offering](../other/burntoffering.md), [fellowship](../kt/fellowship.md), [fellowship offering](../other/fellowshipoffering.md), [grain offering](../other/grainoffering.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [unleavened bread](../kt/unleavenedbread.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 13:8-10
* Ezekiel 45:16-17
* Joshua 08:30-32
* Leviticus 09:3-5
* Proverbs 07:13-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8002

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

peace offering, peace offerings

### people group

#### Related Ideas:

people

#### Definition:

The term "peoples" or "people groups" refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase "the people" often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

* When God set apart "a people" for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
* In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
* Depending on the context, a phrase such as "your people" can mean "your people group" or "your family" or "your relatives."
* The term "peoples" is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term "nations" is also used in this way.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "people group" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "large family group" or "clan" or "ethnic group."
* A phrase such as "my people" could be translated as "my relatives" or "my fellow Israelites" or "my family" or "my people group," depending on the context.
* The expression "scatter you among the peoples" could also be translated as "cause you to go live with many different people groups" or "cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world."
* The term "the peoples" or "the people" could also be translated as "the people in the world" or "people groups," depending on the context.
* The phrase "the people of" could be translated as "the people living in" or "the people descended from" or "the family of," depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
* "All the peoples of the earth" could be translated as "everyone living on earth" or "every person in the world" or "all people."
* The phrase "a people" could also be translated as "a group of people" or "certain people" or "a community of people" or "a family of people."

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [nation](../other/nation.md), [tribe](../other/tribe.md), [world](../kt/world.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:51-53
* 1 Samuel 08:07
* Deuteronomy 28:09
* Genesis 49:16
* Ruth 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H1121, H3816, H4940, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

people, people group, people groups, people's, peoples

### people of God

#### Related Ideas:

God's people, people for God's possession

#### Definition:

The term "people of God" refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

* When God says "my people" he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
* God's people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
* In the Old Testament, "people of God" refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
* In the New Testament, "people of God" especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "people of God" could be translated as "God's people" or "the people who worship God" or "people who serve God" or "people who belong to God."
* When God says "my people" other ways to translate it could include "the people I have chosen" or "the people who worship me" or "the people who belong to me."
* Similarly, "your people" could be translated as "the people who belong to you" or "the people you chose to belong to you."
* Also "his people" could be translated as "the people who belong to him" or "the people God chose to belong to himself."

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [people group](../other/peoplegroup.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:02
* Acts 07:34
* Acts 07:51-53
* Acts 10:36-38
* Daniel 09:24-25
* Isaiah 02:5-6
* Jeremiah 06:20-22
* Joel 03:16-17
* Micah 06:3-5
* Revelation 13:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God's people, my people, people for God's possession, people of God

### perfect

#### Related Ideas:

perfecter, perfection, perfectly

#### Definition:

The term "perfect" describes something that has no flaw. To "perfect" something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

* Only God and what he does is absolutely perfect.
* When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they become perfect and mature because they become more like Christ in their character.
* Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient; it does not mean that he is sinless.
* The term "perfect" also has the meaning of being "complete" or "whole."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "perfect" could be translated as "without flaw" or "without error" or "flawless" or "without fault" or "not having any faults."
* The term "perfectly" could be translated "completely" or "fully."

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 12:02
* James 03:02
* Matthew 05:46-48
* Psalms 019:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3615, H3632, H3634, H4359, H4390, H8003, H8503, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G2005, G2038, G2675, G2676, G3647, G4135, G4137, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050, G5055

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

perfect, perfected, perfecter, perfection, perfectly

### perish

#### Related Ideas:

imperishable, perishable

#### Definition:

The term "perish" means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster.

* The word "perish" can also be a metaphor for being punished in hell either presently or in the future.
* Something that is "imperishable" will never perish.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "die" or "be destroyed" or "be punished in hell" or "will be punished in hell."
* When perish is a metaphor, make sure that the translation of "perish" does not only mean "cease to exist."

(See also: [death](../other/death.md), [everlasting](../kt/eternity.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:23
* 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
* 2 Thessalonians 02:10
* Jeremiah 18:18
* Psalms 049:18-20
* Zechariah 09:5-7
* Zechariah 13:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H7, H622, H1197, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H7921, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G5356

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

imperishable, perish, perishable, perished, perishes, perishing

### persecute

#### Related Ideas:

persecution, persecutor

#### Definition:

The terms "persecute" and "persecution" refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

* Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
* The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
* People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
* The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
* After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "persecute" could also be translated as "keep oppressing" or "treat harshly" or "continually mistreat."
* Ways to translate "persecution" could include, "harsh mistreatment" or "oppression" or "persistent hurtful treatment."

(See also: [Christian](../kt/christian.md), [church](../kt/church.md), [oppress](../other/oppress.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:52
* Acts 13:50
* Galatians 01:13-14
* John 05:16-18
* Mark 10:30
* Matthew 05:10
* Matthew 05:43-45
* Matthew 10:22
* Matthew 13:20-21
* Philippians 03:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors

### persevere

#### Related Ideas:

perseverance

#### Definition:

The terms "persevere" and "perseverance" refer to continuing to do something even though it may be very difficult or take a long time.

* To persevere can also mean to keep acting in a Christ-like way even while going through difficult trials or circumstances.
* If a person has "perseverance" it means he is able to keep doing what he should do, even when it is painful or difficult.
* Continuing to believe what God teaches requires perseverance, especially when faced with false teachings.
* Be careful not to use a word like "stubborn" which usually has a negative meaning.

(See also: [patient](../other/patient.md), [trial](../other/trial.md))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 01:11
* Ephesians 06:18
* James 05:9-11
* Luke 08:14-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3115, G4343, G5281

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

perseverance, persevere

### perverse

#### Related Ideas:

crooked, perversion, perversity, pervert, twisted

#### Definition:

The terms "perverse," "crooked," and "twisted" are used to describe a person or action that is morally bad. The term "perversely" means "in a perverse manner." To "pervert" something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good. "Perversity" is perverse thoughts, words, and actions.

* Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
* In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshiping false gods.
* Any action which is against God's standards or behavior is considered perverse.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "perverse" could include "morally twisted" or "immoral" or "turning away from God's straight path," depending on the context.
* "Perverse speech" could be translated as "speaking in an evil way" or "deceitful talk" or "immoral way of talking."
* "Perverse people" could be described as "immoral people" or "people who are morally deviant" or "people who continually disobey God."
* The phrase "acting perversely" could be translated as "behaving in an evil way" or "doing things against God's commands" or "living in a way that rejects God's teachings."
* The term "pervert" could also be translated as "cause to be corrupt" or "turn into something evil."

(See also: [corrupt](../other/corrupt.md), [deceive](../other/deceive.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [turn](../other/turn.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:47
* 1 Samuel 20:30
* Job 33:27-28
* Luke 23:02
* Psalms 101:4-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1942, H2015, H2555, H3868, H4297, H5186, H5557, H5558, H5753, H5766, H5773, H5791, H6140, H6141, H8138, H8397, H8419, G1294, G1612, G3344, G4646

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

crooked, crooked ways, perverse, perverse words, perversely, perversion, perversions, perversities, perversity, pervert, perverted, perverting, perverts, twisted

### pierce

#### Related Ideas:

gore, thrust through

#### Definition:

The term "pierce" means to stab something or to make a hole with a sharp, pointed object. It is also used figuratively to refer to causing someone deep emotional pain.

* A soldier pierced Jesus' side when he was hanging on the cross.
* In Bible times, a slave who was set free would have his ear pierced as a sign that he was choosing to continue working for his master.
* Simeon spoke figuratively when he told Mary that a sword would pierce her heart, meaning that she would experience deep grief because of what would happen to her son Jesus.
* To "thrust someone through" or "thrust a sword through someone" is to push a sword all the way through him so the sword comes out the other side.
* To "gore" is for an animal to thrust a horn into another animal or a person.

(See also: [cross](../kt/cross.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [servant](../other/servant.md), [Simeon](../names/simeon.md))

#### Bible References:

* Job 16:13
* Job 20:23-25
* John 19:37
* Psalms 022:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1856, H1920, H2342, H2490, H2491, H2944, H3738, H5055, H5181, H5344, H5365, H6398, G1330, G1338, G1574, G2660, G3572, G4044

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gore, gored, holes, pierce, pierced, pierces, piercing, thrust ... through

### pig

#### Related Ideas:

boar, pork, swine

#### Definition:

A pig is a type of four-legged, hoofed animal that is raised for meat. Its meat is called "pork." The general term for pigs and related animals is "swine."

* God told the Israelites not to eat pig meat and to consider it unclean. Jews today still view pigs as unclean and do not eat pork.
* Pigs are raised on farms to be sold to other people for their meat.
* There is a kind of swine that is not raised on farms but rather lives out in the wild; it is called a "wild boar." Wild boars have tusks and are considered to be very dangerous animals.
* Sometimes large pigs are referred to as "hogs."
* A "boar" is a wild pig. Wild pigs are usually fierce and dangerous.

(See also: [clean](../kt/clean.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:22
* Mark 05:13
* Matthew 07:6
* Matthew 08:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2386, G5519

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

boar, boars, pig, pigs, pork, swine, swine's

### pillar

#### Related Ideas:

column

#### Definition:

The term "pillar" usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for "pillar" is "column."

* In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
* When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
* The word "pillar" sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
* It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a "carved image" and could be translated as "statue."
* The term "pillar" is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the "pillar of fire" that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the "pillar of salt" that Lot's wife became after she looked back at the city.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* As a structure supporting a building, the term "pillar" or "column" could be translated as "upright stone support beam" or "supporting stone structure."
* Other uses of "pillar" could be translated as "statue" or "pile" or "mound" or "monument" or "tall mass," depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](../other/foundation.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [image](../other/image.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 18:04
* Exodus 13:21
* Exodus 33:09
* Genesis 31:45
* Proverbs 09:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H352, H547, H2106, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G4769

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

column, columns, pillar, pillars

### pit

#### Related Ideas:

pitfall, quarry

#### Definition:

A "pit" is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground. A "pitfall" is a trap made of a pit that is hidden with a cover. A "quarry" is a pit from which people take valuable stones.

* People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
* A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
* Sometimes the phrase "the pit" refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to "the abyss."
* The term "pit" is also used figuratively in phrases such as, "pit of destruction" which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: [abyss](../other/abyss.md), [hell](../kt/hell.md), [prison](../other/prison.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 37:21-22
* Job 33:18
* Luke 06:39
* Proverbs 01:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H875, H953, H1356, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G12, G999, G5421

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pit, pitfall, pits, quarry

### plague

#### Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

* Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
* In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
* This could also be translated as "widespread disasters" or "widespread disease," depending on the context.

(See also: [hail](../other/hail.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Pharaoh](../names/pharaoh.md))

#### Picture of a Plague of skin:

<a href="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/p/Plagueskin.png"><img src="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/p/Plagueskin.png" ></a>

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 24:13-14
* Exodus 09:14
* Genesis 12:17-20
* Luke 21:11
* Revelation 09:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1698, H4046, H4194, H4347, H5061, H5062, H5063, G3061, G4127

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

plague, plagues

### plead

#### Related Ideas:

appeal, ask earnestly, humble request, plea

#### Definitions:

The terms "plead" and "pleading" refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A "plea" is an urgent request.

* Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
* People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
* Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.
* The word translated "humble request" refers specifically to a humble request for favor or mercy.
* To "plead someone's cause" is to testify in court before a judge that the judge should rule in favor of the person whose cause it is.
* A "legal plea" or "cause" is what someone who is trying to get justice tells a judge in a court trial.
* An "earnest appeal" is a serious, humble request.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "plead" could also be translated as "beg" or "implore" or "urgently ask."
* The term "plea" could also be translated as "urgent request" or "strong urging."

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 08:3-5
* Judges 06:31
* Luke 04:39
* Proverbs 18:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1777, H2603, H3198, H4941, H6279, H6293, H6664, H6419, H7378, H7379, H7775, H8199, H8467, H8469, G1162, G1189, G1793, G2065, G3870, G3874

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appeal, asked ... earnestly, cause, earnest appeal, earnest appeals, earnestly appeal, earnestly appealed, humble request, humble requests, legal plea, moved by ... plea, plea, plea for favor, plead, plead ... cause, pleaded, pleading, pleadings, pleads, pleas

### pledge

#### Related Ideas:

betroth, guarantee, promise

#### Definition:

The term "pledge" refers to formally and solemnly promising to do something or give something.

* In the Old Testament the officials of Israel pledged to be loyal to King David.
* The terms "pledge" and "guarantee" can refer to an object given as a guarantee or promise that a debt will be paid.
* The object given as a pledge would be returned to its owner when the promise was fulfilled.
* To "betroth" is to pledge to marry someone.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To "pledge" could be translated as to "formally commit to" or to "strongly promise."
* Ways to translate "a pledge" could include "a solemn promise" or "a formal commitment" or "a guarantee" or "a formal assurance," depending on the context.

(See also: [promise](../kt/promise.md), [oath](../other/oath.md), [vow](../kt/vow.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 05:4-5
* Exodus 22:26
* Genesis 38:17-18
* Nehemiah 10:28-29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H781, H2254, H2258, H2260, H5667, H5671, H6148, H6162, G728

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

becomes responsible, betroth, betrothed, guarantee, pledge, pledged, pledges, promise to be ... husband

### plow

#### Related Ideas:

farmer, plowman, plowshare, unplowed

#### Definition:

A "plow" is a farm tool that is used for breaking up soil to prepare a field for planting.

* Plows have sharp, pointed prongs or blades that dig into the soil. They usually have handles that the farmer uses to guide the plow.
* A "plowshare" is the main cutting blade on a plow.
* In Bible times, plows were usually pulled by a pair of oxen or other work animals.
* Most plows were made of hard wood, except for the sharp points which were made of a metal, such as bronze or iron.
* A "plowman" or a "plower" is a person who uses a plow.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The terms "plowman" and "plower" can also be translated more generally as "farmer."

(See also: [bronze](../other/bronze.md), [ox](../other/cow.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 08:10-12
* Deuteronomy 21:04
* Luke 09:62
* Luke 17:07
* Psalm 141:5-7

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H406, H855, H2758, H2790, H5215, H5647, H5656, H5674, H6213, H6398, G722, G723

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

farmers, plow, plowed, plowers, plowing, plowman, plowmen, plows, plowshares, unplowed

### pomegranate

#### Definitions:

A pomegranate is a kind of fruit that has a thick, tough skin filled with many seeds that are covered with edible red pulp.

* The outer rind is reddish in color and the pulp surrounding the seeds is shiny and red.
* Pomegranates are very commonly grown in countries with a hot, dry climate, such as Egypt and Israel.
* Yahweh promised the Israelites that Canaan was a land with abundant water and fertile soil so that food was plentiful there, including pomegranates.
* The construction of Solomon's temple included bronze decorations in the shape of pomegranates.

(See also: [bronze](../other/bronze.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 25:16-17
* Deuteronomy 08:7-8
* Jeremiah 52:22-23
* Numbers 13:23-24
* Numbers 20:5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7416

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pomegranate, pomegranates

### possess

#### Related Ideas:

belongings, dispossess, possession, property

#### Definitions:

The terms "possess" and "possession" usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

* In the Old Testament, "possess" is often used in the context of "possessing" or "taking possession of" an area of land.
* When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to "possess" the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
* Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as "their possession." This could also be translated as "their rightful place to live."
* The people of Israel were also called Yahweh's "special possession." This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.
* The term "dispossess" meant "take someone's property."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "possess" could also be translated as "own" or "have" or "have charge over."
* "Possessions" are also called "belongings" and "property."
* The phrase "take possession of" could be translated as "take control of" or "occupy" or "live on," depending on the context.
* When Yahweh calls the Israelites "my special possession" this could also be translated as "my special people" or "people who belong to me" or "my people whom I love and rule."
* The sentence, "they will become their possession" when referring to land, means "they will occupy the land" or "the land will belong to them."
* The phrase "as your possession" could also be translated as "as something that belongs to you" or "as a place where your people will live."
* The phrase "dispossess them" can be translated as "take their land" or "make them leave their land."

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:70
* 1 Kings 09:17-19
* Acts 02:45
* Deuteronomy 04:5-6
* Genesis 31:36-37
* Matthew 13:44

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H270, H272, H2505, H2631, H3018, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H5157, H5159, H5459, G979, G1139, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, H3520, G4041, G4047, G4632, G5224, G5225

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

belongings, dispossess, possess, possessed, possesses, possessing, possession, possessions, property, took possession, valuable possessions

### power

#### Related Ideas:

ability, able, mastered, can, capable, could, impossible, incapable, powerful, won, unable

#### Definition:

The term "power" refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. "Powers" refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

* The "power of God" refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
* God has complete power over everything that he has created.
* God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
* Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "power" could also be translated as "ability" or "strength" or "energy" or "ability to do miracles" or "control."
* Possible ways to translate the term "powers" could include "powerful beings" or "controlling spirits" or "those who control others."
* An expression like "save us from the power of our enemies" could be translated as "save us from being oppressed by our enemies" or "rescue us from being controlled by our enemies." In this case, "power" has the meaning of using one's strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [miracle](../kt/miracle.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 01:05
* Colossians 01:11-12
* Genesis 31:29
* Jeremiah 18:21
* Jude 01:25
* Judges 02:18
* Luke 01:17
* Luke 04:14
* Matthew 26:64
* Philippians 03:21
* Psalm 080:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H410, H1368, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2632, H3027, H3201, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5807, H6109, H6184, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8592, H8633, G1410, G1411, G1415, G1743, G1754, G1832, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2904, G3168

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ability, able, am ... able, are ... able, are ... possible, be ... unable, be able, be mastered, can, cannot, capable, could, could not, impossible, incapable, is ... able, may ... be able, miraculous powers, possible, power, powerful, powerfully, powers, was ... able, were ... able, will ... be able, won

### praise

#### Related Ideas:

praiseworthy

#### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person. Something that is praiseworthy is good and deserves to be praised.

* People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
* Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
* Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
* Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term to "praise" could also be translated as to "speak well of" or to "highly honor with words" or to "say good things about."
* The noun "praise" could be translated as "spoken honor" or "speech that honors" or "speaking good things about."

(See also: [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 01:03
* Acts 02:47
* Acts 13:48
* Daniel 03:28
* Ephesians 01:03
* Genesis 49:8
* James 03:9-10
* John 05:41-42
* Luke 01:46
* Luke 01:64-66
* Luke 19:37-38
* Matthew 11:25-27
* Matthew 15:29-31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1288, H1289, H1319, H1984, H2142, H2167, H7121, H8416, G1392, G1843, G2127, G2128, G2129, G2980, G3170, G3853, G5485, G5567

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

praise, praised, praises, praiseworthy, praising, sing praise, sing praises

### pray

#### Related Ideas:

prayer

#### Definition:

The terms "pray" and "prayer" refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

* People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
* Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
* Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
* People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
* Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
* Talking to God is sometimes called "communing" with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
* This term could be translated as "talking to God" or "communicating with God." The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [forgive](../kt/forgive.md), [praise](../other/praise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 03:09
* Acts 08:24
* Acts 14:26
* Colossians 04:04
* John 17:09
* Luke 11:1
* Matthew 05:43-45
* Matthew 14:22-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H577, H1156, H2470, H3908, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7879, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heard ... prayer, pray, prayed, prayer, prayers, praying, prays, urgently pray

### preach

#### Related Ideas:

preacher

#### Definition:

To "preach" means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him.

* Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
* "Preaching" and "teaching" are similar, but are not exactly the same.
* "Preaching" mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. "Teaching" is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
* The term "preach" is usually used with the word "gospel."
* What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his "teachings."

(See also: [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:1-2
* Acts 08:4-5
* Acts 10:42-43
* Acts 14:21-22
* Acts 20:25
* Luke 04:42
* Matthew 03:1-3
* Matthew 04:17
* Matthew 12:41
* Matthew 24:14
* Acts 09:20-22
* Acts 13:38-39
* Jonah 03:1-3
* Luke 04:18-19
* Mark 01:14-15
* Matthew 10:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G312, G518, G1344, G2097, G2511, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G3142, G3870, G4283

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

preach, preached, preacher, preaching

### precious

#### Related Ideas:

costly, expensive, valuable

#### Definitions:

The term "precious" describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

* The term "precious stones" or "precious jewels" refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
* Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
* Gold and silver are called "precious metals."
* Yahweh says that his people are "precious" in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
* Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God's sight (1 Peter 3:4).
* The terms "costly" and "expensive" describe something that costs a lot of money to buy.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "precious' could also be translated as "valuable" or "very dear" or "cherished" or "highly valued."

(See also: [gold](../other/gold.md), [silver](../other/silver.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 01:01
* Acts 20:22-24
* Daniel 11:38-39
* Lamentations 01:7
* Luke 07:2-5
* Psalms 036:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1431, H2530, H2532, H2667, H2896, H3357, H3365, H3366, H3368, H4022, H4030, H4261, H4262, H5238, H7939, H8443, G927, G1784, G2472, G2570, G4185, G4186, G5092, G5093

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

costly, expensive, precious, precious things, precious treasures, valuable, valuables

### predestine

#### Related Ideas:

decide in advance

#### Definition:

The terms "predestine" and "predestined" refer to deciding or planning beforehand that something will happen.

* This term especially refers to God predestining people to receive eternal life.
* Sometimes the word "foreordain" is used, which also means to decide beforehand.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "predestine" could also be translated as "decide before" or "decide ahead of time."
* The term "predestined" could be translated as "decided long ago" or "planned ahead of time" or "decided beforehand."
* A phrase such as "predestined us" could be translated as "decided long ago that we" or "already decided ahead of time that we."
* Note that the translation of this term should be different from the translation of the term "foreknew."

(See also: [foreknew](../other/foreordain.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 02:6-7

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4309

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

decided in advance, predestine, predestined

### prey

#### Related Ideas:

birds of prey, prey on

#### Definition:

The term "prey" refers to something that is hunted, usually an animal that is used for food.

* When animals "prey on" other animals, it means that they look for other animals and they kill and eat them.
* A "bird of prey" is a bird that preys on other animals.

The terms "prey" and "prey on" can be used figuratively.

* In a figurative sense, "prey" can refer to a person who is taken advantage of, abused, or oppressed by a more powerful person.
* To "prey on" people means to take advantage of them by oppressing them or stealing something from them.

#### Picture of predator and Prey:

<a href="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/p/Preyon.png"><img src="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/p/Preyon.png" ></a>

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "prey" could also be translated as "hunted animal" or "hunted one" or "victim."

(See also: [oppress](../other/oppress.md))

#### Bible References:

* Jeremiah 12:09
* Psalms 104:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H400, H957, H962, H2963, H2964, H5706, H5861, H6561, H7997

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

birds of prey, prey, prey on

### priest

#### Related Ideas:

priesthood, priestly office

#### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

* In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
* The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
* The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
* Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
* The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
* In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
* Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
* In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
* In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
* The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
* Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
* The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](../names/aaron.md), [chief priests](../other/chiefpriests.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [mediator](../other/mediator.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:41
* Genesis 14:17-18
* Genesis 47:22
* John 01:19-21
* Luke 10:31
* Mark 01:44
* Mark 02:25-26
* Matthew 08:4
* Matthew 12:04
* Micah 03:9-11
* Nehemiah 10:28-29
* Nehemiah 10:34-36
* Revelation 01:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

priest, priest's, priesthood, priestly, priestly office, priests, priests', served as a priest

### prince

#### Related Ideas:

princess

#### Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

* The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
* Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
* In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
* The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
* Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
* Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
* In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
* When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
* When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [authority](../kt/authority.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md), [lord](../kt/lord.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md), [Savior](../kt/savior.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:29-32
* Genesis 12:15
* Genesis 49:26
* Luke 01:52

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5461, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G3175

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

prince, princes, princess, princesses

### prison

#### Related Ideas:

custody, dungeon, imprison, imprisonment, prisoner

#### Definition:

The term "prison" refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A "prisoner" is someone who has been put in the prison.

* The term "prisoners" can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will.
* The term "imprisoned" means "kept in a prison" or "kept in captivity."
* Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.
* To "hold someone in custody" is to put him in a prison or other place from which he cannot escape. Sometimes people were held in custody while they waited to be judged in a trial.
* A "dungeon" is an underground prison that is dark and damp.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Another word for "prison" is "jail."
* The term "prison" could also be translated as "dungeon" in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
* The term "prisoners" can also be translated as "captives." Other ways to translate "imprisoned" could be "kept as a prisoner" or "kept in captivity" or "held captive" or "shut up."

(See also: [captive](../other/captive.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 25:04
* Ephesians 04:01
* Luke 12:58
* Luke 22:33-34
* Mark 06:17
* Matthew 05:26
* Matthew 14:03
* Matthew 25:34-36

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H953, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5084, G5438, G5439

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

custody, dungeon, held ... in custody, hold ... in custody, holding ... in custody, imprison, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments, imprisons, prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons

### profane

#### Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

* A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
* The verb to "profane" could be translated as to "treat as unholy" or to "be irreverent toward" or to "dishonor."
* God told the Israelites that they "profaned" themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves "unclean" or "dishonored" by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
* Depending on the context, the adjective "profane" could be translated as "dishonoring" or "godless" or "unholy."

(See also: [defile](../other/defile.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [clean](../kt/clean.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 02:16-18
* Ezekiel 20:09
* Malachi 01:10-12
* Matthew 12:05
* Numbers 18:30-32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G952, G953

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

profane, profaned, profaning

### profit

#### Related Ideas:

profitable, unprofitable

#### Definition:

In general, the terms "profit" and "profitable" refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is "profitable" to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

* More specifically, the term "profit" often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is "profitable" if it gains more money than it spends.
* Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
* 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is "profitable" for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible's teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God's will.

The term "unprofitable" means to not be useful.

* It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
* Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
* This could be translated as "useless" or "worthless" or "not useful" or "unworthy" or "not beneficial" or "giving no benefit."

To "take advantage of" someone is to make extra profit from him because he is weak and unable to demand greater return.

(See also: [worthy](../kt/worthy.md))

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "profit" could also be translated as "benefit" or "help" or "gain."
* The term "profitable" could be translated as "useful" or "beneficial" or "helpful."
* To "profit from" something could be translated as "benefit from" or "gain money from" or "receive help from."
* In the context of a business, "profit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "money gained" or "surplus of money" or "extra money."

#### Bible References:

* Job 15:03
* Proverbs 10:16
* Jeremiah 02:08
* Ezekiel 18:12-13
* John 06:63
* Mark 08:36
* Matthew 16:26
* 2 Peter 02:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1214, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7939, H7965, G147, G512, G890, G1281, G2108, G2585, G2770, G2771, G3408, G3685, G4122, G4297, G4851, G5622, G5623

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

profit, profitable, profits, treated ... violently for profit, unprofitable

### promise

#### Related Ideas:

binding promise

#### Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

* The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
* Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
* A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
* To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [oath](../other/oath.md), [vow](../kt/vow.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 03:15-16
* Genesis 25:31-34
* Hebrews 11:09
* James 01:12
* Numbers 30:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H530, H562, H632, H1696, H2778, H3709, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

makes binding promises, promise, promised, promises

### prophet

#### Related Ideas:

prophecy, prophesy, prophetic, seer

#### Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

* Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
* A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
* Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
* Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
* In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
* For example the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
* An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
* Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
* A "seer" could be translated as, "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
* The term "prophetess" could be translated as, "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
* Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
* The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."
* The figurative expression, "law and the prophets" could also be translated as, "the books of the law and of the prophets" or "everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached."
* When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as "false prophet (seer)" or "prophet (seer) of a false god" or "prophet of Baal," for example.

(See also: [Baal](../names/baal.md), [divination](../other/divination.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [false prophet](../other/falseprophet.md), [fulfill](../kt/fulfill.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [vision](../other/vision.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
* Acts 03:25
* John 01:43-45
* Malachi 04:4-6
* Matthew 01:23
* Matthew 02:18
* Matthew 05:17
* Psalm 051:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5046, H5197, H7200, H7203, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

give ... prophecies, prophecies, prophecy, prophesied, prophesies, prophesy, prophesying, prophet, prophet's, prophetess, prophetic, prophets, seer, seer's, seers, seers'

### propitiation

#### Definition:

<!-- (We have removed all forms of "propitiation" from the ULB as of 4/16/2020. -->

The term "propitiation" refers to a sacrifice that is made to satisfy or fulfill the justice of God and to appease his wrath.

* The offering of the sacrificial blood of Jesus Christ is the propitiation to God for mankind's sins.
* Jesus' death on the cross appeased God's wrath against sin. This provided a way for God to look on people with favor and offer them eternal life.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could be translated as "appeasement" or "causing God to forgive sins and grant favor to people."
* The word "atonement" is close in meaning to "propitiation." It is important to compare how these two terms are used.

(See also: [atonement](../kt/atonement.md), [everlasting](../kt/eternity.md), [forgive](../kt/forgive.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:02
* 1 John 04:10
* Romans 03:25-26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2433, G2434, G2435

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

propitiation

### prosper

#### Related Ideas:

prosperity, prosperous

#### Definition:

The term "prosper" generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or countryies are "prosperous," it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing "prosperity."

* The term "prosperous" often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
* In the Bible, the term "prosperous" also includes good health and being blessed with children.
* A "prosperous" city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
* The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God's teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "prosper" could also be translated as "succeed spiritually" or "be blessed by God" or "experience good things" or "live well."
* The term "prosperous" could also be translated as "successful" or "wealthy" or "spiritually fruitful."
* "Prosperity" could also be translated as "well-being" or "wealth" or "success" or "abundant blessings."
* "Welfare" is another word for "prosperity."

(See also: [bless](../kt/bless.md), [fruit](../other/fruit.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
* Deuteronomy 23:06
* Job 36:11
* Leviticus 25:26-28
* Psalms 001:3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H202, H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H1995, H2428, H2896, H2898, H2981, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3519, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965, H8454, G2137

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

caused ... to prosper, prosper, prospered, prospering, prosperity, prosperous

### prostitute

#### Related Ideas:

prostitution

#### Definition:

The terms "prostitute" and "harlot" both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

* In the Bible, the word "prostitute" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
* The expression "play the harlot" means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
* To "prostitute oneself" to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
* In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
* This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this.

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [sexual immorality](../other/fornication.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 34:31
* Genesis 38:21
* Luke 15:30
* Matthew 21:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G4204

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

act like a prostitute, acted like a prostitute, acted like prostitutes, prostitute, prostitute's, prostituted, prostitutes, prostitution

### prostrate

#### Definition:

The term "prostrate" means to be lying face down, stretched out on the ground.

* To "fall prostrate" or to "prostrate oneself" before someone means to suddenly bow down very low or in front of that person.
* Usually this position of being prostrate is a response that shows shock, amazement, and awe because of something miraculous that happened. It also shows honor and respect for the person being bowed to.
* Being prostrate also was a way to worship God. People often responded this way to Jesus in thanksgiving and worship when he did a miracle or to honor him as a great teacher.
* Depending on the context, ways to translate "prostrated" could include "bowed down low with the face to the ground" or "worshiped him by lying face down in front of him" or "bowed down low to the ground in amazement" or "worshiped."
* The phrase "will not prostrate ourselves" could be translated as "will not worship" or "will not lie face down in worship" or "will not bow down and worship."
* "Prostrate himself to" could also be translated as "worship" or "bow down in front of."

(See also: [awe](../other/awe.md), [bow](../other/bow.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 17:36-38
* Genesis 43:28
* Revelation 19:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5307, H5457, H6440, H6915, H7812

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

prostrate, prostrated

### proud

#### Related Ideas:

pride, prideful

#### Definition:

The terms "proud" and "prideful" refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

* A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
* Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
* The terms "proud" and "pride" can also be used in a positive sense, such as being "proud of" what someone else has achieved and being "proud of" your children. The expression "take pride in your work" means to find joy in doing your work well.
* Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of "pride."
* The term "prideful" is always negative, with the meaning of being "arrogant" or "conceited" or "self-important."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The noun "pride" could be translated as "arrogance" or "conceit" or "self-importance."
* In other contexts, "pride" could be translated as "joy" or "satisfaction" or "pleasure."
* To be "proud of" could also be translated as "happy with" or "satisfied with" or "joyful about (the accomplishments of)."
* The phrase "take pride in your work" could be translated as, "find satisfaction in doing your work well."
* The expression "take pride in Yahweh" could also be translated as "be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done" or "be happy about how amazing Yahweh is."

(See also: [arrogant](../other/arrogant.md), [humble](../kt/humble.md), [joy](../other/joy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 03:6-7
* 2 Corinthians 01:12
* Galatians 06:3-5
* Isaiah 13:19
* Luke 01:51

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pride, prideful, proud, proudly, source of pride

### proverb

#### Definition:

A proverb is a short statement that expresses some wisdom or truth.

* Proverbs are powerful because they are easy to remember and repeat.
* Often a proverb will include practical examples from everyday life.
* Some proverbs are very clear and direct, while others are more difficult to understand.
* King Solomon was known for his wisdom and wrote over 1,000 proverbs.
* Jesus often used proverbs or parables when he taught people.
* Ways to translate "proverb" could include "wise saying" or "true word."

(See also: [Solomon](../names/solomon.md), [true](../kt/true.md), [wise](../kt/wise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 04:32-34
* 1 Samuel 24:12-13
* 2 Peter 02:22
* Luke 04:24
* Proverbs 01:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2420, H4911, H4912, G3850, G3942

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

proverb, proverbs, speak ... proverb

### province

#### Related Ideas:

provincial

#### Definitions:

A province is a division or part of a nation or empire. The term "provincial" describes something that is related to a province, such as a provincial governor.

* For example, the ancient Persian Empire was divided up into provinces such as Media, Persia, Syria, and Egypt.
* During the time of the New Testament, the Roman Empire was divided up into provinces such as Macedonia, Asia, Syria, Judea, Samaria, Galilee, and Galatia.
* Each province had its own ruling authority, who was subject to the king or ruler of the empire. This ruler was sometimes called a "provincial official" or "provincial governor."
* The terms "province" and "provincial" could also be translated as "region" and "regional."

(See also: [Asia](../names/asia.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Esther](../names/esther.md), [Galatia](../names/galatia.md), [Galilee](../names/galilee.md), [Judea](../names/judea.md), [Macedonia](../names/macedonia.md), [Medes](../names/mede.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [Samaria](../names/samaria.md), [Syria](../names/syria.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 19:30
* Daniel 03:02
* Daniel 06:02
* Ecclesiastes 02:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4082, H4083, H5675, H5676, G1885

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

province, provinces, provincial

### provoke

#### Related Ideas:

provocation

#### Definitions:

The term "provoke" means to cause someone to experience a negative reaction or feeling.

* To provoke someone to anger means to do something that causes that person to be angry. This could also be translated as to "cause to become angry" or to "anger."
* When used in a phrase such as, "do not provoke him," this could be translated as "do not anger him" or "do not cause him to be angry" or "do not make him angry with you."

(See also: [angry](../other/angry.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 20:27-29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3707, H3708, H4784, H4843, H5006, H7065, H7069, H7107, H7264, G2042, G3863, G3947, G3949, G4292

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

provocation, provoke, provoke ... to anger, provoked, provoked ... to anger, provokes, provoking

### prudent

#### Related Ideas:

prudence, prudently

#### Definitions:

The term "prudent" describes a person who thinks carefully about his actions and makes wise decisions. It also describes what a prudent person does.

* Often "prudence" refers to the ability to make wise decisions about practical, physical matters, such as in managing money or property.
* Although "prudence" and "wisdom" are similar in meaning, often "wisdom" is more general and focuses on spiritual or moral matters.
* Depending on the context, "prudent" could also be translated as "shrewd" or "careful" or "wise."

(See also: [shrewd](../other/shrewd.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [wise](../kt/wise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Proverbs 08:4-5
* Proverbs 12:23-24
* Proverbs 27:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H995, H5843, H6175, H6191, H6195, H7919, H7922

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

behaved prudently, prudence, prudent, prudent behavior, prudently

### psalm

#### Related Ideas:

praise in song, psalmist, psalm of praise, song

#### Definition:

The term "psalm" refers to a sacred song, often in the form of a poem that was written to be sung.

* The Old Testament Book of Psalms has a collection of these songs written by King David and other Israelites such as Moses, Solomon, and Asaph, among others.
* The psalms were used by the nation of Israel in their worship of God.
* Psalms can be used to express joy, faith, and reverence, as well as pain and sorrow.
* In the New Testament, Christians are instructed to sing psalms to God as a way of worshiping him.
* A "psalmist" is someone who composes or sings psalms.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [faith](../kt/faith.md), [joy](../other/joy.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 13:33
* Acts 13:35
* Colossians 03:16
* Luke 20:42

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2158, H2167, H4210, G5567, G5568

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

praise ... in song, psalm, psalmist, psalms, psalms of praise, songs

### puffed up

#### Definition:

The term "puffed up" refers literally to something that is full of air and so larger than its normal size. is a figurative expression that refers to being boastful, proud, or arrogant.

* A person who is puffed up has an attitude of feeling superior to others.
* Paul taught that knowing a lot of information or having religious experiences can lead to being "puffed up" or proud.
* Other languages may have a similar idiom or a different one that expresses this meaning, such as "having a big head."
* This could also be translated as "very proud" or "disdainful of others" or "haughty" or "thinking oneself better than others."

(See also: [arrogant](../other/arrogant.md), [proud](../other/proud.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:6-7
* 1 Corinthians 08:01
* 2 Corinthians 12:6-7
* Habakkuk 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6075, G5448

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

puffed up, puffs up

### punish

#### Related Ideas:

bring down judgment, deal with, inflict punishment, judgment, punishment, unpunished

#### Definition:

The term "punish" means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term "punishment" refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

* Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
* God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
* God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
* Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person's punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
* The expression "leave someone unpunished" means to decide not to punish someone for their wrongdoing.
* The expression "go unpunished" means to sin and not be punished for it. God often allows people to go unpunished as he waits for them to repent.
* To "bring down judgment" on someone is to punish him after declaring him guilty of wrongful behavior.
* Sometimes "judgment" refers to punishment.
* Sometimes "deal with" means punish.

(See also: [just](../kt/justice.md), [repent](../kt/repent.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:18
* 2 Thessalonians 01:09
* Acts 04:21
* Acts 07:59-60
* Genesis 04:15
* Luke 23:16
* Matthew 25:46

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2403, H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5352, H5414, H5771, H6031, H6213, H6485, H6486, H7451, H7561, H7999, H8011, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G2851, G2917, G2920, G3811, G5097

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bring down judgment, go ... unpunished, inflicted punishment, inflicting punishment, judgment, leave ... unpunished, punish, punished, punishes, punishing, punishment, unpunished

### pure

#### Related Ideas:

impure, purge, purification, purify, purity, refine

#### Definition:

To be "pure" means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

* In regard to Old Testament laws, "purify" and "purification" refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
* The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
* In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
* The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God's forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.
* Something that is "impure" is not pure.
* To "refine" is to purify metal. This is done by heating the metal over a fire until it melts and removing what should not be there.
* Someone who has pure motives is somone who only wants to do what is good.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "purify" could be translated as "make pure" or "cleanse" or "cleanse from all contamination" or "get rid of all sin."
* A phrase such as "when the time for their purification was over" could be translated as "when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days."
* The phrase "provided purification for sins" could be translated as "provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin."
* Other ways to translate "purification" could include "cleansing" or "spiritual washing" or "becoming ritually clean."
* Other ways to translate "pure motives" or "purity of motives" is "sincere" or "sincerity."

(See also: [atonement](../kt/atonement.md), [clean](../kt/clean.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 01:05
* Exodus 31:6-9
* Hebrews 09:13-15
* James 04:08
* Luke 02:22
* Revelation 14:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H571, H1249, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H2896, H3800, H5079, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, G48, G49, G53, G54, G169, G185, G505, G1103, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

impure, impure thing, impurities, impurity, pure, purer, purge, purification, purified, purifies, purify, purity, refine, refined, refiner, refiner's, refining

### purple

#### Definitions:

The term "purple" is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

* In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
* Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
* Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
* Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
* Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
* Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(See also: [ephod](../kt/ephod.md), [Philippi](../names/philippi.md), [royal](../other/royal.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 02:13-14
* Daniel 05:7
* Daniel 05:29-31
* Proverbs 31:22-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H710, H711, H713, G4209, G4210, G4211

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

purple

### push

#### Definition:

The term "push" literally means to physically move something away using force. There are also several figurative meanings of this term.

* The expression "push away" can mean "reject" or "refuse to help."
* To "push down" can mean to "oppress" or "persecute" or "defeat."
* To "push someone out" can mean to get rid of someone or send someone away.
* The expression "push ahead" means to persevere or to continue doing something without really making sure it is right or safe.

(See also: [oppress](../other/oppress.md), [persecute](../other/persecute.md), [reject](../other/reject.md))

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1556, H1760, H1920, H3276, H3423, H5055, H5186, H5493, G683, G4261

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

push, push ... away, pushed, pushed ... away, pushed ... down, pushing

### qualify

#### Related Ideas:

disqualify, fail the test

#### Definition:

The term "qualify" refers to earning the right to receive certain benefits or to be recognized as having certain skills.

* A person who is "qualified" for a particular job has the necessary skills and training to do that job.
* The believer cannot earn the right to be part of God's kingdom. He is only qualified because God has redeemed him with the blood of Christ.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, "qualified" could be translated as "equipped" or "skilled" or "enabled."
* To "qualify" someone could be translated as to "equip" or to "enable" or to "empower."

(See also: [Colossae](../names/colossae.md), [godly](../kt/godly.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [light](../other/light.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [redeem](../kt/redeem.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 01:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3581, G96

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

disqualified, failed the test, qualified, qualify

### queen

#### Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

* Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Xerxes.
* Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
* The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
* A term such as "queen mother" usually referred to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence; Athaliah, for example, influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: [Xerxes](../names/ahasuerus.md), [Athaliah](../names/athaliah.md), [Esther](../names/esther.md), [king](../other/king.md). [Persia](../names/persia.md) [ruler](../other/ruler.md), [Sheba](../names/sheba.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 10:10
* 1 Kings 11:18-19
* 2 Kings 10:12-14
* Acts 08:27
* Esther 01:17
* Luke 11:31
* Matthew 12:42

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1404, H1377, H4410, H4433, H4436, H4438, H4446, H7694, H8282, G938

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

queen, queens

### quench

#### Related Ideas:

put out, unquenchable

#### Definition:

The term "quench" means to stop something that is demanding to be satisfied. The expression "put out" can also mean the same.

* The term "quench" is usually used in the context of quenching thirst, and means to stop being thirsty by drinking something.
* The expressions "quench" and "put out" can also be used to refer to stopping a fire.
* Both thirst and fire are quenched with water.
* A fire that is "unquenchable" cannot be stopped. It continues to burn.
* Paul uses the term "quench" in a figurative way when he instructs believers to not "quench the Holy Spirit." This means to not discourage people from allowing the Holy Spirit to produce his fruits and gifts in them. Quenching the Holy Spirit means preventing the Holy Spirit from freely manifesting his power and work in people.

(See also: [fruit](../other/fruit.md), [gift](../kt/gift.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:19
* Ezekiel 20:47
* Isaiah 01:31
* Jeremiah 21:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1846, H3518, H7665, G762, G4570

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

put out, quench, quenched, unquenchable

### rage

#### Related Ideas:

enrage

#### Definitions:

Rage is excessive anger what is out of control. When someone rages, it means that person is expressing anger in a destructive way.

* Rage happens when the emotion of anger causes a person to lose self control.
* When controlled by rage, people commit destructive acts and say destructive things.
* When the "nations rage," their to ungodly people disobey God and rebel against him.
* To be "filled with rage" means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.
* "Senseless rage" is rage that comes from no good reason or that prevents the angry person from thinking clearly.
* To "enrage" someone means to make them extremely angry.
* To "enrage" against someone is to be extremely angry with someone.
* When someone is "enraged" he is extremely angry."

"Rage" can also be used figuratively.

* The term to "rage" can also mean to move powerfully, in descriptions such as a "raging" storm or ocean waves that "rage."

(See also: [angry](../other/angry.md), [self-control](../other/selfcontrol.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:25
* Daniel 03:13
* Luke 04:28
* Numbers 25:11
* Proverbs 19:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H398, H1348, H1993, H2121, H2195, H2196, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2734, H2740, H3820, H5590, H5678, H7264, H7265, H7266, H7267, H7857, G454, G1693, G2372, G2830, G3710, G5433

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

enrage, enraged, rage, raged, rages, raging, senseless rage

### raise

#### Related Ideas:

arise, rise, risen

#### Definition:

**raise, raise up**

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

* The figurative phrase "raise up" means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
* Sometimes "raise up" means to restore or rebuild.
* "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
* Sometimes "raise up" means to exalt someone or something or make someone or something truly great.

**rise, arise**

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose," and "arose" express past action.

* When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
* If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
* Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen!"
* A person who suddenly becomes important is said to "arise."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "raise" or "raise up" could be translated as "lift up" or "make higher."
* To "raise up" could also be translated as to "cause to appear" or to "appoint" or to "bring into existence."
* To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as, "cause your enemies to be very strong."
* The phrase "raise someone from the dead" could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
* Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as "provide" or to "appoint" or to "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
* The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
* Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: [resurrection](../kt/resurrection.md), [appoint](../kt/appoint.md), [exalt](../kt/exalt.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:41
* 2 Samuel 07:12
* Acts 10:40
* Colossians 03:01
* Deuteronomy 13:1-3
* Jeremiah 06:01
* Judges 02:18
* Luke 07:22
* Matthew 20:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1804, H2210, H2224, H5375, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1127, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891, G5312

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

arise, arisen, arises, raise, raise up, raised, raises, raising, raising up, rise, rise up, risen, rises, rising, rose

### ransom

#### Definition:

The term "ransom" refers to a sum of money or other payment that is demanded or paid for the release of a person who is held captive.

* As a verb, to "ransom" means to make a payment or to do something self-sacrificially in order to rescue someone who has been captured, enslaved or imprisoned. This meaning of "buy back" is similar to the meaning of "redeem."
* Jesus allowed himself to be killed as a ransom to free sinful people from their enslavement to sin. This act of God buying back his people through paying the penalty of their sin is also called "redemption" in the Bible.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term to "ransom" could also be translated as to "pay to release" or to "pay a price to free" or to "buy back."
* The phrase to "pay a ransom" could be translated as to "pay the price (of freedom)" or to "pay the penalty (to free people)" or to "make the required payment."
* The noun "ransom" could be translated as "a buying back" or "a penalty paid" or "the price paid" (to free or buy back people or land).
* The terms a "ransom" and a "redemption" have the same meaning in English but are sometimes used slightly differently. Other languages may have only one term for this concept.
* Make sure this is translated differently from "atonement."

(See also: [atonement](../kt/atonement.md), [redeem](../kt/redeem.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 02:06
* Isaiah 43:03
* Job 06:23
* Leviticus 19:20
* Matthew 20:28
* Psalms 049:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1350, H3724, H6299, H6304, G487, G3083

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ransom, ransomed

### reap

#### Related Ideas:

reaper

#### Definition:

The term "reap" means to harvest crops such as grain. A "reaper" is someone who harvests the crop.

* Usually reapers harvested the crops by hand, pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.
* The idea of reaping a harvest is often used figuratively to refer to telling people the good news about Jesus and bringing them into God's family.
* This term is also used figuratively to refer to the consequences that come from a person's actions, as in the saying "a man reaps what he plants."
* Other ways to translate to "reap" and "reaper" could include to "harvest" and "harvester" (or "person who harvests").

(See also: [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [harvest](../other/harvest.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 06:9-10
* Matthew 06:25-26
* Matthew 13:30
* Matthew 13:36-39
* Matthew 25:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4672, H7114, H7938, G2325, G2327

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reap, reaped, reaper, reapers, reaping, reaps

### rebel

#### Related Ideas:

rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

#### Definition:

The term "rebel" means to refuse to submit to someone's authority. A "rebellious" person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called "a rebel."

* A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
* A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
* Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
* The term to "rebel" could also be translated as to "disobey" or to "revolt," depending on the context.
* "Rebellious" could also be translated as "continually disobedient" or "refusing to obey."
* The term "rebellion" means "refusal to obey" or "disobedience" or "law-breaking."
* The phrase "the rebellion" or "a rebellion" can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [governor](../other/governor.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 12:18-19
* 1 Samuel 12:14
* 1 Timothy 01:9-11
* 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
* Acts 21:38
* Luke 23:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4754, H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7300, H7846, G436, G485, G498, G506, G3893, G4955

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

rebel, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness, rebels, revolt

### rebuke

#### Related Ideas:

correct, correction

#### Definition:

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin. Such a correction is a rebuke.

* A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
* The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
* The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
* The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
* "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also [admonish](../other/admonish.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md))

#### Bible References:

* Mark 01:23-26
* Mark 16:14
* Matthew 08:26-27
* Matthew 17:17-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H3256, H4045, H4148, H7626, H8156, H8433, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

correct, corrected, correction, corrections, corrects, give correction, rebuke, rebuked, rebukes

### receive

#### Related Ideas:

abstain, receiver

#### Definition:

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

* To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
* There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
* To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
* To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
* When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.
* The word "abstain" means to refuse to take or receive or have something.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
* The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
* The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [lord](../kt/lord.md), [save](../kt/save.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 05:09
* 1 Thessalonians 01:06
* 1 Thessalonians 04:01
* Acts 08:15
* Jeremiah 32:33
* Luke 09:05
* Malachi 03:10-12
* Psalms 049:14-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3557, H3925, H3947, H5144, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1184, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4047, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

abstain, receive, receive back, received, received ... in full, receiver, receives, receiving

### reconcile

#### Related Ideas:

reconciliation

#### Definition:

The term "reconcile" refers to "making peace" between people who were formerly enemies of each other. "Reconciliation" is that act of making peace

* In the Bible, this term usually refers to God reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
* Because of sin, all human beings are God's enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
* Through trusting in Jesus' sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "reconcile" could be translated as "make peace" or "restore good relations" or "cause to be friends."
* The term "reconciliation" could be translated as "restoring good relations" or "making peace" or "causing peaceful relating."

(See also: [peace](../other/peace.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 05:19
* Colossians 01:18-20
* Matthew 05:24
* Proverbs 13:17-18
* Romans 05:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G525, G604, G1259, G2643, G2644

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reconcile, reconciled, reconciles, reconciliation, reconciling

### redeem

#### Related Ideas:

redeemer, redemption

#### Definition:

To "redeem" and "redemption" refer to buy back something or someone that was previously owned or held captive. "Redemption" is the action of doing that. A "redeemer" is someone who redeems something or someone.

* God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things.
* For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word "ransom" also refers to this practice.
* If someone's land had been sold, a relative of that person could "redeem" or "buy back" that land so that it would stay in the family.
* These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people's sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "redeem" could also be translated as "buy back" or "pay to free (someone)" or "ransom."
* The term "redemption" could be translated as "ransom" or "freedom payment" or "the buying back."
* The words "ransom" and "redeem" have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these terms. The word "ransom," however, can also mean the payment necessary.

(See also: [free](../other/free.md), [ransom](../kt/ransom.md))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 01:13-14
* Ephesians 01:7-8
* Ephesians 05:16
* Galatians 03:13-14
* Galatians 04:05
* Luke 02:38
* Ruth 02:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6306, H6304, H7069, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

redeem, redeemed, redeemer, redeems, redemption

### reed

#### Definitions:

The term "reed" refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

* The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called "bulrushes." They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
* These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
* The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(See also: [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Nile River](../names/nileriver.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 14:15
* Luke 07:24
* Matthew 11:07
* Matthew 12:20
* Psalm 068:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H98, H100, H260, G4464, H5488, H6169, H7070, G2563

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reed, reeds

### refuge

#### Related Ideas:

refugee, shelter

#### Definition:

The term "refuge" refers to a place or condition of safety and protection. A "refugee" is someone who is seeking a safe place. A "shelter" refers to a place that can protect from weather or danger.

* In the Bible, God is often referred to as a refuge where his people can be safe, protected, and cared for.
* The term "city of refuge" in the Old Testament referred to one of several cities where a person who accidentally killed someone could go for protection from people who would attack them in revenge.
* A "shelter" is often a physical structure such as a building or roof that can provide protection to people or animals.
* Sometimes "shelter" means "protection," as when Lot said that his guests were "under the shelter" of his roof. He was saying that they should be safe because he was taking responsibility to protect them as members of his household.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "refuge" could be translated as "safe place" or "place of protection."
* "Refugees" are people leaving their home to escape from a dangerous situation, and could be translated as "aliens," "homeless people," or "exiles."
* Depending on the context, the term "shelter" could be translated as "something that protects" or "protection" or "protected place."
* If it refers to a physical structure, "shelter" could also be translated as "protective building" or "house of safety."
* The phrase "into safe shelter" could be translated as "into a safe place" or "into a place that will protect."
* To "find shelter" or to "take shelter" or to "take refuge" could be translated as to "find a place of safety" or to "put oneself in a protected place."

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 22:3-4
* Deuteronomy 32:37-38
* Isaiah 23:14
* Jeremiah 16:19
* Numbers 35:24-25
* Psalm 046:01
* Psalms 028:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2620, H4268, H4498, H4581, H4585, H4733, H4869

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

find refuge, refuge, refugee, refugees, shelter, sheltered, sheltering, shelters, take refuge

### reign

#### Definition:

The term to "reign" means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

* The term "reign" is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
* God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
* When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
* This term could also be translated as "absolute rule" or "rule as king."

(See also: [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 02:11-13
* Genesis 36:34-36
* Luke 01:30-33
* Luke 19:26-27
* Matthew 02:22-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, G936, G2231, G4821

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reign, reigned, reigning, reigns, set ... to reign

### reject

#### Related Ideas:

deny, despise, refuse, rejection, scorn, set aside, stay away from, throw away

#### Definition:

To "reject" someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing. The term "reject" can also mean to "refuse to believe in" something. To reject God or his laws means to refuse to obey him.

* To "deny" what someone says is to say that it is not true.
* To "deny" someone is to say that one does not associate with that person.
* To "despise" or "scorn" people or things is to have no respect for them.
* An "object of scorn" is someone or something that people have no respect for.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, the term "reject" could also be translated by "not accept" or "stop helping" or "refuse to obey" or "stop obeying."
* In some languages the idea of "reject" is expressed as "push away" or "set aside" or "stay away from."
* In the expression "stone that the builders rejected," the term "rejected" could be translated as "refused to use" or "did not accept" or "threw away" or "got rid of as worthless."
* In the context of people who rejected God's commandments, rejected could be translated as "refused to obey" his commands or "stubbornly chose to not accept" God's laws.

(See also: [command](../kt/command.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [stiff-necked](../other/stiffnecked.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:12-14
* Hosea 04:6-7
* Isaiah 41:09
* John 12:48-50
* Mark 07:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H936, H937, H947, H959, H2151, H2186, H2778, H2781, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G114, G483, G550, G579, G580, G581, G593, G683, G720, G1609, G1848, G3868

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

denied, denies, deny, despise, despised, despises, refuse, refused, reject, rejected, rejecting, rejection, rejects, scorn, scorns, set ... aside, sets ... aside, stay away from, throw away, tossed aside

### remnant

#### Related Ideas:

remaining

#### Definition:

The term "remnant" literally refers to people or things that are "remaining" or "left over" from a larger amount or group.

* Often a "remnant" refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
* Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
* Paul talks about there being a "remnant" of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
* The term "remnant" implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.
* An "escaped remnant" is a small number of people who did not die when most of their people did die in a war.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* A phrase such as "the remnant of this people" could be translated as "the rest of these people" or "the people who remain faithful" or "the people who are left."
* The "whole remnant of people" could be translated by "all the rest of the people" or "the remaining people."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:17
* Amos 09:12
* Ezekiel 06:8-10
* Genesis 45:07
* Isaiah 11:11
* Micah 04:6-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3498, H3499, H4422, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8300, G2640, G3005

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

escaped remnant, remain, remained, remaining, remains, remnant

### renown

#### Related Ideas:

famous

#### Definition:

The term "renown" refers to the greatness associated with being well known and having a praiseworthy reputation. Something or someone is "renowned" if it has renown.

* A "renowned" person is someone who is well known and highly esteemed.
* "Renown" especially refers to a good reputation that is widely known over a long period of time.
* A city that is "renowned" is often well known for its wealth and prosperity.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "renown" could also be translated as "fame" or "esteemed reputation" or "greatness that is well-known by many people."
* The term "renowned" could also be translated as "well known and highly esteemed" or "having an excellent reputation."
* The expression "May the Lord's name be renowned in Israel" could be translated as "May the Lord's name be well known and honored by the people of Israel."
* The phrase "men of renown" could be translated as "men well known for their courage" or "famous warriors" or "highly esteemed men."
* The expression "your renown endures through all generations" could be translated as "throughout the years people will hear about how great you are" or "your greatness is seen and heard by people in every generation."

(See also: [honor](../kt/honor.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 06:4
* Psalms 135:12-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1984, H7121, H8034

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

famous, renown, renowned

### repent

#### Related Ideas:

change his mind, hold back, regret, relent, repentance

#### Definition:

The terms "repent" and "repentance" refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

* To "repent" literally means to "change one's mind."
* In the Bible, "repent" usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God's way of thinking and acting.
* When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.
* A person who "relents" decides not to punish another person.
* A person who "regrets" having done something wishes he had never done that thing.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "repent" can be translated with a word or phrase that means "turn back (to God)" or "turn away from sin and toward God" or "turn toward God, away from sin."
* Often the term "repentance" can be translated using the verb "repent." For example, "God has given repentance to Israel" could be translated as "God has enabled Israel to repent."
* Other ways to translate "repentance" could include "turning away from sin" or "turning to God and away from sin."

(See also: [forgive](../kt/forgive.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [turn](../other/turn.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 03:19-20
* Luke 03:3
* Luke 03:8
* Luke 05:32
* Luke 24:47
* Mark 01:14-15
* Matthew 03:03
* Matthew 03:11
* Matthew 04:17
* Romans 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5162, H8133, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

change ... mind, changed ... mind, hold back, regret, regretted, relent, relented, relenting, repent, repentance, repented, repents

### report

#### Related Ideas:

account, bring news, give an account, news, rumor

#### Definition:

The term to "report" means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A "report" is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

* "Report" could also be translated as "tell" or "explain" or "tell the details of."
* The expression "Report this to no one" could be translated as, "Don't talk about this with anyone" or "Don't tell anyone about this."
* Ways to translate "a report" could include "an explanation" or "a story" or "a detailed account," depending on the context.
* A "rumor" is a report that no one knows for sure is true.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:22-23
* John 12:38
* Luke 05:15
* Luke 08:34-35
* Matthew 28:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1319, H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H5608, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8435, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1334, G1834, G2036, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3141, G3377

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

account, accounts, bring ... report, brought ... news, brought ... report, gave ... a full account, give ... a full account, news, report, reported, reports, rumor, rumors, spread ... about

### reproach

<!-- All forms of "reproach" have been removed from the ULB as of 4/22/2020. -->

#### Definition:

To reproach someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person's character or behavior. A reproach is the negative comment about the person.

* Saying that a person is "above reproach" or "beyond reproach" or "without reproach" means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.
* The word "reproach" could also be translated as "accusation" or "shame" or "disgrace."
* To "reproach" could also be translated as to "rebuke" or to "accuse" or to "criticize," depending on the context.

(See also: [accuse](../other/accuse.md), [rebuke](../other/rebuke.md), [shame](../other/shame.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 05:7-8
* 1 Timothy 06:13-14
* Jeremiah 15:15-16
* Job 16:9-10
* Proverbs 18:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1442, H2659, H2778, H2781, H3637, H3639, H7036, G410, G423, G3059, G3679, G3680, G5195, G5196

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reproach

### rest

#### Related Ideas:

at ease, pause, refresh, relief, restless

#### Definition:

The term to "rest" literally means to stop working. Usually it means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. A "rest" is what someone has when he stops working. To "rest secure" is to feel safe. To "rest" an object on something means to "place" or "put" it there. An object that is "resting" somewhere is simply in that place. A boat that "comes to rest" somewhere has "stopped" or "landed" there. The phrase "the rest of" refers to the remainder of something.

* God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the "Sabbath" day.
* To be "at ease" is to feel safe or comfortable.
* To "pause" is to stop doing something for a while.
* To "refresh" someone is to give him rest and whatever else he needs so he can get his strength back.
* "Relief" is the rest a person has when a problem becomes less severe or ends.
* If someone is "restless," he feels anxious or bored and cannot rest.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When Jesus said, "I will give you rest," this could also be translated as " I will cause you to stop carrying your burden" or "I will help you be at peace."
* God said, "they will not enter my rest," and this statement could be translated as "they will not experience my blessings of rest" or "they will not experience the peace that comes from trusting in me."
* The term "the rest" could be translated as "those that remain" or "all the others" or "everything that is left."

(See also: [remnant](../kt/remnant.md), [Sabbath](../kt/sabbath.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:41
* Genesis 02:03
* Jeremiah 06:16-19
* Matthew 11:29
* Revelation 14:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3427, H3498, H3499, H3885, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5162, H5183, H5315, H5564, H6314, H6960, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7663, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7951, H7961, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2838, G4520

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

at ease, be at rest, give ... rest, pause, refresh, refreshed, relief, rest, rest secure, rested, rested secure, resting, resting place, resting places, restless, rests

### restore

#### Related Ideas:

bring back, mend, recover, restoration, reverse

#### Definition:

The terms "restore" and "restoration" refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

* When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been "healed."
* When a broken relationship is restored, it has been "reconciled." God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
* When property is restored, it has been "repaired" or "replaced" or "given back" to its owner.
* When people have been restored to their home country, they have been "brought back" or "returned" to their country.
* A person who "recovers" from sickness becomes healthy again.
* A person who "recovers" a possession either finds it when it has been lost or gets it back from someone who has stolen it.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "restore" could include "renew" or "repay" or "return" or "heal" or "bring back."
* Other expressions for this term could be "make new" or "make like new again."
* Depending on the context, "restoration" could be translated as "renewal" or "healing" or "reconciliation."

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 5:10
* Acts 3:21
* Acts 15:15-18
* Isaiah 49:5-6
* Jeremiah 15:19-21
* Lamentations 05:22
* Leviticus 6:5-7
* Luke 19:8
* Matthew 12:13
* Psalm 80:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2421, H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bring back, mending, recover, restoration, restore, restored, restorer, restores, restoring, reverse

### resurrection

#### Definition:

The term "resurrection" refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

* To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
* The word "resurrection" often refers to Jesus' coming back to life after he died.
* When Jesus said, "I am the Resurrection and the Life" he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* A person's "resurrection" could be translated as his "coming back to life" or his "becoming alive again after being dead."
* The literal meaning of this word is "a rising up" or "the act of being raised (from the dead)." These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](../kt/life.md), [death](../other/death.md), [raise](../other/raise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:13
* 1 Peter 03:21
* Hebrews 11:35
* John 05:28-29
* Luke 20:27
* Luke 20:36
* Matthew 22:23
* Matthew 22:30
* Philippians 03:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G386, G1454, G1815

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

resurrection

### return

#### Definition:

The term "return" means to go back or to give something back.

* To "return to" a place or person means to bo back to that place or person again.
* To "return to" an activity means to start doing that activity again.
* When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they started to worship them again.
* When the Israelites returned to Yahweh, they repented and worshiped Yahweh again.
* To "return" land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: [turn](../other/turn.md))

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290, G4762

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

return, return back, returned, returning, returns

### reveal

#### Related Ideas:

revelation

#### Definition:

The term "reveal" means to cause something to be known. A "revelation" is something that has been made known.

* God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
* God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
* When Paul said that he received the gospel by "revelation from Jesus Christ," he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
* In the New Testament book "Revelation," God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "reveal" could include "make known" or "disclose" or "show clearly."
* Depending on the context, possible ways to translate "revelation" could be "communication from God" or "things that God has revealed" or "teachings about God." It is best to keep the meaning of "reveal" in the translation.
* The phrase "where there is no revelation" could be translated as "when God is not revealing himself to people" or "when God is not speaking to people" or "among people whom God has not communicating."

(See also: [dream](../other/dream.md), [vision](../other/vision.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 11:1-2
* Ephesians 03:05
* Galatians 01:12
* Lamentations 02:13-14
* Matthew 10:26
* Philippians 03:15
* Revelation 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1540, H1541, H1540, H5046, H7200, G601, G602, G1213, G1453, G3377, G5318, G5319, G5537

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reveal, revealed, revealing, reveals, revelation, revelations

### revere

#### Related Ideas:

respect, respectful, reverence, reverent

#### Definition:

The term "reverence" refers to feelings of profound, deep respect for someone or something. "Revere" someone or something is to show reverence towards that person or thing.

* Feelings of reverence can be seen in actions that honor the person who is revered.
* The fear of the Lord is an inner reverence that manifests itself in obedience to God's commandments.
* This term could also be translated as "fear and honor" or "sincere respect."

(See also: [fear](../kt/fear.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md), [obey](../other/obey.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:15-17
* Hebrews 11:7
* Isaiah 44:17
* Psalms 005:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3372, H3373, H3374, H4172, H6342, H7812, G127, G1788, G2125, G2412, G5399, G5401

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

respect, respected, respectful, revere, revered, reverence, reverences, reverent, show ... respect

### reward

#### Related Ideas:

pay, penalty, prize, recompense, retribution, rewarder, wage

#### Definition:

The term "reward" refers to what a person receives or earns because of something he has done, either good or bad. To "reward" someone is to give someone something he deserves.

* A reward can be a good thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
* Sometimes a reward can refer to bad things that may result from bad behavior, such as "the reward of the wicked." This is either punishment or other painful things that happen to people because of their sinful actions.
* "Payment" and "wages" refer to what a person earns for working. These ideas can also be used to refer to a reward for doing good or to punishment for doing bad.
* A "prize" is a reward that someone receives for winning a contest.
* A "penalty" is a punishment for breaking the law.
* "Recompense" can be either good or bad. Good recompense is for good deeds, and bad recompense is for bad deeds.
* "Retribution" is punishment for doing wrong.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "reward" could be translated as "payment" or "something that is deserved" or "punishment."
* To "reward" someone could be translated by to "repay" or to "punish" or to "give what is deserved."

(See also: [punish](../other/punish.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 32:06
* Isaiah 40:10
* Luke 06:35
* Mark 09:40-41
* Matthew 05:11-12
* Matthew 06:3-4
* Psalms 127:3-5
* Revelation 11:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H314, H319, H814, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H2506, H3519, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7936, H7938, H7939, H7966, H7999, H8254, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408, G5485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pay, pay ... back, pays ... back, payment, penalty, prize, recompense, repay, repayment, retribution, reward, rewarded, rewarder, rewarding, rewards, wage, wages

### right hand

#### Related Ideas:

righthand side

#### Definition:

The figurative expression "right hand" refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

* The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
* The Bible describes Jesus as sitting "at the right hand of" God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
* A person's right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph's son Ephraim).
* To "serve at the right hand" of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Sometimes the term "right hand" literally refers to a person's right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus' right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
* Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term "right hand" does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
* The expression "at the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of" or "in the place of honor beside" or "in the position of strength" or "ready to help."
* Ways to translate "with his right hand" could include "with authority" or "using power" or "with his amazing strength."
* The figurative expression "his right hand and his mighty arm" uses two ways of emphasizing God's power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be "his amazing strength and mighty power."
* The expression "their right hand is falsehood" could be translated as, "even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies" or "their place of honor is corrupted by deception" or "they use lies to make themselves powerful."

(See also: [accuse](../other/accuse.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md), [mighty](../other/mighty.md), [punish](../other/punish.md), [rebel](../other/rebel.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:33
* Colossians 03:01
* Galatians 02:09
* Genesis 48:14
* Hebrews 10:12
* Lamentations 02:03
* Matthew 25:33
* Matthew 26:64
* Psalms 044:03
* Revelation 02:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3225, H3231, G1188

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

right hand, right hands, righthand side

### righteous

#### Related Ideas:

right, rightly, righteousness, rightful, upright

#### Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

* These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
* Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
* When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" can refer to sin or the condition of being sinful.

* These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
* Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
* Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.
* "Unrighteousness" can be an abstract noun that refers to words or actions that are unrighteous.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

* The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
* A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
* Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness."

#### Translation Suggestions:

When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."

God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."

When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."

The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."

Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good

Sometimes "the righteous" was used figuratively and referred to "people who think they are good" or "people who seem to be righteous."

The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."

Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."

The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."

The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."

If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."

Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."

The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."

The phrase "the upright" could be translated as "people who are upright" or "upright people."

(See also: [evil](../kt/evil.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [good](../kt/good.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [integrity](../other/integrity.md), [just](../kt/justice.md), [law](../other/law.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [pure](../kt/purify.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [unlawful](../other/lawful.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 19:16
* Job 01:08
* Psalms 037:30
* Psalms 049:14
* Psalms 107:42
* Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
* Isaiah 48:1-2
* Ezekiel 33:13
* Malachi 02:06
* Matthew 06:01
* Acts 03:13-14
* Romans 01:29-31
* 1 Corinthians 06:09
* Galatians 03:07
* Colossians 03:25
* 2 Thessalonians 02:10
* 2 Timothy 03:16
* 1 Peter 03:18-20
* 1 John 01:09
* 1 John 05:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G824, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts rightly, do right, does what is right, in the right, made ... appear ... righteous, right treatment, righteous, righteously, righteousness, rightful, that are right, that is right, unrighteous, unrighteously, unrighteousness, upright, uprightly, uprightness, what is ... right, what was right

### robe

#### Related Ideas:

cloak, coat, skirt, wings

#### Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

* Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
* Robes can be long or short.
* Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.
* The edges of a robe are called its "wings." When one person covers another person with his "wings," he covers him with that part of his robe.
* A "cloak" is a long outer garment that hangs loosely from the shoulders. It covers the back and hangs loosely in the front.
* A "skirt" is a woman's garment that hangs loosely from the waist and covers the legs.

(See also: [royal](../other/royal.md), [tunic](../other/tunic.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 28:4-5
* Genesis 49:11-12
* Luke 15:22
* Luke 20:46
* Matthew 27:27-29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7897, H8008, H8071, G1746, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cloak, cloaks, coat, fancy robes, robe, robed, robes, skirt, skirts, wings

### rod

#### Related Ideas:

measuring rod

#### Definition:

The term "rod" refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

* A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
* In Psalm 23, King David used the terms "rod" and "staff" as metaphors to refer to God's guidance and discipline for his people.
* A shepherd's rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
* Another metaphorical expression, "rod of iron," refers to God's punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
* In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.
* In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.

(See also: [staff](../other/staff.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:21
* 1 Samuel 14:43-44
* Acts 16:23
* Exodus 27:9-10
* Revelation 11:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2415, H4294, H4731, H7626, G2563, G4463, G4464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

measuring rod, rod, rods

### royal

#### Related Ideas:

kings', royalty

#### Definition:

The term "royal" describes people and things associated with a king or queen.

* Examples of things that could be called "royal" include a king's clothing, palace, throne, and crown.
* A king or queen usually lived in a royal palace.
* A king wore special clothing, sometimes called "royal robes." Often a king's robes were purple, this color could only be produced by a rare and expensive type of dye.
* In the New Testament, believers in Jesus were called a "royal priesthood." Other ways to translate this could include "priests who serve God the King" or "called to be priests for God the King."
* The term "royal" could also be translated as "kingly" or "belonging to a king."

(See also: [king](../other/king.md). [palace](../other/palace.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [purple](../other/purple.md), [queen](../other/queen.md), [robe](../other/robe.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 10:13
* 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
* Amos 07:13
* Genesis 49:19-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H643, H1935, H4410, H4428, H4430, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H7985, G933, G934, G937

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kings', royal, royal official, royalty

### ruin

#### Related Ideas:

rubble, ruins

#### Definition:

To "ruin" something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term "ruin" or "ruins" refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

* The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God's wrath as a "day of ruin" when the world will be judged and punished.
* The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
* Depending on the context, to "ruin" could be translated as to "destroy" or to "spoil" or to "make useless" or to "break."
* The term "ruin" or "ruins" could be translated as "rubble" or "broken-down buildings" or "destroyed city" or "devastation" or "brokenness" or "destruction," depending on the context.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
* 2 Kings 19:25-26
* Acts 15:16
* Isaiah 23:13-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H1091, H1197, H1530, H1820, H1942, H2015, H2034, H2040, H2717, H2719, H2720, H2721, H2723, H2930, H3510, H3765, H3782, H3832, H4072, H4288, H4384, H4654, H4658, H4876, H4889, H5221, H5307, H5327, H5422, H5557, H5754, H5856, H6365, H6561, H7451, H7489, H7582, H7591, H7612, H7701, H7703, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, H8510, G2506, G2647, G2679, G2692, G3089, G3639, G4485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

allowed to become ruined, rubble, ruin, ruined, ruining, ruins

### ruler

#### Related Ideas:

overrule, rule

#### Definition:

The term "ruler" is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who "rules," and his authority is his "rule."

* In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a "ruler," as in the phrase "appointed him ruler over Israel."
* God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
* In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a "ruler."
* Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a "governor."
* Depending on the context, "ruler" could be translated as "leader" or "person who has authority over."
* The action to "rule" means to "lead" to "have authority over." It is means the same thing as "reign" when it refers to the ruling of a king.
* To "overrule" people or their plans is to use one's higher authority to prohibit people from doing what they have planned.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [governor](../other/governor.md), [king](../other/king.md), [synagogue](../kt/synagogue.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 03:17-18
* Acts 07:35-37
* Luke 12:11
* Luke 23:35
* Mark 10:42
* Matthew 09:32-34
* Matthew 20:25
* Titus 03:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5633, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4291

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

overruled, overrules, rule, ruled, ruler, rulers, rules, ruling, rulings

### run

#### Related Ideas:

flee, flow, move swiftly, runner

#### Definition:

Literally the term "run" means "move very quickly on foot," usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking. To "run after" or "pursue" someone or something is to move as quickly as possible to try to catch that person or thing. To run away from someone or something is to "flee."

This main meaning of "run" is also used in figurative expressions such as the following:

* To "run in such a way as to win the prize" refers to persevering in doing God's will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win.
* To "run in the path of your commands" means to gladly and quickly obey God's commands.
* To "run after other gods" means to persist in worshiping other gods.
* "I run to you to hide me" means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things.

The following figurative uses are about non-living things that are said to run.

* Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to "run." This could also be translated as, "flow."
* The border or boundary of a country or region is said to "run along" a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country’s border "is next to" the river or other country or by saying that the country "borders" the river or other country."
* Rivers and streams can "run dry," which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as "have dried up" or "have become dry."
* The days of a feast can "run their course," which means they "have passed by" or "are finished" or "are over."

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [persevere](../other/perseverance.md), [refuge](../other/refuge.md), [turn](../other/turn.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:18
* Galatians 02:02
* Galatians 05:07
* Philippians 02:16
* Proverbs 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H213, H386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H2648, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G413, G1377, G1601, G1530, G1532, G1998, G2701, G3729, G4063, G4370, G4390, G4710, G4890, G4936, G5143, G5240, G5343

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

caused ... to flee, fled, flee, fleeing, flees, flow, flows, moving swiftly, ran, run, runner, runners, running, runs

### sackcloth

#### Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

* A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
* The phrase "sackcloth and ashes" was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could also be translated as "coarse cloth from animal hair" or "clothes made of goat hair" or "rough, scratchy clothing."
* Another way to translate this term could be "rough, scratchy mourning clothes."
* The phrase "sit in sackcloth and ashes" could be translated as "show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes."

(See also: [ash](../other/ash.md), [camel](../other/camel.md), [goat](../other/goat.md), [humble](../kt/humble.md), [mourn](../other/mourn.md), [repent](../kt/repent.md), [sign](../kt/sign.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 03:31
* Genesis 37:34
* Joel 01:8-10
* Jonah 03:05
* Luke 10:13
* Matthew 11:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8242, G4526

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sackcloth

### sacrifice

#### Related Ideas:

offering

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "sacrifice" and "offering" refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

* The word "offering" generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term "sacrifice" refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
* Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
* The names of the different offerings, such as "burnt offering" and "peace offering," indicated what kind of offering was being given.
* Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
* Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.
* The figurative expression "offer yourselves as a living sacrifice" means, "live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him."

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "offering" could also be translated as "a gift to God" or "something given to God" or "something valuable that is presented to God."
* Depending on the context, the term "sacrifice" could also be translated as "something valuable given in worship" or "a special animal killed and presented to God."
* The action to "sacrifice" could be translated as to "give up something valuable" or to "kill an animal and give it to God."
* Another way to translate "present yourself as a living sacrifice" could be "as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar."

(See also: [altar](../kt/altar.md), [burnt offering](../other/burntoffering.md), [drink offering](../other/drinkoffering.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [fellowship offering](../other/fellowshipoffering.md), [freewill offering](../other/freewilloffering.md) [peace offering](../other/peaceoffering.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [sin offering](../other/sinoffering.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:06
* Acts 07:42
* Acts 21:25
* Genesis 04:3-5
* James 02:21-24
* Mark 01:43-44
* Mark 14:12
* Matthew 05:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H4635, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burn ... sacrifices, offer, offered, offering, offerings, sacrifice, sacrificed, sacrifices, sacrificing

### sanctify

#### Related Ideas:

sanctification

#### Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

* In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
* The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
* Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "sanctify" can be translated as "set apart" or "make holy" or "purify."
* When people sanctify themselves, they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God's service. Often the word "consecrate" is used in the Bible with this meaning.
* When its meaning is "consecrate," this term could be translated as "dedicate someone (or something) to God's service."
* Depending on the context, the phrase "your sanctification" could be translated as "making you holy" or "setting you apart (for God)" or "what makes you holy."

(See also: [consecrate](../kt/consecrate.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [set apart](../kt/setapart.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
* 2 Thessalonians 02:13
* Genesis 02:1-3
* Luke 11:2
* Matthew 06:8-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6942, G37, G38

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sanctification, sanctified, sanctifies, sanctify, sanctifying, sanctifying work

### sanctuary

#### Definition:

The term "sanctuary" literally means "holy place" and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

* In the Old Testament, the term "sanctuary" was often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the "holy place" and "most holy place" were located.
* God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
* He also called himself a "sanctuary" or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term has a basic meaning of "holy place" or "place that is set apart."
* Depending on the context, the term "sanctuary" could be translated as "holy place" or "sacred building" or "God's holy dwelling place" or "holy place of protection" or "sacred place of safety."
* The phrase "shekel of the sanctuary" could be translated as "kind of shekel given for the tabernacle" or "shekel used in paying the tax to take care of the temple."
* Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern-day church.

(See also: [holy](../kt/holy.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [set apart](../kt/setapart.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [tax](../other/tax.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), )

#### Bible References:

* Amos 07:13
* Exodus 25:3-7
* Ezekiel 25:03
* Hebrews 08:1-2
* Luke 11:49-51
* Numbers 18:01
* Psalms 078:69

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4720, H6944, G39, G3485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sanctuaries, sanctuary, sanctuary's

### sandal

#### Definition:

A sandal is a simple flat-soled shoe held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

* A sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property: one man would take off a sandal and give it to the other.
* Removing one's shoes or sandals was also a sign of respect and reverence, especially in God's presence.
* John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which would have been the task of a lowly servant or slave.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:33
* Deuteronomy 25:10
* John 01:27
* Joshua 05:15
* Mark 06:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G4547, G5266

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sandal, sandals

### save

#### Related Ideas:

make well, preserve, safe, salvation

#### Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

* In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
* In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
* People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

* In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
* The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."

In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."

The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."

The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies)."

"God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."

"You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: [cross](../kt/cross.md), [deliver](../other/deliverer.md), [punish](../other/punish.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [Savior](../kt/savior.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 49:18
* Genesis 47:25-26
* Psalms 080:03
* Jeremiah 16:19-21
* Micah 06:3-5
* Luke 02:30
* Luke 08:36-37
* Acts 04:12
* Acts 28:28
* Acts 02:21
* Romans 01:16
* Romans 10:10
* Ephesians 06:17
* Philippians 01:28
* 1 Timothy 01:15-17
* Revelation 19:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4581, H4931, H5337, H5338, H5756, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G1295, G1508, G1515, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be made well, brought safely, brought safely through, place of safety, preserve, safe, safely, safety, salvation, save, saved, saves, saving

### scepter

#### Definition:

The term "scepter" refers to an ornamental rod or staff held by a ruler, such as a king.

* Scepters were originally a branch of wood with carved decorations. Later scepters were also made of precious metals such as gold.
* The scepter was a symbol of royalty and authority and also symbolized the honor and dignity associated with a king.
* In the Old Testament, God was described as having a scepter of righteousness because God rules as king over his people.
* An Old Testament prophecy referred to the Messiah as a symbolic scepter that would come from Israel to rule over all nations.
* This could also be translated as "ruling rod" or "king's rod.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [king](../other/king.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md))

#### Picture of a Persian Scepter:

<a href="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/s/ScepterPersian.png"><img src="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/s/ScepterPersian.png" ></a>

#### Bible References:

* Amos 01:5
* Esther 04:11
* Genesis 49:10
* Hebrews 01:08
* Numbers 21:18
* Psalms 045:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2710, H4294, H7626, H8275, G4464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

scepter, scepters

### scribe

#### Related Ideas:

clerk, scholar

#### Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was "expert in Jewish law."

* Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
* They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
* At times, scribes were important government officials.
* Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
* In the New Testament, the term translated "scribes" was also translated as "teachers of the Law."
* In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the "Pharisees," and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [Pharisee](../kt/pharisee.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:05
* Luke 07:29-30
* Luke 20:47
* Mark 01:22
* Mark 02:16
* Matthew 05:19-20
* Matthew 07:28
* Matthew 12:38
* Matthew 13:52

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clerk, scholar, scribe, scribes

### scroll

#### Related Ideas:

book, certificate, document, literature

#### Definition:

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

* After writing on a scroll or reading from it, people rolled it up by using the rods attached to its ends.
* Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
* Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. If the wax was still present when the scroll was received, then the receiver knew that no one had opened the scroll to read it or write on it since it had been sealed.
* Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.
* The word "book" in the Biblerefers to scrolls or paper that had writing on them.
* A "document" is an official written record.
* A "certificate of divorce" is an official document that a man could give to his wife to end their marriage.
* "Literature" is written things that educated people considered to be great.

(See also: [seal](../other/seal.md), [synagogue](../kt/synagogue.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* Jeremiah 29:03
* Luke 04:17
* Numbers 21:14-15
* Revelation 05:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4039, H4040, H5612, G974, G975

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

book, books, certificate, document, documents, literature, scroll, scrolls

### seal

#### Related Ideas:

signet, signet ring, unsealed

#### Definition:

To seal an object means to keep it closed with something that makes it impossible to open without breaking the seal.

* Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
* Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal. The person who received the letter would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.
* A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus' grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
* Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a "seal" showing that our salvation is secure.
* A "signet" is a small object with letters or designs carved into it. A person could use it to mark a wax seal in order to show that he was the one who closed the seal.
* A "signet ring" is a ring with a signet on it.
* Something that is "unsealed" has not been sealed.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [tomb](../other/tomb.md))

#### Picture of a Sealed scroll:

<a href="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/s/Sealedscroll.png"><img src="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/s/Sealedscroll.png" ></a>

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 02:03
* Isaiah 29:11
* John 06:27
* Matthew 27:66
* Revelation 05:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G2696, G4972, G4973

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

seal, sealed, sealing, seals, signet, signet ring, unsealed

### seed

#### Related Words:

semen

#### Definition:

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

* The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these is called "semen."
* Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
* This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
* In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
* The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
* The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
* For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
* For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people.

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [offspring](../other/offspring.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:32
* Genesis 01:11
* Jeremiah 02:21
* Matthew 13:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G2848, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

seed, seeds, semen

### seek

#### Related Ideas:

go to find, look out for, search, try

#### Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. The past tense is "sought." It can also mean "try hard" or "make an effort" to do something.

* To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
* To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
* To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
* To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
* To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
* To "search out" something is to look for the truth about that thing.
* To "seek favor" means to "try to get favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."
* To "charge someone for something" is to hold that person responsible for the damage that person has done.

(See also: [just](../kt/justice.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:14
* Acts 17:26-27
* Hebrews 11:06
* Luke 11:09
* Psalms 027:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H2713, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7760, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2045, G2052, G2212, G3987, G4648

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

diligently seek, go to find, look out for, looked for, looking for, looks for, search, search carefully, search for, searched, searched for, searched out, searches ... out, searches for, searching, searching for, seek, seek ... out, seeking, seeks, sought, tried, try, trying

### seize

#### Related Ideas:

seizure

#### Definition:

The term "seize" means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

* When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
* When used figuratively, a person can be described as being "seized with fear." This means that the person was suddenly "overcome by fear." If a person was "seized with fear" it could also be stated that the person "suddenly became very afraid."
* In the context of labor pains that "seize" a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains "overcome" or "suddenly come upon" the woman.
* This term could also be translated as "take control of" or "suddenly take" or "grab."
* The expression "seized and slept with her" could be translated as "forced himself on her" or "violated her" or "raped her." Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.
* The term "seizure" refers to the action of taking someone or something by force.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 16:19-21
* Exodus 15:14
* John 10:37-39
* Luke 08:29
* Matthew 26:48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H270, H1204, H1497, H1589, H2254, H2388, H2488, H3027, H3423, H3680, G3860, H3920, H3947, H4672, H4685, H5337, H5367, H5375, H5860, H5927, H7760, H8610, G724, G726, G1949, G2638, G2666, G2902, G2983, G3346, G4023, G4084, G4815, G4884, G4912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

seize, seized, seizes, seizing, seizure

### selah

#### Definition:

The term "selah" is a Hebrew word that occurs mostly in the book of Psalms. It has several possible meanings.

* It could mean "pause and praise," which would invite the audience to think carefully about what was just said.
* Since many of the Psalms were written as songs, it is thought that "selah" may have been a musical term to instruct the singer to pause in his singing to allow for the musical instruments to play alone or to encourage listeners to think about the words of the song.

(See also: [psalm](../kt/psalm.md))

#### Bible References:

* Psalm 003:3-4
* Psalm 024:5-6
* Psalms 046:6-7

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5542

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

selah

### self-control

#### Related Ideas:

self-indulgence, sensible, use good sense

#### Definition:

Self-control is the ability to control one's behavior in order to avoid sinning.

* It refers to good behavior, that is, avoiding sinful thoughts, speech, and actions.
* Self-control is a fruit or characteristic that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians.
* A person who is using self-control is able to stop himself from doing something wrong that he may want to do. God is the one who enables a person to have self-control.
* "Self-indulgence" is the opposite of self-control. Someone who is full of self-indulgence does whatever he wants.

(See also: [fruit](../other/fruit.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 07:8-9
* 2 Peter 01:5-7
* 2 Timothy 03:1-4
* Galatians 05:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4623, H7307, G192, G193, G1466, G1467, G1468, G4993, G4997, G4998

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

self-control, self-controlled, self-indulgence, sensible, use good sense

### send

#### Definition:

To "send" is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To "send out" someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

* Often a person who is "sent out" has been appointed to do a specific task.
* Phrases like "send rain" or "send disaster" mean to "cause rain to come" or "cause a disaster to come." This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
* The term "send" is also used in expressions such as "send word" or "send a message," which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
* To "send" someone "with" something can mean to "give" that thing "to" someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
* To "send someone on his way" or "help someone on his way" is to give him what he needs for his journey.
* Jesus frequently used the phrase "the one who sent me" to refer to God the Father, who "sent" him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as "the one who commissioned me."

(See also: [appoint](../kt/appoint.md), [redeem](../kt/redeem.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:33-34
* Acts 08:14-17
* John 20:21-23
* Matthew 09:37-38
* Matthew 10:05
* Matthew 10:40
* Matthew 21:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H4916, H4917, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G1026, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

send, send ... away, send ... on ... way, send out, sending, sending out, sends, sends out, sent, sent ... away, sent out

### serpent

#### Related Ideas:

adder, asp, snake, viper

#### Definitions:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term "serpent" usually refers to a large snake. The terms "viper," "adder," and "asp" refer to types of snakes that have venom which they uses to poison their prey.

* This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
* Jesus called the religious leaders "offspring of vipers" because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
* In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
* After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(See also: [curse](../kt/curse.md), [deceive](../other/deceive.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [Eden](../names/eden.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [offspring](../other/offspring.md), [prey](../other/prey.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [tempt](../kt/tempt.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 03:03
* Genesis 03:4-6
* Genesis 03:12-13
* Mark 16:17-18
* Matthew 03:07
* Matthew 23:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G2191, G2062, G3789

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

adder, adders, asp, asps, serpent, serpent's, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, viper's, vipers

### servant

#### Related Ideas:

assistant, attendant, hired worker, maidservant, office, serve, service

#### Definition:

The word "servant" refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. Some servants were slaves, and the surrounding text usually makes it clear whether or not a particular servant was a slave. In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master's household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

* A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
* In ancient times, some people became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
* In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
* In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
* In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
* Christians are also called "slaves to righteousness," which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave's commitment to obey his master.

The word "serve" means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to "worship."

* In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
* To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
* People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
* The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.

The word "service" refers to the work that a servant does. It may also refer to worship.

The word "office" refers to the position or job that a servant has.

(See also: [commit](../other/commit.md), [enslave](../other/enslave.md), [household](../other/household.md), [lord](../kt/lord.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [law](../other/law.md))

#### Bible References

* Acts 04:29-31
* Acts 10:7-8
* Colossians 01:7-8
* Colossians 03:22-25
* Genesis 21:10-11
* Luke 12:47-48
* Mark 09:33-35
* Matthew 10:24-25
* Matthew 13:27-28
* 2 Timothy 02:3-5
* Acts 06:2-4
* Genesis 25:23
* Luke 04:8
* Luke 12:37-38
* Luke 22:26-27
* Mark 08:7-10
* Matthew 04:10-11
* Matthew 06:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H327, H519, H519, H4931, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5656, H5657, H5659, H5673, H6402, H6635, H7916, H8120, H8198, H8278, H8334, H8335, G1199, G1247, G1248, G1249, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2038, G2322, G2324, G2615, G2999, G3000, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3814, G3816, G4342, G5256, G5257

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

female servant, female servants, hired servant, hired servants, hired worker, maidservants, male servant, male servants, office, offices, one who serves, servant, servant girl, servant girls, servant's, servants, servants', serve, served, serves, service, services, serving

### set apart

#### Related Ideas:

distinct, make a distinction, treat differently

#### Definition:

The term "set apart" means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to "set apart" people or things means to make them "set apart." This also means to "treat" them "differently." When something is "distinct," it is different from other things.

* The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
* The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
* A believer who is "set apart" for service to God is "dedicated to" fulfilling God's will.
* One meaning of the term "holy" is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
* To "sanctify" someone means to set apart that person for God's service.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate to "set apart" could include to "specially select" or to "separate from among you" or to "take aside to do a special task."
* To "be set apart" could be translated as "be separated (from)" or "be specially appointed (for)."

(See also: [holy](../kt/holy.md), [sanctify](../kt/sanctify.md), [appoint](../kt/appoint.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ephesians 03:17-19
* Exodus 31:12-15
* Judges 17:12
* Numbers 03:11-13
* Philippians 01:1-2
* Romans 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2764, H4390, H5144, H5674, H6395, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G2564

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be distinct, making a distinction, set ... apart, sets ... apart, treat ... differently, treating ... differently

### sexual immorality

#### Related Ideas:

fornicate, fornication, immoral

#### Definition:

The term "sexual immorality" refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God's plan. Older English Bible versions call this "fornication."

* This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God's will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
* One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person's spouse.
* Another type of sexual immorality is "prostitution," which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
* This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel's unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "sexual immorality" could be translated as "immorality" as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
* Other ways to translate this term could include "wrong sexual acts" or "sex outside of marriage."
* This term should be translated in a different way from the term "adultery."
* The translation of this term's figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [prostitute](../other/prostitute.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:20
* Acts 21:25-26
* Colossians 03:5-8
* Ephesians 05:03
* Genesis 38:24-26
* Hosea 04:13-14
* Matthew 05:31-32
* Matthew 19:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2181, H8457, G1608, G4202, G4203

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fornicate, fornicates, fornication, fornications, immoral, immorality, sexual immorality

### shadow

#### Related Ideas:

overshadow, shade

#### Definition:

The word "shadow" literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. The shadow has a shape similar to the shape of the object that blocks the light.

* The word "overshadow" means to block the light from above and cause a shadow to appear on something.
* The word "shade" means a dark area where the sunlight is blocked, perhaps by a cloud or a trees.

The word "shadow" also has several figurative meanings.

* The "shadow of death" means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
* Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
* Sometimes "shadow" is used as another word for "darkness."
* The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God's wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate "shadow" in these contexts could include "shade" or "safety" or "protection."
* It is best to translate "shadow" literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](../other/darkness.md), [light](../other/light.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 20:09
* Genesis 19:08
* Isaiah 30:02
* Jeremiah 06:04
* Psalms 017:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G644, G1982, G2683, G4639

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

overshadow, overshadowed, shade, shadow, shadows

### shame

#### Related Ideas:

ashamed, shameful, shameless, unashamed

#### Definition:

The term "shame" refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

* Something that is "shameful" is "improper" or "dishonorable."
* The term "ashamed" describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
* The phrase "put to shame" means to cause someone to feel ashamed. It might be expose their sin or by defeating them.
* The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
* God can bring shame to a person who does not repent by exposing that person's sin and causing him to be humiliated.
* A person that is "unashamed" does not feel shame.
* A person is "shameless" if he does something shameful but does not feel ashamed.
* A "shameless act" is something a person should feel ashamed about doing, but he does not feel ashamed.

Sometimes the word "shame" is used figuratively to refer to a person's nakedness or private parts.

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [humble](../kt/humble.md), [humiliate](../other/humiliate.md), [Isaiah](../names/isaiah.md), [repent](../kt/repent.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 03:15-17
* 2 Kings 02:17
* 2 Samuel 13:13
* Luke 20:11
* Mark 08:38
* Mark 12:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H5949, H2616, H2659, H2781, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H7022, H7036, H8103, G149, G152, G153, G422, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3681, G3856, G5195

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ashamed, make ... ashamed, put ... to shame, shame, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, shames, unashamed

### sheep

#### Related Ideas:

ewe, ram, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin

#### Definition:

A "sheep" is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a "ram." A female sheep is called a "ewe." The plural of "sheep" is also "sheep."

* A baby sheep is called a "lamb."
* The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
* People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
* Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
* In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.
* A "sheepfold" is a place where sheep are kept safe. It has a fence or wall around it to keep the sheep from wandering out and to keep dangerous animals from getting in.
* A "sheepshearer" is a person who cuts the wool of sheep.

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [lamb](../kt/lamb.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:32
* Genesis 30:32
* John 02:14
* Luke 15:05
* Mark 06:34
* Matthew 09:36
* Matthew 10:06
* Matthew 12:12
* Matthew 25:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ewe, ewes, ram, ram's, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### shepherd

#### Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to "shepherd" means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.

Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people's spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.

In the Old Testament, God was called the "shepherd" of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them.

David was a shepherd who looked after sheep. God made David king over Israel to take care of the people of Israel in some ways like a shepherd takes care of sheep.

In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the "good shepherd." The apostle Peter also referred to Jesus as "the Chief Shepherd" over the Church.

Also, in the New Testament, the term "shepherd" was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as "pastor" is the same word that is translated as "shepherd." The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

#### Translation Suggestions

* When used literally, the action "shepherd" could be translated as "take care of sheep" or "watch over sheep."
* The person "shepherd" could be translated as "person who takes care of sheep" or "sheep tender" or "sheep caregiver."
* When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include "spiritual shepherd" or "spiritual leader" or "one who is like a shepherd" or "one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep" or "one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep" or "one who takes care of God's sheep."
* In some contexts, "shepherd" could be translated as "leader" or "guide" or "caregiver."
* The spiritual expression to "shepherd" could be translated as to "take care of" or to "spiritually nourish" or to "guide and teach" or to "lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)."
* In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for "shepherd" in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [church](../kt/church.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [pastor](../kt/pastor.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 49:24
* Luke 02:09
* Mark 06:34
* Mark 14:26-27
* Matthew 02:06
* Matthew 09:36
* Matthew 25:32
* Matthew 26:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chief shepherd, herdsman, herdsmen, keeper, shepherd, shepherd's, shepherded, shepherding, shepherds

### shield

#### Related Ideas:

shielded

#### Definition:

A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. To "shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

* Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, andt were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
* Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
* Paul talked about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: [faith](../kt/faith.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 14:26
* 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
* 2 Samuel 22:36
* Deuteronomy 33:29
* Psalms 018:35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2653, H4043, H5437, H5526, H6793, H7982, G2375

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

shield, shielded, shields

### shrewd

#### Related Ideas:

crafty

#### Definition:

The term "shrewd" describes a person who is intelligent and clever, especially in practical matters.

* Often the term "shrewd" has a meaning that is partly negative since it usually also involves being selfish.
* A shrewd person is usually focused on helping himself, not others.
* Other ways to translate this term could include "cunning" or "crafty" or "smart" or "clever," depending on the context.
* A "crafty" person knows how to deceive others so they will do what he wants them to do.

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2450, H6175, H6191, G5429

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

crafty, shrewd, shrewdly

### siege

#### Related Ideas:

besiege, besiegers

#### Definition:

A "siege" occurs when an attacking army surrounds a city and keeps it from receiving any supplies of food and water. To "besiege" a city or to put it "under siege" means to attack it by means of a siege.

* When the Babylonians came to attack Israel, they used the tactic of a siege against Jerusalem to weaken the people inside the city.
* Often during a siege, ramps of dirt are gradually constructed to enable the attacking army to cross over the city walls and invade the city.
* To "besiege" a city can also be expressed as to "lay siege" to it or to "perform a siege" on it.
* The term "besieged" has the same meaning as the expression "under siege." Both these expressions describe a city that an enemy army is surrounding and besieging.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 20:1
* 1 Kings 20:1-3
* 1 Samuel 11:1-2
* Jeremiah 33:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1785, H4674, H4685, H4692, H5341, H5437, H5564, H6693, H6696, H6887

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

besiege, besieged, besiegers, besieging, siege, siege ramp, siege ramps, siege wall, siege works

### sign

#### Related Ideas:

demonstration, evidence, mark, marker, omen, proof, remind, reminder, signal

#### Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

"Reminders" are signs that "remind" people by helping them remember something, often something that was promised:

The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.

God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.

Signs can reveal or point to something:

An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.

Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.

Signs can prove that something is true:

The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.

The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

A "signal flag" is a flag that a king would raise as a sign so that people could see it and come to him or go into battle.

An "omen" is an event that people think tells that something else will happen in the future.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on its context, "sign" could also be translated as "signal" or "symbol" or "mark" or "evidence" or "proof" or "gesture."
* To "make signs with the hands" could also be translated as "motion with the hands" or "gesture with the hands" or "make gestures."
* In some languages, there may be one word for a "sign" that proves something and a different word for a "sign" that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [circumcise](../kt/circumcise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:18-19
* Exodus 04:8-9
* Exodus 31:12-15
* Genesis 01:14
* Genesis 09:12
* John 02:18
* Luke 02:12
* Mark 08:12
* Psalms 089:5-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H226, H852, H926, H2368, H2865, H3824, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5162, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, H7725, H8074, H8540, G364, G1271, G1382, G1730, G1732, G1770, G1839, G2298, G4102, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5059, H5172, G5280, G5480, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

demonstration, evidence, mark, marker, omen, omens, proof, remind, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, reminds, sign, signal, signal flag, signs

### silver

#### Related Ideas:

money

#### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

* The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
* Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple.The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
* In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
* Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
* Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
* 1 Samuel 02:36
* 2 Kings 25:13-15
* Acts 03:06
* Matthew 26:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

money, silver

### sin

#### Related Ideas:

sinful, sinner

#### Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

* Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
* Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
* Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
* A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
* Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
* The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
* To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
* Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebelling against God."
* Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
* The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
* Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
* In expressions like "slaves to sin" or "ruled by sin," the term "sin" could be translated as "disobedience" or "evil desires and actions."
* Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
* The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [flesh](../kt/flesh.md), [tax collector](../other/tax.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
* 1 John 01:10
* 1 John 02:02
* 2 Samuel 07:12-14
* Acts 03:19
* Daniel 09:24
* Genesis 04:07
* Hebrews 12:02
* Isaiah 53:11
* Jeremiah 18:23
* Leviticus 04:14
* Luke 15:18
* Matthew 12:31
* Romans 06:23
* Romans 08:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H6588, H7683, H7686, G93, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sin, sinful, sinned, sinner, sinners, sinning, sins

### sin offering

#### Definition:

The "sin offering" was one of several sacrifices that God required the Israelites to offer.

* This offering involved sacrificing a bull, burning its blood and fat on the altar, and taking the rest of the animal's body and burning it on the ground outside the Israelite camp.
* The complete burning up of this animal sacrifice shows how holy God is and how terrible sin is.
* The Bible teaches that in order for there to be a cleansing from sin, blood must be shed to pay the cost for the sin that was committed.
* Animal sacrifices could not permanently bring about forgiveness of sin.
* Jesus' death on the cross paid the penalty for sin, for all time. He was the perfect sin offering.

(See also: [altar](../kt/altar.md), [cow](../other/cow.md), [forgive](../kt/forgive.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 29:20-21
* Exodus 29:35-37
* Ezekiel 44:25-27
* Leviticus 05:11
* Numbers 07:15-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2401, H2402, H2398, H2403

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sin offering, sin offerings

### sister

#### Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person’s sister or the sister of that other person.

* In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
* Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
* In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or wife.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
* Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
* If possible, it is best to use a family term.
* If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
* When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: [brother](../kt/brother.md) [in Christ](../kt/inchrist.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
* Deuteronomy 27:22
* Philemon 01:02
* Romans 16:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H269, G27, G79

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sister, sister's, sisters, sisters'

### skull

#### Related Ideas:

scalp

#### Definition:

The term "skull" refers to the bony, skeletal structure of the head of a person or animal.

* Sometimes the term "skull" means "head," as in the phrase "shave your skull."
* The term "Place of the Skull" was another name for Golgotha, where Jesus was crucified.
* This term could also be translated as "head" or "head bone."
* The "scalp" is the skin that covers the top of the skull.

(See also: [crucify](../kt/crucify.md), [Golgotha](../names/golgotha.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 09:35-37
* Jeremiah 02:16
* John 19:17
* Matthew 27:32-34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1538, H6936, H7218, G2898

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

scalps, skull, skulls

### slain

#### Related Ideas:

exterminate, kill, killer, murder, murderer, put to death, strike down

<!-- We have removed all forms of "slay" from the ULB as of 4/15/2020. -->

#### Definition:

To "slay" a person or animal means to kill it. Often it means to kill it in a forceful or violent way. If a man has killed an animal or an innocent person, he has "slain" it.

* When referring to an animal or to a large number of people, the term "slaughter" is another term that is often used.
* An act of slaughtering is also called a "slaughter."
* The phrase "the slain" could also be translated as "the slain people" or "the people who were killed."
* To "kill someone off" is for one person to have a purpose in mind and to kill someone else so that he can be free to accomplish the larger purpose.
* To "exterminate" people is to kill all of them.
* To "murder" someone is to kill him intentionally and illegally.
* To "put to death" is to kill someone. Usually the decision to put someone to death is made by someone in authority.

(See also: [slaughter](../other/slaughter.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 28:23
* Isaiah 26:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2076, H2491, H2614, H2717, H2763, H2873, H2874, H4191, H4194, H5221, H6991, H6992, H7523, H7703, H7819, H8045, G337, G615, G1315, G2380, G2695, G4968, G4969, G5407

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

exterminate, exterminated, kill, kill ... off, killed, killed ... off, killer, killing, kills, murder, murdered, murderer, murderers, murders, put ... to death, slain, strike down, violently killed

### slander

#### Related Ideas:

slanderer, slanderous, speak evil about

#### Definition:

Slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

* Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
* To "slander" could be translated as to "speak against" or to "spread an evil report" or to "defame."
* The word "slanderer" could also be translated as "tale-bearer."

(See also: [blasphemy](../kt/blasphemy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:13
* 1 Timothy 03:11
* 2 Corinthians 06:8-10
* Mark 07:20-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1848, H3960, H5791, H7270, H7400, H8267, G987, G988, G1228, G1426, G2635, G2636, G2637, G3059, G3060

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

slander, slandered, slanderer, slanderers, slandering, slanderous, slanders, speak evil about, spoken of as evil

### slaughter

#### Definition:

The term "slaughter" refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called "slaughter."

* When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
* The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
* 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
* "Weapons of slaughter" could be translated as "weapons for killing."
* The expression "the slaughter was very great" could be translated as "a large number were killed" or "the number of deaths was very great" or "a terribly high number of people died."
* Other ways to translate "slaughter" could include "kill" or "slay" or "killing."

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [cow](../other/cow.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [Ezekiel](../names/ezekiel.md), [servant](../other/servant.md), [slay](../other/slain.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 21:10-11
* Hebrews 07:01
* Isaiah 34:02
* Jeremiah 25:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G2871, G4967, G4969

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

slaughter, slaughtered, slaughtering, slaughters

### snare

#### Related Ideas:

ensnare, entrap, noose, trap

#### Definition:

The terms "snare" and "trap" refer to devices that are used to catch animals and keep them from escaping. To "snare" or "ensnare" is to catch with a snare, and to "trap" or "entrap" is to catch with a trap. In the Bible, these terms were also used figuratively to talk about how sin and temptation are like hidden traps that catch people and harm them.

* A "snare" is a loop of rope or wire that suddenly pulls tight when an animal steps into it, ensnaring its leg.
* A "trap" is usually made of metal or wood and has two parts that suddenly and powerfully close together, catching an animal so it can't get away. Sometimes a trap can be a deep hole that has been made in order to get something to fall into it.
* Usually the snare or trap is hidden so that its prey is taken by surprise.
* The phrase "set a trap" means to get a trap ready to capture something.
* To "fall into a trap" refers to falling into a deep hole or pit that was dug and hidden in order to catch an animal.
* A person who is starts sinning and cannot stop can be described as "ensnared by sin" in a figurative reference to the way an animal can be ensnared and cannot escape.
* Just as an animal is endangered and hurt by being in a trap, so a person caught in the trap of sin is being harmed by that sin and needs to be set free.
* A "noose" is a rope or vine designed to catch an animal around the neck.

(See also: [free](../other/free.md), , [prey](../other/prey.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md), [tempt](../kt/tempt.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ecclesiastes 07:26
* Luke 21:34
* Mark 12:13
* Psalms 018:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1245, H2256, H3353, H3369, H3920, H3921, H4170, H4204, H4434, H4685, H4686, H4889, H5367, H5914, H6341, H6351, H6354, H6983, H7845, H8610, G64, G2339, G2340, G3802, G3803, G3985, G4625

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ensnare, ensnared, ensnares, entrap, noose, snare, snares, trap, trapped, traps

### snow

#### Definitions:

The term "snow" refers to white flakes of frozen water that can fall from clouds in places where the air temperature is cold.

* Snow falls in places of higher elevation in Israel, but does not always stay on the ground very long before melting. The peaks of mountains tend to have snow that lasts longer. One example of a place mentioned in the Bible as having snow is Mount Lebanon.
* Something that is very white often has its color compared to the color of snow. For example, in the book of Revelation Jesus' clothing and hair were described as being "white as snow."
* The whiteness of snow also symbolizes purity and cleanliness. For example, the statement that our "sins will be as white as snow" means that God will completely cleanse his people from their sins.
* Some languages might refer to snow as "frozen rain" or "flakes of ice" or "frozen flakes."
* "Snow water" refers to the water that comes from melted snow.

(See also: [Lebanon](../names/lebanon.md), [pure](../kt/purify.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 04:06
* Job 37:4-6
* Matthew 28:03
* Psalms 147:16
* Revelation 01:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7949, H7950, H8517, G5510

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

snow, snowed, snowing

### son

#### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

* "Son" was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
* The term "son" can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
* Sometimes "sons of God" was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
* God called Israel his "firstborn son." This refers to God's choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God's message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
* The phrase "son of" often has the figurative meaning "person having the characteristics of." Examples of this include "sons of the light," "sons of disobedience," "a son of peace," and "sons of thunder."
* The phrase "son of" is also used to tell who a person's father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
* Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
* When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
* When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term "descendant" could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the "descendant of David" or in genealogies where sometimes "son" referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
* Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.
* The figurative expression "son of" could also be translated as "someone who has the characteristics of" or "someone who is like" or "someone who has" or "someone who acts like."

(See also: [Azariah](../names/azariah.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [firstborn](../other/firstborn.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [sons of God](../kt/sonsofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:15
* 1 Kings 13:02
* 1 Thessalonians 05:05
* Galatians 04:07
* Hosea 11:01
* Isaiah 09:06
* Matthew 03:17
* Matthew 05:09
* Matthew 08:12
* Nehemiah 10:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1247, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

son, son's, sons

### sons of God

#### Related Ideas:

children of God

#### Definition:

The term "sons of God" is a figurative expression that has several possible meanings.

* In the New Testament, the term "sons of God" refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as "children of God" since it includes both males and females.
* This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between a human son and his father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
* Some people interpret the term "sons of God" that appears in Genesis 6 to mean fallen angels—evil spirits or demons. Others think it may refer to powerful political rulers or to the descendants of Seth.
* The title "Son of God" is a different term: it refers to Jesus, who is God's only Son.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When "sons of God" refers to believers in Jesus, it could be translated as "children of God."
* In Genesis 6:2 and 4 ways to translate "sons of God" could include "angels," "spirit beings," "supernatural creatures," or "demons."
* Also see the link for "son."

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md), [son](../kt/son.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 06:02
* Genesis 06:4
* Job 01:06
* Romans 08:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H430, H1121, G5207, G5043

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

children of God, sons of ... God

### sorcery

#### Related Ideas:

sorcerer, sorceress, witchcraft

#### Definition:

"Sorcery" or "witchcraft" refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A "sorcerer" is a man who does these powerful, magical things. A "sorceress" is a woman who does these things.

* The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
* In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
* The terms "sorcery" and "witchcraft" could also be translated as "evil spirit power" or "casting spells."
* Possible ways to translated "sorcerer" could include "worker of magic" or "person who casts spells" or "person who does miracles using evil spirit power."
* Note that "sorcery" has a different meaning than the term "divination," which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md), [divination](../other/divination.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [magic](../other/magic.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:9-11
* Exodus 07:11-13
* Galatians 05:19-21
* Revelation 09:20-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H178, H3784, H3785, H3786, H6049, G3095, G3096, G5331, G5332, G5333

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorceries, sorcery, witchcraft

### soul

#### Related Ideas:

person

#### Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person. It is the part of a person that continues living after the body dies.

* The terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
* When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
* The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means,"I am tired."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
* In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
* Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
* Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
* In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:08
* Acts 02:27-28
* Acts 02:41
* Genesis 49:06
* Isaiah 53:10-11
* James 01:21
* Jeremiah 06:16-19
* Jonah 02:7-8
* Luke 01:47
* Matthew 22:37
* Psalms 019:07
* Revelation 20:4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5315, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

person, persons, soul, souls

### sow

#### Related Ideas:

plant, plantation, transplanted

#### Definition:

A "plant" is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To "plant" something is to put it in the ground so that it can grow. To "sow" is to scatter seeds on the ground so they can go into the ground and grow. A "sower" is a person who sows seeds.

* Sometimes people plant seeds or plants by making holes in the soil and placing seeds or a plant in each hole.
* When someone plants seeds by sowing, he takes handfuls of seeds and scatters them on the ground.
* The term "sow" can be used figuratively, as in "a person will reap what he sows." This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, and if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.
* A "plantation" is a large field where people plant crops.
* To "transplant" something is to move it from one place and plant it in another place.

#### Translations Suggestions

* The term "sow" could be translated as "plant" if that word can include planting seeds by scattering them.
* The term "sower" could be translated as "planter" or "farmer" or "person who scatters seeds."
* The expression "a person reaps what he sows" could be translated as "just as a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, a person's good actions bring good results and a person's evil actions bring evil results."

(See also: [evil](../kt/evil.md), [good](../kt/good.md), [reap](../other/reap.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 06:08
* Luke 08:05
* Matthew 06:25-26
* Matthew 13:04
* Matthew 13:19
* Matthew 25:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H3759, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G4687, G4703, G5452

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

place ... planted, plant, plantation, planted, planting, plants, replanted, sow, sowed, sowing, sown, sows, transplanted

### spear

#### Related Ideas:

javelin, spearmen

#### Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

* Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
* A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
* Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
* Similar weapons are the "javelin" or "lance." A javelin is a light spear that is thrown.
* Make sure that the translation of "spear" is different from the translation of "sword," which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: [prey](../other/prey.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [sword](../other/sword.md), [warrior](../other/warrior.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 13:19-21
* 2 Samuel 21:19
* Nehemiah 04:12-14
* Psalm 035:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1265, H2595, H3591, H4294, H6767, H7013, H7420, G3057

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

javelin, spear, spearmen, spears

### spirit

#### Related Ideas:

ghost, spiritual

#### Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

* The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
* A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
* In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
* In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
* For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
* God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
* Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
* The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
* Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
* In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
* Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
* The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
* Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
* The figurative expression "spiritual milk" could also be translated as "basic teachings from God" or "God's teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does)."
* The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
* The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [soul](../kt/soul.md), [divination](../other/divination.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:05
* 1 John 04:03
* 1 Thessalonians 05:23
* Acts 05:09
* Colossians 01:09
* Ephesians 04:23
* Genesis 07:21-22
* Isaiah 04:04
* Mark 01:23-26
* Matthew 26:41
* Philippians 01:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H178, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G4861, G5326, G5427

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ghost, spirit, spirits, spiritual, spiritually

### splendor

#### Related Ideas:

splendid

#### Definition:

The term "splendor" refers to the extreme beauty and elegance that is often associated with wealth and a magnificent appearance.

* Often splendor is used to describe the wealth that a king has, or how he looks in his expensive, beautiful finery.
* The word "splendor" can also be used to describe the beauty of trees, mountains, and other things that God has created.
* Certain cities are said to have splendor because of o their natural resources, elaborate buildings and roads, and the wealth of their people, which includes rich clothing, gold, and silver.
* Depending on the context, this word could be translated as "magnificent beauty" or "amazing majesty" or "kingly greatness."
* Something that is "splendid" is extremely beautiful and elegant.

(See also: [glory](../kt/glory.md), [king](../other/king.md), [majesty](../kt/majesty.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 16:27
* Exodus 28:1-3
* Ezekiel 28:07
* Luke 04:07
* Psalms 089:44-45
* Revelation 21:26-27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1921, H1925, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2091, H2122, H2892, H3314, H3368, H3519, H6643, H7613, H8597, G2986

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

splendid, splendidly, splendor

### staff

#### Related Ideas:

club, walking stick

#### Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

* When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
* God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
* Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
* The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.
* A club is a thick, heavy stick used as a weapon to beat people.

(See also: [Pharaoh](../names/pharaoh.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 04:1-3
* Exodus 07:09
* Luke 09:03
* Mark 06:7-9
* Matthew 10:8-10
* Matthew 27:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6418, H7626, G2563, G3586, G4464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clubs, staff, staffs, walking stick, walking sticks

### statute

#### Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

* The term "statute" is similar in meaning to "ordinance" and " command" and "law" and "decree." All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
* King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh's statutes.
* The term "statute" could also be translated as "specific command" or "special decree."

(See also: [command](../kt/command.md), [decree](../other/decree.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [ordinance](../other/ordinance.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 11:11-13
* Deuteronomy 06:20-23
* Ezekiel 33:15
* Numbers 19:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2706, H2708, H7010, G1345

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

statute, statutes

### stiff-necked

#### Related Ideas:

stiffen his neck, stubborn, stubbornness

#### Definition:

The term "stiff-necked" is an idiom used in the Bible to describe people who keep disobeying God and refuse to repent. Such people are very proud and will not submit to God's authority.

* Similarly, the term "stubborn" describes a person who refuses to change his mind or actions even when urged to do so. Stubborn people will not listen to good advice or warnings that other people give them.
* The Old Testament described the Israelites as "stiff-necked" because they did not listen to the many messages from God's prophets who urged them to repent and turn back to Yahweh.
* If a neck is "stiff" it does not bend easily. The project language may have a different idiom that communicates that a person is "unbending" in that he refuses to change his ways.
* Other ways to translate this term could include "pridefully stubborn" or "arrogant and unyielding" or "refusing to change."
* If a person "stiffens his neck," he becomes stubborn.

(See also: [arrogant](../other/arrogant.md), [proud](../other/proud.md), [repent](../kt/repent.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:51
* Deuteronomy 09:13-14
* Exodus 13:14-16
* Jeremiah 03:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H3513, H5637, H6203, H6484, H7185, H7190, H8307, G483, G4644, G4645

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

stiff neck, stiff-necked, stiffen ... necks, stiffened ... neck, stiffened ... necks, stiffens ... neck, stubborn, stubbornly, stubbornness

### stone

#### Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To "stone" someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A "stoning" is an event in which someone was stoned.

* In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
* God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
* In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
* Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
* In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [commit](../other/commit.md), [crime](../other/criminal.md), [death](../other/death.md), [Lystra](../names/lystra.md), [testimony](../kt/testimony.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:57-58
* Acts 07:59-60
* Acts 14:05
* Acts 14:19-20
* John 08:4-6
* Luke 13:34
* Luke 20:06
* Matthew 23:37-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H68, H69, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H4676, H4678, H5619, H6443, H6697, H6872, H7275, H7671, G2642, G2991, G3034, G3035, G3036, G3037, G4348, G5586

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

stone, stoned, stones, stoning

### storehouse

#### Related Ideas:

barn, storage, store cities, storerooms, treasure, treasury

#### Definition:

A "storehouse" is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

* In the Bible a "storehouse" was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a famine.
* The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things that had been dedicated to Yahweh, such as gold and silver. Some of these things used to repair and maintain the temple were also kept there.
* The term "storehouse" can also be used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
* Other ways to translate "storehouse" could include "a building for storing grain" or "place for keeping food" or "room for keeping valuable things safe."
* A "treasure" is a very valuable object.
* A "treasury" is can be a place where treasures are stored, but it is more often a place where officials store money.

(See also: [consecrate](../kt/consecrate.md), [dedicate](../other/dedicate.md), [famine](../other/famine.md), [gold](../other/gold.md), [grain](../other/grain.md), [silver](../other/silver.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
* Luke 03:17
* Matthew 03:12
* Psalms 033:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H214, H618, H624, H1004, H4035, H4200, H4543, G596

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

barn, barns, storage, store cities, storehouse, storehouses, storerooms, treasure, treasures, treasuries, treasury

### strength

#### Related Ideas:

strengthen, strong, stronger, strongest

#### Definitions:

The term "strength" refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To "strengthen" someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

* "Strength" can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
* A person has "strength of will" if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
* One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his "strength" because God helped him to be strong.
* If a physical structure like a wall or building is being "strengthened," people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

#### Translation Suggestions

In general, the term "strengthen" can be translated as "cause to be strong" or "make more powerful."

In a spiritual sense, the phrase "strengthen your brothers" could also be translated as "encourage your brothers" or "help your brothers to persevere."

The following examples show the meaning of these terms in longer expressions and how they can be translated.

"puts strength on me like a belt" means "causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist."

"in quietness and trust will be your strength" means "acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong."

"will renew their strength" means "will become stronger again."

"by my strength and by my wisdom I acted" means "I have done all this because I am so strong and wise."

"strengthen the wall" means "reinforce the wall" or "rebuild the wall."

"I will strengthen you" means "I will cause you to be strong"

"in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength" means "Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us."

"the rock of your strength" means "the faithful one who makes you strong"

"with the saving strength of his right hand" means "he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand."

"of little strength" means "not very strong" or "weak."

"with all my strength" means "using my best efforts" or "strongly and completely."

(See also: [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [persevere](../other/perseverance.md), [right hand](../kt/righthand.md), [save](../kt/save.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 18:19-21
* 2 Peter 02:11
* Luke 10:27
* Psalm 021:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1368, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2389, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4392, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5794, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6099, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8623, H8624, H8631, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1415, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

become strong, made ... strong, made ... stronger, make ... strong, makes ... strong, strength, strengthen, strengthened, strengthening, strengthens, strong, stronger, strongest

### strife

#### Related Ideas:

argue, argument, conflict, contention, dispute, quarrel

#### Definition:

The term "strife" refers to physical or emotional conflict between people.

* A person who causes strife does things that result in strong disagreements between people and in hurt feelings.
* Sometimes the use of the word "strife" implies that strong emotions are involved, such as anger or bitterness.
* Other ways to translate "strife" could include "argument" or "contention" or "disagreement" or "dispute" or "conflict."

(See also: [angry](../other/angry.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 03:3-5
* Habakkuk 01:03
* Philippians 01:17
* Proverbs 17:01
* Psalms 055:8-9
* Romans 13:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1777, H1779, H4066, H4090, H4683, H4808, H6635, H7379, H7701, G485, G1252, G2052, G3055, G3163, G3164, G5379

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

arguing, argument, conflict, conflicts, contention, dispute, disputes, quarrel, quarreling, quarrels, strife

### strong drink

#### Definition:

The term "strong drink" refers to drinks that have been fermented and have alcohol in them.

* Alcoholic drinks are made from either grain or fruit and have undergone fermentation.
* Kinds of "strong drink" include grape wine, palm wine, beer, and apple cider. Distilled alcoholic drinks had not been invented yet. In the Bible, grape wine was the most frequently mentioned strong drink.
* Priests and anyone who took a special vow such as the "Nazirite vow" were not permitted to drink fermented drinks.
* This term could also be translated as "fermented drink" or "alcoholic drink."

(See also: [grape](../other/grape.md), [Nazirite](../kt/nazirite.md), [vow](../kt/vow.md), [wine](../other/wine.md))

#### Bible References:

* Isaiah 05:11-12
* Leviticus 10:09
* Luke 01:14-15
* Numbers 06:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5435, H7941, H8248, G4608

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

strong drink, strong drinks

### stronghold

#### Related Ideas:

battlement, city wall, fortification, fortified, fortress

#### Definition:

The terms "stronghold" and "fortress" both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term "fortified" describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

* Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
* People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
* "Stronghold" or "fortress" could be translated as "securely strong place" or "strongly protected place."
* The term "fortified city" could be translated as "securely protected city" or "strongly built city."
* These ideas were also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him.
* Another figurative meaning for the term "stronghold" referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as "false strongholds."
* This term should be translated differently from "refuge," which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.
* A "city wall" was tall, strong wall around a city that was meant to keep enemies out of the city.
* A "battlement" is a low wall along the top of a city wall that soldiers could hide behind and shoot through at their enemies below.

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [refuge](../other/refuge.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 10:04
* 2 Kings 08:10-12
* 2 Samuel 05:8-10
* Acts 21:35
* Habakkuk 01:10-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H759, H1001, H1002, H1003, H1219, H1225, H2388, H4013, H4026, H4581, H4526, H4679, H4685, H4686, H4692, H4694, H4869, H5794, H5797, H5800, H6438, H7682, G3794, G3925

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

battlements, city wall, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses, stronghold, strongholds

### stumble

#### Related Ideas:

reel

#### Definition:

The term "stumble" means "almost fall" when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

* Figuratively, to "stumble" can mean to "sin" or to "falter" in believing.
* This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.
* "Stumble" can also be used figuratively to mean "sin" or "stop believing.""
* The word "reel" means to lose one's balance and have trouble walking.

#### Translation Suggestions

* In contexts where the term "stumble" means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means "almost fall" or "trip over."
* When stumble is used figuratively it could also be translated as "become weak" or "stumble by sinning" or "stumble by not believing."
* The phrase "made to stumble" could be translated as "caused to become weak" or "caused to falter."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [persecute](../other/persecute.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [stumbling block](../other/stumblingblock.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 02:08
* Hosea 04:05
* Isaiah 31:3
* Matthew 11:4-6
* Matthew 18:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1762, H3782, H4383, H5062, H5063, H5307, H6328, H6761, H8058, G679, G4348, G4350, G4417, G4624, G4625

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

causes ... to stumble, reeling, stumble, stumbled, stumbles, stumbling

### stumbling block

#### Related Ideas:

occasion for stumbling, stone of stumbling

#### Definition:

The term "stumbling block" or "stone of stumbling" refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

* A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
* Also figuratively, a "stumbling block" or "stone of stumbling" can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
* Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
* Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
* This term could also be translated as "stone that causes stumbling" or "something that causes someone to not believe" or "obstacle that causes doubt" or "obstacle to faith" or "something that causes someone to sin."

(See also: [stumble](../other/stumble.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 01:23
* Galatians 05:11
* Matthew 05:29-30
* Matthew 16:23
* Romans 09:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4383, H6697, G3037, G4349, G4625

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

occasion for stumbling, stone of stumbling, stumbling block, stumbling blocks

### subject

#### Related Ideas:

force to become slaves, subdue, subject, subjection

#### Definitions:

A person is the "subject" of another person if the second person rules over the first. To "be subject to" is to "obey" or to "submit to the authority of."

* The phrase "put in subjection to" refers to causing people to be under the authority of a leader or ruler.
* To "subject someone to something" means to cause that person to experience something negative, such as punishment.
* Sometimes the term "subject" is used to refer to being the topic or focus of something, such as in, "you will be the subject of ridicule."
* The phrase "be subject to" means the same as "be submissive to" or "submit to."

(See also: [submit](../other/submit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 02:14-16
* 1 Kings 04:06
* 1 Peter 02:18-20
* Hebrews 02:05
* Proverbs 12:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1697, H3533, H3665, H4522, H5647, H5927, H8214, G350, G1396, G1777, G4029, G5293

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

are subjected, be subject to, be subjected, forced to become slaves, in subjection to, not subjected, subdue, subdued, subject, subject to, subjected, subjection, subjects, was subjected, were subjected

### submit

#### Related Ideas:

submission

#### Definition:

To "submit" usually means to voluntarily place oneself under the authority of a person or government.

* The Bible tells believers in Jesus to submit to God and other authorities in their lives.
* The instruction to "submit to one another" means to humbly accept correction and to focus on the needs of others rather than on our own needs.
* To "live in submission to" means to put oneself under the authority of something or someone.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The command "submit to" could be translated as "put yourself under the authority of" or "follow the leadership of" or "humbly honor and respect"
* The term "submission" could be translated as "obedience" or "the following of authority."
* The phrase "live in submission to" could be translated as "be obedient to" or "put oneself under the authority of."
* The phrase "be in submission" could be translated as "humbly accept authority."

(See also: [subject](../other/subject.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 14:34-36
* 1 Peter 03:01
* Hebrews 13:15-17
* Luke 10:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3584, G5226, G5292, G5293

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

in submission, submission, submit, submits, submitted, submitting

### suffer

#### Related Ideas:

misery

#### Definition:

The terms "suffer" and "suffering" refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

* When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
* Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
* Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
* 'Misery' is what a person feels when they suffer.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "suffer" can be translated as "feel pain" or "endure difficulty" or "experience hardships" or "go through difficult and painful experiences."
* Depending on the context, "suffering" could be translated as "extremely difficult circumstances" or "severe hardships" or "experiencing hardship" or "time of painful experiences."
* The phrase "suffer thirst" could be translated as "experience thirst" or "suffer with thirst."
* To "suffer violence" could also be translated as "undergo violence" or "be harmed by violent acts."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
* 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
* 2 Timothy 01:08
* Acts 07:11-13
* Isaiah 53:11
* Jeremiah 06:6-8
* Matthew 16:21
* Psalms 022:24
* Revelation 01:09
* Romans 05:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H816, H943, H1741, H1934, H4531, G4912, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6001, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7489, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4777, G4841, G5004

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

miseries, suffer, suffered, suffering, sufferings, suffers

### sulfur

#### Definition:

Sulfur is a yellow substance that becomes a burning liquid when it is set on fire.

* Sulfur also has a very strong smell that is like the odor of rotten eggs.
* In the Bible, burning sulfur is a symbol of God's judgment on ungodly and rebellious people.
* During the time of Lot, God rained down fire and sulfur on the evil cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.
* In some English Bible versions, sulfur is referred to as "brimstone," which literally means "burning stone."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Possible translations of this term could include "yellow stone that burns" or "burning yellowish rock."

(See also: [Gomorrah](../names/gomorrah.md), [judge](../kt/judge.md), [Lot](../names/lot.md), [rebel](../other/rebel.md), [Sodom](../names/sodom.md), [godly](../kt/godly.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 19:24
* Isaiah 34:09
* Luke 17:29
* Revelation 20:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1614, G2303

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sulfur

### sweep

#### Definitions:

To "sweep" usually means to remove dirt by making broad, quick movements with a broom or brush. "Swept" is the past tense of "sweep." These words are also used figuratively.

* The term "sweep" is used figuratively to describe how an army attacks with swift, decisive, wide-reaching movements.
* For example, Isaiah prophesied that the Assyrians would "sweep through" the Kingdom of Judah. This means they would destroy Judah and capture its people.
* The term "sweep" can also be used to describe the manner in which rapidly flowing water pushes things and forces them away.
* When overwhelming, difficult things are happening to a person, it can be said that they are "sweeping over" him.

(See also: [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Isaiah](../names/isaiah.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 16:03
* Daniel 11:40-41
* Genesis 18:24
* Proverbs 21:7-8
* Psalms 090:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H857, H1640, H2498, H2894, H3261, H5500, H5595, H5674, H7857, G4216, G4563, G4951

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sweep, sweep ... away, sweeping, sweeps, swept, swept up

### sword

#### Related Ideas:

dagger, swordsmen

#### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

* In ancient times the length of a sword’s blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
* Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
* Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
* Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.
* A "dagger" is a short sword used to stab people who are close by.

#### Translation Suggestions

* A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain.
* One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
* Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
* If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
* A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [James (brother of Jesus)](../names/jamesbrotherofjesus.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [tongue](../other/tongue.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 12:02
* Genesis 27:40
* Genesis 34:25
* Luke 02:33-35
* Luke 21:24
* Matthew 10:34
* Matthew 26:55
* Revelation 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H19, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dagger, sword, swords, swordsmen

### synagogue

#### Definition:

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

* Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.
* The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
* Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
* The word "synagogue" can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also: [heal](../other/heal.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [pray](../kt/pray.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:09
* Acts 14:1-2
* Acts 15:21
* Acts 24:10-13
* John 06:59
* Luke 04:14
* Matthew 06:1-2
* Matthew 09:35-36
* Matthew 13:54

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G656, G752, G4864

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

synagogue, synagogues

### tabernacle

#### Related Ideas:

dwelling place, habitation

#### Definition:

The word "tabernacle" means "dwelling place."

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

* God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
* Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
* The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
* The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
* The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
* The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.
* Another word for "dwelling place" is "habitation."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "tabernacle" could include, "sacred tent" or "tent where God was" or "God's tent."
* Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of "temple."

(See also: [altar](../kt/altar.md), [altar of incense](../other/altarofincense.md), [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [tent of meeting](../other/tentofmeeting.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 21:30
* 2 Chronicles 01:2-5
* Acts 07:43
* Acts 07:45
* Exodus 38:21
* Joshua 22:19-20
* Leviticus 10:16-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H168, H4908, H7900, G3613, G4633

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dwelling place, dwellings, habitation, tabernacle

### tax

#### Related Ideas:

tax collector, taxation, taxpayers, toll

#### Definition:

The terms "tax" and "taxes" refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them. A "tax collector" was a government worker whose job was to receive money that people were required to pay the government in taxes.

* The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person's property is worth.
* In the time of Jesus and the apostles, the Roman government required taxes from everyone living in the Roman empire, including the Jews.
* If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
* Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
* The term "tax" could also be translated as, "required payment" or "government money" or "temple money," depending on the context.
* To "pay taxes" could also be translated as to "pay money to the government" or "receive money for the government" or "make the required payment." To "collect taxes" could be translated as to "receive money for the government.
* A "tax collector" is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.
* The people who collected taxes for the Roman government would often demand more money from the people than the government required. The tax collectors would keep the extra amount for themselves.
* Because tax collectors cheated people in this way, the Jews considered them to be among the worst of sinners.
* The Jews also considered Jewish tax collectors to be traitors to their own people because they worked for the Roman government which was oppressing the Jewish people.
* The phrase, "tax collectors and sinners" was a common expression in the New Testament, showing how much the Jews despised tax collectors.
* A "toll" is a tax for using a road or a tax on things that people by or sell.

(See also: [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [Rome](../names/rom.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References

* Luke 20:21-22
* Mark 02:13-14
* Matthew 09:7-9
* Numbers 31:28-29
* Romans 13:6-7
* Luke 03:12-13
* Luke 05:27-28
* Matthew 05:46-48
* Matthew 09:10-11
* Matthew 11:18-19
* Matthew 17:26-27
* Matthew 18:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1093, H1983, H2670, H4060, H4371, H4522, H4864, H5065, H5674, H6186, G1323, G2778, G5057, G5058, G5411

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tax, tax collector, tax collectors, taxation, taxed, taxes, taxing, taxpayers, toll, tolls

### teach

#### Related Ideas:

educated, teaching, untaught

#### Definition:

To "teach" someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to "provide information" in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s "teaching" is or his "teachings" are what he has taught.

* A "teacher" is someone who teaches. The past action of "teach" is "taught."
* When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
* Jesus' disciples called him "Teacher" as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
* The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
* The phrase "what you have been taught" could also be translated as, "what these people have taught you" or "what God has taught you," depending on the context.
* Other ways to translate "teach" could include "tell" or "explain" or "instruct."
* Often this term can be translated as "teaching people about God."
* A person who is "educated" has been taught formally.
* A person who is "untaught" has not been taught.
* A "teaching" is the information that someone teaches.

(See also: [instruct](../other/instruct.md), [teacher](../other/teacher.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 01:03
* Acts 02:40-42
* John 07:14
* Luke 04:31
* Matthew 04:23
* Psalms 032:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H502, H995, H2094, H2449, H2596, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, H8451, G1317, G1319, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G2312, G2567, G3811

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

educated, taught, teach, teaches, teaching, teachings, untaught

### teacher

#### Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

* In the Bible, the word "teacher" is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
* People who learn from a teacher are called "students" or "disciples."
* In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized ("Teacher") when it is used as a title for Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
* Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as "Sir" or "Rabbi" or "Preacher."

(See also: [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [preach](../other/preach.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
* Ephesians 04:11-13
* Galatians 06:6-8
* Habakkuk 02:18
* James 03:02
* John 01:37-39
* Luke 06:40
* Matthew 12:38-40

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3384, H3887, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

teacher, teachers

### temple

#### Related Ideas:

shrine

#### Definitions:

A temple is a special building in which people worship their god or gods. The most important temple in the Bible was where the Israelites worshiped the true God with prayers and sacrifices. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

* Often the term "temple" referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
* The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
* God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
* King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
* In the New Testament, the term "temple of the Holy Spirit" is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.
* A "shrine" is a small place where people worship or an object of worship.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Usually when the text says that people were "in the temple," it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as "in the temple courtyards" or "in the temple complex."
* Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate "temple" as "temple building," to make it the reference clear.
* Ways to translate "temple" could include, "God's holy house" or "sacred worship place."
* Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as "the house of Yahweh" or "the house of God."

(See also: [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [courtyard](../other/courtyard.md), [Zion](../kt/zion.md), [house](../other/house.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 03:02
* Acts 03:08
* Ezekiel 45:18-20
* Luke 19:46
* Nehemiah 10:28
* Psalm 079:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1002, H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3624, G3485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

shrine, shrines, temple, temples

### tempt

#### Related Ideas:

temptation, tempter

#### Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

* A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
* People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
* Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
* Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
* Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
* Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong.
* To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [test](../kt/test.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
* Hebrews 04:15
* James 01:13
* Luke 04:02
* Luke 11:04
* Matthew 26:41

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4531, H5254, G551, G3985, G3986, G3987

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tempt, temptation, tempted, tempter, tempting

### tent

#### Related Ideas:

camp, encamp, tentmaker

#### Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

* Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
* For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constucted from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
* The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
* The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
* When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
* The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies."
* To "camp" is to sleep in tents or other temporary shelters.
* To "encamp" is for an army to set up camp near a place they will attack.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [curtain](../other/curtain.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Sinai](../names/sinai.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [tent of meeting](../other/tentofmeeting.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:10
* Daniel 11:45
* Exodus 16:18
* Genesis 12:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H167, H168, H2918, H3407, H4908, H6898, G3925, G4633, G4636

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

camp, camped, camping, camps, encamp, encamped, encampments, encamps, tent, tentmakers, tents

### tent of meeting

#### Definitions:

The term "tent of meeting" refers to a tent which was a temporary place where God met with Moses before the tabernacle was built.

* The tent of meeting was set up outside the camp of the Israelites.
* When Moses went into the tent of meeting to meet with God, a pillar of cloud would stand at the entrance to the tent as a sign of God's presence there.
* After the Israelites built the tabernacle, the temporary tent was no longer needed and the term "tent of meeting" was sometimes used to refer to the tabernacle.

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [pillar](../other/pillar.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [tent](../other/tent.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 02:28-29
* Joshua 19:51
* Leviticus 01:02
* Numbers 04:31-32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H168, H4150

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tent of meeting

### tenth

#### Related Ideas:

tithe

#### Definition:

The terms "tenth" and "tithe" refer to "ten percent" or "one-out-of-ten portion" of one's money, crops, livestock, or other possessions, which is given to God.

* In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
* This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
* In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
* This could also be translated as "one-tenth" or "one out of ten."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Levite](../names/levite.md), [livestock](../other/livestock.md), [Melchizedek](../names/melchizedek.md), [minister](../kt/minister.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md) [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 14:19-20
* Genesis 28:20-22
* Hebrews 07:4-6
* Isaiah 06:13
* Luke 11:42
* Luke 18:11-12
* Matthew 23:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4643, H6237, H6241, G586, G1181, G1183

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes

### terror

#### Related Ideas:

panic, terrible, terrify, terrorize

#### Definition:

The term "terror" refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To "terrify" someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

* A "terror" is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
* These terrors can be described as "terrifying." This term could be translated as, "fear-causing" or "terror-producing."
* The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
* The "terror of Yahweh" could be translated as "the terrifying presence of Yahweh" or "the dreaded judgment of Yahweh" or "when Yahweh causes great fear."
* Ways to translate "terror" could also include "extreme fear" or "deep dread."
* To "terrorize" people means to do things that cause them to be extremely afraid.
* The word "panic" refers to a sudden strong fear that may cause people to do things without thinking clearly about the situation.

(See also: [adversary](../other/adversary.md), [fear](../kt/fear.md), [judge](../kt/judge.md), [plague](../other/plague.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 02:25
* Exodus 14:10
* Luke 21:09
* Mark 06:48-50

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H366, H367, H926, H928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1205, H1763, H2111, H2113, H2189, H2729, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, H7374, G1629, G1630, G1719, G4422, G4426, G5400, G5401

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

panic, terrible, terrified, terrify, terrifying, terrifying events, terrifying thing, terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors

### test

#### Related Ideas:

put to the test

#### Definition:

The term "test" refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

* God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
* God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
* Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
* To "put to the test" can mean, "challenge something or someone to prove its value."
* In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
* Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term to "test" could also be translated as, to "challenge" or to "cause to experience difficulties" or to "prove."
* Ways to translate "a test" could be, "a challenge" or "a difficult experience."
* To "put to the test" could be translated as to "test" or to "set up a challenge" or to "force to prove oneself."
* In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, "trying to force God to prove his love."
* In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term "test" can mean "tempt."

(See also: [tempt](../kt/tempt.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:01
* 1 Thessalonians 05:21
* Acts 15:10
* Genesis 22:01
* Isaiah 07:13
* James 01:12
* Lamentations 03:40-43
* Malachi 03:10
* Philippians 01:10
* Psalm 026:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1305, H2713, H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G350, G1252, G1263, G1381, G1382, G1598, G1957, G2983, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G3985, G3986, G4451, G4828

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

put ... to the test, test, tested, testing, tests

### testimony

#### Related Ideas:

eyewitness, testify, witness

#### Definition:

When a person gives "testimony" he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To "testify" is to give "testimony."

* Often a person "testifies" about something he has experienced directly.
* A witness who gives "false testimony" does not tell the truth about what happened.
* Sometimes the term "testimony" refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
* In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus' followers testified about the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection.

The term "witness" refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term "eyewitness" emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

* To "witness" something means to see it happen.
* At a trial, a witness "gives witness" or "bears witness." This has the same meaning as "testify."
* Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
* A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a "false witness." He is said to "give false witness" or to "bear false witness."
* The expression "be a witness between" means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "testify" and "testimony":

* The term "testify" or "give testimony" could also be translated as, "tell the facts" or "tell what was seen or heard" or "tell from personal experience" or "tell what happened."
* Ways to translate "testimony" could include, "report of what happened" or "statement of what is true" or "what has been said."
* The phrase, "as a testimony to them" could be translated as, to "show them what is true" or to "prove to them what is true."
* The phrase, "as a testimony against them" could be translated as, "which will show them their sin" or "exposing their hypocrisy" or "which will prove that they are wrong."
* To "give false testimony" could be translated as "say false things about" or "state things that are not true."

Translating "witness" and "eyewitness":

* The term "witness" or "eyewitness" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person seeing it" or "the one who saw it happen" or "those who saw and heard (those things)."
* Something that is "a witness" could be translated as "guarantee" or "sign of our promise" or "something that testifies that this is true."
* The phrase "you will be my witnesses" could also be translated as "you will tell other people about me" or "you will teach people the truth that I taught you" or "you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach."
* To "witness to" could be translated as to "tell what was seen" or to "testify" or to "state what happened."
* To "witness" something could be translated as to "see something that happens" or to "experience something that happens."

(See also: [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [guilt](../kt/guilt.md), [judge](../kt/judge.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 31:28
* Micah 06:03
* Matthew 26:60
* Mark 01:44
* John 01:07
* John 03:33
* Acts 04:32-33
* Acts 07:44
* Acts 13:31
* Romans 01:09
* 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
* 1 Timothy 05:19-20
* 2 Timothy 01:08
* 2 Peter 01:16-18
* 1 John 05:6-8
* 3 John 01:12
* Revelation 12:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H6315, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

eyewitness, eyewitnesses, testified, testifies, testify, testify against, testifying, testimony, witness, witnessed, witnesses

### tetrarch

#### Definition:

The term "tetrarch" refers to a governing official who ruled over part of the Roman Empire. Each tetrarch was under the authority of the Roman emperor.

* The title "tetrarch" means "one of four joint rulers."
* Starting under the Emperor Diocletian, there were four major divisions of the Roman Empire and each tetrarch ruled one division.
* The kingdom of of Herod "the Great," who was king at the time of the birth of Jesus, was divided into four sections after his death, and ruled by his sons as "tetrarchs," or "rulers of a fourth."
* Each division had one or more smaller parts called "provinces," such as Galilee or Samaria.
* "Herod the tetrarch" is mentioned several times in the New Testament. He is also known as "Herod Antipas."
* The term "tetrarch" could also be translated as "regional governor" or "provincial ruler" or "ruler" or "governor."

(See also: [governor](../other/governor.md), [Herod Antipas](../names/herodantipas.md), [province](../other/province.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 03:1-2
* Luke 09:07
* Matthew 14:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5075, G5076

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tetrarch

### the sea

#### Facts:

In the Bible, the "Great Sea" or "western sea" refers to what is now called the "Mediterranean Sea," which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

* The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by : Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
* This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
* Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the "western sea."

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [people group](../other/peoplegroup.md), [prosper](../other/prosper.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 47:15-17
* Ezekiel 47:18-20
* Joshua 15:3-4
* Numbers 13:27-29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H314, H1419, H3220

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea

### the twelve

#### Related Ideas:

the eleven

#### Definition:

The term "the twelve" refers to the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his closest disciples, or apostles. After Judas killed himself, they were called "the eleven."

* Jesus had many other disciples, but the title "the twelve" distinguished those who were apparently closest to Jesus.
* The names of these twelve disciples are listed in Matthew 10, Mark 3, and Luke 6.
* Some time after Jesus had returned to heaven, "the eleven" chose a disciple named Matthias to take Judas' place. Then they were called "the twelve" again.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* For many languages it may be clearer or more natural to add the noun and say, "the twelve apostles" or "Jesus' twelve closest disciples."
* "The eleven" could also be translated as "Jesus' eleven remaining disciples."
* Some translations may prefer to use a capital letter to show that it was used as a title, as in "the Twelve" and "the Eleven."

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:5-7
* Acts 06:02
* Luke 09:01
* Luke 18:31
* Mark 10:32-34
* Matthew 10:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1427, G1733

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

the eleven, the twelve

### thief

#### Related Ideas:

bandit, booty, loot, marauding band, plunder, raider, revolutionary, rob, robber, robbery, steal

#### Definitions:

The term "thief" refers to a person who steals money or property from other people. The plural of "thief" is "thieves." The term "robber" often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

* Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a Jewish man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the Jewish man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
* Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
* In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan's plan is to try to get God's people to stop obeying him. If he succeeded in doing this Satan would be stealing from them the good things that God has planned for them.
* Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.
* "Marauding bands" and "raiding parties" are large groups people who go from place to place to steal things and cause others harm.
* "Bandits" are thieves who work together.
* "Plunder" and "loot" are words that mean the same thing as "steal." They are used to speak of stealing many things at one time.
* "Raiders" are people who attack others, stealing and destroying property, and often killing and harming the people whose property they are stealing.
* The words "booty," "loot," and "plunder" also refer to the things that are stolen.

(See also: [bless](../kt/bless.md), [crime](../other/criminal.md), [crucify](../kt/crucify.md), [darkness](../other/darkness.md), [destroyer](../other/destroyer.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [Samaria](../names/samaria.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 03:10
* Luke 12:33
* Mark 14:48
* Proverbs 06:30
* Revelation 03:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H957, H962, H1214, H1416, H1497, H1589, H1590, H1980, H4455, H6530, H7703, H7997, G727, G941, G2417, G2812, G3027

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bandits, booty, loot, marauding band, marauding bands, plunder, plundered, plundered things, raiders, raiding parties, raiding party, revolutionary, rob, robbed, robber, robbers, robbery, robbing, robs, steal, stealing, steals, stolen, thief, thieves

### thorn

#### Related Ideas:

thistle, thornbush

#### Definitions:

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

* A "thorn" is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A "thornbush" is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
* A "thistle" is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
* Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
* A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus' head before he was crucified.
* If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: [crown](../other/crown.md), [fruit](../other/fruit.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 06:7-8
* Matthew 13:07
* Matthew 13:22
* Numbers 33:55

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G173, G174, G4647, G5146

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

thistle, thistles, thorn, thorn hedge, thornbush, thornbushes, thorns

### thresh

#### Related Ideas:

beat out

#### Definition:

The terms "thresh" and "threshing" refer to the first part of the process of separating wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

* Threshing the wheat plant loosens the grain from the straw and the chaff. Afterwards the grain is "winnowed" to completely separate the grain from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
* In Bible times, a "threshing floor" was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
* A "threshing cart" or "threshing wheel" was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
* A "threshing sledge" or "threshing board" was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.
* To "beat out" is to separate the grain from the straw either by spreading the stalks on the ground and hitting them with a stick or board or by holding the base of a bundle of stalks and hitting the heads on a hard surface.

(See also: [chaff](../other/chaff.md), [grain](../other/grain.md), [winnow](../other/winnow.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
* 2 Kings 13:07
* 2 Samuel 24:16
* Daniel 02:35
* Luke 03:17
* Matthew 03:12
* Ruth 03:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, H2742, G248

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

beat ... out, beaten ... out, floors for threshing, thresh, threshed, threshes, threshing, threshing floor, threshing sledges

### threshold

#### Related Ideas:

doorway

#### Definition:

The term "threshold" refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

* Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
* Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
* This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
* If there is no term for this, "threshold" could also be translated as "doorway" or "opening" or "entranceway," depending on the context.

(See also: [gate](../other/gate.md), [tent](../other/tent.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:17-19
* Ezekiel 09:03
* Isaiah 06:04
* Proverbs 17:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4670, H5592

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

doorways, threshold, thresholds

### throne

#### Related Ideas:

enthroned, seat of authority

#### Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

* A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
* The word "throne" is often used figuratively to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
* In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
* Jesus said that heaven is God's throne. One way to translate this could be, "where God reigns as king."
* "Seat of authority" is another way to refer to a throne.
* "Enthroned" means "sitting on a throne." In the Bible, this talks about Yahweh ruling from heaven or his presence being between the cherubim on the ark of the covenant.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [king](../other/king.md), [reign](../other/reign.md))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 01:15-17
* Genesis 41:40
* Luke 01:32
* Luke 22:30
* Matthew 05:34
* Matthew 19:28
* Revelation 01:4-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

enthroned, seat of authority, throne, thrones

### time

#### Definitions:

In the Bible the term "time" was often used to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to "age" or "epoch" or "season."

* In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a "time" of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
* In the phrase "time, times, and half a time" the term "time" means "year." This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
* "Time" can mean "occasion" in a phrase like "third time." The phrase "many times" can mean "on many occasions."
* To be "on time" means to do something when expected or needed, not late.
* Depending on the context, the term "time" could be translated as, "season" or "time period" or "moment" or "event" or "occurrence."

(See also: [age](../other/age.md), [tribulation](../other/tribulation.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:07
* Daniel 12:1-2
* Mark 11:11
* Matthew 08:29
* Psalms 068:28-29
* Revelation 14:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H116, H227, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H4592, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8160, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2250, G2540, G3461, G3568, G3764, G3819, G3999, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

time, times

### tomb

#### Related Ideas:

burial place, grave, gravediggers

#### Definition:

The terms "tomb" and "grave" refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A "burial place" is a more general term that also refers to this.

* The Jews buried bodies in natural caves, in caves that they dug in the side of a hill, or in holes that they dug in the ground.
* In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
* If in the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include "cave" or "hole in the side of a hill."
* A gravedigger is a person who digs a grave to put a dead body in it.
* The phrase "the grave" is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](../other/bury.md), [death](../other/death.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:29-31
* Genesis 23:06
* Genesis 50:05
* John 19:41
* Luke 23:53
* Mark 05:1-2
* Matthew 27:53
* Romans 03:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burial place, grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs

### tongue

#### Related Ideas:

language

#### Definition:

There are several figurative meanings of "tongue" in the Bible.

* In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
* Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
* Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
* The expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire.
* In the expression "my tongue rejoices," the term "tongue" refers to the whole person.
* The phrase "lying tongue" refers to a person's voice or speech. (See: [metonymy](rc://en/ta/man/jit/figs-metonymy))

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated by "language" or "spiritual language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
* When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
* The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
* The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."
* Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: [gift](../kt/gift.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [joy](../other/joy.md), [praise](../other/praise.md), [rejoice](../other/joy.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 12:10
* 1 John 03:18
* 2 Samuel 23:02
* Acts 02:26
* Ezekiel 36:03
* Philippians 02:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084, G5456

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

language, languages, tongue, tongues

### torment

#### Related Ideas:

tormentors, torture, torturer

#### Definitions:

The term "torment" refers to terrible suffering. To "torment" or "torture" someone means to cause that person to suffer, often in a cruel way.

* Sometimes the term "torment" refers to strong physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the "beast" will suffer in the end times.
* Sometimes the term "torment" refers to strong spiritual and emotional pain, as experienced by Job.
* The apostle John wrote in the book of Revelation that people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
* The term "torment" could be translated as "terrible suffering" or "cause someone to suffer greatly" or "agony." Some translators may add "physical" or "spiritual" to make the meaning clear.
* A "tormentor" or a "torturer" is someone who torments or tortures other people.

(See also: [beast](../other/beast.md), [everlasting](../kt/eternity.md), [Job](../names/job.md), [Savior](../kt/savior.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [suffer](../other/suffer.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:08
* Jeremiah 30:20-22
* Lamentations 01:11-12
* Luke 08:28-29
* Revelation 11:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3013, H6735, G928, G929, G930, G931, G3600

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

torment, tormented, tormenting, tormentors, torture, torturers

### tradition

#### Definition:

The term "tradition" refers to a custom or practice that has been kept over time and which is passed down to people in later generations.

* Often in the Bible the word "traditions" referred to teachings and practices that people made, not God's laws. The expression "tradition of men" or "human tradition" makes this clear.
* Phrases such as "traditions of the elders" or "traditions of my fathers" referred specifically to Jewish customs and practices that Jewish leaders over time had added to the laws God gave to the Israelites through Moses. Even though these added traditions had not come from God, people thought they had to obey them in order to be righteous.
* The apostle Paul used the term "tradition" in a different way to refer to teachings about Christian practice that came from God and that he and other apostles had taught new believers.
* In modern times, there are many Christian traditions that are not taught in the Bible, but rather are the result of historically accepted customs and practices. These traditions should always be evaluated in light of what God teaches us in the Bible.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [Christian](../kt/christian.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [generation](../other/generation.md), [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
* Colossians 02:08
* Galatians 01:13-14
* Mark 07:02
* Matthew 15:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3862

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tradition, traditions

### trample

#### Related Ideas:

tread, trod, trodden

#### Definition:

To "tread" on something is to step on it. To "trample" something is to step on it and smash it with the feet.

* An example of "trampling" is the smashing down of grass by the feet of people running in a field.
* In ancient times, wine was sometimes made by treading on grapes, or trampling grapes, to remove the juice from them.
* The term "trample" is also used figuratively in the Bible to mean "destroy" or "defeat" or "humiliate."
* Other ways that "trample" could be translated include "crush with the feet" or "smash down with the feet" or "stomp on and crush" or "smash into the ground."

(See also: [grape](../other/grape.md), [humiliate](../other/humiliate.md), [punish](../other/punish.md), [rebel](../other/rebel.md), [thresh](../other/thresh.md), [wine](../other/wine.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 10:29
* Psalms 007:5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H947, H1758, H1792, H1869, H3381, H4001, H4823, H5674, H1790, H7429, H7512, H7533, G2662, G3961

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

trample, trample over, trampled, tramples, trampling, trampling place, tread, treader, treading down, trod, trodden

### transgress

#### Related Ideas:

offend, offense, transgression, transgressor

#### Definition:

The term "transgression" refers to the breaking of a command, rule, or moral code. To "transgress" is to commit a "transgression."

* Figuratively, to "transgress" can also be described as to "cross a line," that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
* The terms "transgression," "sin," "iniquity," and "trespass" all include the meaning of acting against God's will and disobeying his commands.
* To "offend" someone is to anger him by transgressing against him. He will then be "offended."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To "trangress" could be translated as to "sin" or to "disobey" or to "rebel."
* If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean "sin" or "transgress" or "trespass," it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See also: [sin](../kt/sin.md), [trespass](../kt/trespass.md), [iniquity](../kt/iniquity.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 04:06
* Daniel 09:24-25
* Galatians 03:19-20
* Galatians 06:1-2
* Numbers 14:17-19
* Psalm 032:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H898, H6087, H6586, H6588, G3847, G3848, G3892

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

offend, offended, offense, offenses, transgress, transgressed, transgresses, transgressing, transgression, transgressions, transgressor, transgressors

### tremble

#### Related Ideas:

shake

#### Definition:

To "tremble" means to shake or quiver out of fear or extreme distress.

* This term is also used figuratively to mean "be very afraid."
* Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
* The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
* This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](../other/earth.md), [fear](../kt/fear.md), [Lord](../kt/lord.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 07:15
* 2 Samuel 22:44-46
* Acts 16:29-31
* Jeremiah 05:22
* Luke 08:47

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5425, H5568, H6206, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, G1790, G4579, G5141, G5156, G5425

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

shake, shakes, shook, tremble, trembled, trembles, trembling

### trespass

#### Definition:

To "trespass" means to break a law or to violate the rights of another person. A "trespass" is the action of "trespassing."

* A trespass can be a violation of moral or civil law or a sin committed against another person.
* This term is related to the terms "sin," and "transgress," especially as it relates to disobeying God.
* All sins are trespasses against God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, to "trespass against" could be translated as to "sin against" or to "break the rule."
* Some languages may have an expression like "cross the line" that could be used to translate "trespass."
* Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as "transgress" and "sin."

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [iniquity](../kt/iniquity.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [transgress](../kt/transgression.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 25:28
* 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
* Colossians 02:13
* Ephesians 02:01
* Ezekiel 15:7-8
* Romans 05:17
* Romans 05:20-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H819, H4604, H6588, G264, G3900

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

trespass, trespassed, trespasses

### trial

#### Related Ideas:

case, on trial, plead a case

#### Definition:

The term "trial" refers to a situation in which something or someone is "tried" or tested.

* A "trial" can be a judicial hearing in a court in which evidence is given to prove whether the person "on trial" is innocent or guilty of wrongdoing.
* A "case" is a person's problem or complaint and the reasons he thinks he is right. A judge listens to the case during a trial and decides what should be done.
* To "plead" someone's case is to represent his case in court, telling why the person is right about what happened and about what should be done.

The term "trial" is also used figuratively.

* The term "trial" can also refer to difficult circumstances that a person goes through as God tests their faith. Another word for this is "testing. "Temptation" is a particular kind of trial.
* Many people in the Bible were tested to see if they would continue to believe and obey God. They went through trials which included being beaten, imprisoned, or even killed because of their faith.

(See also: [tempt](../kt/tempt.md), [test](../kt/test.md), [innocent](../kt/innocent.md), [guilt](../kt/guilt.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 04:34
* Ezekiel 21:12-13
* Lamentations 03:58-61
* Proverbs 25:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3198, H4531, H4941, H7378, H7379, G178, G350, G1383, G2919, G3986, G4822

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

case, on trial, plead ... case, trial, trials

### tribe

#### Related Ideas:

tribal

#### Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

* People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
* In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
* A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](../other/clan.md), [nation](../other/nation.md), [people group](../other/peoplegroup.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:19
* 2 Kings 17:16-18
* Genesis 25:16
* Genesis 49:17
* Luke 02:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H523, H4294, H4940, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tribal, tribe, tribes

### tribulation

#### Related Ideas:

distress

#### Definition:

The term "tribulation" refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

* It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus' teachings.
* "The Great Tribulation" is a term used in the Bible to describe a period of time just before Jesus' second coming when God's wrath will be poured out on the earth for several years.
* The term "tribulation" could also be translated as "time of great suffering" or "deep distress" or "severe difficulties."

(See also: [earth](../other/earth.md), [teach](../other/teach.md), [wrath](../kt/wrath.md))

#### Bible References:

* Mark 04:17
* Mark 13:19
* Matthew 13:20-21
* Matthew 24:09
* Matthew 24:29
* Romans 02:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4689, H4691, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7185, H7451, G1453, G1568, G2347, G3076, G4912, G4928

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

distress, distressed, distresses, tribulation, tribulations

### tribute

#### Definition:

The term "tribute" refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations.

* A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.
* In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
* Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "tribute" could be translated as "official gifts" or "special tax" or "required payment."

(See also: [gold](../other/gold.md), [king](../other/king.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md), [tax](../other/tax.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
* 2 Chronicles 09:22-24
* 2 Kings 17:03
* Luke 23:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H814, H1093, H4061, H4503, H4530, H4853, H4864, H6066, H7862, G5411

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tribute

### trouble

#### Related Ideas:

troublesome

#### Definition:

A "trouble" is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To "trouble" someone means to "bother" that person or to cause him distress. Something that is "troubling" causes people to feel distressed. Someone who is troublesome causes problems. To be "troubled" means to feel upset or anxious or distressed about something.

A "tumult" is a group of people making much noise because they are troubled or unhappy.

* Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
* In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
* The Old Testament use of "trouble" also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "trouble" or "troubles" could also be translated as "danger" or "painful things that happen" or "persecution" or "difficult experiences" or "distress."
* The term "troubled" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "undergoing distress" or "feeling terrible distress" or "worried" or "anxious" or "distressed" or "terrified" or "disturbed."
* "Don't trouble her" could also be translated as "don't bother her" or "don't criticize her."
* The phrase "day of trouble" or "times of trouble" could also be translated as "when you experience distress" or " when difficult things happen to you" or "when God causes distressing things to happen."
* Ways to translate "make trouble" or "bring trouble" could include "cause distressing things to happen" or "cause difficulties" or "make them experience very difficult things."

(See also: [afflict](../other/afflict.md), [persecute](../other/persecute.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:18-19
* 2 Chronicles 25:19
* Luke 24:38
* Matthew 24:06
* Matthew 26:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1672, H2196, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6087, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G318, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G2906, G3636, G3926, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

trouble, troubled, troubles, troublesome, troubling

### true

#### Related Ideas:

certain, certainly, certainty, indeed, real, sure, surely, truly, truth, truthful, truthfulness, truths

#### Definition:

The term "truth" refers to one or more concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said. Such concepts are said to be "true."

* True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
* The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
* To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
* The word "truly" is used to emphasize what the speaker is saying. "Truly" is sometimes translated as "surely" or "certainly."
* Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
* Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
* God's word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.
* The word "certainty" refers to a truth about which one can be certain that it is true.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
* Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
* The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
* The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
* To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [fulfill](../kt/fulfill.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [understand](../other/understand.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
* 1 John 01:5-7
* 1 John 02:08
* 3 John 01:08
* Acts 26:24-26
* Colossians 01:06
* Genesis 47:29-31
* James 01:18
* James 03:14
* James 05:19
* Jeremiah 04:02
* John 01:9
* John 01:16-18
* John 01:51
* John 03:31-33
* Joshua 07:19-21
* Lamentations 05:19-22
* Matthew 08:10
* Matthew 12:17
* Psalm 026:1-3
* Revelation 01:19-20
* Revelation 15:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H530, H543, H551, H571, H3330, H5229, H6664, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G281, G803, G804, G1103, G3483, G4103, G4137, G5198, G5199

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

certainly, certainty, for certain, indeed, real, sure, surely, true, truly, truth, truthful, truthfulness, truths

### trumpet

#### Related Ideas:

trumpet call, trumpeter

#### Definition:

The term "trumpet" refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

* A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
* Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
* The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [assembly](../other/assembly.md), [earth](../other/earth.md), [horn](../other/horn.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [wrath](../kt/wrath.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
* 2 Kings 09:13
* Exodus 19:12-13
* Hebrews 12:19
* Matthew 06:02
* Matthew 24:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

trumpet, trumpet call, trumpet's, trumpeters, trumpets

### trust

#### Related Ideas:

entrust, trustworthiness, trustworthy

#### Definition:

To "trust" something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called "trust." A "trustworthy" person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of "trustworthiness."

* Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
* Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
* To "trust in" Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
* A "trustworthy saying" refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.
* For one person to "entrust" something to a second person is for the first person to give that thing to the second person and expect that the second person will do what the first person tells him to do.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "trust" could include "believe" or "have faith" or "have confidence" or "depend on."
* The phrase "put your trust in" is very similar in meaning to "trust in."
* The term "trustworthy" could be translated as "dependable" or "reliable" or "can always be trusted."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [confidence](../other/confidence.md), [faith](../kt/faith.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
* 1 Timothy 04:09
* Hosea 10:12-13
* Isaiah 31:1-2
* Nehemiah 13:13
* Psalm 031:05
* Titus 03:8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H530, H539, H540, H571, H982, H1556, H2620, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3860, G3982, G4100, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

entrust, entrusted, entrusting, trust, trusted, trusting, trusts, trustworthiness, trustworthy

### tunic

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "tunic" referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

* A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
* Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
* A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
* This term could be translated as "long shirt" or "long undergarment" or "shirt-like garment." It could also be written in a similar way to "tunic," with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See Also: [robe](../other/robe.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 03:21-23
* Isaiah 22:21
* Leviticus 08:12-13
* Luke 03:11
* Mark 06:7-9
* Matthew 10:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2243, H3801, H6361, G5509

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tunic, tunics

### turn

#### Related Ideas:

apostasy, apostate

#### Definition:

To "turn" means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

* The term "turn" can also mean "turn around" to look behind or to face a different direction.
* To "turn back" or "turn away" means to "go back" or "go away" or "cause to go away."
* To "turn away from" something can mean either to stop doing it or to not start doing it.
* To "turn away from" someone means either to refuse to have anything to do with him or to reject him.
* To "turn toward" someone means to look directly at that person.
* To "turn and leave" or "turn his back to leave" means to "go away."
* To "turn back to" means to "start doing something again."
* To "turn away from" means to "stop doing something."
* To "avoid" something is to stay away from it.
* "Apostasy" is the act of turning away from God.
* An "act of apostasy" is an action that someone does to show that he no longer wants to obey God or because he no longer obeys God.
* The term "apostate" describes people who have turned away from God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "turn" can be translated as "change direction" or "go" or "move."
* In some contexts, "turn" could be translated as "cause" (someone) to do something. To "turn (someone) away from" could be translated as "cause (someone) to go away" or "cause (someone) to stop."
* The phrase "turn away from God" could be translated as "stop worshiping God."
* The phrase "turn back to God" could be translated as "start worshiping God again."
* When enemies "turn back," it means they "retreat." To "turn back the enemy" means to "cause the enemy to retreat."
* Used figuratively, when Israel "turned to" false gods, they "started to worship" them. When they "turned away" from idols, they "stopped worshiping" them.
* When God "turned away from" his rebellious people, he "stopped protecting" or "stopped helping" them.
* The phrase "turn the hearts of the fathers to their children" could be translated as "cause fathers to care for their children again."
* The expression "turn my honor into shame" could be translated as "cause my honor to become shame" or "dishonor me so that I am shamed" or "shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me."
* "I will turn your cities into ruin" could be translated as "I will cause your cities to be destroyed" or "I will cause enemies to destroy your cities."
* The phrase "turn into" could be translated as "become." When Moses' rod "turned into" a snake, it "became" a snake." It could also be translated as "changed into."

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [leprosy](../other/leprosy.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 11:02
* Acts 07:42
* Acts 11:21
* Jeremiah 36:1-3
* Luke 01:17
* Malachi 04:06
* Revelation 11:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3363, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5157, G5290

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts of apostasy, apostasy, apostate, turn, turn ... away, turned, turned ... away, turned ... away ... in disgust, turned ... back, turning, turning ... away, turns, turns ... away, turns ... away from

### twelve tribes of Israel

#### Related Ideas:

children of Israel, descendants of Israel, people of Israel, twelve tribes, twelve tribes of the children of Israel, twelve tribes of the sons of Israel

#### Definition:

The term "twelve tribes of Israel" refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

* Jacob was Abraham's grandson. God later changed Jacob's name to Israel.
* These are the names of the tribes: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
* The descendants of Levi did not inherit any land in Canaan because they were a tribe of priests who were set apart to serve God and his people.
* Joseph received a double inheritance of land, which was passed on to his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.
* There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes is slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph's two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: [inherit](../kt/inherit.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [tribe](../other/tribe.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 26:07
* Genesis 49:28
* Luke 22:28-30
* Matthew 19:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1121, H3478, H7626, H8147, G1427, G2474, G5443

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

children of Israel, descendants of Israel, people of Israel, twelve tribes, twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes of the children of Israel, twelve tribes of the sons of Israel

### understand

#### Related Ideas:

argument, craftiness, insight, intelligent, realize, unintentionally, without understanding

#### Definition:

The term "understand" means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

* The term "understanding" can refer to "knowledge" or "wisdom" or realizing how to do something.
* To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
* A person who is "without understanding" does not understand.
* While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
* Depending on the context, the term "understand" could be translated by "know" or "believe" or "comprehend" or "know what (something) means."
* Often the term "understanding" can be translated by "knowledge" or "wisdom" or "insight."
* "Arguments" are statements that one person makes to share his understanding with another person and to convince that other person to understand something the same way.
* "Craftiness" is understanding used for evil.
* An "intelligent" person thinks clearly and learns quickly.
* To do something "unintentionally" is to do it without knowing or by accident or without intending to do it.

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [know](../other/know.md), [wise](../kt/wise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Job 34:16-17
* Luke 02:47
* Luke 08:10
* Matthew 13:12
* Matthew 13:14
* Proverbs 03:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3823, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G144, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1380, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2638, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4894, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

arguments, craftiness, gain understanding, gives ... insight, insight, intelligent, realize, realized, understand, understanding, understands, understood, unintentionally, without understanding

### unleavened bread

#### Definition:

The term "unleavened bread" refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

* When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
* Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, "unleavened bread" represents the removal of sin from a person's life in order to live in a way that honors God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate this term could include "bread with no yeast" or "flat bread that did not rise."
* Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term "yeast, leaven."
* In some contexts, the term "unleavened bread" refers to the "Feast of Unleavened Bread" and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](../other/bread.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [feast](../other/feast.md), [Passover](../kt/passover.md), [servant](../other/servant.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [yeast](../other/yeast.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
* 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
* Acts 12:03
* Exodus 23:14-15
* Ezra 06:21-22
* Genesis 19:1-3
* Judges 06:21
* Leviticus 08:1-3
* Luke 22:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4682, G106

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

unleavened bread

### vain

#### Related Ideas:

for no reason, for nothing, futile, futility, meaningless, of no value, useless, vanity

#### Definition:

The term "vain" describes things that are useless or have no purpose. Vain things are worthless.

* The term "vanity" refers to worthlessness. It can also refer to pride or arrogance.
* In the Old Testament, idols are described as vain things that cannot deliver or save. They are worthless and have no use or purpose.
* If something was done "in vain," it means that there was no good result from it. The effort or action did not accomplish anything. It was futile.
* To "believe in vain" means to believe in something that is not true and that gives false hope.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "vain" could be translated as "empty" or "useless" or "futile" or "worthless" or "meaningless" or "of no value."
* The phrase "in vain" could be translated as "without result" or "with no result" or "for no reason" or "with no purpose."
* The term "vanity" could be translated as "pride" or "nothing worthwhile" or "hopelessness."

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [worthy](../kt/worthy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
* 1 Samuel 25:21-22
* 2 Peter 02:18
* Isaiah 45:19
* Jeremiah 02:29-31
* Matthew 15:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G255, G512, G692, G889, G945, G1500, G2756, G2757, G2758, G2761, G3151, G3152, G3153, G3155

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

for no reason, for nothing, futile, futility, meaningless, of no value, useless, uselessly, vain, vain plans, vanity, without meaning

### veil

#### Related Ideas:

unveiled

#### Definition:

The term "veil" usually refers to a thin piece of cloth that is used as a head covering, to cover the head or face so that it cannot be seen.

* Moses covered his face with a veil after he had been in the presence of Yahweh, so that the brightness of his face would be hidden from the people.
* In the Bible, women wore a veil to cover their head, and often their face as well, when they were in public or in the presence of men.
* The verb to "veil" means to cover something with a veil.
* In some English versions, the word "veil" is used to refer to the thick curtain that covered the entrance into the most holy place. But "curtain" is a better term in that context, since it refers to a heavy, thick piece of cloth.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "veil" could also be translated as "thin cloth covering" or "cloth covering" or "head covering."
* In some cultures, there may already be a term for a veil for women. It may be necessary to find a different word when it is used for Moses.

(See also: [Moses](../names/moses.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 03:12-13
* 2 Corinthians 03:16
* Ezekiel 13:18
* Isaiah 47:1-2
* Song of Solomon 04:3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4533, H4555, H6777, H6809, H7479, G343, G2571, G2572

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

unveiled, veil, veiled, veils

### vine

#### Related Ideas:

grapevine

#### Definition:

The term "vine" refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word "vine" in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

* In the Bible, the word "vine" almost always means "grapevine."
* The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
* Jesus called himself the "vine" and called his people the "branches." In this context, the word "vine" could also be translated as "grapevine stem" or "grape plant stem."

(See also: [grape](../other/grape.md), [vineyard](../other/vineyard.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 40:09
* Genesis 49:11
* John 15:01
* Luke 22:18
* Mark 12:03
* Matthew 21:35-37

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

grapevine, vine, vines

### vineyard

#### Related Ideas:

vine grower

#### Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

* A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
* God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit.
* Vineyard could be also translated as "grapevine garden" or "grape plantation."
* A vine grower is a person who works in a vineyard.

(See also: [grape](../other/grape.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [vine](../other/vine.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 09:20-21
* Luke 13:06
* Luke 20:15
* Matthew 20:02
* Matthew 21:40-41

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

vine growers, vineyard, vineyards

### virgin

#### Related Ideas:

virginity

#### Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

* The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
* Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
* Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin.
* If a person has their "virginity", it means they have never had sexual relations.

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [Isaiah](../names/isaiah.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [Mary](../names/mary.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 24:15-16
* Luke 01:27
* Luke 01:35
* Matthew 01:23
* Matthew 25:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1330, H1331, G3932, G3933

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

virgin, virginity, virgins

### vision

#### Definitions:

The term "vision" refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

* Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
* God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

#### Translation Suggestion

* The phrase "saw a vision" could be translated as "saw something unusual from God" or "God showed him something special."
* Some languages may not have separate words for "vision" and "dream." So a sentence such as "Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind" could be translated as something like "Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things."

(See also: [dream](../other/dream.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:10-12
* Acts 10:3-6
* Acts 10:11
* Acts 12:9-10
* Luke 01:22
* Luke 24:23
* Matthew 17:9-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2372, H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G3701, G3705, G3706

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

vision, visions

### voice

#### Related Ideas:

rumbling, sound

#### Definition:

The term “voice” refers to sound that a person makes when speaking or singing. The term "voice" is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

* God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn't have a voice in the same way a human being does.
* This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert…."
* To "hear someone's voice" could also be translated as "hear someone speaking."
* Sometimes the word "voice" isused for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the "voice" of the heavens proclaims God's mighty works. This could also be translated as "their splendor shows clearly how great God is."

(See also: [call](../kt/call.md), [proclaim](../other/preach.md), [splendor](../other/splendor.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 05:36-38
* Luke 01:42
* Luke 09:35
* Matthew 03:17
* Matthew 12:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

rumblings, sound, sounds, voice, voices

### vow

#### Definition:

A vow is a promise that a person makes to God. The person promises to do a certain thing in order to specially honor God or to show devotion to him.

* After a person makes a vow, he is obligated to fulfill that vow.
* The Bible teaches that a person may be judged by God if he doesn't keep his vow.
* Sometimes a person may ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow.
* But God is not required to fulfill a request that a person asks for in his vow.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "vow" could be translated as "solemn promise" or "promise made to God."
* A vow is a special kind of oath that is made to God.

(See also: [promise](../kt/promise.md), [oath](../other/oath.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 07:27-28
* Acts 21:23
* Genesis 28:21
* Genesis 31:12-13
* Jonah 01:14-16
* Jonah 02:9-10
* Proverbs 07:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5087, H5088, G2171

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

vow, vowed, vows

### walk

#### Definition:

The term "walk" is often used in a figurative sense to mean "live."

* "Enoch walked with God" means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
* To "walk by the Spirit" means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
* To "walk in" God's commands or God's ways means to "live in obedience to" his commands, that is, to "obey his commands" or "do his will."
* When God says he will "walk among" his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
* To "walk contrary to" means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
* To "walk after" means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate "walk" literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
* Otherwise, figurative uses of "walk" could also be translated by "live" or "act" or "behave."
* The phrase "walk by the Spirit" could be translated by, "live in obedience to the Holy Spirit" or "behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit" or "do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you."
* To "walk in God's commands" could be translated by "live by God's commands" or "obey God's commands."
* The phrase "walked with God" could be translated as, "lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 Kings 02:04
* Colossians 02:07
* Galatians 05:25
* Genesis 17:01
* Isaiah 02:05
* Jeremiah 13:10
* Micah 04:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4748

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

walk, walk around, walked, walking, walking around, walks

### warrior

#### Related Ideas:

armed group, army, footmen, garrison, host, soldier, troop

#### Definitions:

The terms "warrior" and "soldier" both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

* Usually the term "warrior" is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
* The term "soldier" more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
* Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
* The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for "warrior" and "soldier" that also differ in meaning and use.
* An army is a large organized group of people who are trained to fight against the armies of other countries or kingdoms.
* The phrase "armed groups" refers to the tribes of Israel which were organized in fighting groups as they left Egypt.
* The term "footmen" refers to soldiers who march. They do not ride on a horse or in a chariot.
* A "garrison" is either a fort in which soldiers are stationed or a group of soldiers who are stationed in the fort.
* The term "host" can refer to an army or any very large group of people.
* A "troop" is a large group of soldiers.

These ideas can also be used in figurative ways.

* Yahweh is figuratively described as a "warrior."
* The "host of heaven" is a metaphor that sees the stars in the sky as an army that rivals the army of Yahweh of hosts.

(See also: [courage](../other/courage.md), [crucify](../kt/crucify.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [tomb](../other/tomb.md), [Yahweh of hosts](../kt/yahwehofhosts.md))

#### Bible References:

* [1 Chronicles 21:05](rc://en/tn/help/1ch/21/05s
* Acts 21:33
* Luke 03:14
* Luke 23:11
* Matthew 08:8-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H352, H510, H1368, H1416, H1995, H2389, H2428, H2502, H3715, H3898, H4674, H5333, H5971, H6518, H6635, H6951, H7273, H7916, G3925, G4686, G4753, G4754, G4757, G4961

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

armed group, armed groups, armies, army, army's, fellow soldier, footmen, garrison, garrisons, host, hosts, soldier, soldiers, soldiers', troop, troops, warrior, warriors

### waste

#### Related Ideas:

lay waste, wasteland

#### Definition:

To "waste" something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely.

* To "lay waste" to a city or land means to destroy it.
* A "wasteland" is a land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore. It may also be called a "waste."
* Another word for a "wasteland" could be "desert" or "wilderness." But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.
* To "waste away" means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 06:06
* Leviticus 26:39
* Matthew 26:08
* Revelation 18:15-17
* Zechariah 07:13-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H535, H1086, H1104, H1326, H2100, H2470, H2490, H2522, H2717, H2721, H2723, H3615, H3856, H4127, H4198, H4592, H4743, H4923, H5307, H6313, H7334, H7503, H7582, H7703, H7736, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, G684, G1287, G2049

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

laid waste, lays waste, waste, waste away, wasted, wasteland, wastelands, wastes, wastes away, wasting

### watch

#### Related Ideas:

keep watch, watch out, watchful, watchman

#### Definition:

The term "watch" means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings.

* To "keep watch" or "keep close watch" can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
* To "watch out" means to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
* To "be watchful" means to be alert and aware of what is happening.
* A "watchman" was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

These ideas can also be used figuratively.

* To "watch" or "keep watch" means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to "be ready."
* The command to "watch your life and doctrine closely" means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Other ways of translating "watch" could include "pay close attention to" or "be diligent" or "be very careful" or "be on guard."
* Other words for "watchman" are "sentry" or "guard."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:06
* Hebrews 13:17
* Jeremiah 31:4-6
* Mark 08:15
* Mark 13:33-34
* Matthew 25:10-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H821, H2370, H4931, H5027, H5234, H5341, H6486, H6485, H6822, H6836, H7181, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1983, G2334, G2657, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5426, G5438, G5442

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

keep ... watch, kept ... watch, watch, watch out, watched, watchful, watching, watchman, watchmen

### watch (biblical time)

#### Definition:

In biblical times, a "watch" was a period of time at night during which a watchman or guard for a city would be on duty looking out for any danger from an enemy.

* In the Old Testament, the Israelites had three watches which were called "beginning" (sunset to 10 p.m.), "middle" (10 p.m. to 2 a.m.), and "morning" (2 a.m. to sunrise) watches.
* In the New Testament, the Jews followed the Roman system and had four watches, named simply "first" (sunset to 9 p.m.), "second" (9 p.m. to 12 midnight), "third" (12 midnight to 3 a.m.), and "fourth" (3 a.m. to sunrise) watches.
* These could also be translated with more general expressions such as "late evening" or "middle of the night" or "very early in the morning," depending on which watch is being referred to.

(See also: [watch](../other/watch.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 12:37-38
* Mark 06:48-50
* Matthew 14:25-27
* Psalms 090:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H821, G5438

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

watch (biblical time), watches

### watchtower

#### Related Ideas:

tower

#### Definition:

The term "watchtower" refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

* Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
* The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
* Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
* The term "watchtower" is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies.

(See also: [adversary](../other/adversary.md), [watch](../other/watch.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 27:25-27
* Ezekiel 26:3-4
* Mark 12:1-3
* Matthew 21:33-34
* Psalm 062:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H803, H971, H975, H1785, H2918, H4026, H4029, H4692, H4707, H4869, H6438, H6836, G4444

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tower, towers, watchtower, watchtowers

### water

#### Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, "water" also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

* The term "waters" refers to bodies of water or many sources of water.
* The term "waters" can also be a general reference to a large amount of water.
* To "water" livestock and other animals means to provide water for them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
* The phrase "draw water" means "pull water up from a well with a bucket."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* "Streams of living water will flow from them" could be translated as "the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water." Instead of "blessings" the term "gifts" or "fruits" or "godly character" could be used.
* When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase "living water" could be translated as "water that gives life" or "lifegiving water." In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
* Depending on the context, the term "waters" or "many waters" could be translated as "great suffering (that surrounds you like water)" or "overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)" or "large amounts of water."

(See also: [life](../kt/life.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [power](../kt/power.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:36-38
* Exodus 14:21
* John 04:10
* John 04:14
* John 04:15
* Matthew 14:28-30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2222, H3384, H4325, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

water, watered, watering, waters

### week

#### Related Ideas:

sevens

#### Definition:

The term "week" literally refers to a period of time lasting seven days.

* In the Jewish system of counting time, a week begins at sunset on Saturday and ends at sunset the following Saturday.
* In the Bible, the term "week" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a group of seven units of time, such as seven years.
* The "Festival of Weeks" is a celebration of harvest that takes place seven weeks after Passover. It is also called "Pentecost."
* The word "sevens" can refer to either seven days, seven weeks, or seven years.

(See also: [Pentecost](../kt/pentecost.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 20:7-8
* Deuteronomy 16:09
* Leviticus 23:15-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7620, G4521

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sevens, week, weeks

### well

#### Related Ideas:

cistern

#### Definition:

The terms "well" and "cistern" refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

* A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
* A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
* Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A "broken cistern" happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
* Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people's homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
* Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
* Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
* Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
* Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.
* These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "well" could include "deep water hole" or "deep hole for spring water" or "deep hole for drawing water."
* The term "cistern" could be translated as "stone water pit" or "deep and narrow pit for water" or "underground tank for holding water."

(See also: [Jeremiah](../names/jeremiah.md), [prison](../other/prison.md), [strife](../other/strife.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:17
* 2 Samuel 17:17-18
* Genesis 16:14
* Luke 14:4-6
* Numbers 20:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H875, H953, H1360, H4002, H4599, H4726, H4841, G4077, G5421

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cistern, cisterns, well, wells

### wheat

#### Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions "grain" or "seeds," it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

* The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
* After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called "straw" and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
* After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
* People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](../other/barley.md), [chaff](../other/chaff.md), [grain](../other/grain.md), [seed](../other/seed.md), [thresh](../other/thresh.md), [winnow](../other/winnow.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 27:36-38
* Exodus 34:21-22
* John 12:24
* Luke 03:17
* Matthew 03:12
* Matthew 13:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

wheat

### will of God

#### Related Ideas:

God's will, desire of God, he wishes, his will, will of my Father, will of our God and Father, will of the Lord

#### Definition:

The "will of God" refers to God's desires and plans.

* God's will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
* It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
* The term to "will" means to "determine" or to "desire."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The "will of God" could also be translated as "what God desires" or "what God has planned" or "God's purpose" or "what is pleasing to God."

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:15-17
* 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
* Colossians 04:12-14
* Ephesians 01:1-2
* John 05:30-32
* Mark 03:33-35
* Matthew 06:8-10
* Psalms 103:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God's will, desires of God, he desires, he wishes, his will, will of God, will of my Father, will of our God and Father, will of the Lord, will of your Father, you are willing, your will

### wine

#### Related Ideas:

new wine, wineskin

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "wine" refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in "wineskins," which were containers made out of animal skin.

* The term "new wine" referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term "wine" also referred to unfermented grape juice.
* To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
* In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
* Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
* A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as "fermented grape juice" or "fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes" or "fermented fruit juice."
* Ways to translate "wineskin" could include "bag for wine" or "animal skin wine bag" or "animal skin container for wine."

(See also: [grape](../other/grape.md), [vine](../other/vine.md), [vineyard](../other/vineyard.md), [winepress](../other/winepress.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 05:23
* Genesis 09:21
* Genesis 49:12
* John 02:3-5
* John 02:10
* Matthew 09:17
* Matthew 11:18

smashed

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

new wine, wine, wines, wineskin, wineskins

### winepress

#### Definition:

During Bible times, a "winepress" was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

* In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
* Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
* The term "winepress" is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God's wrath being poured out on wicked people.

(See also: [grape](../other/grape.md), [wrath](../kt/wrath.md))

#### Bible References:

* Isaiah 63:02
* Mark 12:01
* Matthew 21:33
* Revelation 14:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1660, H6333, G3025, G5276

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

winepress, winepresses

### winnow

#### Related Ideas:

sift

#### Definition:

The terms "winnow" and "sift" mean to separate grain from unwanted materials. In the Bible, both words are also used in a figurative sense to refer to separating or dividing people.

* To "winnow" means to separate grain from the unwanted parts of the plant by tossing both the grain and chaff into the air, allowing the wind to blow the chaff away.
* The word "sift" refers to shaking the winnowed grain in a sieve to get rid of any remaining unwanted materials, such as dirt or stones.
* In the Old Testament, "winnow" and "sift" are used figuratively to describe hardship that separates the righteous people from the unrighteous people.
* Jesus also used the term "sift" in this figurative way when he was telling Simon Peter about how he and the other disciples would be tested in their faith.
* To translate these terms, use the words or phrases in the project language that refer to these activities; possible translations might be "shaking" or "fanning." If winnowing or sifting are not known, then these terms could be translated by a term that refers to a different method of separating grain from chaff or dirt, or by describing this process.

(See also: [chaff](../other/chaff.md), [grain](../other/grain.md))

#### Bible References:

* Isaiah 21:10
* Luke 22:31
* Matthew 03:12
* Proverbs 20:08
* Ruth 03:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2219, H5130, G4425, G4617

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sift, sifting, winnow, winnowed, winnowing, winnows

### wise

#### Related Ideas:

wisdom, wisely, wiser, wisest

#### Definition:

The term "wise" describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. "Wisdom" is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

* Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
* People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
* A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.
* "Sound wisdom" is wisdom that enables people who have it to succeed in doing good.
* In the Bible, the phrase "worldly wisdom" refers to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate "wise" could include "obedient to God" or "sensible and obedient" or "God-fearing."
* "Wisdom" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "wise living" or "sensible and obedient living" or "good judgment."
* It is best to translate "wise" and "wisdom" in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](../other/obey.md), [fruit](../other/fruit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:03
* Colossians 03:15-17
* Exodus 31:06
* Genesis 03:06
* Isaiah 19:12
* Jeremiah 18:18
* Matthew 07:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H998, H1350, H1847, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3925 H6195, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sound wisdom, wisdom, wise, wisely, wiser, wisest

### wise men

#### Related Ideas:

educated men

#### Definitions:

In the Bible, the phrase "wise men" often refers to men who serve God and act wisely, not foolishly. The term "wise men" or "educated men" is also a special term that refers to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served as part of a king's court.

* Sometimes the term "wise men" is explained in the text as "prudent men" or "men with understanding." This refers to men who act wisely and righteously because they obey God.
* The "wise men" or "educated men" who served pharaohs and other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky.
* Often the "wise men" or "educated men" were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel, who received this knowledge from God.
* Sometimes the "wise men" or "educated men" performed magical acts such as divination or miracles that were done through the power of evil spirits.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When "wise men" simply refers to men who act wisely, the word "wise" should be translated in the same or similar way to how it is translated elsewhere in the Bible.
* When "wise men" refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler, it could be translated as "wise men" or "educated men" or some other term that refers to such a job, such as "advisor."

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [divination](../other/divination.md), [magic](../other/magic.md), [Nebuchadnezzar](../names/nebuchadnezzar.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md), [wise](../kt/wise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
* Daniel 02:1-2
* Daniel 02:10-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G4680

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

educated men, wise men

### woe

#### Definition:

The term "woe" refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

* The expression "woe to" is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
* In several places in the Bible, the word "woe" is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
* A person who says "woe is me" or "woe to me" is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "woe" could also be translated as "great sorrow" or "sadness" or "calamity" or "disaster."
* Other ways to translate the expression "Woe to (name of city)" could include, "How terrible it will be for (name of city)" or "The people in (that city) will be severely punished" or "Those people will suffer greatly."
* The expression, "Woe is me!" or "Woe to me!" could be translated as "How sad I am!" or "I am so sad!" or "How terrible this is for me!"
* The expression "Woe to you" could also be translated as "You will suffer terribly" or "You will experience terrible troubles."

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 13:17-18
* Habakkuk 02:12
* Isaiah 31:1-2
* Jeremiah 45:1-3
* Jude 01:9-11
* Luke 06:24
* Luke 17:1-2
* Matthew 23:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H188, H190, H337, H480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G3759

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

woe

### wolf

#### Related Ideas:

wild dogs

#### Definition:

A wolf is a fierce, meat-eating animal that is similar to a wild dog.

* Wolves usually hunt in groups and stalk their prey in a clever and stealthy manner.
* In the Bible, the term "wolves" is used figuratively to refer to false teachers or false prophets who destroy believers, who are compared to sheep. False teaching causes people to believe wrong things that bring harm to them.
* This comparison is based on the fact that sheep are especially vulnerable to being attacked and eaten by wolves, because they are weak and cannot defend themselves.

#### Translation Suggestion

* This term could be translated as "wild dog" or "wild animal."
* Other names for wild dogs could be "jackal" or "coyote."
* When used figuratively to refer to people, this could be translated as "evil people who harm people like animals that attack sheep."

(See also: [evil](../kt/evil.md), [false prophet](../other/falseprophet.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [teach](../other/teach.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 20:29
* Isaiah 11:07
* John 10:11-13
* Luke 10:03
* Matthew 07:15
* Zephaniah 03:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2061, H3611, G3074

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

wild dogs, wolf, wolves

### womb

#### Related Ideas:

pregnant

#### Definition:

The term "womb" refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

* This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct.
* A more modern term for womb is "uterus."
* Some languages use a word like "belly" to refer to a woman's womb or uterus.
* Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.
* A woman is pregnant" if she has a baby growing her her womb."

#### Picture showing location of a Womb:

<a href="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/w/Womb.png"><img src="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/w/Womb.png" ></a>

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 25:23
* Genesis 25:24-26
* Genesis 38:27-28
* Genesis 49:25
* Luke 02:21
* Luke 11:27
* Luke 23:29
* Matthew 19:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H990, H2030, H4578, H7356, H7358, G1064, G2836, G3388

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pregnant, womb, wombs

### word

#### Definition:

A "word" refers to something that someone has said. In the Bible, it almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.

* An example of this is when the angel told Zechariah, "You did not believe my words," which means, "You did not believe what I said."
* Sometimes "word" refers to speech in general, such as "powerful in word and deed" which means "powerful in speech and behavior."
* Often in the Bible "the word" refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in "the word of God" or "the word of truth."
* A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called "the Word." For these last two meanings, see [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md)

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Different ways of translating "word" or "words" include "teaching" or "message" or "news" or "a saying" or "what was said."

(See also: [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:02
* Acts 08:04
* Colossians 04:03
* James 01:18
* Jeremiah 27:04
* John 01:03
* John 01:14
* Luke 08:15
* Matthew 02:08
* Matthew 07:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H2656, H2706, H4405, H4406, H7878, H8052, G518, G1024, G1310, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G5023, G5537, G5542

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

word, words, message, messages

### word of God

#### Related Ideas:

God's word, his words, my word, scripture, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, writings

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

* The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
* The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
* Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
* In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term "word of truth" is another way of referring to "God's word," which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

* God's word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
* This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."

It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."

The expression "the word of Yahweh came" is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words."

The term "scripture" or "scriptures" could be translated as "the writings" or "the written message from God." This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term "word."

When "word" occurs alone and it refers to God's word, it could be translated as "the message" or "God's word" or "the teachings." Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

When the Bible refers to Jesus as "the Word," this term could be translated as "the Message" or "the Truth."

"Word of truth" could be translated as "God's true message" or "God's word, which is true."

It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [true](../kt/true.md), [word](../other/word.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 15:01
* 1 Kings 13:01
* Jeremiah 36:1-3
* Luke 08:11
* John 05:39
* Acts 06:02
* Acts 12:24
* Romans 01:02
* 2 Corinthians 06:07
* Ephesians 01:13
* 2 Timothy 03:16
* James 01:18
* James 02:8-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God's word, God's words, his words, my word, scripture, scriptures, word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, words of God, writings

### work

#### Related Ideas:

act, deed, fellow worker

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "work," "deed," and "act" are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

* God's "works" and the "work of his hands" are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms "deeds" and "acts" are also used to refer to God's miracles in expressions such as "mighty acts" or "marvelous deeds."
* The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called "good fruit."
* The term "work" can also refer to "service" or "ministry."
* People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
* The term "fellow worker" means someone who does a ministry along with someone else.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "works" or "deeds" could be "actions" or "things that are done."
* When referring to God's "works" or "deeds" and the "work of his hands," these expressions could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "amazing things he does."
* The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "the amazing things that God does" or "everything God has accomplished."
* The expression "your work in the Lord" could also be translated as "what you do for the Lord."
* The expression "examine your own work" could also be translated as "make sure what you are doing is God's will" or "make sure that what you are doing pleases God."
* The expression "the work of the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "the empowering of the Holy Spirit" or "the ministry of the Holy Spirit" or "the things that the Holy Spirit does."

(See also: [fruit](../other/fruit.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [miracle](../kt/miracle.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:12
* Acts 02:8-11
* Daniel 04:37
* Exodus 34:10-11
* Galatians 02:15-16
* James 02:17
* Matthew 16:27-28
* Micah 02:07
* Romans 03:28
* Titus 03:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1576, H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4639, H4659, H5673, H5949, H5998, H6213, H6466, H6468, G1754, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G3173

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

act, action, actions, activities, acts, deed, deeds, fellow worker, fellow workers, work, works

### world

#### Related Ideas:

universe, worldly

#### Definition:

The term "world" usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term "worldly" describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

* In its most general sense, the term "world" refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
* In many contexts, "world" actually means "people in the world."
* Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
* The apostles also used "world" to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
* People and things characterized by these values are said to be "worldly."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "world" could also be translated as "universe" or "people of this world" or "corrupt things in the world" or "evil attitudes of people in the world."
* The phrase "all the world" often means "many people" and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, "all the world came to Egypt" could be translated as "many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt" or "people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there."
* Another way to translate "all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census" would be "many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went..."
* Depending on the context, the term "worldly" could be translated as, "evil" or "sinful" or "selfish" or "ungodly" or "corrupt" or "influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world."
* The phrase "saying these things in the world" can be translated as "saying these things to the people of the world."
* In other contexts, "in the world" could also be translated as "living among the people of the world" or "living among ungodly people."

(See also: [corrupt](../other/corrupt.md), [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [godly](../kt/godly.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:15
* 1 John 04:05
* 1 John 05:05
* John 01:29
* Matthew 13:36-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H2717, H5769, H8398, G165, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

universe, world, world's, worldly

### worship

#### Related Ideas:

worshiper

#### Definition:

To "worship" means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

* When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
* Often people bow down when they worship someone.
* Some people worshiped false gods.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "worship" could be translated as "bow down to" or "honor and serve" or "honor and obey."
* In some contexts, it could also be translated as "humbly praise" or "give honor and praise."

(See also: [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [praise](../other/praise.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 02:18-19
* Deuteronomy 29:18
* Exodus 03:11-12
* Luke 04:07
* Matthew 02:02
* Matthew 02:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5457, H5647, H7812, G1391, G2151, G2152, G2323, G2356, G2999, G3000, G3008, H3372, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

worship, worshiped, worshiper's, worshipers, worshiping, worships

### worthy

#### Related Ideas:

deserve, nullify, unworthy, worth, worthily, worthless, worthlessness, worthy

#### Definition:

The term "worthy" describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To "have worth" means to be valuable or important.

* Being "worthy" is related to being valuable or having importance.
* To do something "worthily" means to do something in a worthy way.
* To be "unworthy" means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition.
* To be "worthless" means to not have any purpose or value.
* To "nullify" something is to make it worth nothing.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* "Worthy" could be translated as "deserving" or "important" or "valuable."
* The word "worth" could be translated as "value" or "importance."
* The phrase to "have worth" could also be translated as to "be valuable" or to "be important."
* The phrase "is worth more than" could be translated as "is more valuable than."
* Depending on the context, the term, "unworthy" could also be translated as "unimportant" or "dishonorable" or "undeserving."
* The term "worthless" could be translated as "with no value" or "with no purpose" or "worth nothing."

(See also: [honor](../kt/honor.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 22:04
* 2 Thessalonians 01:11-12
* Acts 13:25
* Acts 25:25-27
* Acts 26:31
* Colossians 01:9-10
* Jeremiah 08:19
* Mark 01:07
* Matthew 03:10-12
* Philippians 01:25-27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H457, H1100, H2428, H3276, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H5541, H6994, H7385, H7386, H7723, H7939, H8602, G96, G514, G515, G516, G888, G1777, G2425, G2480, G2661, G3152, G4186, G5092

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deserve, deserved, deserves, deserving, nullify, unworthy, worth, worthily, worthless, worthlessness, worthy

### wrath

#### Related Ideas:

furious, fury

#### Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

* In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
* The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
* God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
* When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See also: [judge](../kt/judge.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
* 1 Timothy 02:8-10
* Luke 03:7
* Luke 21:23
* Matthew 03:07
* Revelation 14:10
* Romans 01:18
* Romans 05:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H639, H2194, H2195, H2197, H2534, H2740, H3707, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7267, G2205, G2372, G3709

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

furious, fury, wrath

### wrong

#### Related Ideas:

defraud, hurt, mistreat, wrongdoer, wrongdoing

#### Definition:

To "wrong" someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

* Wrongdoing is the act of doing what is wrong. It can also refer to a behavior that is wrong.
* The term "defraud" means to illegally take money from someone by lying to them. Another word for this is "cheat."
* The terms "hurt" is more general and means to "cause someone harm in some way." It often has the meaning of "physically injure."
* The term "mistreat" means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
* Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as "do wrong to" or, "treat unjustly" or "cause harm to" or treat in a harmful way" or "injure."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:26
* Exodus 22:21
* Genesis 16:05
* Luke 06:28
* Matthew 20:13-14
* Psalms 071:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H816, H2248, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4347, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H5932, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, H8604, G91, G92, G93, G264, G824, G983, G984, G1536, G1651, G1727, G1908, G2556, G2559, G2607, G3076, G3077, G3762, G4122, G4550, G5195, G5196

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

defraud, hurt, hurting, hurts, mistreat, mistreated, wrong, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, wronged, wrongfully, wronging, wrongs

### year

#### Definition:

When used literally, the term "year" in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

* A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
* In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
* In the Bible, the term "year" is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, "the year of Yahweh" or "in the year of drought" or "the favorable year of the Lord." In these contexts, "year" could be translated as "time" or "season" or "time period."

(See also: [month](../other/biblicaltimemonth.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 23:31
* Acts 19:8-10
* Daniel 08:01
* Exodus 12:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7620, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

year, years

### yeast

#### Related Ideas:

leaven, unleavened

#### Definition:

"Leaven" is a general term for a substance that causes bread dough to expand and rise. "Yeast" is a specific kind of leaven.

* In some English translations, the word for leaven is translated as "yeast," which is a modern leavening agent that fills the bread dough with gas bubbles, making the dough expand before baking it. The yeast is kneaded into the dough so that it spreads throughout the entire lump of dough.
* In Old Testament times, the leavening or rising agent was produced by allowing the dough to sit for awhile. Small amounts of dough from a previous batch of dough were saved as leavening for the next batch.
* When the Israelites escaped from Egypt, they didn't have time to wait for bread dough to rise, so they made bread without leaven to take with them on their journey. As a reminder of this, every year the Jewish people celebrate Passover by eating bread that has no leaven in it.

The ideas of "leaven" and "yeast" can also be used in figurative ways.

* The terms "leaven" and "yeast" are used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of how sin spreads through a person's life or how sin can influence other people.
* They can also refer to false teaching which can spread to many people and influences them.
* They are also used in a positive way to explain how the influence of God's kingdom spreads from person to person.

#### Translation Suggestions

* This could be translated as "leaven" or "substance that causes dough to rise" or "expanding agent." The word "rise" could be expressed as "expand" or "get bigger" or "puff up."
* If a local leavening agent is used for making bread dough rise, that term can be used. If the language has a well-known, general term that means, "leavening," this would be the best term to use.

(See also: [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Passover](../kt/passover.md), [unleavened bread](../kt/unleavenedbread.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 12:08
* Galatians 05:9-10
* Luke 12:1
* Luke 13:21
* Matthew 13:33
* Matthew 16:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2556, H2557, H4682, H7603, G106, G2219, G2220

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

leaven, leavened, leavens, unleavened, yeast

### yoke

#### Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

* The term "yoke" is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
* Paul used the term "yokefellow" to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as "fellow worker" or "fellow servant" or "coworker."
* The term "yoke" is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
* In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
* Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, "oppressive burden" or "heavy load" or "bond," depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](../kt/bond.md), [burden](../other/burden.md), [oppress](../other/oppress.md), [persecute](../other/persecute.md), [servant](../other/servant.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:10
* Galatians 05:01
* Genesis 27:40
* Isaiah 09:04
* Jeremiah 27:04
* Matthew 11:30
* Philippians 04:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3627, H4132, H5674, H5923, H6776, G2086, G2218

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

yoke, yoked, yoked ... together, yokes

### zeal

#### Related Ideas:

diligence, diligent, eager, eagerness, zealous, zealously

#### Definition:

The terms "zeal" and "zealous" refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

* Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
* Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
* The "zeal of the Lord" or the "zeal of Yahweh" refers to God's strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To "be zealous" could also be translated by, "be strongly diligent" or "make an intense effort."
* The term "zeal" could also be translated as "energetic devotion" or "eager determination" or "righteous enthusiasm."
* The phrase, "zeal for your house" could be translated, "strongly honoring your temple" or "fervent desire to take care of your house."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 12:31
* 1 Kings 19:9-10
* Acts 22:03
* Galatians 04:17
* Isaiah 63:15
* John 02:17-19
* Philippians 03:06
* Romans 10:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2734, H7065, H7068, G2205, G2206, G2207, G4710

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

diligence, diligent, eager, eagerness, making ... effort, zeal, zealous, zealously